



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Informazioni su questo libro

Si tratta della copia digitale di un libro che per generazioni è stato conservata negli scaffali di una biblioteca prima di essere digitalizzato da Google nell'ambito del progetto volto a rendere disponibili online i libri di tutto il mondo.

Ha sopravvissuto abbastanza per non essere più protetto dai diritti di copyright e diventare di pubblico dominio. Un libro di pubblico dominio è un libro che non è mai stato protetto dal copyright o i cui termini legali di copyright sono scaduti. La classificazione di un libro come di pubblico dominio può variare da paese a paese. I libri di pubblico dominio sono l'anello di congiunzione con il passato, rappresentano un patrimonio storico, culturale e di conoscenza spesso difficile da scoprire.

Commenti, note e altre annotazioni a margine presenti nel volume originale compariranno in questo file, come testimonianza del lungo viaggio percorso dal libro, dall'editore originale alla biblioteca, per giungere fino a te.

Linee guida per l'utilizzo

Google è orgoglioso di essere il partner delle biblioteche per digitalizzare i materiali di pubblico dominio e renderli universalmente disponibili. I libri di pubblico dominio appartengono al pubblico e noi ne siamo solamente i custodi. Tuttavia questo lavoro è oneroso, pertanto, per poter continuare ad offrire questo servizio abbiamo preso alcune iniziative per impedire l'utilizzo illecito da parte di soggetti commerciali, compresa l'imposizione di restrizioni sull'invio di query automatizzate.

Inoltre ti chiediamo di:

- + *Non fare un uso commerciale di questi file* Abbiamo concepito Google Ricerca Libri per l'uso da parte dei singoli utenti privati e ti chiediamo di utilizzare questi file per uso personale e non a fini commerciali.
- + *Non inviare query automatizzate* Non inviare a Google query automatizzate di alcun tipo. Se stai effettuando delle ricerche nel campo della traduzione automatica, del riconoscimento ottico dei caratteri (OCR) o in altri campi dove necessiti di utilizzare grandi quantità di testo, ti invitiamo a contattarci. Incoraggiamo l'uso dei materiali di pubblico dominio per questi scopi e potremmo esserti di aiuto.
- + *Conserva la filigrana* La "filigrana" (watermark) di Google che compare in ciascun file è essenziale per informare gli utenti su questo progetto e aiutarli a trovare materiali aggiuntivi tramite Google Ricerca Libri. Non rimuoverla.
- + *Fanne un uso legale* Indipendentemente dall'utilizzo che ne farai, ricordati che è tua responsabilità accertarti di farne un uso legale. Non dare per scontato che, poiché un libro è di pubblico dominio per gli utenti degli Stati Uniti, sia di pubblico dominio anche per gli utenti di altri paesi. I criteri che stabiliscono se un libro è protetto da copyright variano da Paese a Paese e non possiamo offrire indicazioni se un determinato uso del libro è consentito. Non dare per scontato che poiché un libro compare in Google Ricerca Libri ciò significhi che può essere utilizzato in qualsiasi modo e in qualsiasi Paese del mondo. Le sanzioni per le violazioni del copyright possono essere molto severe.

Informazioni su Google Ricerca Libri

La missione di Google è organizzare le informazioni a livello mondiale e renderle universalmente accessibili e fruibili. Google Ricerca Libri aiuta i lettori a scoprire i libri di tutto il mondo e consente ad autori ed editori di raggiungere un pubblico più ampio. Puoi effettuare una ricerca sul Web nell'intero testo di questo libro da <http://books.google.com>

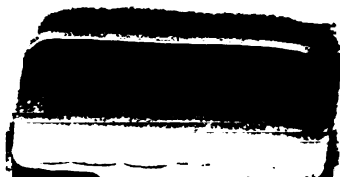
A 1,015,219

PROPERTY OF
*University of
Michigan
Libraries*

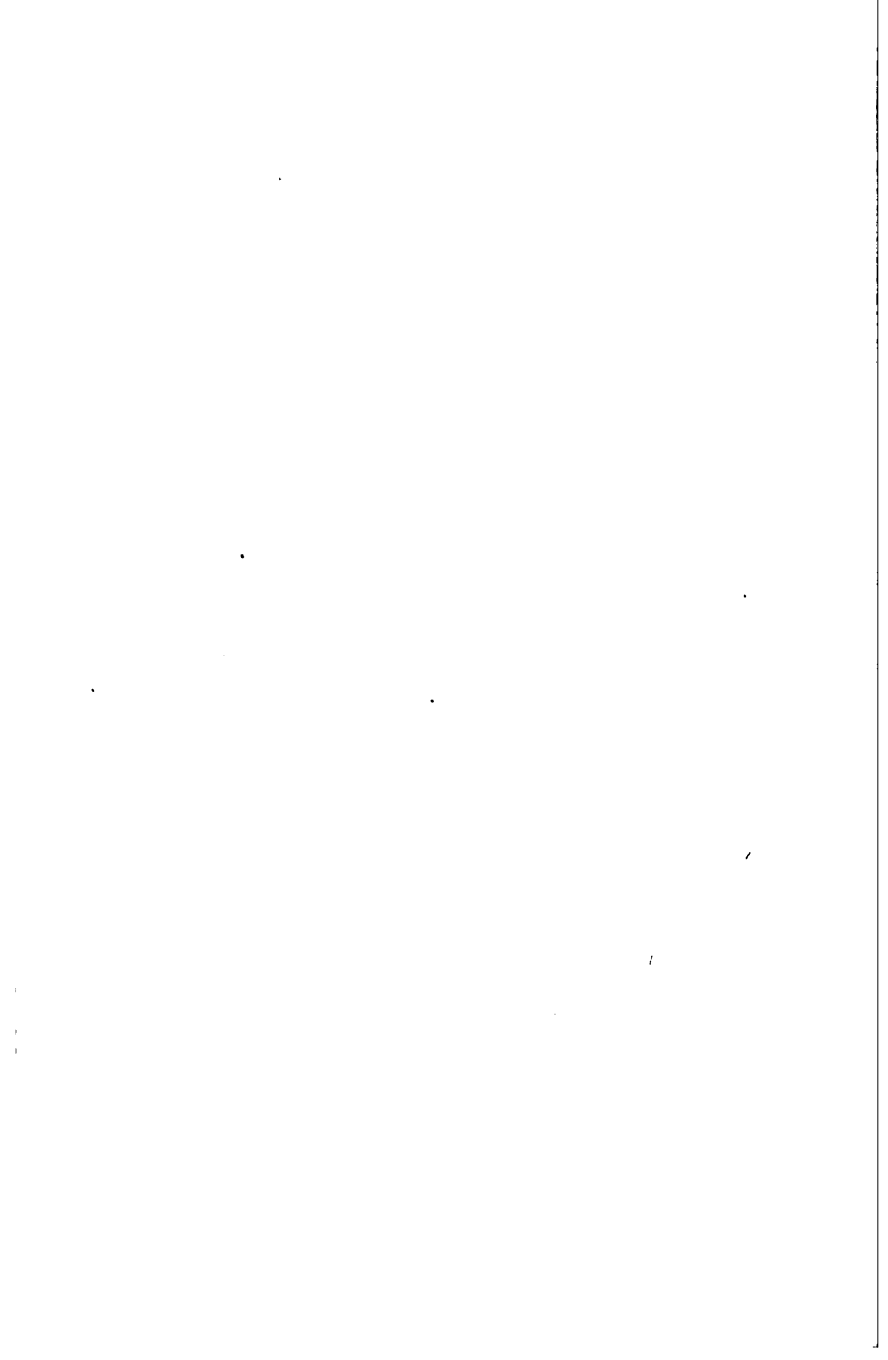
1817



ARTES SCIENTIA VERITAS









GAIVS IVLIVS CAESAR.

From the marble bust in the British Museum.

GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE LATIN SERIES

C. IVLI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO LIBRI VII

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

With Introduction, Notes, Appendix and Vocabulary

BY
HARRY F. TOWLE
AND
PAUL R. JENKS
BOYS' HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN



UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY
NEW YORK . BOSTON . NEW ORLEANS
1903

177
228
T 111

COPYRIGHT, 1908, BY
UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

.. 2615

PREFACE

THE second year of the Latin course, in which Caesar's Gallic War is usually read, is confessedly the crucial period in the pupil's career. The work of the first year is devoted principally to learning the forms and acquiring as large a vocabulary as possible. But little attention is paid to syntax, and the reading material is carefully selected to suit the stage of progress of the learner. In the second year, on the other hand, not only must he review his forms, and enlarge his knowledge of syntax, but he must make his first acquaintance with a world-renowned classic, written for mature minds and of all grades of difficulty. To meet the needs of pupils at this period in their course this edition has been prepared, and the editors have endeavored to embody in it the results of many years experience in the class room.

A large proportion of any school commentary on the Gallic War must be devoted to the explanation of syntactical difficulties. The usual practice is to refer for detailed treatment of any construction to some grammar in common use. This is open to two objections. The first and most important is that the grammar is of secondary importance to most pupils. Their principal attention is given to the translation of the text, and every teacher knows how difficult it is to get them to follow up the references given in the notes. The second difficulty is that the most of the class are as yet unable to make discriminating use of the comprehensive treatment found in the grammar, so that a confusion frequently results. To meet

these difficulties a complete treatise on the Syntax of the Gallic War has been inserted in this edition in the shape of an appendix to the commentary. Here every construction found in the text is explained in the simplest manner, and illustrated by examples, all of which are taken from the text, with references to the passages where they occur. Many hints as to differences between Latin and English idiom are also given, so that this Appendix is an important adjunct to the commentary in every way. For further study, references to the standard grammars are added under every heading.

In the conviction that the student should be encouraged to work out things for himself, but little assistance in the way of translation is provided. Instead, suggestive analyses of the thought have been inserted, with sufficient references to the Appendix, when the construction seems to demand it, to make the meaning of the author clear. The editors also believe that too much attention is usually paid in the early chapters to Indirect Discourse, and that it can be readily handled in translation without changing it to the direct form; they have, however, provided the direct form of several chapters in the notes, and those who prefer to make an exhaustive study of it will find it fully discussed in the Appendix, with a careful comparison of the rules for Indirect Discourse in English.

In illustrating the subject matter of the narrative the constant aim of the editors has been to interest and stimulate the pupil, but not to overload the commentary with unimportant details.

Much of the material often found in the notes is given in the Vocabulary. Here, too, the student is assisted to choose the right meaning of a word by references to its occurrence in the text, and phrases and idiom are explained, and, when necessary, translated.

The Introduction contains a brief discussion of Caesar's career and a sketch of the conditions of Roman society before his rise to power. The customary information as to the military system of the Romans is also added.

The Sixth and Seventh books are edited with footnotes for sight reading.

The text is based upon the recent editions of Meusel (Berlin, 1894) and Du Pontet (Oxford, 1900).

The thanks of the editors are due to Professor Lodge, who has read all the proofs and made many helpful suggestions, and to Miss Mary A. Cogswell, of Wellesley College, for material assistance in the preparation of the Vocabulary.

HARRY F. TOWLE.

PAUL R. JENKS.

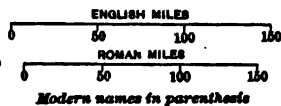
BOYS' HIGH SCHOOL,
BROOKLYN, *May* 15, 1903.

MAPS AND CAMPAIGN PLANS

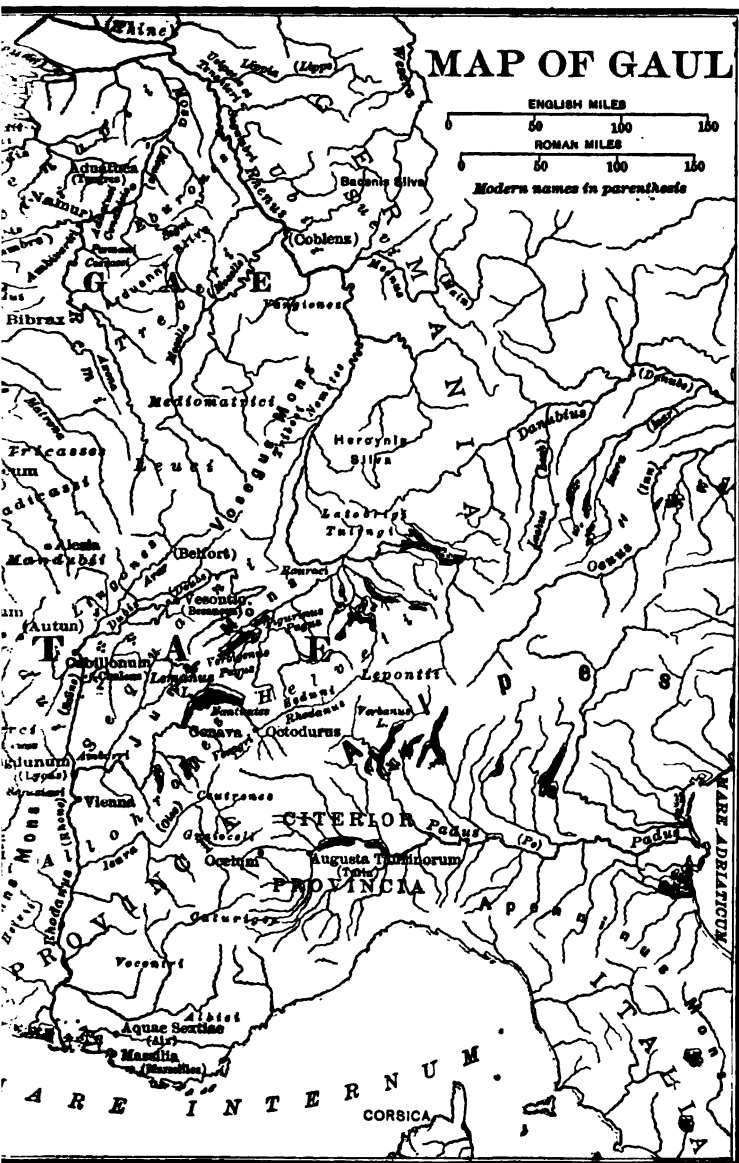
Map of Gaul	<i>Facing page</i>	vii
Campaign of 58 B.C.	"	1
Map of Helvetia	"	16
Battle with Ariovistus	"	34
Campaign of 57 B.C.	"	38
Battle on the Aisne	"	43
Battle with the Nervii	"	48
Siege of Aduatuca	"	54
Campaign of 56 B.C.	"	58
Campaign of 55-54 B.C.	"	76
Campaign of 54 B.C.	"	98
Campaign of 52 B.C.	"	163
Siege of Avaricum	"	176
Siege of Gergovia	"	184
Expedition of Labienus	"	199
Victory over Vercingetorix	"	205
Siege of Alesia	"	208

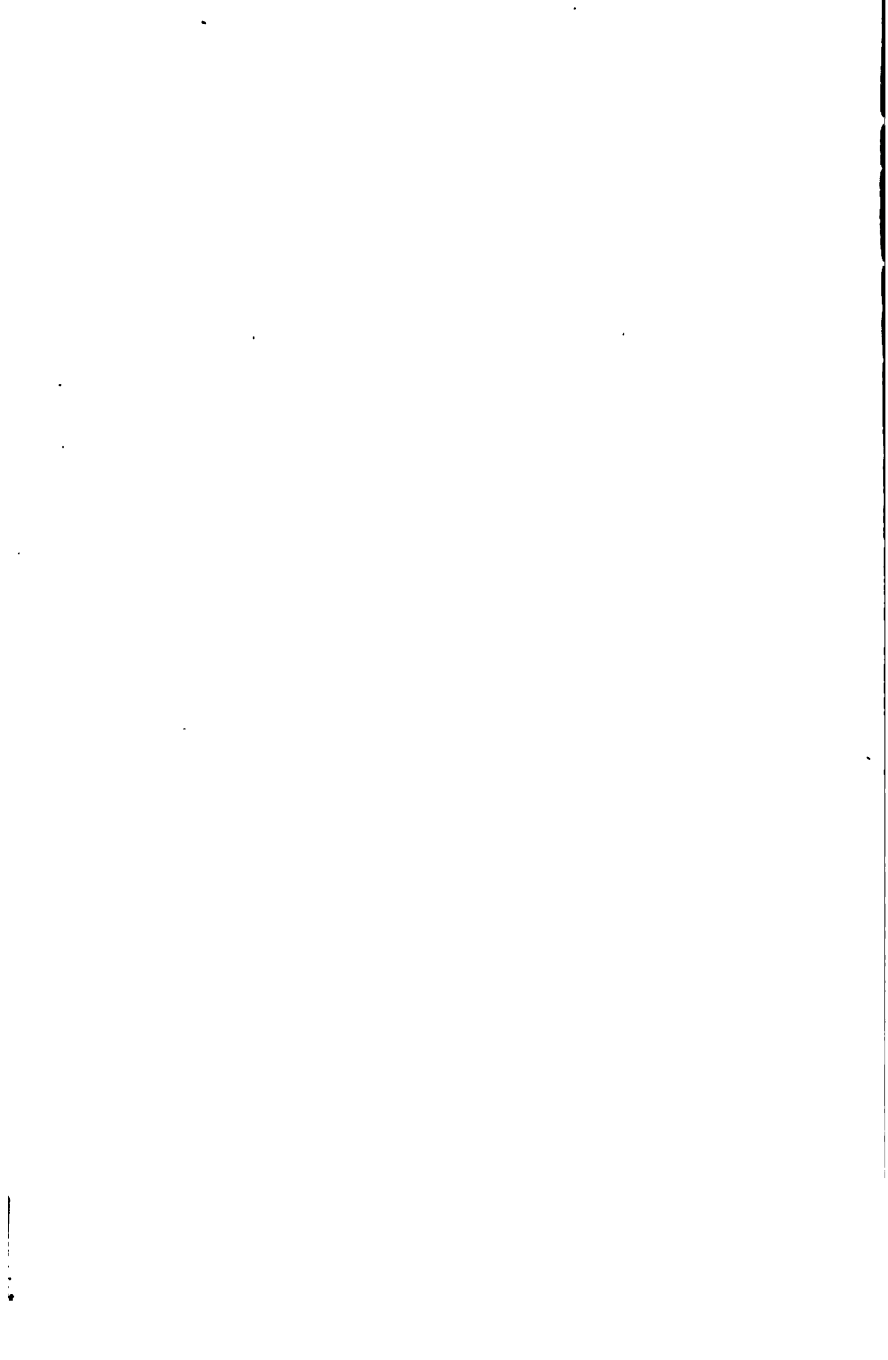


MAP OF GAUL



Modern names in parentheses





INTRODUCTION

BEFORE entering upon the study of the literary work of Caesar it is well for the student to acquire some knowledge of the man and the times in which he lived. Too often is the reader of the Gallic War left under the impression that the fame of Caesar rests mainly on his having written a history of his campaigns in foreign lands, a book which has made young people more or less miserable, however it may have commanded the admiration of scholars. The character and achievements of this man are worthy of study quite apart from his career in Gaul.

As a writer, it is true, he will be famous to the end of time; but as an orator he was also conspicuous in an age of orators; as a successful military leader he has no superior; as a statesman neither ancient nor modern times have furnished his equal; and as an example of success due to a fixed purpose in life, prosecuted with an unyielding will and with restless energy, he has left a name that dominates history.

THE ROMAN COMMONWEALTH.

During the four hundred years which elapsed from the expulsion of the kings to the birth of Caesar, the Roman Commonwealth underwent many changes in its government, in its moral and social life, and in the extent of its dominion.

The Roman Government.—At the beginning, the offices of the state were restricted to the aristocracy or patricians alone, while the plebeians, or common people, had almost no voice; hence arose political strife; the plebeians striving con-

tinually to improve their political status, the patricians striving as pertinaciously to retain their privileges unimpaired. To the determined assaults of the plebeians, however, the patricians gradually yielded, and one office after another was opened to plebeian candidacy until, finally, in 367 B.C. the consulship was brought within the grasp of the humblest citizen in the state. From that time, so far as appearances and law went, the Roman Commonwealth was a democracy, though not of the modern pattern.

The Roman Empire.—The city of Rome was situated in the midst of a fertile valley, in a location commanding the surrounding country, and it was thus brought into conflict with adjoining peoples at the very beginning of its life. In the course of years, however, by an uninterrupted series of wars, the dominion of the city gradually extended, and first one section of Italy and then another was brought under its influence, until in 275 B.C. the Roman government extended over the whole of Italy south of the river Aesis.

Shortly afterwards, the Romans came into contact with the rapidly expanding Carthaginian power by reason of the attempts of the Carthaginians to obtain control of Sicily. The result of this contact was the First Punic War (264–224 B.C.), which ended in Roman victory and the establishment of the Roman power in Sicily, the first of the long roll of Roman provinces.

Later, the Romans obtained a foothold in Spain, and they were reaching out in still other directions when the Second Punic War (219–202 B.C.) stopped their progress for a time, and brought them almost to the verge of destruction. The end of this war, however, was the complete overthrow of the Carthaginian power, and Rome became the dominating force in the Mediterranean.

Having obtained by the victory over the Carthaginians the control of the West, her attention was now directed toward the East. Here country after country was gradually subdued until, at the time when Caesar was born, the Roman Empire extended from Spain to Asia Minor, and embraced the whole coast of the Mediterranean without a break.

The Character of the Romana.—The effect of this perpetually expanding power upon the moral and political life of the people of Rome was demoralizing. In the earliest period they had been a brave, patriotic and thrifty people, fighting among themselves to decide the questions of political supremacy, but sinking all their internal differences to present a united front to foreign attack. With increasing power and dominion came a vast increase in wealth and luxury. This was particularly the case after the Second Punic War, when the control of so many subject states brought into Rome a steady stream of wealth from the East and the South and, at the same time, flooded the city with the dregs of Eastern and Southern populations: idle, indolent and vicious.

The great losses in the Roman Commonwealth during the Second Punic War had been repaired by the admission to citizenship of slaves and freedmen, men of entirely different quality from that of the sturdy old Roman stock. Almost all the farmers of Italy had been driven from their homes by Hannibal, and vast districts had been left desolate. These were bought up by the rich nobles of Rome and farmed with great companies of slaves. Accordingly there ensued a steady decrease in the number of free landed proprietors, the class which formed the real strength of the nation.

The increase in wealth had caused a decay in the morals of the leading citizens, and political rivalry for the best

interest of the state had given way to political rivalry for personal aggrandizement. Roman nobles now strove with each other for themselves, and not for Rome, and, as a consequence, made use of their wealth to corrupt still further the commonwealth, to destroy the independent spirit of the old democracy and to make the voting population a tool in the hands of the highest bidder.

The Gracchi.—In the year 133 B.C. a public-spirited Roman tribune, Tiberius Gracchus, attempted to remedy some of these evils by the passage of an Agrarian law to distribute the public lands now occupied by the nobles into small farms for the poor people. Great dissension was the result, which finally culminated in a bloody riot in which Gracchus and three hundred of his followers were killed. Ten years later Gaius Gracchus, brother of Tiberius, tried a similar scheme; but he, too, was killed in 121 B.C. with many of his partisans. After that time the spirit of bitter partisanship and of rivalry between the nobility on the one hand and the democratic rabble on the other grew rapidly more and more intense, and it became evident to every discerning eye that it would not be long before the Roman Government would fall a prey to the strongest in arms. The first man to come to the front in this way was Gaius Marius.

Marius.—Marius was a man of humble birth who very early, as an officer in the army of Metellus, during the war in Africa against Jugurtha showed exceptional military talent. With this he combined such influence with the people that he was made consul in 106 B.C., and was sent to replace Metellus in the African war. He returned to Rome in triumph in 104 B.C. with Jugurtha as a captive. This success made him not merely general of the army, but leader of the popular party. Such was his strength that he was elected consul year after

year until 102 B.C., when he defeated the Teutones and Cimbri in two great battles—and after quelling the invaders returned to Rome supreme over all rivals.

Sulla.—At this time a young noble, Lucius Cornelius Sulla, who had done honorable service with the army of Marius in Africa, began to be looked upon as a rising man. But his bearing was modest and he continued to live in an unpretentious way, all the while rising in reputation and extending his influence. During the supremacy of Marius we hear but little of him, although from his aristocratic connections we can understand that he looked with no favorable eye upon the excessive power and demagogic actions of Marius in the government. As Marius was the recognized head of the popular party, so Sulla was coming to be regarded as the one about whom the nobles must rally in order to oppose Marius should occasion arise.

LIFE OF CAESAR.

Birth.—Gaius Julius Caesar was born July 12, 100 B.C. His family, on his father's side, was of the noblest blood of the aristocrats, tracing its origin back to Aeneas, the leader of the Trojan exiles, and through him to Venus, goddess of Love and Beauty, and thus to Jupiter himself. His mother, Aurelia, was of a prominent plebeian family, while his father's sister Julia was the wife of the great democratic leader Marius.

Childhood and Youth.—Of his childhood we know almost nothing. But it is evident that the feelings of the household were on the side of the democratic party. We may therefore infer that from his earliest years he was accustomed to hear much discussion about the wrongs of the people and the tyranny of the aristocrats.

There is nothing recorded to indicate that Caesar in

his boyhood was especially precocious. He probably received the customary training of the sons of wealthy families of his time. He was taught Greek by Antonius Gniphos, an educated Gaul, but as to his further education we are ignorant. He is said to have been "a tall, handsome youth, with dark, piercing eyes, a large nose, full lips and, in general with a refined and intellectual bearing." He was almost foppish in the extreme care he bestowed upon his dress and personal appearance. Caesar's most intimate companions were the younger Marius, the adopted son of his uncle, and the two Ciceros, Marcus and Quintus, both of whom were to be closely connected with his public life.

At the age of fourteen he was made a priest of Jupiter by his uncle, and thus became a member of the Sacred College with a fixed income. Almost immediately afterwards Marius died and was succeeded as leader of his party by Cinna, an unscrupulous and cruel demagogue. At the age of sixteen Caesar lost his father by death. When only seventeen, he married Cinna's daughter, and by this marriage his alliance with the popular party was made complete.

Caesar and Sulla.—Meanwhile for several years Rome had been distracted by civil war. Marius had been banished, and then had been forcibly brought back by Cinna. After the restoration Marius and Cinna set on foot a bloody proscription in which they murdered all the most important of their political opponents. The aristocrats in despair turned to their general, Sulla, who was on his return to Rome, after having conducted military operations in the East with distinguished success. When he arrived in Italy he defeated the opposing forces of the popular party and entered Rome in triumph.

Sulla was immediately made dictator and a reign of terror for the democrats was then ushered in. Every leader of that

party was proscribed, and four thousand seven hundred were murdered. Caesar, now a youth of eighteen, strangely escaped proscription; but he did not pass unnoticed. The Dictator had his eye on this "youth in petticoats," and was interested in him. He made him the proposition that he desert his party and divorce his wife. Caesar, with the cool assurance for which he was ever noted, positively refused and defied the tyrant; and though his life was spared, his property was confiscated and his priesthood taken from him. All this was without effect, and now at last, being condemned to death, he deemed it prudent to go into hiding for a time. Once, indeed, he was discovered, but escaped by bribing the men sent to kill him. Powerful friends interceded for him, and at last the Dictator reluctantly yielded, saying, "Take him, since you will have it so—but I would have you know that the youth for whom you plead will sometime overthrow the aristocracy for whom you and I have fought so hard; in this young Caesar are many Mariuses."

Caesar enters the Army.—Caesar had now reached an age when it became necessary for him to choose a course in life. To the ambitious young Roman only two avenues to success were open — politics or a military career; for trade and commerce were in the hands of an inferior class. Literature was merely incidental to success in other fields. For success in politics oratory was an extremely useful accomplishment; and Caesar was a forceful though inexperienced speaker even at the age of twenty. But upon making his peace with Sulla, having not much confidence in the Dictator's sincerity, he thought it wiser to enter the army, and went to Asia. Here he distinguished himself at the siege of Mytilene by saving the life of a soldier, for which he was honored by the praetor with the gift of a civic crown. His military ser-

vice lasted until the death of Sulla, when he returned to Rome at the age of twenty-two and entered upon his political career.

Caesar enters Politics.—The usual method of acquiring political prominence was to prosecute some provincial officer. Caesar brought a charge of extortion against Dolabella, who had been governor of Macedonia. In this trial Caesar, who had little experience in public speaking, was opposed by some of the most famous advocates of the day. The result was a failure of the prosecution, and Caesar discovered that he needed special training if he was to win against experienced pleaders. Furthermore, the trial had aroused against him much enmity, and he deemed it best to leave Rome for a time. So he went to Rhodes to study oratory under the famous rhetorician, Apollonius Molo. (On his way he was captured by pirates, who took him to an island and held him for a large ransom. The pirates treated him well, and he seems to have enjoyed his captivity.) He told them, however, he would shortly return and hang them all, a threat which they seem to have made light of; for when the ransom was paid he was immediately set free. He at once proceeded to carry out his threat, and, gathering some vessels, returned to the island and captured the whole crew while they were dividing the money. They were all taken to Pergamus and put to death. He then proceeded to Rhodes, where he devoted two years to hard study. Upon the conclusion of his studies he returned to Rome to watch the course of events, ready at any time to take a hand in public affairs. The aristocrats were still in power, but trouble was brewing for that party on every hand. Caesar had done enough to render him a conspicuous leader of the popular party. But the time for action was not yet come. As a reward for his services in Asia he was chosen military tribune. He had im-

proved so much in oratorical ability that he was recognized as a powerful advocate.

His "*Cursus Honorum*."—In 68 B.C., when he was thirty-two, he was chosen *quaestor*, and thus obtained a seat in the Senate. This was the first step in the so-called *cursus honorum*, which led through successive offices to the consulship. In B.C. 65 he was chosen *aedile*. Among other duties the aediles had charge of the public games and exhibitions. They were expected to beautify the city and entertain the people with elaborate shows. And all this at their own expense. Caesar was well to do, but he went far beyond his means in presenting magnificent spectacles and erecting costly columns. His gladiatorial contests exceeded anything before known. Wild beasts were brought into the arena in cages of burnished silver. Costly porticos were added to temples and public buildings, and splendid statues were made to adorn the public places of the city. All this plunged Caesar into debt to the amount of a million and a half of dollars. A man who, at the age of thirty-two, could contract debts to such an enormous amount is worthy of regard for his audacity if for no other reason. By this means Caesar had won the favor of the multitude, and he was now the undisputed leader of the popular party.

He next became a candidate for the office of *Pontifex Maximus*, or head of the state religious order. He had been made a priest as early as his fourteenth year, as we have seen above, and it was perhaps natural that he should aspire to be head of the Church. It is a significant commentary upon the religious state of the times that a man who had no respect whatever for the gods of his country or for any god but Fortune, should thus be considered eligible for the highest position in the priesthood. The place was the most conspicuous in the

state, and its occupant held office for life. Caesar conducted his campaign for the office with his usual vigor. He borrowed still larger sums of money and spent them with a lavish hand. But the danger of the canvass must have been serious, for it is said that, as he left his mother on the morning of the election, he kissed her and remarked that he would return as Pontifex Maximus or never return at all. He was chosen by an overwhelming vote.

Soon after his election to the pontificate Caesar was chosen *praetor*, in 63 B.C. This was the time of Catiline's conspiracy, and party spirit ran high. Many have thought that Caesar knew more of the inside workings of that conspiracy than he ever told. Possibly this was true; but he was too shrewd a politician and too sure of his position of leadership to cast in his lot with a lawless faction. It is likely that his plans for his own future movements in public life were fairly well developed in his own mind by this time, and he could see nothing to be gained by an alliance with a party which did not include the real leaders of the state. During his term in the praetorship he conducted himself in a manner to strengthen his position in his party, while he looked to yet greater power in the future.

After this praetorship Caesar was sent to Spain as *pro-praetor*. His term there was eminently successful and very profitable to himself. For he brought back money enough to pay all his debts and have something for the rainy days to come. He had also turned large sums into the public treasury. Furthermore, he had settled all troubles in Spain. His popularity was immense, and it was a foregone conclusion that he would win the consulship in 60 B.C. when by age he would be eligible.

Pompey and Crassus.—While Caesar had been advancing

with rapid strides toward the position of popular idol, Pompey, who had succeeded Sulla as the general of the aristocrats, had been winning great fame in war until he was recognized as the first soldier of the age. He was, however, no politician, and lacked ability as an orator. The head of the financial world, and the wealthiest citizen, was Publius Crassus. Except Cicero these two were, perhaps, the most conspicuous members of the aristocratic party. It was at this time that Cicero wrote: "We have not a statesman or the shadow of one. My friend Pompey, who might have done something, sits silent admiring his fine clothes. Crassus will say nothing to make himself unpopular, and the rest are such idiots as to hope that though the constitution fall they will save their own fish-ponds."

The First Triumvirate.—Caesar saw his opportunity and took advantage of it. He formed a coalition with Pompey and Crassus for the division among themselves of the honors of the state. This is known in history as the First Triumvirate. In accordance with this agreement Caesar was chosen consul, the first of his party for a generation. He proposed many reforms, and most of them were adopted against the protest of the senatorial party. It was a stormy year politically, but it served admirably to emphasize Caesar's superiority to all the men of his time. By the terms of his agreement with Pompey and Crassus, Gaul was to be entrusted to him as proconsul for five years.

This brings us to the year 58 B.C., and the story of the next seven years is told by Caesar himself in the Commentaries. In 56 B.C. a meeting of the triumvirs was held and it was agreed that Caesar's term should be extended for five years more, at the end of which time he should be eligible for a second election to the consulship, thus giving ample time to complete the

conquest of Gaul before his return to Rome. In the year 53, however, the death of Crassus broke up the coalition, and Pompey was coaxed or flattered until he, too, withdrew his support from Caesar, and espoused the cause of the Senate. The Civil War followed. In the latter part of 50 B.C. Caesar crossed the Rubicon with his army. His success was instantaneous, though the war continued in various quarters until 45 B.C., when he returned to Rome the undisputed master of the Roman world. His great rival, Pompey, defeated at Pharsalia in Thessaly in 48 B.C., had fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered.

Death.—Caesar used his supreme power in a way very different from his predecessors Marius and Sulla. He at once set about repairing so far as he could the ravages of the civil wars, by making several laws which were designed to benefit the people. He reformed the Calendar, instituting the system which, with a slight modification, we still use. He also formed other great projects for the public welfare which he was destined not to carry out. In particular, he had shown marked clemency to his political opponents; but for this he was ill repaid. A conspiracy to take his life was formed by a number of leading citizens, some of whom were his intimate friends. On the "Ides of March" (March 15), 44 B.C., he was attacked in the senate-house and fell pierced with twenty-three wounds at the foot of the statue of his great rival Pompey.

CAESAR AS A MAN.

In person Caesar was tall and handsome—such a man as one would select out of a crowd as a born leader of men. His health was perfect, kept so by active physical exercise and a careful attention to hygienic laws as they were

then understood. He was a fearless horseman, and is said to have ridden in Gaul a remarkable horse, trained by himself, which would allow no one else to mount him.

As a friend he was steadfast to the end; as a foe, generous and ready to forgive. One thing, however, he could never overlook. That was treachery. This is proved by his treatment of certain persons and peoples in Gaul, who tried to overreach him by violating promises or treaties.

Much has been written of his vices. He has been painted as a monster of lust and rapacity. There is no evidence, however, that he was worse than others of his class and time. That he was conspicuously better in morals is not claimed. Nevertheless, in all his dissipations, he did not for a moment lose sight of the main purpose of his life, which was to reach the highest pinnacle of personal greatness, and raise his country to a position of unquestioned supremacy throughout the known world. One of the best evidences of the nobility of his character is found in his great love for his mother and his devotion to her as long as she lived.

CAESAR AS A SOLDIER.

Caesar's military skill and success place him among the first half-dozen captains of the world. Without special training and with comparative little previous experience, he raised and drilled an army that was simply invincible, whether pitted against the immensely more numerous hordes of the Gauls and Germans or the veteran legions of Pompey. "The conquest of Gaul," says Froude, "was effected by a force numerically insignificant, which was worked with the precision of a machine. The variety of uses to which it was capable of being turned implied, in the first place, extraordinary forethought in the selection of materials. Men whose nominal

duty was merely to fight were engineers, architects, mechanics of the highest order. In a few hours they could extemporize an impregnable fortress on an open hillside. They bridged the Rhine in a week. They built a fleet in a month. The legions at Alesia held twice their number pinned within their works, while they kept at bay the whole force of insurgent Gaul, entirely by scientific superiority. The machine, which was thus perfect, was composed of human beings who required supplies of tools and arms and clothes and food and shelter, and for all these it depended on the forethought of its commander." These soldiers loved their great leader almost to idolatry, and believed in him with a confidence that nothing could shake. The long march, the hard labor of fortifying the camp, the hardships of the siege, all were borne cheerfully for the general's sake.

Caesar's courage and self-confidence were unbounded. He never sent a soldier where he would not go himself, and he never faltered in his belief that victory would perch on his banner. Quick to see what was needed in any emergency and swift to move, he never lost a point of advantage or failed to make the most of an enemy's mistake. With entire disregard of danger he was always in the thickest of the fight. Personally known to every soldier and knowing most of them by name, he thus brought home to each the responsibility resting upon him. Apparently he was rash at times; yet his rashness had method in it and success gave it another name. In several instances in Gaul he seems to have been unnecessarily cruel in his treatment of his surrendered foes. We must remember, however, that he was dealing with unscrupulous barbarians, ready to rise against him at any time. Furthermore, it was one of Caesar's leading characteristics to go by the shortest way to his objective point. Gaul was to be

subdued and that thoroughly. Hence it was necessary to remove ruthlessly all obstacles to that end.

CAESAR AS A STATESMAN.

After his final victory over the Senate, Caesar had very little time to show his strength as a constructive statesman. There is, however, no doubt of his ability in this direction. During his consulship, in the year 59 B.C., he had proposed and carried extensive reforms in many directions. The "Leges Juliae" were enacted, a code of laws which is celebrated even to this day.

The government of the aristocracy was tyrannical and corrupt in the extreme. Bribery of juries was universal, and the administration of justice was a mockery and a stench in the nostrils of all decent men. Elections were a farce, and the people were the legitimate prey of unscrupulous and greedy politicians. These laws of Caesar's were intended to restrain the power of the Senate and enlarge and increase the rights and powers of the people.

Upon his return to Rome as dictator Caesar had the opportunity to fashion anew the government according to his long-cherished ideas. His plans were comprehensive and far-reaching. But the consummation was not to be his. Death claimed him, and his successor took up the unfinished task.

In all his projects Caesar undoubtedly aimed at making Rome indeed imperial. With unerring judgment he discovered the need for reform in all departments of government, and he had implicit confidence in his own ability to bring that reform to pass. His ability as an orator was conspicuous, and when he spoke in the Senate or elsewhere men listened as to no one else excepting Cicero. One prime element in his success as a statesman, as well as in war, was his perfect knowledge of men. He selected his agents with care, and they were in-

variably the fittest for the purpose. Liberty and Justice were his watch-words; freedom and equal rights for all, his unswerving present aim.

CAESAR AS AN AUTHOR.

Caesar's literary efforts covered a wide range, embracing almost every known topic. He wrote a treatise on grammar, poems, tragedies, satirical essays, a work on augury and an extended history of his own campaigns. With the exception of the last his writings have practically all disappeared.

Caesar's most pronounced personal characteristic was simplicity. This quality is prominent in his writings. He tells his story in the plainest fashion, without attempting adornment or indulging in imagery. The great events of his years in Gaul, involving the conquering of an empire so completely that it never gave Rome further trouble, are treated as plain facts. Descriptions of the country are complete; the character and customs of the people are fully set forth; it is true anecdotes of individuals are introduced, but they are all significant; nothing essential is suppressed; nothing superfluous is stated.

Without the slightest attempt to magnify his own deeds, he appears everywhere as the central figure, the man of action, doing things for the sake of results, rather than for the purpose of making a name for himself.

Such, then, was Caius Julius Caesar. "The greatest name in history," says Merivale; the peerless soldier, the man of letters, the forceful, convincing orator, the foremost statesman of his day, the liberator of his country from the tyrannical grasp of a soulless aristocracy, the unyielding foe of shams and cant. To quote again: "He was great in everything he undertook; as a captain, a statesman, a lawgiver, a jurist, an orator, a poet, an historian, a grammarian, a mathematician and an architect."

THE ARMY OF CAESAR.

Caesar's army consisted of legionary infantry, auxiliary infantry and cavalry. The cavalry was made up of foreigners—Germans, Gauls and Spaniards—who were disbanded at the end of each campaign. They were used to begin an attack and for pursuit of a beaten enemy, as well as for foraging. The auxiliary infantry were furnished by allied states, and served for a show of strength rather than for serious work in battle. There was a small corps of engineers (*fabri*), but the mechanical work was done as a rule by the soldiers themselves.

In the earlier period the legion was drawn up in three lines, of which the men in the first line were called *hastati*, those in the second line *principes*, those in the third line *triarii* or *pilani*. In Caesar's time the arrangement was different, but the same names were retained, being applied to the men of the third, second and first maniples of each cohort.

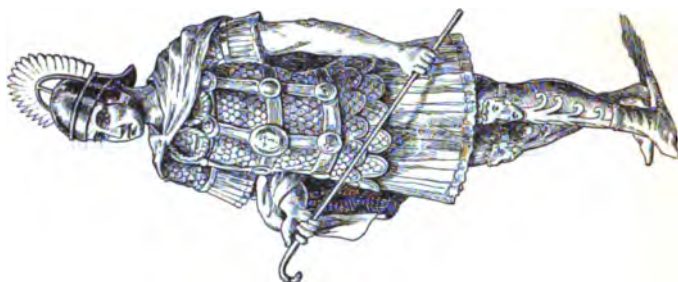
The main strength of the army lay in the regulars composing the legions.

Theoretically the legion may have consisted of 6,000 men. It is likely, however, that Caesar's legions averaged not more than 3,600 each at the time of their greatest fulness.

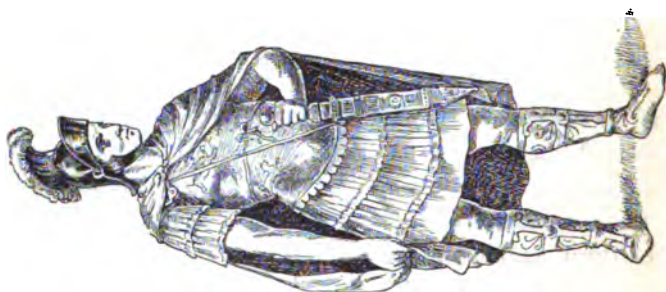
The legion was divided into ten cohorts, each cohort into three maniples, each maniple again into two centuries. Assuming 3,600 as the strength of the legion we have:

10 cohorts	each having	360 men	
30 maniples	“	“	120 “
60 centuries	“	“	60 “

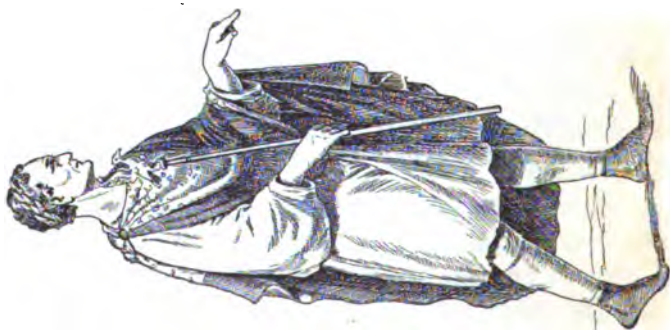
Thus the maniple corresponded very nearly to a *company* in



CENTURIO.



LEGATUS.



IMPERATOR.

our army; the century, to a *platoon*. Beyond this the divisions hardly find their counterpart in modern armies, although the legion differed but little from a *brigade*.

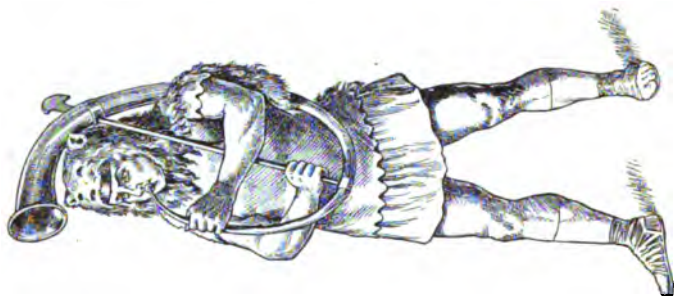
Officers.

The command of the legion was originally in the hands of the military tribunes, six in number, who acted in pairs and commanded in turn, each pair for a period of two months. As these officers were usually chosen for political reasons and were not necessarily trained soldiers, this method of commanding the legion fell into disuse under Caesar. Leaving the tribunes as nominal commanders, he placed a *legatus* in charge of each legion as the real commander in time of battle.

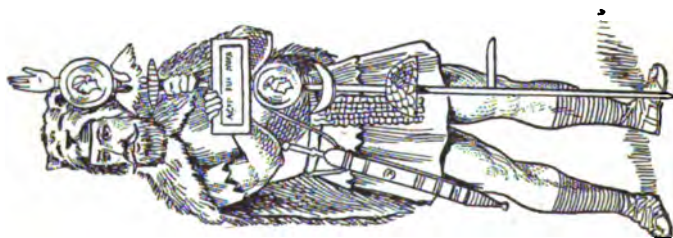
The *legati* were men of senatorial rank, and were the lieutenants of the commander-in-chief (*imperator*). They had no independent power, but derived all authority from their chief. Together with the *quaestors* they composed the staff of the general.

The *quaestors* had charge of the supplies for the army; paid the troops; furnished them with clothing, arms and equipments, food and shelter.

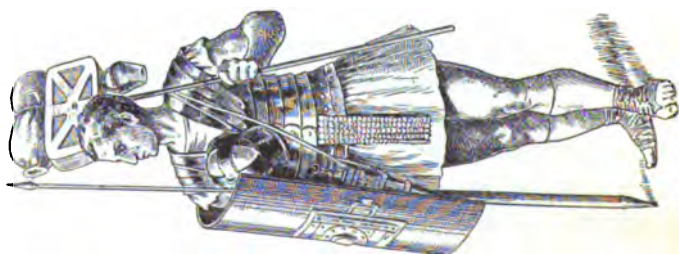
The *centurions* commanded the sub-divisions of the legion. Of these there were 60 in each legion, each maniple having two, a senior and a junior. The senior was in command of the whole maniple with the junior as his lieutenant. Of the six centurions in a cohort, the senior of the first maniple, called *pilus prior*, commanded the cohort, having the other five as lieutenants. Thus the senior centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, called *primus pilus prior* or *primipilus*, was the senior officer of the whole legion, and accordingly often, if not generally, led the legion.



EUCINATOR.



SIGNIFER.



MILES IMPEDITUS.

The centurions were taken from the ranks of the legionaries and corresponded closely to the officers of our army. The method of their classification is not known; but it is certain that they were classified and graded in ranks.

Those of the first rank (*primorum ordinum*) were summoned in councils with the *legati* and *tribunes*.

Another officer was known as *praefectus*, probably the Roman commander of the cavalry and of the auxiliary infantry.

The Legionary Soldier.

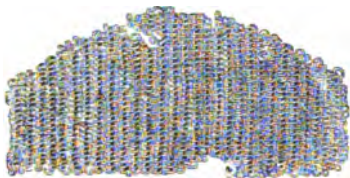
Originally only Roman citizens were enrolled in the legions, but, owing to the changes in the character of the Roman government, from the time of Marius the service had been open to almost any one.

Caesar's legionaries were professional soldiers. Their term of service was twenty years, at the end of which they were usually rewarded with bounties of money or land. They received 225 *denarii*, or about \$45.00 a year as pay. The value of food, clothing and equipments furnished by the state was deducted from this sum. Each soldier was allowed 4 *modii*, or about one bushel of wheat a month, at a cost of about \$5.75 a year. The cost of clothing is not known.

The age for enlistment of the legionary was probably as a minimum seventeen years, and as a maximum forty-six years. There was undoubtedly a rule as to size; but big men were not required. Indeed, the soldiers of Caesar's army have always been considered as undersized when compared with the German giants. Occasionally barbarians were enrolled in the legions; but in the main the legionaries were Roman citizens hailing from Northern Italy, which was entirely Romanized and loyal to the government of that country.

Clothing.

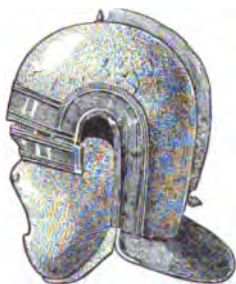
The clothing consisted of a sleeveless woollen shirt (*tunica*) worn next the skin, and over this a coat of leather with metallic bands across the breast, back and shoulders (*lorica*). The officers wore a kind of chain mail (*lorica hamata*). Over all in cold weather was worn the military blanket (*sagum*). On the feet were worn sandals (*calcei*) strapped to the feet and ankles.



CHAIN MAIL.

Armor.

The defensive armor consisted of the helmet and the shield. The helmet was made from iron (*cassis*) or leather strengthened with metal (*galea*). It had a crest and a plume, and was usually carried by the soldier, when on the march, hanging in front of the shoulder.



GALEAE.

The shield (*scutum*) was of wood covered with leather. Its length was four feet and width two feet. It was curved to fit the body, and was carried on the left arm. The badge of the

cohort was painted on the outside, and the name of the owner on the inside. It had a metallic knob in the center called *umbo*. A covering was drawn over it when not in use, and one of the first preparations for battle was the removal of this covering, as in Book II., Chapter 21.

The *clipeus*, or Greek shield, was circular originally and large enough to cover three-quarters of the person. In later times it was smaller, covering the warrior from the neck to



SCUTUM.



CLYPEUS.

the knees. It was also made oval in shape. This kind of shield was not used in the time of Caesar, although the auxiliaries carried a shield (*parma*) resembling the *clipeus*.

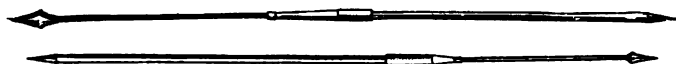
Shields were adorned in various ways, by iron rims or by such devices as thunderbolts, wreaths, etc.



GLADIUS.

The offensive weapons were the short or Spanish sword (*gladius*) and a heavy javelin (*pilum*). The sword was two feet long in the blade, probably about four inches in width, two-edged and pointed. It was carried by a belt (*balteus*)

passing over the left shoulder, suspending the sword on the right side. There is no definite knowledge as to the javelin used in Caesar's time. It is likely that it consisted of a long iron point inserted in a shaft of wood. The whole length was from six to seven feet and the weight at least ten pounds.



PILA.

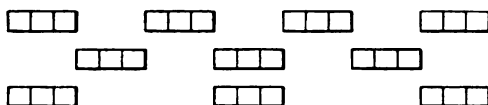
It could be thrown perhaps twenty or thirty yards, according to the weight of the soldier and the nature of the ground. The point was of soft iron, easily bent and thus rendered unfit to be thrown back when once hurled. In Book I., Chapter 25, the confusion of the Gauls was in great part due to the bending of the *pila* after they had pierced their shields.

Some have supposed that the legionary carried a light javelin in addition to the heavy *pilum*. Caesar says nothing of this weapon, and there is no good reason to suppose that it was used in his time. The weapons used by Roman soldiers were in a state of evolution at all times, as is the case with modern weapons. It is a long stride from the "old queen's arm," the flint-lock musket of the Revolution, to the Krag-Jørgensen repeating rifle of the United States army of to-day. This change came about only by gradual development through many intermediate steps. So the light and graceful steel javelin of later Roman times was the result of many improvements upon the weapon even of Caesar's age.

After the first volley of javelins, the sword came into play. Thus it was the most effective and the most in use of offensive arms. It was a terrible implement in the hands of skilled fighters. Being pointed, as well as sharpened on both sides, it was equally effective for thrusting and cutting. The former, however, was its customary use.

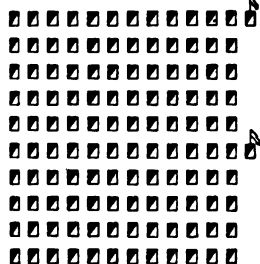
Tactics of the Legion.

In all arrangements for battle the tactical unit of the legion was the cohort. For offence the legion was arrayed either in two lines (*acies duplex*) or in three lines (*acies triplex*).



ACIES TRIPLEX.

When in two lines there were five cohorts in each line. When in three lines, four cohorts were in the first, and three in each of the others. Between the cohorts of the first line were spaces of about 120 feet, behind which at a distance of 120 feet stood the cohorts of the second line. The three cohorts of the third line were placed at the same distance to the rear of the second line. Each cohort was arranged by maniples, each maniple having twelve men in front, forming a *rank*, and ten men in depth forming a *file*. Allowing three feet of space for each man in rank and four feet on the right for the commanding officer, the front of each cohort would be 120 feet, and the front of the legion 840 feet. Supposing four feet to have been the distance allowed to each man in the file, we get a depth for the maniple of forty feet, and each cohort a depth of 120 feet. Thus the legion would have a depth of 600 feet.



MANIPLE.

The Attack.

Whenever possible the Roman battle line was formed on a hillside with the enemy in the plain at the foot.

In beginning the attack, the troops marched slowly forward for a time, then, at the proper time, broke into a run, the two front ranks carrying their javelins poised ready for hurling. When the right distance was reached, they hurled the javelins, often without stopping. The ranks whose javelins had been thrown then rushed on to the conflict with swords at close quarters, without giving the enemy time to recover from the confusion caused by the volley of javelins. The next three ranks hurled their javelins over the heads of the first two and in their turn advanced to fight with the sword. The five rear ranks waited in reserve until their services were needed to take the places of the fallen or to increase the numbers of the attacking troops. The second line advanced and waited two or three hundred feet behind the first. When the first had become weakened by losses, this line perhaps entered the fight in the same way. It is hardly to be supposed that the remnants of the first line were withdrawn however; but they probably melted into the oncoming second line. The third line was held in reserve, and often sent to the flanks when there was danger of the front lines being out-flanked.

In many cases the onset of the first line was sufficient to put the enemy to flight, especially if they were barbarians. For this reason the first line was usually the strongest and made up of the most experienced soldiers.

When the enemy had been beaten and turned to flee, as usually happened in Caesar's battles, the cavalry was sent in pursuit to complete the work of destruction.

The cavalry was also used to guard the flanks against attack, or to attack the enemy's flank. It was therefore usually located on the extreme edge of the wings. But an experienced general would also use it in other ways, and Caesar sometimes placed it in the rear, sometimes after the first line.

On the March.

The usual order of the march was in three divisions. In the van (*primum agmen*) came the cavalry and the light-armed troops; next the main body; and lastly the rear-guard (*novissimum agmen*).

The main body marched in single column, the number of ranks depending upon the width of the road, each legion accompanied by its own baggage-train.

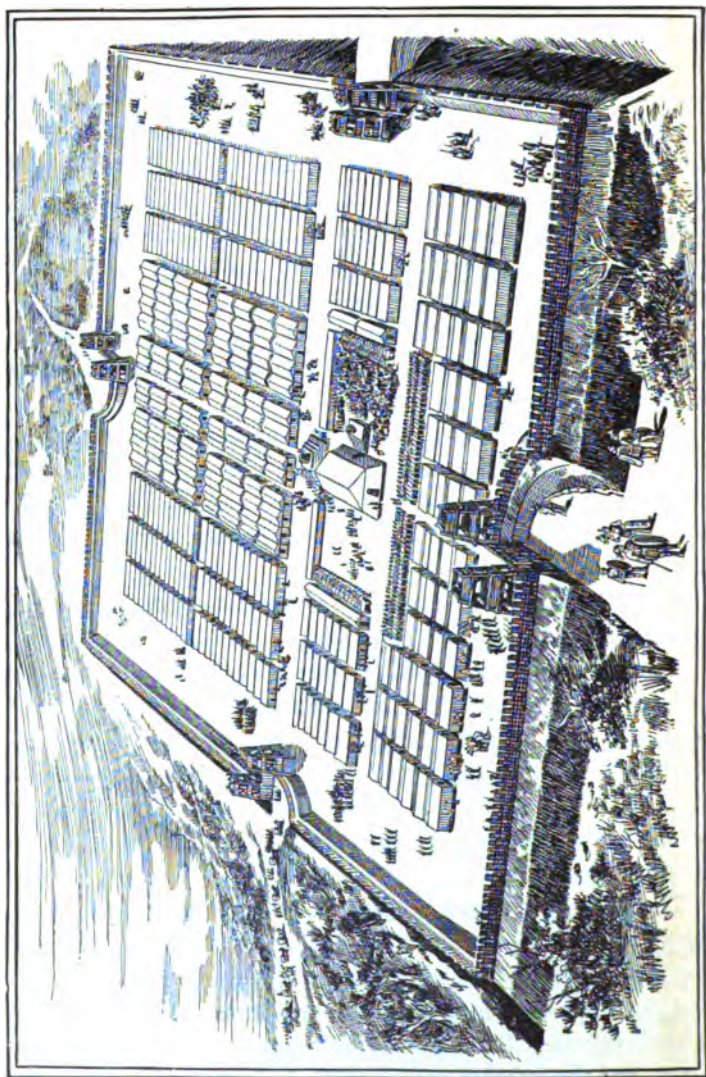
At times, when approaching the enemy, the baggage of the whole army was massed together, with most of the legions in advance of the baggage-train.

Occasionally, when an attack was expected, the army advanced for a short distance in line of battle. This could of course not last long, although on two occasions we are told that the legions marched thus for three hours, covering about eight miles.

The rear-guard was made up of recruits, camp-followers, and the rabble that usually followed an army.

The legionary was forced to carry a burden of fifty pounds or more on the march. This was made up of his supply of food, cooking utensils, extra clothing, arms, helmet and shield. All that could be so placed was made into a bundle and carried on a stick over the shoulder, the rest was disposed on the person in the most convenient way. See the illustration on page xxvi.

The average distance covered in a day's march was about fifteen miles. But when the march was over, the soldiers' day's work was by no means done. A camp must be built and fortified—no small undertaking, when we consider the labor involved. There were a few engineers (*fabri*) with the army, but the working man was the legionary soldier.

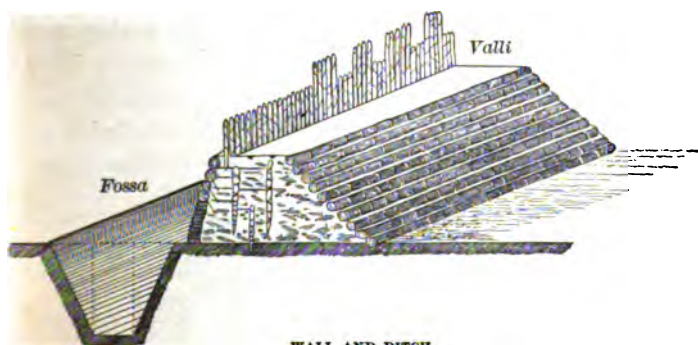


CASTRUM ROMANUM.

The Camp.

The ideal site for a camp was on the slope of a hill with the rear of the camp at the top. The absolutely indispensable natural features were wood and water. Although we have no definite knowledge about Caesar's camps, we may assume that they differed in no great degree from the Roman camps of other times.

They were rectangular in shape, varying in size according



WALL AND DITCH.

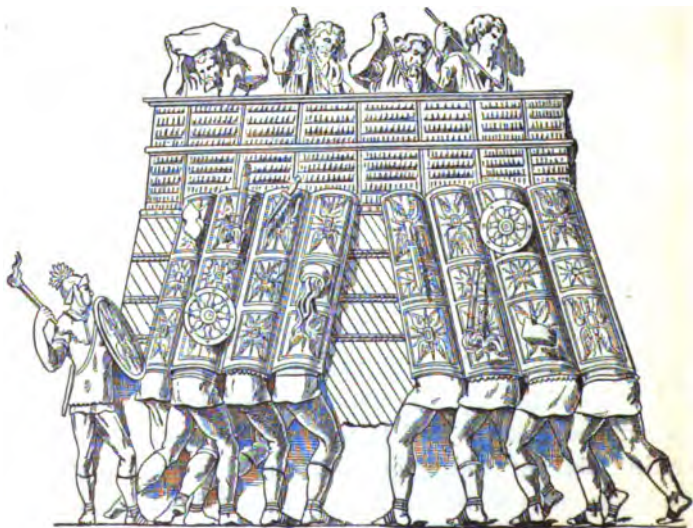
to the number of troops to be accommodated, having a width in front equal to two-thirds of their depth.

The fortification of the camp consisted of a surrounding wall (*vallum*) and a ditch (*fossa*). The ditch was nine feet wide and seven feet deep. The earth from this was thrown up to form the wall, which was made six feet high and six feet wide on the top. Sometimes stakes (*valli*) were set on the outer edge of the wall to make it stronger. As the wall was intended for fighting ground, it had some sort of steps on the inside so as to render it easy for the defenders to reach the top.

Camps built for a longer stay than a single night, or when an attack was expected, had breastworks made of trees on the top of the wall and wooden towers at intervals along the wall. Wider and deeper ditches and higher walls were often built in order to make a camp especially strong. It is estimated that from four to five hours was consumed each day in fortifying the camp.

Operations against Fortified Places.

In subduing a fortified camp or town, the Romans sometimes attacked by assault and sometimes by a siege. The method depended upon the strength of the town's defence. These operations brought into use various weapons not yet mentioned. For the assault there were the scaling ladders, the battering-ram and movable huts or sheds (*vineae*) used to

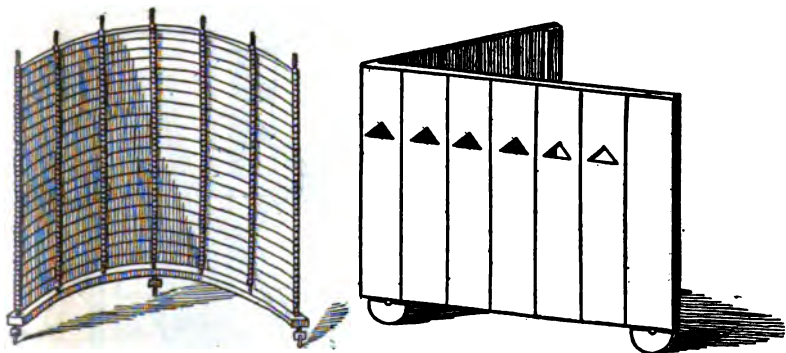


TESTUDO.

cover the assaulting force and thus protect them from weapons thrown from the walls by the besieged.

The *testudo* was usually a movable shed, from the front of which projected the battering-ram (*aries*), worked by the men beneath the roof from which it was suspended.

Sometimes, however, the word was applied to a kind of shed formed by the shields of the soldiers who were attacking a wall, as in the illustration. See Book II, Chapter 6



PLUTEI.

Plutei were large movable, three-wheeled shields of wicker-work, covered with hides to turn the missiles of the besieged.

The battering-ram was a long, heavy piece of timber whose offensive end was capped with metal sometimes having the shape of a ram's head. Hence the name. With men enough behind it, it was effective against walls of stone and timber. Compared with shots from a modern cannon, however, it was a child's toy.

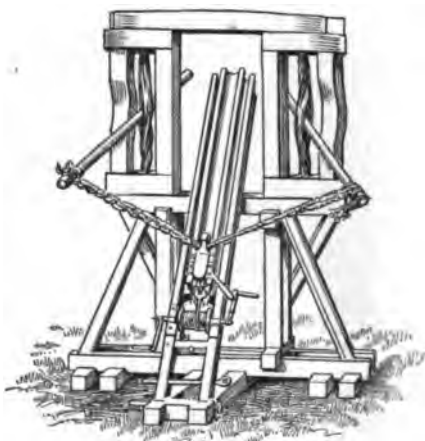
There was also a device called *falx muralis* or wall hook, consisting of a long beam suspended from upright supports with a single or double hook of metal at the end. This was used to pull stones from the top of a wall.

Another piece of apparatus was the *musculus*, a low, heavily built shed with a sloping roof. This was used to protect men at work filling up ditches or preparing to build the *agger* ; sometimes also to cover the ram.

All the foregoing were used by light-armed troops or laborers preparing the way for the advance of the legionaries to the assault. When the preparations were completed and the walls cleared of defenders by the bowmen and slingers, the heavy-



CATAPULT.



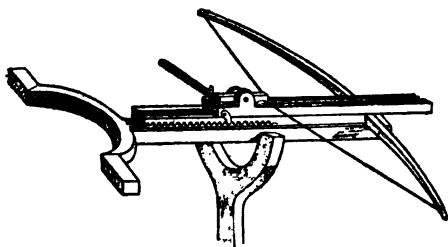
BALLISTA.

armed troops rushed forward, scaled the walls, or forced a gate, and the assault was brought to a finish.

The siege was a more complicated method of attack, and involved a vast amount of labor in preparation, and brought into use another branch of the army and a different class of weapons (*tormenta*) called by courtesy artillery.

These engines were the *catapult*, *ballista* and *scorpio*. The two former were the heavy artillery ; the catapult shooting large arrows, the ballista hurling stones or heavy blocks

of wood. The propelling force was obtained by an ingenious arrangement of twisted ropes, combined with a bow-spring. The catapult required at least two men to manage it, while the ballista needed six or more. The range of each machine was not more than 1200 feet. The *scorpio* was a small catapult capable of being handled by one man. It consisted of a steel bow fastened to a framework, and shot arrows of steel or iron, which were perhaps eighteen inches long, to a distance not greater than 400 feet. In all cases a windlass was used to load the machine and set it for action. The men



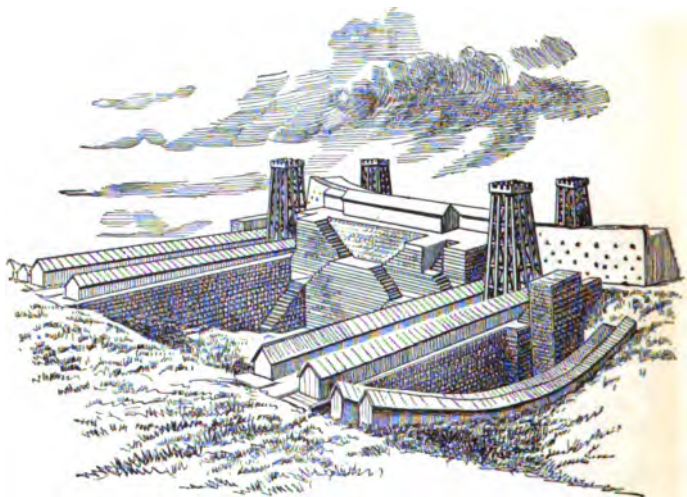
SCORPIO.

in charge of these engines constituted the artillery branch of the army. They may have been a section of the *fabri*, but we have no details of their organization.

The first work to be constructed for attack upon a stronghold was the *agger*, a mound of earth or timber or both, made as high as the walls of the town. The workmen were protected by the *plutei*, and those who brought the material passed through long galleries of *vineas*. The light-armed slingers and bowmen, placed in moving towers or behind other *plutei* for their protection, kept the walls of the town free from men. Bodies of heavy-armed troops also were held in reserve. When the *agger* was completed to a sufficient height, the troops of the besiegers took their place upon it and the fight

ing began in earnest. Movable towers were often placed on the *agger* as a means of protecting the fighting men.

The illustration shows a restoration of the siege works before Avaricum, a town of the Bituriges, besieged by Caesar in the war against Vercingetorix, as narrated in Book VII, Chapters 14–

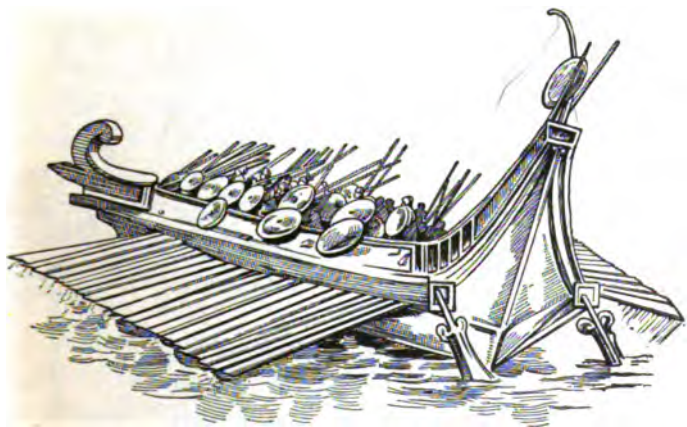


SIEGE WORKS BEFORE AVARICUM.

31. Close to the walls rises the Roman *agger*, with steps on the outside leading up to the top and flanked at each end with a high tower. In this siege the *agger* was eighty feet in height and was probably at least fifty feet broad at the top, so as to give room for a single manipule to form. The long lines of covered *vineae* leading across the low ground show the means by which the soldiers could reach their work without exposure. In this case preparations were being made for an assault, because the situation was such that the town could not be reduced by an enforced famine.

Ships of War.

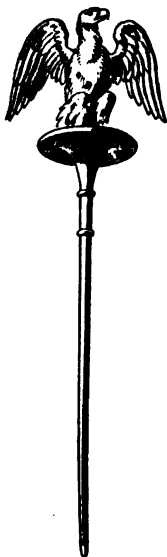
In most of his campaigns in Gaul Caesar had no use for ships. When needed, however, they were built and equipped according to the Roman method. They carried a single sail, but were fitted with oars as their chief motive power. Some had as many as five tiers of rowers. They were fitted with



WAR GALLEY.

sharp beaks (*rostrum*) at the prow for the purpose of ramming an enemy's ship. They sometimes carried a tower on deck for the protection of the fighting men. This was the case particularly when a low ship was attacking a high one, or when the object was to kill the opposing sailors by a shower of missiles. In battle a favorite manœuvre was to grapple the enemy's ship, so that the Roman heavy-armed soldiers could board it and settle the conflict by a hand-to-hand fight.

The illustration is taken from a Pompeian wall-painting of a naumachia, and represents a war galley. If this vessel had had a sail, it would have been near the stern.

Standards and Musical Instruments.

AQUILA.

The standard of the legion was the eagle (*aquila*), made of metal. This was in the care of the first cohort, and carried by a special officer (*aquilifer*).

Each cohort had its own standard-bearer (*signifer*) and its own emblem (*signum*). This was sometimes a figure of an animal on a staff.

The banner of the cavalry and light-armed troops (*vexillum*) was of cloth attached to a horizontal bar. See Commentary, page 30.

The commander-in-chief had his flag, as in modern armies. This was of white cloth with his name in red letters.



SIGNUM.

The musical instruments were the *tuba* (see Commentary, page 30), the *bucina* (see the *bucinator*, Introduction, page xxvi), the *lituus* and the *cornu*.



LITUUS.

GAUL AND ITS PEOPLE.

The Great West, which Caesar went out to conquer in 58 B.C., may be roughly located as lying between the Pyrenees and the Rhine, the Mediterranean and the Atlantic. Cisalpine Gaul was thoroughly Romanized and entirely peaceful. On the southeast along the shore of the Mediterranean was the Roman province (Provincia) which had been won sixty years before Caesar's time. It was now all Roman and the centre of Transalpine Roman activity. The influence of the civilized life of the province was felt powerfully by the neighboring tribes; but this did not serve to extend at all the political control of the Romans.

The Gaul that was still unsubdued was divided, as we learn from the first chapter of the *Bellum Gallicum*, into three parts—the Celtic, the Aquitanian and the Belgic. Aquitania was located in the southwest, between the Garumna and the Pyrenees. This was small in area and, in the main, gave Caesar very little trouble. The country of the Belgians was bounded by the Sequana, the Matrona and the Rhine. Celtic Gaul, the great central portion, had for its boundaries the Sequana, the Matrona and the Garumna. This great country, with its mighty and lesser mountains, its noble rivers, its vast forests and fertile valleys, was the home of a large and fairly prosperous population. It has been estimated that the average number of inhabitants to the square mile was at least fifty.

Although Caesar mentions some tribes that subsisted on fish and the eggs of birds, it is evident that the great mass of the Gauls had advanced in civilization to a point far beyond the savage state. They were largely engaged in

agriculture and the raising of cattle. They had plenty of roads and bridges over the streams. Navigable rivers and the neighboring seas were alive with their ships carrying on the commerce of the times among the various tribes and between Gaul and Britain. Manufacturing seems not to have been much developed except in the working of metals. Copper implements and gold and copper coins, showing considerable skill, have been found in their tombs.

It was the custom of all the Gauls to settle in communities, or cantons. These were villages, of a greater or less size, having no walls. There were, however, many towns protected by strong walls of wood and stone. Helvetia alone had twelve walled towns and four hundred cantons. These strongholds were intended for the protection of all the people in time of war. Tribes having none of these sought the forests and swamps in time of danger.

The political conditions were the result of the habit of settling in communities or clans. The clans extended and the members multiplied; but the prince and the council of elders still made up the government. As the communities became larger, jealousies among the chiefs arose. The supporters of each rallied round their favorite, and the government of the canton came to be the rule of a faction. Thus the cantons were weakened and came to be the prey of more powerful communities or were united with them into leagues, such as the Belgian confederacy, against which Caesar had to contend. Inter-tribal conflicts were frequent, and practically all national feeling was lacking. They did meet at times in national assemblies, but the results were seldom beneficial to the people at large.

As warriors the Gauls were brave but untrained. Being extremely volatile by nature, they were roused to the highest

pitch of enthusiasm by slight successes or completely disheartened by slight reverses. Hence a single defeat was often sufficient to subdue a whole tribe. They were strong in cavalry, but had little skill or science as an infantry force. They fought in solid phalanx, an arrangement so unwieldy that they fell an easy prey to Caesar's well-trained legions. Their arms consisted of slings, bows and arrows, and spears of various kinds, and long swords of soft iron. High-crested helmets and shields formed their defensive armor.

We know little of the customs of the Gauls as regards dress. They wore trousers, however—an extremely barbaric habit from the Roman point of view.

Religion.

The great religious system of Gaul was Druidism. This seems indeed to have been the only unifying force in the land. The Druids, or priests, were a class set apart and highly honored by the people. Young men from all parts of the country were sent to learn the principles of the order, and after a long term of apprenticeship they became members of the priesthood. All the learning of the time was monopolized by the Druids, and they were honored by exemption from war and taxation. They were the ministers of justice, and enforced their decrees by excommunication. This punishment carried with it exclusion from citizenship as well as from religious privileges. By the doctrine of the transmigration of souls, the Druids taught their disciples to hold death in contempt. Human sacrifices were offered up, the victims usually being criminals. In certain sections of Gaul there appear to have remained some vestiges of an older religion, which Druidism had, to a great degree, supplanted.

BRITAIN.

Caesar made two campaigns into Britain, but in neither did he penetrate the interior of the country. He has given us a description of the islands far from accurate, but valuable from the fact that it is the earliest statement made by a personal observer. The conquest begun by Caesar was completed by his successors, and Britain remained a Roman province for 400 years.

GERMANY.

Germany was never conquered by the Romans. Caesar twice crossed the Rhine, but made little impression on the vast hordes who inhabited the interior. The German invaders of Gaul were driven back across their great river, but only to return again to the attack, thus setting at defiance the almost invincible power of Rome.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

All of the histories of Rome that cover this period give an extended treatment of Caesar and his friends and foes. Of special importance, however, are those of MERIVALE and MOMMSEN. The former gives a sane and sympathetic account, in a beautiful and interesting style; the latter, a distorted and overdrawn picture, hardly relieved by the erudition shown in detail.

In addition we have :

FROUDE, J. A. *Caesar: a Sketch*. New York, 1879. Interesting but biased.

FOWLER, W. W. *Julius Caesar and the Foundation of the Roman Imperial System*. New York, 1892. Sound and sympathetic—the best account of the man.

DODGE, Col. F. A. *Julius Caesar*. Boston and New York, 1892. A military history, and not always reliable otherwise.

TROLLOPE, A. *The Commentaries of Caesar*. London and Philadelphia, 1880. Interesting.

HOLMES, T. R. *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*. London, 1899. A fascinating account of Caesar's work, with invaluable appendices on the ethnology and geography of Gaul, and many matters relating more strictly to Caesar's life.

NAPOLÉON III. *Histoire de Jules César*. Paris and New York, 1865, 1866. The foundation of modern scientific discussion of Caesar's campaigns, and particularly important for its atlas.

The following books on the style and contents of the Commentaries are also important :

SIHLER, E. G. *A Complete Lexicon of the Latinity of Caesar's Gallic War*. Boston, 1891.

MEUSEL, H. *Lexicon Caesarianum*. Berlin, 1887-93.
MENGE, H., and PREUSS, S. *Lexicon Caesarianum*. Leipzig, 1890.

MERGUET, H. *Lexicon zu den Schriften Caesars*. Jena, 1886.
The last three give complete citations from both the Gallic War and the Civil War,

JUDSON, H. P. *Caesar's Army*. Boston, 1888. A convenient and useful book.

FRÖHLICH, F. *Das Kriegswesen Cäsars*. Zürich, 1891.

RÜSTOW, F. W. *Heerwesen und Kriegführung Cäsars*. Nordhausen, 1862. Atlas, Stuttgart, 1868.

LINDENSCHMIDT, L. *Tracht und Bewaffnung des römischen Heers*. 1882.

OEHLER, R. *Bilderatlas zu Cäsars de bello Gallico*. Leipzig, 1890.

VON KAMPEN, A. *Quindecim ad Caesaris de bello Gallico commentarios tabulae*. Gotha.

GURLITT, L. *Auschaumgstafeln zu Caesars Bellum Gallicum*. Gotha.

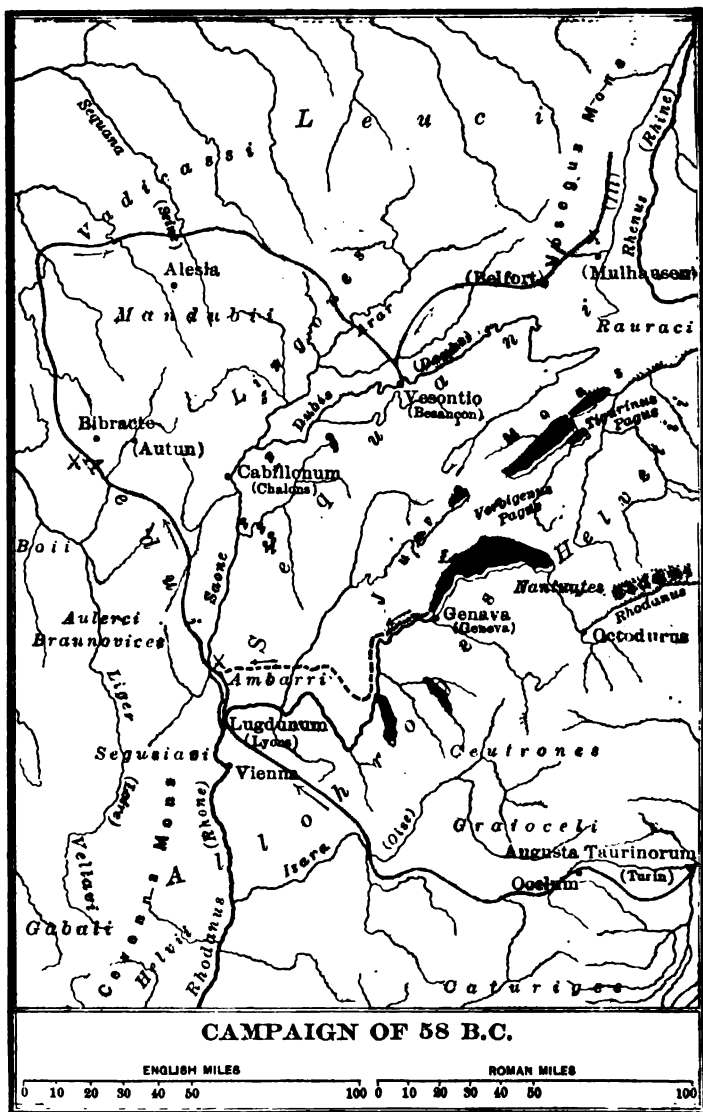
Important also are :

LODGE, HUBBELL and LITTLE. *Helps for the Teaching of Caesar*. In *Teachers College Record*, vol. iii (1902), nos. 3 and 4. A discussion of the various books introductory to Caesar, with detailed treatment of his vocabulary, syntax and style.

HEYNACHER, M. *Was ergibt sich aus dem Sprachgebrauch Caesars im Bellum Gallicum für die Behandlung der lateinischen Syntax in der Schule?* 2. ed. Berlin, 1886.

LEBRETON, J. *Caesariana Syntaxis quatenus a Ciceroniana differat*. Paris, 1901.





coëmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere
frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem
firmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās bien-

tertium annum profec-

C. IULI CAESARIS cōficiendās Orge- 50

tēs suscipiā

DE BELLO GALLICO

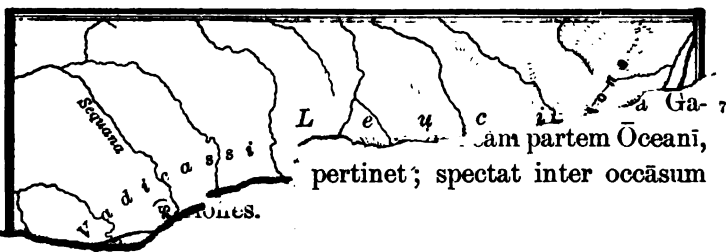
COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS.

Rhē

Aquit. u

I. DESCRIPTIO GALLIAE.

1. Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum lin-
guā Celtae, nostrā Galli appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā,
institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānīs
Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dividit. 5
2. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod
ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt,
minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea,
quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; proxi-
mīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, qui- 10
3. buscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Hel-
vētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē
cotīdiānīs proeliis cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suis
finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum
4. gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum 15
est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā
flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab
Sēquanīs et Helvētīis flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad sep-
5. tentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur;



II. BELLUM HÉLVETICUM.

CC. 2-29.

Mōtus Helvētiōrum excitātus ab Orgetorige; eius clandestīna cōsilia, mors.

25 2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et civitātī persuāsit, ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestarent, 2
30 tōtīus Galliae imperiō potiri. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, 3 quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētīi continentur: unā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvidit, alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertiā lacū
35 Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fiebat, ut et minus lātē vagarentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolore afficiēbantur. Prō multitudīne autem hominum et prō glōriā 5
40 belli atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habere arbitrabantur, quī in longitudinem milia passuum cccx., in lātitudinem clxxx patēbant.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī cōstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum
45

coëmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad cīvitatēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnū in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnū in cīvitatē suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigī Aeduō, frātrī Diviciaci, quī eō tempore principātum in cīvitatē obtinēbat ac māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque filiam suam in mātrimonium dat. Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitatīs imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quā tōtius Galliae plurimum Helvētiī possent; sē suis cōpiis suoque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmat. Hāc orātiōne adducti inter sē fidem et iūs iurandum dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūtiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremārētur. Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suos, quōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitas ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mor-

tuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētīi arbitrantur, quā ipse sibi mortem cōseiverit.

Iter Helvētīi primō per prōvinciam temptant, sed Caesaris mūnitiōnibus interclūsī deinde per Sēquanōs.

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi id, quod cōnstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum
85 reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent, trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs ~~fratibz~~, utī eōdem ~~est~~ cōnsiliō oppidis vicisque exūstīs, unā cum iis proficiscantur, Bōiōsque, quī
90 trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi asciscunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: unum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile,
95 inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper
100 pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nullis locīs vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidē-

rentur, existimabant, vel vi coacturōs ut per suōs finēs 105
 4 eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis, diem dicunt, quā diē ad ripam Rhodani omnēs conveniant: is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam 110
 nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci et, quam māximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ūlteriōrem
 2 contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ūlteriōre legiō una), pontem, quī erat ad Genā- 115
 3 vam, iubet rescindī. Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētīū certiorēs facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātis, cūius lēgatiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent, sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea 120
 quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre, ut ēius voluntate id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat
 4 L. Cassium cōsulem occisum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētīis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultate 125
 per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniuriā
 5 et maleficiō existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum milites, quōs imperāverat, convenirent, lēgātis respondit, diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur. 130

8. Interea eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, militibusque, quī ex prōvincia convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētīis dividit, mīlia passuum decem novem mūrū in altitudinem pedum sēdecim fossamque 135

perducit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella 2
 commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsire cōnārentur,
 prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lē- 3
 gātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre
 140 et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam
 dare et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibītūrum ostendit.
 Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctīs ratibusque com- 4
 pluribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitudō
 flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī
 145 perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum
 concursū et tēlis repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs
 invītīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā 2
 sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem
 150 Aeduū mittunt, ut, eō dēprecātōre, ā Sēquanīs impetrā-
 rent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plū- 3
 rimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitāte
 Orgetorigis filiam in mātirimōnium dūxerat; et, cupiditāte
 rēgnī adductus, novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās
 155 civitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque 4
 rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per finēs suōs
 Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent,
 perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Hel-
 vētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trānseant.

10. Caesarī renūtiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō, per
 agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs
 facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae
 civitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō 2
 cum periculō prōvinciae futurum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs,
 165 populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus māximēque frū-
 mentāriīs finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās ei mūnitiōnī, 3

quam fecerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Italiam māgnis itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernis ēducit et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Gal- 170
 1 liam per Alpēs erat, cum his quīnque legiōnibus ire con-
 2 tendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturigēs, locis su-
 3 periōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur.
 4 Complūribus his proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriō-
 5 ris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris 175
 6 prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit: inde in Allobrogum finēs,
 7 ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt
 8 extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

Gallōrum dē Helvētiōrum iniuriis querēlae.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum
 1 suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant 180
 2 eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab
 3 iis dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt
 4 rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rō-
 5 mānō meritōs esse, ut, paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī,
 6 agrī vāstārī, liberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida 185
 7 expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, ne-
 8 cessāriī et cōsanguinei Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem
 9 faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātis agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim
 10 hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhoda-
 11 num vicōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem 190
 12 recipiunt et dēmōstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil
 13 esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn expec-
 14 tandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōn-
 15 sumptis in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

Clādēs Tigurinōrum.

195 12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sā-
 quanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lenitāte, ita
 ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, iudicārī nōn possit. Id
 Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iunctis trānsibant. Ubi per :
 explorātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam partēs cō-
 200 piārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē par-
 tem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā
 cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus ad eam partem
 pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs :
 et inopināntēs aggressus māgnam partem eōrum concīdit :
 205 reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās ab-
 didērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus: nam omnis :
 civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Hic pāgus :
 unus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L.
 Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iu-
 210 gum miserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum immor- :
 tālium, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae insignem calamitātem
 populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit.
 Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās, sed etiam privātās :
 iniuriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pisōnis avum, L.
 215 Pisōnem lēgātum, Tigurinī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium,
 interfēcerant.

Helvētiū per lēgātōs cum Caesare agunt.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut
 cōnsequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat atque
 ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū :
 220 commōti, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēce-
 rant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum unō diē fecisse intelle-
 gerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, cūius lēgātiōnis Diviciō

princeps fuit, qui bellō Cassiānō dūx Helvētiōrum fuerat.
 3 Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum
 Helvētiis faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs 225
 Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset:
 4 sīn bellō persequi persevēraret, reminisceretur et veteris
 incommodi populi Rōmāni et pristinae virtutis Helvētiō-
 5 rum. Quod imprōvisō ānum pāgum adortus esset, cum ī,
 quī flūmen trānsissent, suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē 230
 ob eam rem aut suae māgnō opere virtūti tribueret aut
 6 ipsōs dēspiceret. Sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suis
 didicisse, ut magis virtute contenderent quam dolō aut
 7 insidiis nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus, ubi
 cōstitissent, ex calamitāte populi Rōmāni et interneciōne 235
 exercitūs nōmen caperet, aut memoriam prōderet.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis
 dari, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent,
 memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō
 2 populi Rōmāni accidissent: quī sī alicuius iniūriāe sibi 240
 cōnsciūs fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēcep-
 tum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellexeret, quārē
 3 timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī
 veteris contumēliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium
 iniūriarum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim 245
 temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allo-
 4 brogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā
 victoriā tam insolenter glōriārentur quodque tam diū sē
 impūne iniūriās intulisse admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre.
 5 Cōsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs quō gravius hominēs ex 250
 commutātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum
 ulcisci velint, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem
 6 impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs

ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae polliceantur, facturōs in-
 255 tellegat, et si Aeduīs dē iniuriīs, quās ipsis sociisque eōrum
 intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iis
 pācem esse facturum. Divicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā
 māiōribus suis institūtōs esse, uti obsidēs accipere, nōn
 dare cōsuērint; eius rei populum Rōmānum esse tēstem.
 260 Hōc respōnsō datō discēssit.

Equitatus Caesaris ab Helvētiīs pulsus. Utriusque exercitūs iter.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit
 Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor mī-
 lium, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum so-
 ciīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quās in par-
 265 tēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum āgmen
 insecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium
 committunt; et pauci dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō
 sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multi-
 tudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn
 270 numquam et novissimō āgmine proeliō nostrōs lacessero
 coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis ha-
 bēbat in praesentia hostem rapinīs, pābulātiōnibus popu-
 lātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter
 fēcērunt, uti inter novissimum hostium āgmen et nostrum
 275 primum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus passuum
 interesset.

*Caesaris cum Aeduōrum principibus, Liscō et Diviciacō, dē
 civitātis condiōne et Dumnorīgis perfidiā colloquium.*

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum, quod
 essent publicē polliciti, flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora,
 quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita
 280 est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed

s nē pābuli quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat: eō autem
 frūmentō, quod flūmine Arare nāvibus subvexerat, prop-
 terea uti minus poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētiū āver-
 terant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere
 Aeduī: cōferri, comportārī, adesse dicere. Ubi sē diutius
 dūci intellēxit et diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum militi-
 bus mētiri oportēret, convocātis eōrum prīncipibus, quō-
 rum māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in hīs Diviciācō
 et Liscō, quī summō magistrātui praeerat, quem 'vergo-
 bretum' appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vitāe
 necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt,
 quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam
 necessariō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus ab iīs nōn
 sublevetur; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum pre-
 cibus adductus bellum susceperit, multō etiam gravius,
 quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus orātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod
 antea tacuerat, prōponit: Esse nōn nullōs, quōrum auctōri-
 tās apud plēbem plurimum valeat, quī privātīm plūs pos-
 sint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs seditiōsā atque improbā
 orātiōne multitudinem dēterrere nē frūmentum cōferant,
 quod dēbeant: praestāre, si iam prīncipātum Galliae ob-
 tinere nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia
 perferre; neque dubitāre dēbere quīn, si Helvētiōs supe-
 rāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs libertā-
 tem sint ereptūrī. Ab eisdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in
 castris gerantur, hostibus enūtiārī: hōs ā sē coērceri nōn
 posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessariam rem coactus Cae-
 sari enūtiārit, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum periculō
 fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

18. Caesar hāc orātiōne Lisci Dumnorigem, Diviciāci

frātre, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat, sed, quod pluribus praesen-
 tibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dimittit,
 Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dixe-
 315 rat. Dicit liberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab
 aliis quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, s
 summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter liberālitatem
 grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs por-
 tōria reliquaue omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō
 320 redēpta habēre, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī
 audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse 4
 et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; mā- s
 gnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et cir-
 cum sē habēre; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud finiti- 6
 325 mās cīvitatēs largiter posse, atque hūius potentiae causā
 mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illō nōbilissimō ac potentis-
 simō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorō- 7
 rem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitatēs
 collocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affini- 8
 330 tātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs,
 quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus
 frāter in antiquum locum grātiae atque honoris sit resti-
 tūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per- 9
 Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī
 335 nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā
 dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod 10
 proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset fac-
 tum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius
 equitibus (nam equitātū, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī
 340 mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat): eōrum fugā reliquum esse
 equitātum perterritum.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis, cum ad hās sūspiciōnēs cer-

tissimae res accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Hel-
 vētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrasset,
 quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussu suō et civitātis, sed etiam 845
 inscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum
 accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum
 aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem animadvertere
 2 iubēret. His omnibus rēbus unum repugnābat, quod
 Diviciāci frātis summum in populum Rōmānum studium, 850
 summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iustitiam;
 temperantiam cōgnōverat: nam nē eius suppliciō Divi-
 3 ciāci animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque prius quam
 quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et
 cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis per C. Valerium Trou- 355
 cillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum,
 cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō
 4 colloquitur: simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in
 conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit,
 5 quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. Petit 860
 atque hortātur, ut sine eius offēnsiōne animi vel ipse dē
 eō, causā cōgnitā, statuāt, vel civitātem statuere iubeat.

20. Diviciācus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus
 obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātre statueret:
 2 Scire sē illa esse vērā, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē 865
 doloris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plurimum
 domi atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter
 3 adulescentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac
 nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad
 perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō 870
 4 et existimātiōne vulgi commovērī. Quod si quid ei ā
 Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae
 apud eum tenēret, nēminem existimātūrum nōn suā

voluntate factum; quā ex rē futurum, uti tōtius Galliae
 375 animi ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbis flēns
 ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōnsō-
 lātus rogat, finem orandi faciat; tantī eius apud sē
 grātiā esse ostendit, uti et rei pūblicae iniūriā et suum
 dolōrem eius voluntāti ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorī-
 380 gem ad sē vocat, frātre adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat,
 ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur, prō-
 pōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs sūspiciōnēs
 vitet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātrī condōnāre dicit.
 Dumnorīgī cūstōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum lo-
 385 quātur, scīre possit.

Caesaris cōnsilium P. Cōnsidii errōre pervertitur.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs
 sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsius castris
 octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitu
 āscēsus, quī cōgnōscerent, mīsīt. Rentūtiātum est facilem
 390 esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō prae-
 tōre cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus, quī iter cōgnō-
 verant, summum iugum montis āscendere iubet; quid sui
 cōnsiliī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere,
 quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem
 395 ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris perītissimus
 habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassī
 fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

22. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenē-
 rētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quin-
 400 gentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivīs com-
 perit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset,
 Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dicit montem,

quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī;
 id sē ā Gallicis armīs atque insignibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar
 suās cōpiās in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. 405
 Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium
 committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsaē
 essent, ut undique tūō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret,
 monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat.
 Multō dēnique diē per explorātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit, et 410
 montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et
 Cōnsidium, timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō
 sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervālo, hostēs
 sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra
 pōnit.

415

Helvētiōrum clādēs, fuga, reditus in finēs suos.

23. Postrīdiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat,
 cum exercitui frūmentum mētīrī oporteret, et quod ā
 Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsis-
 simō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum xviii aberat, rei
 frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit; iter ab Helvētiis 420
 āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs
 L. Aemiliū, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūn-
 tiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs
 discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis, quod prīdiē, superi-
 oribus locis occupātis, proelium nōn commisissent, sive 425
 eō, quod rē frūmentāriā intercludī posse cōfiderent,
 commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novis-
 simō āgmine insequi ac lacessere coepērunt.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar
 in proximum collem subducit equitātumque, qui sustinēret 430
 hostium impetum, mīsīt. Ipse interim in colle mediō

triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum ;
 [ita uti supra se] in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās
 in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat, et omnia
 435 auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et
 intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri, et eum ab iis,
 quī in superioriōre aciē cōstiterant, mūniri iussit. Helvētiī
 cum omnibus suis carris secuti, impedimenta in ūnum
 locum contulerunt ; ipsi cōfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō
 440 equitātū, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciem
 succoessērunt.

25. Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū
 remōtis equis, ut aequatō omnium periculō spem fugae
 tolleret, cohortātus suos proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō
 445 superioriōre pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfrē-
 gērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis in eos impetum
 fecērunt. Gallis māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedimentō,
 quod pluribus eōrum scūtis unō ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et
 colligātis, cum ferrum se inflexisset, neque ēvellere neque
 450 sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant ; multī
 ut diū iactātō brachiō praeoptārent scūtum manū emit-
 tere et nudō corpore pūgnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessi
 et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mille
 passūs, eō se recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et
 455 succēdentibus nostris, Bōi et Tulingī, quī hominum
 milibus circiter xv āgmen hostium claudēbant et novis-
 simis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō
 aggressi circumvenire ; et id cōspicāti Helvētiī, quī in
 montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redin-
 460 tegrāre coepērunt. Rōmāni conversa signa bipertitō
 intulērunt ; prima et secunda aciēs, ut victis ac submōtis
 resisteret, tertia, ut veniētēs sustinēret.



X 26. Ita ancipiti proeliō diū atque ācrit̃er pūgnātum est.
 Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent,
 alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad 465
 2 impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō
 proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit,
 3 āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem
 etiam ad impedimenta pūgnātum est, proptereā quod prō
 vāllō carrōs obiēc̃erant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs veni- 470
 entēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nulli inter carrōs raedāsque
 matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant, nostrōsque vulnerābant.
 4 Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī
 potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus
 5 est. X Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx super- 475
 fuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nullam
 partem noctis itinere intermissō in finēs Lingonum diē
 quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et
 propter sepultūram occisōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs
 6 sequi nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūnti- 480
 ōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent: quī
 sī iuvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum.
 Ipse trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequi
 coepit.

27. Helvētīi omnium rerum inopiā adducti lēgātōs dē 485
 2 dēditione ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere
 convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēc̃issent suppliciterque
 locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō
 tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iūssisset, pāru-
 3 ērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, 490
 4 servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent, popōscit. Dum ea con-
 quīruntur et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter homi-
 num mīlia vi eius pāgi, quī Verbigenus appellātur, sive

timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō afficerentur,
495 sive spē salutis inductī, quod in tantā multitudine dēditi-
ciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī
posse existimārent, primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum
ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finēs ierant,
500 hīs, utī conquīrerent et reducerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse
vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; :
reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in
dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in :
finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et quod
505 omnibus frūgibus āmissis domī nihil erat, quō famem
tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iis frūmentī cōpiam
facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, resti-
tuere iussit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit
eum locum, unde Helvētiī discēsserant, vacāre, nē propter
510 bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt,
ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent et finitimī
Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs peten- :
tibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in
finibus suis collocārent, concēssit; quibus illi agrōs
515 dedērunt quōsque postea in parem iūris libertātisque
condiciōnem, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs
Graecīs cōfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in
tabulīs nōminātīm ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus domō
520 exisset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm
puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa :
erat capitum Helvētiōrum milium cclxiii, Tulingōrum mi-
lium xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiv, Rauracōrum xxiii, Bōiōrum
xxxii; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad milia nōnāgintā

3 duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCLXVIII. Eōrum, 525
 quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperā-
 verat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

III. BELLUM ARIOVISTI.

CC. 30-54.

*Conciliō Galliae habitō, principēs civitātum cum Caesare
 sēcrētō agunt. Querēlae dē Ariovistō, Germānōrum rēge.*

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō, tōtū ferē Galliae
 lēgātī, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum con-
 2 vērunt: Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvē- 530
 tiōrum iniūriis populi Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetis-
 set, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam
 3 populi Rōmānī accidisse; propterea quod eō cōnsiliō flō-
 rentissimis rēbus domōs suās Helvētīi reliquissent, utī tōtī
 Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potirentur locumque 535
 domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omni Gal-
 liā opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum iudicāssent, reli-
 4 quāsque civitatēs stipendiariās habērent. Petiērunt, ut
 sibi concilium tōtū Galliae in diem certam indicere id-
 que Caesaris voluntāte facere liceret: sēsē habēre quāsdam 540
 5 rēs, quās ex commūnī cōsensū ab eō petere vellent. Eā
 rē permissā, diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūre iūrāndō,
 nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō man-
 dātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō Idem principēs civitātum, quī 545
 ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque, utī
 sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salutē cum eō agere liceret.
 2 Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prō-
 iēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea,
 quae dīxissent, ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea, quae vellent, 550

impetrarent, propterea quod, si enuntiatum esset, sum-
 mum in cruciatum se venturos viderent. Locutus est pro
 his Diviciacus Aeduus: Galliae totius factiones esse
 duas; harum alterius principatum tenere Aeduos, alterius
 555 Arvernos. Hi cum tantopere de potentatu inter se
 multos annos contenderent, factum esse uti ab Arvernibus
 Sequanisque Germani mercede arcesserentur. Horum
 primo circiter milia xv Rhenum transisse: postea quam
 agros et cultum et copias Gallorum homines ferri ac
 560 barbari adamassent, traductos plures: nunc esse in Gallia
 ad centum et xx milium numerum. Cum his Aeduos
 eorumque clientes semel atque iterum armis contendisse;
 magnam calamitatem pulsos accepisse, omnem nobili-
 tatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amisisse.
 565 Quibus proeliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et sua virtute
 et populi Romani hospitio atque amicitia plurimum ante
 in Gallia potuissent, coactos esse Sequanis obsides dare
 nobilissimos civitatis et iure iurando civitatem obstringere,
 sese neque obsides repetituros, neque auxilium a populo
 570 Romano imploratos neque recusatos, quo minus per-
 petuo sub illorum ditione atque imperio essent. Unum
 se esse ex omni civitate Aeduorum, qui adduci non
 potuerit, ut iuraret aut liberos suos obsides daret. Ob
 eam rem se ex civitate profugisse et Romam ad sena-
 575 tum venire auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque iure
 iurando neque obsidibus teneretur. Sed prius victoribus
 Sequanis quam Aeduus victis accidisse, propterea quod
 Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedisset
 tertiamque partem agrum Sequani, qui esset optimus totius
 580 Galliae, occupavisset et nunc de altera parte tertiam Se-
 quanos decedere iuberet, propterea quod paucis mensibus

ante Harūdum milia hominum xxiv ad eum vēnissent,
 11 quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucis
 annis, uti omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque
 omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsirent: neque enim cōferen- 585
 dum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc
 12 cōsuētūdinem vīctūs cum illā comparandam. Ariovistum
 autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod
 proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter
 imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque liberōs pōscere et 590
 in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad
 13 nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Hominem esse
 barbarum, Irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse eius impe-
 14 ria diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in Caesare populōque
 Rōmānō sit auxiliī, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, 595
 quod Helvētiī fēcērint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domici-
 lium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortunam-
 15 que, quaecumque accadat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta
 Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quān dē omnibus obsidibus,
 16 quī apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Cae- 600
 sarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī vic-
 tōriā vel nōmine populi Rōmānī dētērrere posse, nē māior
 multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātūr, Galliamque
 omnem ab Ariovistī iniuriā posse dēfendere.

32. Hāc orātiōne ab Diviciacō habitā, omnēs, quī 605
 aderant, māgnō flētū auxiliū ā Caesare petere coepē-
 2 runt. Animadvertit Caesar unōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs
 nihil eārum rērum facere, quās cēteri facerent, sed tristēs,
 capite dēmissō, terram intuerī. Eius rei quae causa esset,
 3 mīrātus ex ipsīs quaeiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed 610
 in eādē tristitiā tacitī permanēre. Cum ab hīs saepius
 quaereret neque ullam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset,

Idem Diviciacus Aeduis respondit: Hōc esse miseriōrem.⁴
 et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum,
 615 quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium im-
 plōrāre audērent absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut
 sī cōram adesset, horrērent; proptereā quod reliquīs tamen⁵
 fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs
 Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte
 620 ēius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

*Colloquium ā Caesare pōstulātum, dēnegātur ā rēge. Lēgātī ā
 Caesare mittuntur. Ariovistī respōnsū.*

33. Hīs rēbus cōgnītīs, Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs
 cōfirmāvit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem cūrae futūram:
 māgnam sē habēre spem, et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte
 adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriis factūrum. Hāc orā-²
 625 tiōne habitā, concilium dīmīsit. Et secundum ea multae
 rēs eum hortābantur, quā rē sibi eam rem cōgitandam
 et suscipiendam putāret, in primīs, quod Aeduōs, frātrēs
 cōnsanguineōsque saepe numerō ā senātū appellātōs, in
 servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī,
 630 eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs in-
 tellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populi Rōmānī turpis-
 simum sibi et rei pūblīcae esse arbitrābātur. Paulātīm³
 autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre, et in
 Galliam māgnam eōrum multitudinem venīre, populō
 635 Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs⁴
 ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat, quīn, cum omnem
 Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcīs-
 sent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliā conten-
 derent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā
 640 Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē oc-

5 currendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi
spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn
vidērētur.

34. Quam ob rem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs
mitteret, quī ab eō pōstulārent, utī aliquem locum 645
medium utriusque colloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē
2 publicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Ei lē-
gātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus
esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit,
3 illum ad sē venīrē oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine 650
exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre, quās Caesar
possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū atque
4 mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem
mīrum vidērī, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vicisset, aut
Caesari aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtīi esset. 655

35. His respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum
2 Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: Quoniam tantō
suō populique Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōn-
sulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset,
hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut in 660
colloquium venīre invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī
rē discendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse,
3 quae ab eō pōstulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitudinem
hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret:
deinde obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Aeduīs, redderet Sēqua- 665
nīsque permetteret, ut, quōs illī habērent, voluntāte eius
reddere illīs liceret; nēve Aeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve
4 hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum inferret. Sī id ita fēcisset,
sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiā atque amīci-
tiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam 670
M. Messālā, M. Pisōne cōsulibus, senātus cēnsuisset, utī,

quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō
rei publicae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs
populi Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn
675 neglētūrum.

✱ 36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Ius esse belli, ut,
quī vicissent, iis, quōs vicissent, quem ad modum vellent,
imperārent: item populum Rōmānum victis nōn ad
alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre
680 cōsuēsse. Si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet, 2
quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sē ā po-
pulō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri. ✱ Aeduōs sibi, quoniam 3
belli fortunam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac supe-
rātī essent, stipendiariōs esse factōs. Māgnam Caesarem 4
685 iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra
faceret. Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque 5
hīs neque eōrum sociis iniūriā bellum illātūrum, sī in eō
manērent, quod convēnisset, stipendiumque quotannis
penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iis frāternum nōmen
690 populi Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūtiāret, 6
sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglētūrum, nēmīnem sēcum
sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congregērētur: 7
intellētūrum, quid invictī Germānī exercitātissimī in
armīs, quī inter annōs xiv tēctum nōn sublissent, virtūte
695 possent.

*Aeduōrum questibus mōtus Caesar ad Ariovistum contendit,
Vesontionem occupat.*

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur,
et lēgātī ab Aeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Aeduī 2
questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trāspor-
tātī essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: sēsē, nē obsidibus

quidem datis, pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trē- 700
 3 verī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad ripās Rhēnī
 cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnam trānsire cōnārentur; hīs praeesse
 4 Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar
 vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē,
 sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī 705
 5 sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque, rē
 frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā, māgnīs
 itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcēssisset, nūntiātum est ei,
 Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum 710
 Vesontionem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum,
 2 contendere, trīduīque viam ā suis finibus prōcēssisse. Id
 nē accideret, māgnō opere sibi praecavendum Caesar exī-
 3 stimābat. Namque omnium rērum, quae ad bellum usui
 4 erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idemque nātūrā 715
 locī sic mūniēbātur, ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum
 daret facultātem, proptereā quod flūmen Dubis ut circinō
 5 circumductum paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum
 spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum mille sexcentōrum,
 quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitudine 720
 ita ut rādicēs eius montis ex utrāque parte ripae flūminis
 6 contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et
 7 cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar māgnīs nocturnīs
 diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō, ibi
 praesidium collocat.

725

*Māgna in castrīs Rōmānīs trepidātiō, Caesaris orātiō, iter ad
 Ariovistum.*

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontionem rei frūmentāriae
 commeātusque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum

vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī māgnitū-
tūdine corporum Germānōs, incredibili virtūte atque
730 exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepe numerō
sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem
oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor
omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium
mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hīc prīmum ortus est a
735 tribūnīs militum, praefectīs reliquisque, quī ex urbe
amicitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnū in rē
militārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illatā,
quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret,
petēbat, ut eius voluntāte discēdere liceret; nōn nulli
740 pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent, remanē-
bant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās
tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum
querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suis commūne perī-
culum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs tēstāmenta
745 obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam
īī, quī māgnū in castrīs ūsum habēbant, militēs centu-
riōnēsque quīque equitātūī praeerant, perturbābantur.
Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē
hostem verērī, sed angustias itineris et māgnitudinem
750 silvārum, quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum,
aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī
posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōn nullī etiam Caesarī nūnti-
ābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferrī iussisset, nōn fore
dictō audientēs militēs neque propter timōrem signa
755 lātūrōs.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō
omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriō-
nibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: prīmum quod, aut quam

in partem aut quō cōnsiliō ducerentur, sibi quaerendum
 2 aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidis- 760
 simē populi Rōmāni amicitiam appetisse: cūr hunc tam
 3 temerē quisquam ab officiō discēssurum iudicāret? Sibi
 quidem persuādēri, cōgnitis suis pōstulātis atque aequitate
 condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populi
 4 Rōmāni grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque 765
 āmentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verē-
 rentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius diligentia
 5 dēspērārent? Factum eius hostis periculum patrum
 nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbris et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō
 pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor 770
 meritis vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servili
 tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina, quae ā
 6 nobis accēpissent, sublevārent. Ex quō iudicārī posse,
 quantum habēret in sē boni cōstantia, propterea quod,
 quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timuissent, hōs postea 775
 7 armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent. Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem
 Germānōs, quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiū congressi nōn
 solum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum finibus plerumque
 superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitui nōn
 8 potuerint. Si quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum 780
 commovēret, hōs, si quaerent, reperīre posse, diuturnitate
 belli defatigātis Gallis Ariovistum, cum multōs mēses
 castris sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque sui potestātem
 fecisset, dēspērantes iam dē pūgnā et dispersōs subitō
 adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vicisse. 785
 9 Cui ratiōni contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs
 locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs
 10 exercitūs capi posse. Qui suum timōrem in rei framen-
 tariae simulatiōnem angustiasque itineris cōferrent,

790 facere arroganter, cum aut de officio imperatoris despe-
rare aut praescribere viderentur. Haec sibi esse curae: 11
frumentum Sequanos, Leucos, Lingones subministrare,
iamque esse in agris frumenta matura; de itinere ipsos
breui tempore iudicatos. Quod non fore dicto audientes 12
795 neque signa latum dicantur, nihil se ea re commoveri:
scire enim, quibuscumque exercitus dicto audiens non
fuerit, aut male re gesta fortunam defuisse aut aliquo
facinore comperto avaritiam esse convictam: suam inno-
centiam perpetua vita, felicitatem Helvetiorum bello
800 esse perspectam. Itaque se, quod in longiorem diem 13
collaturus fuisset, repraesentaturum et proximam nocte de
quarta vigilia castra moturum, ut quam primum intel-
lere posset, utrum apud eos pudor atque officium an
timor plus valeret. Quod si praeterea nemo sequatur, 14
805 tamen se cum sola decima legione iturum, de qua non
dubitaret, sibique eam praetoriam cohortem futuram.
Huc legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter 15
virtutem confidebat maxime.

41. Hac oratione habitam, mirum in modum conversae
810 sunt omnium mentes summaque alacritas et cupiditas
belli gerendi illata est, princepsque decima legio per 2
tribunos militum ei gratias egit, quod de se optimum
iudicium fecisset, seque esse ad bellum gerendum para-
tissimam confirmavit. Deinde reliquae legiones cum 3
815 tribunis militum et primorum ordinum centurionibus
egerunt, uti Caesari satis facerent: se neque umquam
dubitasse neque timuisse, neque de summa belli suum
iudicium, sed imperatoris esse existimavisse. Eorum 4
satisfactione accepta et itinere exquisito per Diviciacum,
820 quod ex Gallis ei maximam fidem habebat, ut milium

amplius quinquāgintā circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum
 dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est.
 5 Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explorātō-
 ribus certior factus est, Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs milia
 passuum quattuor et xx abesse.

825

*Caesaris cum Ariovistō colloquium Germānōrum impetū
 diripitur.*

42. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad
 eum mittit: quod antea dē colloquiō pōstulāset, id per
 sē fieri licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine
 2 periculō facere posse existimāre. Nōn respuit condi-
 cionem Caesar iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbi- 830
 trābātur, cum id, quod antea petentī dēnegāset, ultrō
 3 pollicērētur, māgnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suis
 tantīs populique Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cōgnitis suis
 pōstulātis, fore, utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs colloquiō
 4 dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī 835
 ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus pōstulāvit,
 nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret: verērī
 sē nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur: uterque cum
 equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.
 5 Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tollī 840
 volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātū com-
 mittere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus
 equīs Gallīs equitibus detrāctīs, eō legiōnāriōs militēs
 legiōnis decimae, cui quam māximē cōnfidēbat, impōnere,
 ut praesidium quam amicissimum, sī quid opus factō 845
 6 esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam
 ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit: plus quam pollicitus
 esset, Caesarem facere: pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae
 locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescribere.

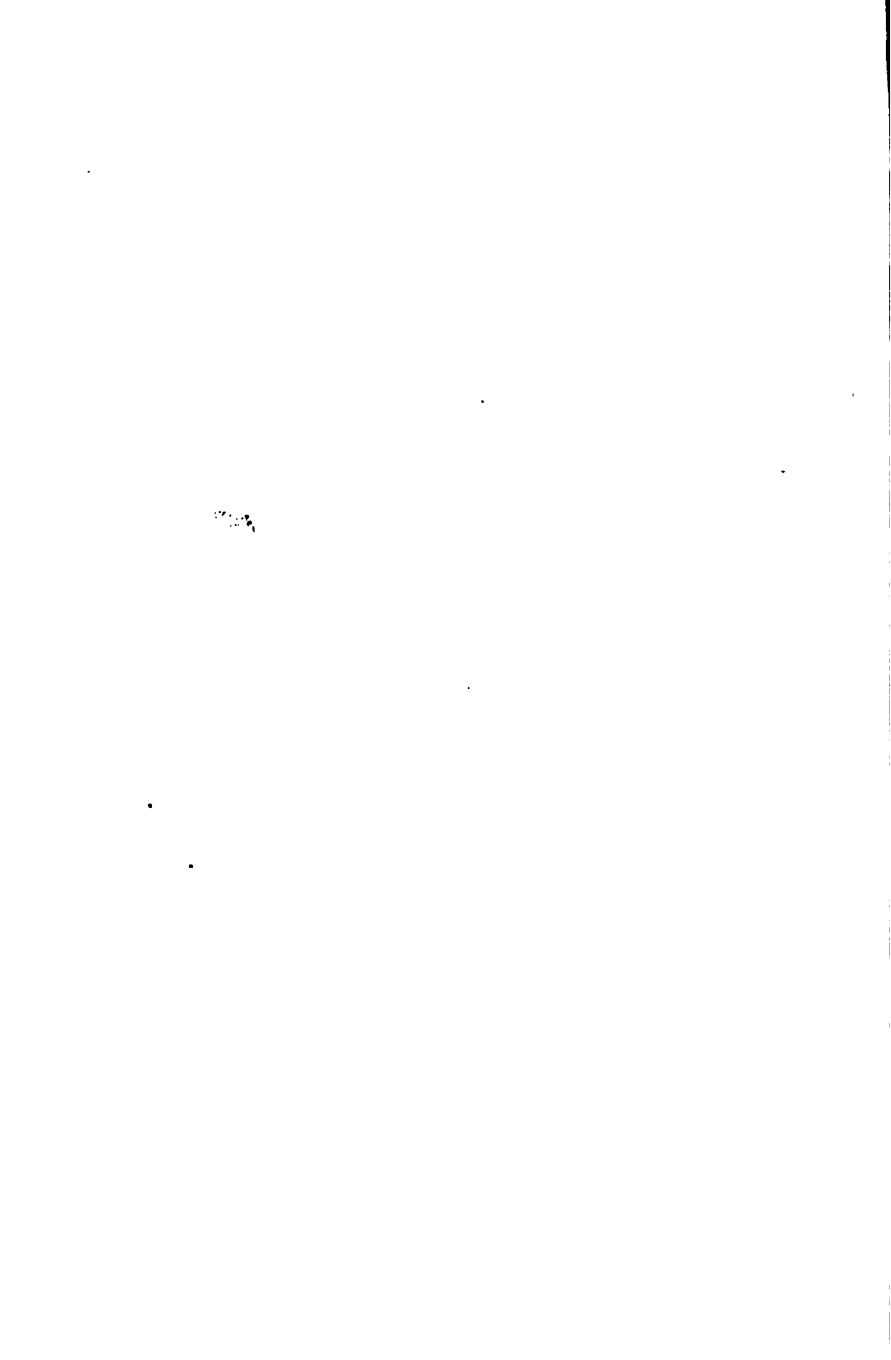
850 **43.** Plānitiēs erat māgna et in eā tumulus terrēnus
 satis grandis. Hīc locus aequum ferē spatium ā castrīs
 Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad collo-
 quium vērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam equīs dēve-
 xerat, passibus cc ab eō tumulō cōstituit. Item equitēs
 855 Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōstitērunt. Ariovistus ex
 equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad collo-
 quium addūcerent, pōstulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar
 initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia comme-
 morāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātu, quod amīcus,
 860 quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs
 contigisse et prō māgnīs hominū officiīs cōsuēsse tribuī
 docēbat; illum cum neque aditum neque causam pōstu-
 landī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac liberālitate suā ac
 senātūs ea praemia cōsecūtum. Docēbat etiam, quam
 865 veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitudinis ipsis cum
 Aeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta quotiēns
 quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent, ut omni tempore
 tōtius Galliae principātum Aeduī tenuissent, prius etiam
 quam nostram amīcitiam appetissent. Populī Rōmānī
 870 hanc esse cōsuētudinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn
 modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitatē, honōre
 auctiōrēs velit esse: quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī
 Rōmānī attulissent, id iis ēripī quis patī posset? Pōstu-
 lāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē
 875 aut Aeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum inferret; obsidēs red-
 deret; sī nullam partem Germānōrum domum remittere
 posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire pateretur.

44. Ariovistus ad pōstulāta Caesaris pauca respondit,
 de suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsisse Rhēnum
 880 sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallis;



From *Garibaldi*.

CAESAR'S INTERVIEW WITH ARIOVISTUS.



nōn sine māgnā spē māgnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datos; stipendium capere iure belli, quod victōrēs victis impōnere cōsuērint.

• Nōn sēsē Gallis, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs 885 Galliae civitatēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē unō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Si iterum experiri velint, sē iterum parātum esse decertāre; si pāce uti velint, iniquum esse dē stipendiō recusāre, quod suā voluntāte 890

• ad id tempus pependerit. Amicitiam populi Rōmāni sibi ornāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petisse. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dediticiū subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recusātūrum populi 895

• Rōmāni amicitiam, quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē sui mūniendi, nōn Galliae oppugnandae causā facere: eius rei tēstimonium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod

• bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam 900 vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populi Rōmāni Galliae prōvinciae

• finibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessionēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concēdi nōn oportēret, si in 905 nostrōs finēs impetum faceret, sic item nōs esse iniquos, quod in suō iure sē interpellārēmus. Quod frātres ā senātū Aeduos appellātōs diceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum, ut nōn scīret, neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Aeduos Rōmānis auxilium tulisse 910 neque ipsos in hīs contentiōnibus, quās Aeduī sēcum et

cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.
Dēbēre sē sūspicārī simulatā Caesarem amīcitiā, quem 10
exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre.
915 Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēducāt ex hīs regiō- 11
nibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum.
Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multis sēsē nōbilibus prīn- 12
cipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum: id sē
ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre, quōrum
920 omnium grātiā atque amīcitiā eius morte redimere
posset. Quod sī dēcēssisset et liberā possēssiōnem Gal- 13
liae sibi trādīdisset, māgnō sē illum praemiō remūne-
rātūrum et, quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine ullō eius
labōre et periculō cōfectūrum.
925 45. Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiā dicta sunt,
quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset; neque suam neque
populī Rōmānī cōnsuetūdinem pati, utī optimē meritōs
sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre, Galliā potius esse
Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse 2
930 Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō Māximō, quibus populus
Rōmānus Ignōvisset neque in prōvinciā redēgisset
neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod sī antiquissimum 3
quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iustis-
simum esse in Galliā imperium: sī iūdicium senātūs
935 observārī oportēret, liberā dēbēre esse Galliā, quam
bellō victā suis lēgibus utī voluisset.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum
est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad
nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs cōnicere.
940 Caesar loquendī finem fēcīt, sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque 2
imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent.
Nam etsi sine ullō periculō legiōnis dēlectae cum equitātū 3

proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat
 ut pulsīs hostibus dīci posset eōs ab sē per fidem in col-
 loquiō circumventōs. Postēā quam in vulgus militum 945
 ēlātum est, quā arrogantīā in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus
 omni Galliā Rōmānis interdixisset, impetumque ut in
 nostrōs ēius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs colloquium dirē-
 misset, multō māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius
 exercitū iniectum est. 950

Gallī lēgātī ad Ariovistum missī in vincula cōniciuntur.

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit :
 Velle sē dē iīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque
 perfectae essent, agere cum eō : utī aut iterum colloquiō
 diem cōstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suis lēgātīs
 2 aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa 955
 nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē ēius diēi Germāni
 retinēri nōn potuerant, quīn tēla in nostrōs cōnicerent.
 3 Lēgātum ex suis sēsē māgnō cum periculō ad eum
 missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum existimābat.
 4 Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. 960
 Valerī Cabūrī filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte
 adulēscentem, cūius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō civitāte
 dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae
 scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuē-
 tūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānis causa 965
 nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et unā M. Metium, quī hospitio
 5 Ariovisti ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit, ut, quae diceret Ario-
 6 vistus, cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud
 sē in castris Ariovistus cōspexisset, exercitū suō prae-
 sente conclāmāvit : quid ad sē venīrent ? an speculandī 970
 causā ? Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit et in catēnās cōniēcit.

Equestre proelium.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum sex
 ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē ēius diēi :
 praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus
 985 passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī
 frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Aeduīs sup-
 portārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs con-
 tinuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et
 aciem instrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō
 990 contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus hīs omni-
 bus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestri proeliō
 cotīdiē contendit. Genus hōc erat pūgnae, quō sē Ger-
 mānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem :
 985 cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salutis causā dēlēgerant : cum
 hīs in proeliīs versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant :
 hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant, sī quī graviōre vul-
 nere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant ; sī quō erat
 longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat
 990 hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās, ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum
 cursum adaequārent.

*Castra minōra Caesaris Ariovistus oppūgnat, proeliō dēcertāre
 nōn audet.*

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē
 diūtius commeātū prohiberētur, ultrā eum locum, quō in
 locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab iis,
 995 castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit acieque triplici instrūctā ad
 eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs :
 esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iūssit. Hic locus ab hoste :
 circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō

circiter hominum numerō sēdecim mīlia expedita cum
 omni equitatū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpia nostrōs 1000
 4 terrērent et mūnitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar,
 ut ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam
 5 opus perficere iussit. Mūnitis castris, duās ibi legiōnēs
 reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra
 māiōra redūxit. 1005

50. Proximō diē Institutō suō Caesar ē castris utrisque
 cōpiās suās edūxit paulumque ā māiōribus castris prōgres-
 sus aciem instrūxit, hostibusque pūgnandi potestātem fēcit.
 2 Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter meri-
 diē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus 1010
 partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppugnāret,
 3 mīsit. Ācritur utrimque usque ad vesperum pūgnātum
 est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multis et illātis
 4 et acceptis vulneribus in castra redūxit. Cum ex captivis
 quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn 1015
 dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs
 ea cōnsuetūdō esset, ut matrēs familiae eōrum sortibus
 et vāticinatiōnibus dēclārārent, utrum proelium committi
 5 ex usū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: nōn esse fās Germānōs
 superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent. 1020

*Tandem in proelium dēscendere coācti Germānī vincuntur et ad
 Rhēnum profugiunt. Liberantur lēgātī Gallī.*

51. Postridiē eius diē Caesar praesidiō utrisque castris,
 quod satis esse vīsum est, reliquit, ālāriōs omnēs in
 cōspectū hostium prō castris minōribus cōstituit, quod
 minus multitudīne mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium
 numerō valebat, ut ad speciem ālāriis ūteretur; ipse, 1025
 triplici instrūctā aciē, usque ad castra hostium accessit.

Tum dēum necessariō Germānī suās cōpiās castris ēdū-
xērunt generātimque cōstituērunt paribus intervāllis,
Harūdēs, Marcomanōs, Tribocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs,
1080 Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs
circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō
mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficiscentēs
milites passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant, nē sē in
servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

1085 52. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quae-
stōrem praefēcit, utī eōs tēstēs suae quisque virtūtis
habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē
firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit.
Et ita nostrī ācritē in hostēs, signō datō, impetum
1040 fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repentē celeriterque prōcurrērunt,
ut spatium pīla in hostēs cōniciendī nōn darētur.
Rēiectīs pilīs, comminus gladiis pūgnātum est. At
Germānī celeriter ex cōsuētūdine suā phalange factā,
impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs
1045 nostrī, quī in phalanga insilirent et scūta manibus
revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs
ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā
dextrō cornū vehementer multitudine suōrum nostram
aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus
1050 adulēscēns, quī equitātui praeerat, quod expeditior erat
quam iī quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem
labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs
terga vertērunt nec prius fugere dēstitērunt, quam ad
1055 flūmen Rhēnum milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quinque
pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōfīsī trānāre
contendērunt aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem repperē-

1. runt; in his fuit Ariovistus, qui nāviculam deligātam
 ad ripam nactus eā profugit: reliquos omnes cōsecuti
 2. equites nostri interfecerunt. Duae fuerunt Ariovisti 1060
 uxores, una Sueba natiōne, quam domo secum duxerat,
 altera Nōrica, regis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā
 duxerat, a fratre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit.
 Duae filiae: hārum altera occisa, altera capta est.
 3. C. Valerius Procillus, cum a custodibus in fugā trinis 1065
 catenis vinctus traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostes
 4. equitatu persequentem incidit. Quae quidem res Caesari
 non minorem quam ipsa victoria voluptatem attulit,
 quod hominem honestissimum provinciae Galliae, suum
 familiarem et hospitem, ereptum ē manibus hostium sibi 1070
 restitutum videbat, neque eius calamitate de tantā
 voluptate et grātulatiōne quicquam fortuna dēminuerat.
 5. Is se praesente de se ter sortibus cōsultum dicebat,
 utrum Igni statim necaretur, an in aliud tempus reser-
 6. varetur: sortium beneficiō se esse incolumem. Item M. 1075
 Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

*Suebi domum revertuntur. In hiberna deducitur exercitus.
 Caesar in citeriorem Galliam proficiscitur.*

54. Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nūtiatō, Suebi, qui ad
 ripas Rhēni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt; quos
 Ubi, qui proximi Rhenum incolunt, perterritos senserunt:
 2. Insecuti māgnū ex iis numerum occiderunt. Caesar unā 1080
 aestate duobus māximis bellis cōfectis, mātūrius paulo
 quam tempus anni pōstulābat, in hiberna in Sēquanos ex-
 3. ercitus dēduxit; hibernis Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in
 citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS.

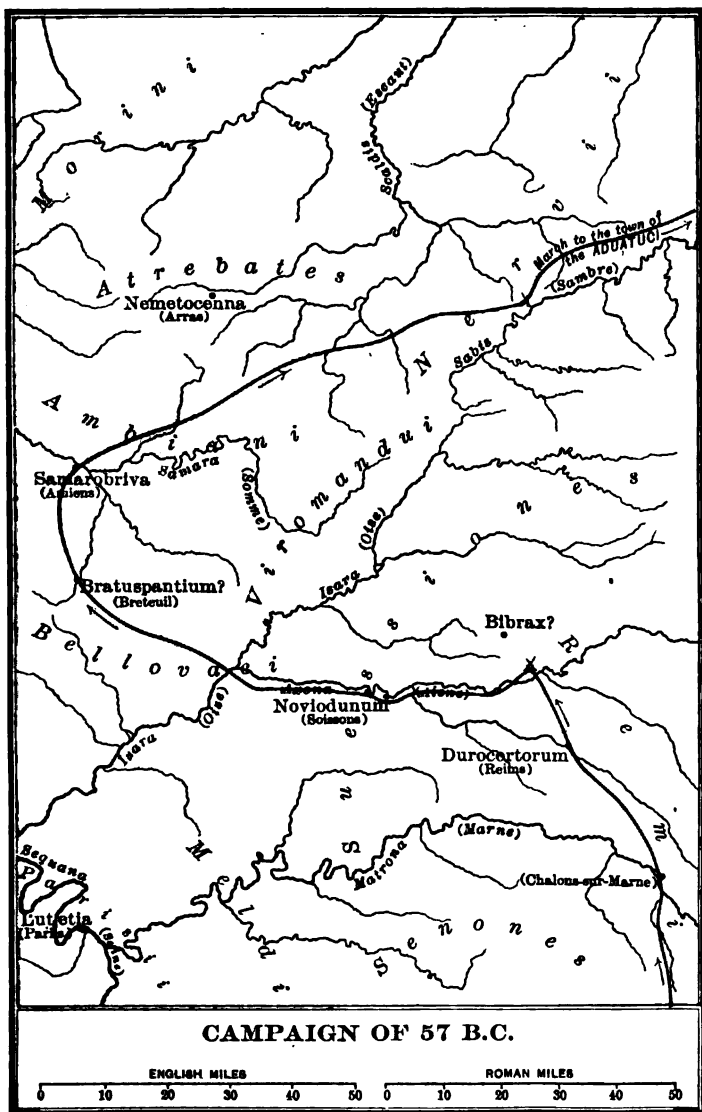
I. BELLUM BELGICUM.

CC. I-33.

Coniūratiō Belgārum praeter Rēmōs, quī sē in fidem Caesaris permittunt.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā
5 populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandi hās esse causās: primum quod verērentur, nē
omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nullis Gallis sollicitārentur, partim
qui, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita
10 populi Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim qui mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōn nullis etiam, quod
in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iis, quī ad conducendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant, vulgō rēgna occupābantur,
15 qui minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequi poterant.

2. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscripsit et initā aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum
20 misit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad





exercitum vēnit. Dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea, quae apud eos gerantur, cognoscant seque de his rebus certiores faciant. Hi constanter omnes nuntiaverunt manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conducī. Tum vero dubitan- 25 dum non existimavit, quin ad eos proficisceretur. Re frumentaria comparata, castra movet, diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

3. Eo cum de improviso celeriusque omnium opinione venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad 30 eum legatos Iccium et Andebrogium, primos civitatis, miserunt, qui dicerent se suae omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittere, neque se cum reliquis Belgis consensisse neque contra populum Romanum coniurasse, paratosque esse et obsides dare et 35 imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare; reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse, Germanosque, qui cis Rhenum incolant, sese cum his coniunxisse, tantumque esse eorum omnium furorem, ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, 40 qui eodem iure et isdem legibus utantur, unum imperium unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant, deterre potuerint, quin cum his consentirent.

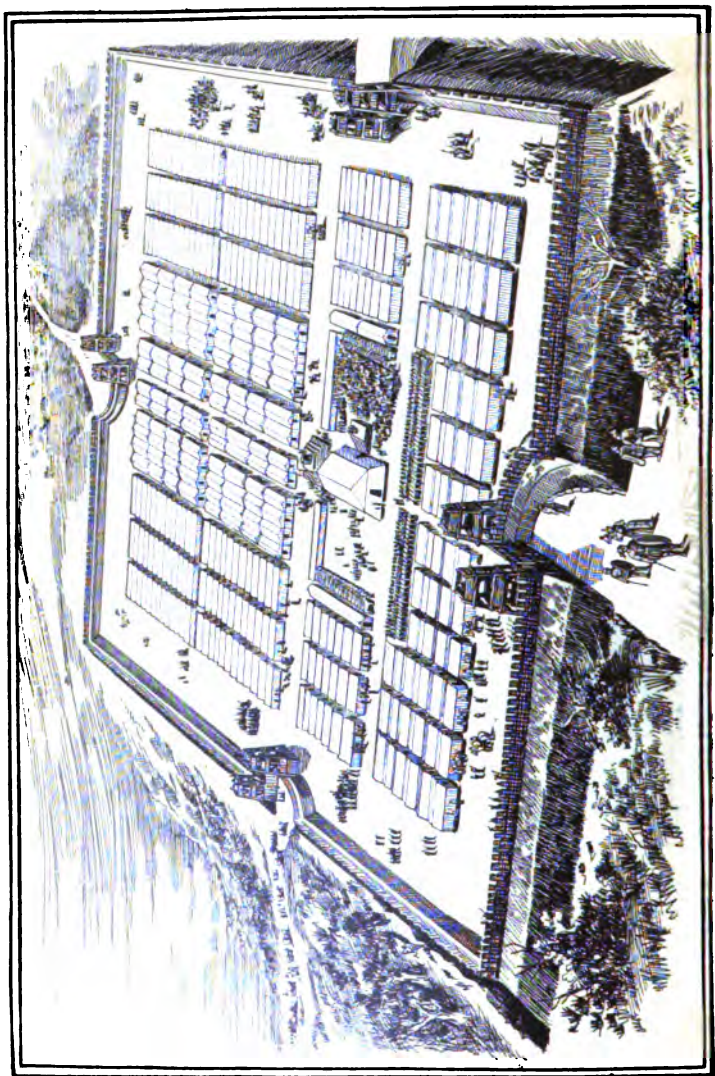
Origō et cōpiae Belgārum.

4. Cum ab his quaereret, quae civitates quantaque in armis essent et quid in bello possent, sic reperiēbat: 45 plerisque Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis Rhenumque antiquitus tractos propter loci fertilitatem ibi consedis Gallisque, qui ea loca incolerent, expulisse, solosque esse, qui patrum nostrorum memoria, omni Gallia vexata,

50 Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā finēs suōs ingredi prohibue-
rint; quā ex rē fieri, uti eārum rerum memoriā māgnam 3
sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritus in rē militārī
sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explorāta 4
Rēmī dicēbant, proptereā quod, propinquitātibus affini-
55 tātibusque coniūcti, quantam quisque multitudinem in
commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit,
cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et 5
auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre: hōs posse cōn-
ficere armāta milia centum; pollicitōs ex eō numerō elēcta
60 sexāgintā, tōtiusque bellī imperium sibi pōstulāre. Sues- 6
siōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque
agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam 7
memoriā Diviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum, quī
cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam Bri-
65 tanniae imperium obtinuerit: nunc esse rēgem Galbam:
ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiāque summam
tōtius bellī omnium voluntāte dēferri; oppida habēre 8
numerō duodecim, pollicērī milia armāta quinquāgintā;
totidem Nervīōs, quī māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur
70 longissimēque absint; quindecim milia Atrebātēs, Am- 9
biānōs decem milia, Morinōs xxv milia, Menapiōs vii
milia, Caletōs x milia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs
totidem, Aduatucōs xix milia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, 10
Caerōsōs, Caemanōs, quī unō nōmine Germānī appel-
75 lantur, arbitrārī ad xl milia.

Castra Caesaris ad Axonam.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque orātiōne
prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre principumque
liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iūssit. Quae omnia ab hīs



A ROMAN CAMP.

2 diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Aeduum
 māgnoperē cohortātus docet, quantō opere rei pūblicae 80
 communisque salutis intersit manūs hostium distinērī,
 nē cum tantā multitudīne unō tempore cōnfligendum sit.
 3 Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Aedui in finēs Bellovacōrum
 intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. His
 4 datis mandātis, eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam omnēs 85
 Belgārum cōpiās in unum locum coāctās ad sē venīre
 vidit neque iam longē abesse ab iīs quōs miserat explō-
 rātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod
 est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere
 5 mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus 90
 unum castrōrum ripīs flūminis mūniēbat et, post eum
 quae erant, tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab
 Rēmīs reliquīsque civitātibus ut sine periculō ad eum
 6 portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi
 praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium 95
 Sabinum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra
 in altitudinē pedum duodecim vāllō fossaque duo-
 dēviginti pedum mūnīre iubet.

*Bibrax, Rēmōrum oppidum ā Belgīs obsessum, ā Caesare
 obsidiōne liberātur. Discēdentēs Belgae clāde afficiuntur.*

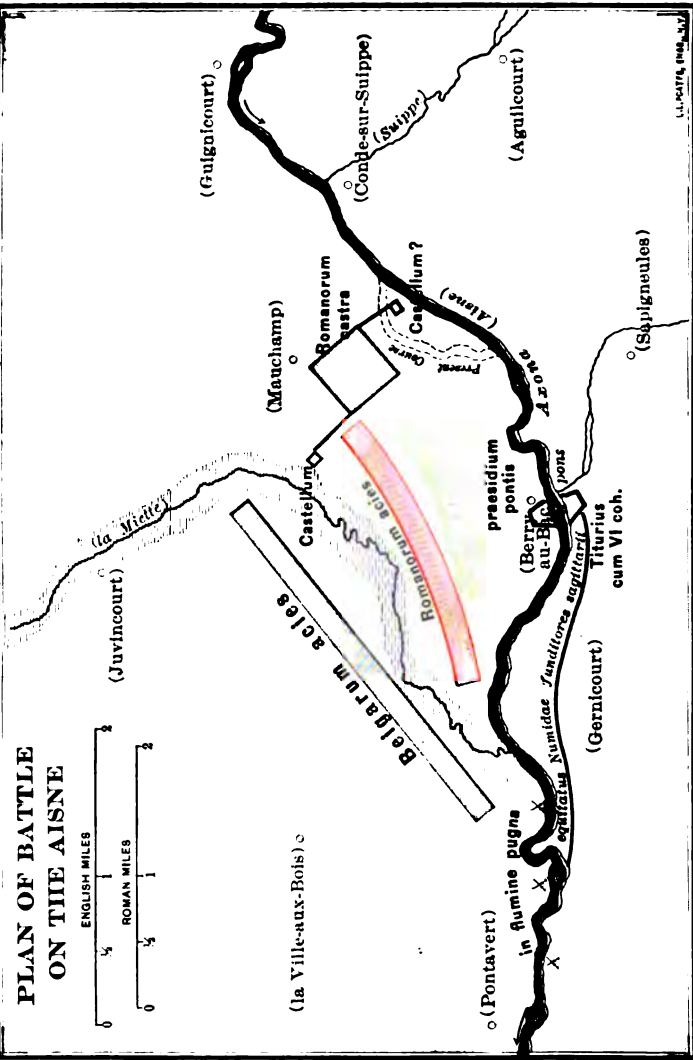
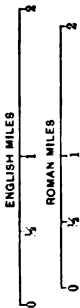
6. Ab his castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax
 aberat milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū 100
 Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum
 7 est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est
 haec. Ubi circumiectā multitudīne hominū tōtīs moeni-
 bus undique in mūrum lapidēs iaci coeptī sunt mūrusque
 dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, tēstūdine factā portās succē- 105
 8 dunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam

cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla cōnicerent, in mūrō
cōsistendī potestās erat nullī. Cum finem oppugnandī
nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitate et grātiā
110 inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex iīs, quī
lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum
mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diutius
sustinēre nōn posse.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem ducibus ūsus, quī
115 nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs
et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānis mittit; quōrum
adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpu-
gnandī accēssit, et hostibus eādē dē causā spēs potiundī
oppidī discēssit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī
120 agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs aedificiis-
que quō adire potuerant incēnsis, ad castra Caesaris om-
nibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus
duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque
Ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in
125 lātitudinem patēbant.

8. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et
propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre
statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis
virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, perīclitābātur.
130 Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castris
ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō,
quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex
plānitie ēditus tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat,
quantum locī aciēs instructa occupāre poterat, atque
135 ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in frontem
lēniter fāstīgātus paulātim ad plānitiam redībat, ab
utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit

PLAN OF BATTLE ON THE AISNE



circiter passuum eo et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem instruxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab 140
 5 lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōscripserat, in castris relictis, ut, si quō opus esset, subsidiō dūci possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās instruxerunt. 145

9. Palus erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostrī trānsirent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, si ab illis initium trānseundi fieret, ut im-
 2 ditōs aggrederentur, parātī in armis erant. Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendebātur. Ubi 150
 neutri trānseundi initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum
 3 proeliō nostris, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt,
 4 quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnāti sunt, 155
 eō cōnsiliō, ut, si possent, castellum, cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus, expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent;
 5 si minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, qui māgnō nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commē-
 6 ātūque nostrōs prohibērent. 160

10. Caesar certior factus ab Tituriō omnem equitatum et levis armaturae Numidās, funditorēs sagittariōsque
 2 ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Acriter in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine
 3 aggressi māgnū eōrum numerum occidērunt: per eōrum 165
 corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multi-
 tudine telōrum reppulērunt; primōsque, qui trānsierant,
 4 equitātū circumventōs interfecērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē

expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē
170 fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem
prōgredi pūgnandī causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frū-
mentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō, cōstituērunt
optimum esse, domum suam quemque revertī et, quōrum
in finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad
175 eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suis
quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et domesticis cōpiis
rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum 5
reliquis causis haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod
Diviciācum atque Aeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum appro-
180 pinquāre cōgnōverant. His persuādērī, ut diūtius morā-
rentur neque suis auxilium ferrent, nōn poterat.

11. Eā rē cōstitutā, secundā vigiliā māgnō cum stre-
pitu ac tumultu castris ēgressi nullō certō ōrdine neque
imperio, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret
185 et domum pervenire properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis
fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per 2
speculātōrēs cōgnitā, insidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā
discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque
castris continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmātā rē ab explō 3
190 rātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum āgmen
morārētur, praemisit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium
Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum
legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimōs adorti 4
et multa milia passuum prōsecuti māgnam multitudinem
195 eōrum fugientium concidērunt, cum ab extrēmō āgmine,
ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum
nostrōrum militum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā 5
periculō vidērentur neque ullā necessitāte neque imperio
continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātis ordinibus,

omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ullō 200
periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostrī interfē-
cērunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium, sub occāsum sōlis
sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum,
recēpērunt.

Suessiōnēs in fidem accipiuntur.

12. Postridiē eius diēi Caesar, prius quam sē hostēs 205
ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī
proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere
[cōnfectō] ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex
itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōri-
bus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque 210
altitudinem paucīs dēfendentibus expugnāre nōn potuit.
Castris mūnitīs, vineās agere quaeque ad oppugnandum
usui erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā
Suessiōnum multītūdō in oppidum proximā nocte con-
vēnit. Celeriter vineīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō 215
turribusque cōstitutīs, māgnitudine operum, quae neque
vīderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmā-
nōrum permōti, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione mit-
tunt et, petentibus Rēmīs ut cōservārentur, impetrant.

*Caesar Bellovacōs, petente Diviciācō, in fidem recipit, dē Ner-
viōrum nātūrā mōribusque quaerit.*

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs, primīs cīvitatīs atque 220
ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filiis armisque omnibus ex
oppidō trādītīs, in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accipit exer-
citumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaeque omnia
in oppidum Brātuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō
oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum 225
quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressi

manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coopērunt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad 3
230 oppidum accēssisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

14. Prō his Diviciācus (nam post discēssum Belgārum dimissīs Aeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba :
235 Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitīā cīvitātis : Aeduae fuisse : impulsōs ā suis prīncipibus, quī dicerent Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōsiliī :
240 prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellexerent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō his Aeduōs, ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuetūdine in eōs utātur. Quod :
sī fēcerit, Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās
245 amplificātūrum ; quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōsuērint.

15. Caesar honōris Diviciāci atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit ; et quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitudīne praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs popōscit.
250 His trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātis, ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant ; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic
255 reperiēbat : Nullum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus : nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriā pertinentium inferri, quod iīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs

[eōrum] et remitti virtutem existimarent; esse hominēs
 ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis, increpitāre atque incūsāre reli-
 quōs Belgās, qui sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriam- 260
 que virtutem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs
 missūrōs neque ullam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

*Nerviōs, multis utrimque clādibus acceptis, Caesar vincit cum
 Atrebātibus et Viromanduis accipitque in dēditiōnem.*

16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīdūm iter fēcisset, inve-
 niēbat ex captivīs, Sabim flūmen ā castris suis nōn
 2 amplius mīlia passuum x abesse: trāns id flūmen omnēs 265
 Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum expec-
 tāre unā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimis suis
 (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant, uti eandem belli fortū-
 3 nam experirentur); expectārī etiam ab iīs Aduatucōrum
 4 cōpiās atque esse in itinere: mulierēs, quīque per aetātem 270
 ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum cōniēcisse,
 quō propter palūdēs exercitui aditus nōn esset.

17. His rēbus cōgnitis, explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque
 2 praemittit, qui locum castris idōneum dēligant. Cum ex
 dēditiciis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complūrēs Caesarem 275
 secūtī unā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut postea ex
 captivīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuetūdine itineris
 nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt
 atque hīs dēmōstrārunt, inter singulās legiōnēs impe-
 dimentōrum māgnū numerum intercēdere, neque esse 280
 quicquam negōtiī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset
 reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnū spatium abessent, hanc sub
 3 sarcinis adoriri; quā pulsā impedimentisque direptis
 futurum, ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn auderent.
 4 Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōsiliū qui rem dēferēbant, 285

quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitatu nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent copiis) quod facilius finitimorum equitatum, si praedandi causam ad eos venissent, impedirent, 290 teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis crebrisque in latitudinem ramis enatis et rubis sentibusque interiectis effecerant, ut instar muri hae saepes munimentum praebèrent, quod non modo non intrari, sed ne perspicere quidem posset. His rebus cum iter agminis nostri impediretur, 295 non omittendum sibi consilium Nervii existimaverunt.

18. Locum natura erat haec, quem locum nostri castris delegerant. Collis ab summo aequaliter declivis ad flumen Sabim, quod supra nominavimus, vergebat. Ab eo flumine pari acclivitate collis nascebatur, adversus 300 huic et contrarius, passus circiter ducentos infimus apertus, a superiore parte silvestris, ut non facile introrsus perspicere posset. Intra eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continebant; in aperto loco secundum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo 305 pedum circiter trium.

19. Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequeretur omnibus copiis; sed ratio ordoque agminis aliter se habebat ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquabat, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducebat; post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocarat; inde duae legiones, quae proximae conscriptae erant, totum agmen clauderant praesidioque impedimentis erant. Equites nostri cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi cum hostium equitatu proelium 815 commiserunt. Cum se illi identidem in silvas ad suos recipere ac rursus ex silva in nostros impetum facerent,

ROMAN MILES

2 legiones et impedimenta
totius exercitus

**Romanorum
castra**

garum
itra

Nervier

(Boussières)

1

(St. Remiual-bati?)

mativ:

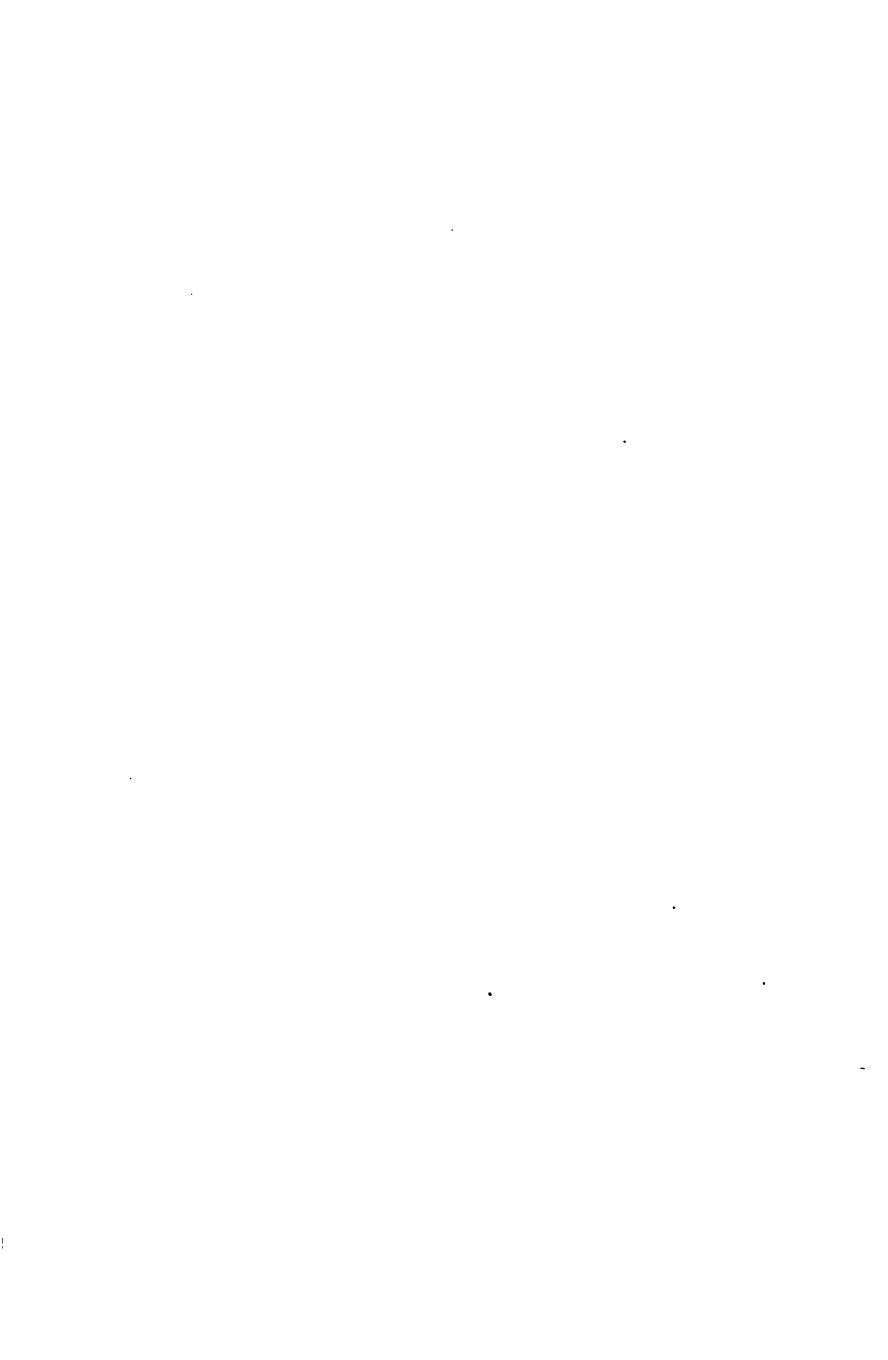
ENGINE

ENGLISH MILES

ROMAN MILES

ROMAN MILES

L. L. PAGE & SONS, INC., N. Y.



neque nostrī longius, quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca
 aperta pertinēbant, cēdentēs insequi audērent, interim
 legiōnēs sex, quae primae vēnerant, opere dīmēnsō castra
 mūnire coepērunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exer- 320
 citūs ab iīs, qui in silvīs abditī latēbant, visa sunt, quod
 tempus inter eōs committendī proeliī convēnerat, ut intrā
 silvās aciem ordinēsque cōstituerant atque ipsī sēsē
 cōfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt
 impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile 325
 pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incredibili celeritāte ad flūmen
 dēcucurrērunt, ut paene unō tempore ad silvās et in
 flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur.
 Eādē autē celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra
 atque eōs, qui in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt. 330

20. Caesarī omnia unō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum
 prōpōnendum, quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurrī
 oportēret, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī
 milites, qui paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcēs-
 serant, arcessendī, aciēs instruenda, milites cohortandī, 335
 signum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partē tem-
 poris brevitas et incursus hostium impediēbat. His dif-
 ficultātibus duae res erant subsidiō, scientia atque usus
 militum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī, quid fieri
 oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere 340
 quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singu-
 lisque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi
 mūnitīs castrīs vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitatem
 et celeritatem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium
 exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur, administrābant. 345

21. Caesar, necessariis rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs
 milites, quam [in] partē fors obtulit, dēcucurrit et

ad legiōnem decimam dēvenit. Militēs nōn longiōre :
ōrātiōne cohortātus, quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis
350 memoriā retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hosti-
umque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius :
hostēs aberant, quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proeliī
committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem
item cohortandī causā profectus pūgnantibus occurrit.
355 Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus :
ad dīmīcandum animus, ut nōn modo ad insīgnia accom-
modanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque
tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque :
ab opere in partem cāsū dēvenit quaeque prima signa
360 cōspexit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quaerendis suis
pūgnandī tempus dīmītteret.

22. Instrūctō exercitū, magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque
collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut rei militāris ratiō
atque ōrdō pōstulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā
365 in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimis, ut
ante dēmōstrāvimus, interiectis, prōspectus impedirētur,
neque certa subsidia collocārī neque, quid in quāque
parte opus esset, prōvidērī neque ab unō omnia imperia
administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte :
370 fortunae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā
parte aciē cōstiterant, pīlis ēmissis, cursū ac lassitudīne
exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs
ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen
375 compulērunt et trānsire cōnantēs Insecutī gladiis māgnam
partem eōrum impeditam interfecērunt. Ipsī trānsire :
flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et in locum inīquum prōgressī
rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam

coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legiōnēs, undecima et octāva, prōfligātis Viromanduis, quibuscum 380 erant congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtis ferē castris ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātis, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōstitisset, omnēs Nervii cōfertissimō āgmine duce Boduognātō, quī 385 summam imperiī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenire, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum iīs unā fuerant, quōs primō hostium 390 impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petēbant, et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent 395 et hostēs in nostris castris versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, quī cum impedimentis veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliique 400 aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōti equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtutis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxiliī causā ā civitate missi ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitudine hostium castra [nostra] complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, 405 dēspērātis nostris rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castris impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potītōs civitatī renūntiāvērunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum

410 cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signisque in unum locum
collātis duodecimae legiōnis cōfertōs milites sibi ipsōs
ad pūgnam esse impedimentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis
omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, signiferō interfectō,
signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē cen-
415 turiōnibus aut vulnerātis aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmi-
pilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multis gravi-
busque vulneribus cōfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn
posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nullōs ab novissimis,
dēsertō locō, proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs neque
420 ā fronte ex Inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab
utrōque latere instāre et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque
ullum esse subsidium, quod submittī posset, scūtō ab
novissimis [unī] militi dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō
vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcēssit centuriōnibusque
425 nōminātim appellātis reliquōs cohortātus milites signa
inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiis
utī possent. Cuius adventū spē illātā militibus ac redin-
tegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū imperā-
tōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet,
430 paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōn-
stiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs militum
monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et con-
versa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum aliis
435 alii subsidium ferrent, neque timērent, nē āversī ab hoste
circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pūgnāre
coeperunt. Interim milites legiōnum duārum, quae in
novissimō āgmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō
nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus
440 cōspiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus castris hostium potitus

et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur, cōspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs misit.
 5 Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset, quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātōr versārētur, cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem 445 sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commutātiō est facta, ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innixī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs, perterritōs hostēs cōspicātī, etiam inermēs armātīs occur- 450 rerent, equitēs vērō, ut turpitudinem fugae virtūte dēlerent, omnibus in locīs pūgnandō sē legiōnāriīs militibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salutis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus Insisterent atque ex eōrum 455 corporibus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumultō, tēla in nostrōs cōnicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent: ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēberet ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, āscendere altissimās rīpās, 460 subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.

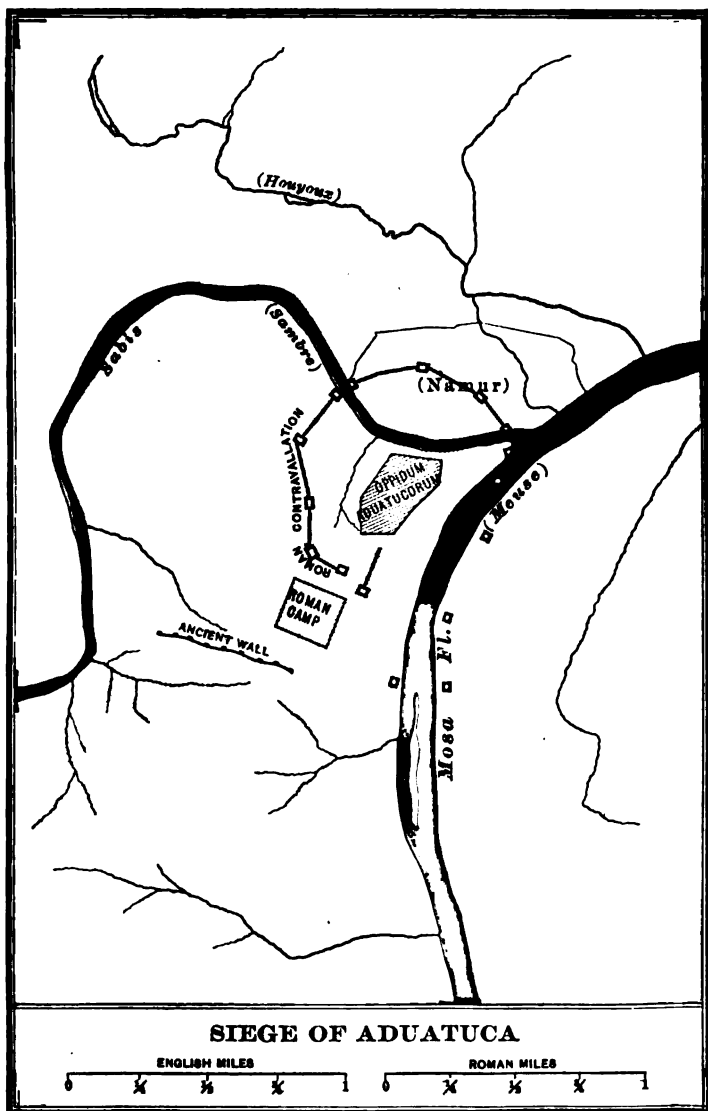
28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente āc nōmine Nerviorum redactō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs unā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria āc palūdēs con- 465 iectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium, quī supererant, cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque ei dēdidērunt et in commemorandā civitātis calamitāte ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex 470 hominum milibus LX vix ad quīngentōs, quī arma ferre

possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in
 miserōs āc supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligen-
 tissimē cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidis uti ius-
 475 sit et finitimīs imperāvit, ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē
 suōsque prohibērent.

Item Aduatucī subiguntur.

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum omnibus
 cōpiīs auxiliō Nervīs venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex
 itinere domum revertērunt; cūctīs oppidis castellisque
 480 dēsertīs sua omnia in unum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā
 mūnitum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū
 partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, unā ex
 parte lēniter acclivis aditus in latitudinem nōn amplius
 pedum ducentōrum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplici
 485 altissimō mūrō mūnierant: tum māgnī ponderis saxa
 et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ipsī erant ex
 Cimbrīs Teutonisque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvin-
 ciam nostram atque Ītaliā facerent, iīs impedimentīs,
 quae sēcum agere āc portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen
 490 Rhēnum dēpositīs, cūstōdiam ex suis āc praesidium sex
 milia hominum unā reliquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum
 multōs annōs ā finitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum
 inferrent, aliās illātūm dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum
 omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

30. Āc primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex
 oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum
 nostrīs contendēbant; postea vāllō pedum xii in circuitū
 xv milium crēbrisque castellis circummūnitī oppidō sēsē
 continēbant. Ubi, vineīs āctīs, aggere extrūctō, turrim
 500 procul cōstitutī vidērunt, primum irridēre ex mūrō atque



increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō
 4 spatiō Instruerētur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus
 viribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plē-
 rumque omnibus Gallis prae māgnitūdine corporum
 suōrum brevitās nostra contemptū est) tantī oneris 505
 turrim in mūrō sēsē posse collocāre cōnfiderēt.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre mūrīs vidē-
 ruht, novā atque inūsitatā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad
 Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī, ad hunc modum locūtī:
 2 nōn sē existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope dēorum bellum 510
 gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeri-
 tāte prōmovēre possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī
 3 permittere dīxērunt. Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte
 prō suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs
 audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōservandōs, nē sē 515
 4 armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs
 ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trādītīs
 5 armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum
 dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortunam ā populō Rōmānō patī,
 quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter quōs dominārī 520
 cōnsuēssent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētūdine
 suā quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōservātūrum, sī, prius
 quam mūrū ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēdi-
 2 tiōnis nūllam esse condiōnem nisi armīs trādītīs. Sē 525
 id, quod in Nervīs fēcisset, factūrum finitimisque impe-
 rātūrum, nē quam dēditiciis populī Rōmānī iniūriam
 3 inferrent. Rē renūtiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur,
 4 facere dīxērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitudīne dē mūrō
 in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iactā, sic ut 530
 prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitudinem acervi

armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspectum est, celātā atque in oppidō retentā, portis patefactis eō diē pāce sunt usi.

535 33. Sub vesp̄erum Caesar portās claudī milītēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā milītibus iniūriam acciperent. Illi, ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditione factā nostrōs praesidia dēduc-
tūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant,
540 partim cum iis, quae retinuerant et celāverant, armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factis aut viminibus intextis, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās pōstulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs āscēsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiis repente
545 ex oppidō ēruptionem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, Ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximis castellis eō concursum est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita
aceriter est, ut ā viris fortibus in extrēmā spē salutis iniquō locō contrā eōs, qui ex vāllō turribusque tēla
550 iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum in unā virtūte omnis spēs [salutis] cōsisteret. Occisīs ad hominum milibus quatuor, reliquī in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridiē eius diēi, refrāctis portis, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissis milītibus nostris, sectionem eius oppidi
555 universam Caesar vēndidit. Ab iis, qui ēmerant, capitum numerus ad eum relātus est milium quinquāgintā trium.

II. CRASSI IN AREMORICAS CIVITATES EXPEDITIO.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne unā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas,
560 Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae civi-

tātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnēs eās civitatēs in diciōnem potestātemque populi Rōmānī esse redāctās.

III. RES EXEUNTE ANNO GESTAE.

35. His rēbus gestīs, omni Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius belli ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab iīs nātiōnibus, 565 quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliā Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē 570 revertī iūssit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs quaeque civitatēs propinquae iīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs, in Ītaliā profectus est; ob eāsque rēs ex lītterīs Caesaris diērum quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.

COMMENTARIUS TERTIUS.

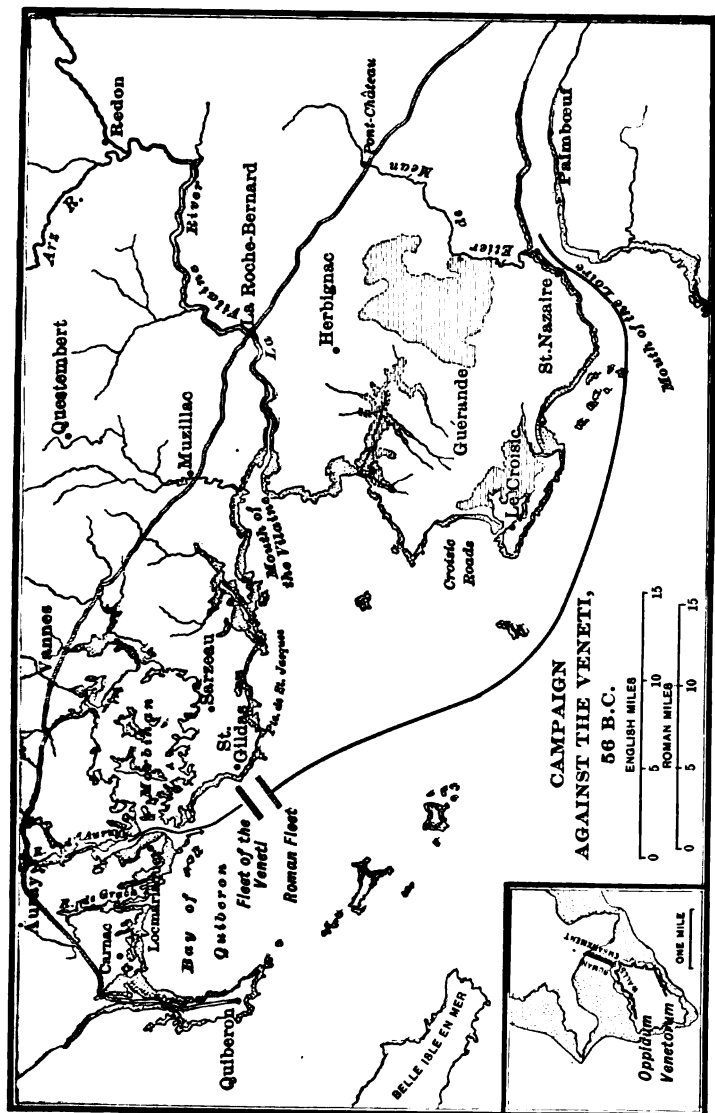
I. BELLUM CUM GENTIBUS ALPINIS.

CC. 1-6.

*Galba lēgātus Caesaris gentēs quāsdam sub Alpibus sitās
rebellantēs vincit ; postea in prōvinciam redit.*

1. Cum in Ītaliā proficīscerētur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs
5 pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit, quod iter per Alpēs, quō māgnō cum periculō māgnisque cum portōriis mercātōrēs Ire cōsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus
esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā collocāret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castel-
10 lisque compluribus eōrum expūgnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datis et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse cum reliquis eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī
appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre ; quī vicus positus in valle, 5
15 nōn māgnā adiectā plānitīē, altissimis montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, 6
alteram partem eius vicī Gallis concēssit, alteram vacuam ab hīs relictam cohortibus [ad hiemandum] attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

20 2. Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsissent, frūmen-





tumque eō comportārī iūssisset, subitō per explorātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vicī, quam Gallīs concēserat, omnēs noctū discēssisse montēsque, quī impendērent, ā māximā multitudine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum
 2 tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Galli bellī 25
 renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent:
 3 primum, quod legiōnem neque eam plēnissimam, dētrāctīs
 cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillatim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, absentibus, propter pauci-
 4 tātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem 30
 locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla cōnicerent, nē primum quidem impetum suum posse
 5 sustinēri existimābant. Accēdēbat, quod suōs ab sē
 liberōs abstractōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs
 nōn solum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessi- 35
 ōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae
 prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

3. His nūntiīs acceptīs, Galba, cum neque opus hiber-
 nōrum mūnitiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē
 frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod 40
 dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō
 timendum existimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō,
 2 sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum
 repentīnī periculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset ac iam
 omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudine armātōrum com- 45
 plēta cōspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque com-
 meātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope
 iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nullae eius modī sententiae
 dicēbantur, ut impedimentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā,
 Isdem itineribus, quibus eō pervēnissent, ad salūtem 50
 3 contenderent. Māiōrī tamen partī placuit, hōc reservātō

ad extrēmum cāsum cōnsiliō, interim rei ēventum experiri et castra dēfendere.

4. Brevi spatiō interiectō, vix ut rēbus, quās cōstitu-
55 issent, collocandis atque administrandis tempus darētur,
hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs
gaesaeque in vāllum cōnicere. Nostrī primō integrīs vīri- 2
bus fortiter propugnāre neque ullum frūstrā tēlum ex locō
superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta
60 dēfēnsōribus premi vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium
ferre, sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pūgnae hostēs 3
dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs viribus succēdē-
bant; quārum rerum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fieri 4
nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pūgnā excēdendī,
65 sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī, ubi cōstitērat, relinquendī
ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pūgnārētur
ac nōn solum vīrēs, sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent,
atque hostēs ācrius instārent languidiōribusque nostrīs
70 vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque
esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius 2
Baculus, primī pilī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō com-
plūribus cōnfectum vulneribus diximus, et item C. Volu-
sēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōsiliī māgnī et virtūtis,
75 ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salutis
docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experi-
rentur. Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus celeriter militēs 3
certiōrēs facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium ac
tantum modo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre refi-
80 cerent, post datō signō ex castris ērumperent atque
omnem spem salutis in virtūte pōnerent.

6. Quod iūssī sunt, faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portis

eruptiōne factā, neque cōgnōscendī, quid fieret, neque
 2 suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita com-
 mūtātā fortunā eōs, quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum 85
 vēnerant, undique circumventōs interficiunt et ex homi-
 num mīlibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum
 ad castra vēnisse cōstābat, plus tertiā parte interfectā,
 reliquōs perterritōs in fugam cōniciunt ac nē in locīs
 3 quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus 90
 hostium cōpiīs fūsis armisque exūtīs sē intrā mūnī-
 4 tiōnēs suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius
 fortunam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hiberna
 cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus viderat,
 māximē frūmentī commeātusque inopiā permōtus, posterō 95
 diē, omnibus eius vici aedificiīs incēnsīs, in prōvinciam
 5 revertī contendit ac, nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter
 dēmorante, incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in
 Allobrogēs perduxit ibique hiemāvit.

II. BELLUM VENETICUM.

CC. 7-16.

*Aremoricae gentēs auctōritāte Venetōrum adductae obsidēs
 repōscunt.*

7. His rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar 100
 pācātā Galliam existimāret, superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs
 Germānīs, victīs in Alpihus Sedūnīs, atque ita initā hieme
 in Illyricum profectus esset, quōd eās quoque nātiōnēs
 adire et regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in
 2 Galliā coortum est. Eius bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus 105
 adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum
 3 in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in his locīs inopia frū-
 mentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque militum complūres in

finitimās civitatēs frūmenti causā dīmisit; quō in numerō
110 est T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in
Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

8. Huius est civitatīs longē amplissima auctōritās
omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs
habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre
115 cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque usū rerum nauticarum cēterōs
antecēdunt et in māgnō impetū maris vāstī atque apertī,
paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē,
quī eō mari utī cōnsuērunt, habent vectigālēs. Ab hīs fit
initium retinendī Siliī atque Velāniī, quod per eōs suōs
120 sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs existi-
mābant. Hōrum auctōritāte finitimī adductī, ut sunt
Gallōrum subita et repentinā cōnsilia, eādē dē causā
Trebiūm Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs
lēgātīs per suōs principēs inter sē coniūrant, nihil nisi
125 cōmūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnis fortunae
exitum esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque civitatēs sollicitant, ut
in eā libertāte, quam ā māiōribus accēperint, permanēre
quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālent. Omnī
ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā,
130 cōmūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt, sī velit
suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

Caesar classem parat ad eōs subigendōs.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ā Crassō certior factus,
quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī
in flumine Ligerī, quod Influit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex
135 prōvinciā Institui, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī
iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs, ipse, cum pri-
mum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

1 Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs, cōgnitō Caesaris ad-
 ventū, simul quod, quantum in sē facinus admīssissent,
 intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs 140
 sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et
 in vincula coniectōs, prō māgnitudine perīculi bellum
 parāre et māximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent,
 prōvidēre instituunt, hōc māiōre spē, quod multum
 4 nātūrā locī cōfidēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa 145
 aestuāriis, nāvigātiōnem impeditam propter Inscientiam
 5 locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs
 exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē
 6 morārī posse cōfidēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā
 opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse; 150
 Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium neque
 eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs,
 7 insulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in
 conclusō mari atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō
 8 Oceanō perspiciebant. Hīs initīs cōsiliis, oppida mūni- 155
 unt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in
 Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gestūrum cōn-
 stābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sōciōs sibi ad
 id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliatōs,
 Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt: auxilia ex 160
 Britannīā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī, quās suprā
 ostendimus, sed tamen Caesarem multa ad id bellum
 1 incitābant: iniūriae retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum,
 rebelliō facta post dēditionem, defectiō datīs obsidibus, 165
 tot cīvitātum coniūrātiō, in primīs, nē hāc parte neglēctā
 2 reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrarentur. Itaque
 cum intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre

et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem
 170 hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condiōnem servi-
 tūtis ōdisse, prius quam plūrēs civitātēs cōspirārent, par-
 tiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī
 proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huīc
 175 mandat, Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō
 contineat Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessitī
 dicēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur,
 prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII
 et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficisci
 180 iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur
 ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum
 lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas
 Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D.
 Brūtum adulēscentem clāssī Gallicis nāvibus, quās ex
 185 Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pācātis regiōnibus con-
 venīre iūsserat, praeficit et, cum primum posset, in Vene-
 tōs proficisci iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

Oppidōrum nāviumque Venetōrum dēscriptiō.

12. Erant eiūs modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in
 extrēmīs lingulis prōmunturiisque neque pedibus aditum
 190 habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod [bis]
 accidit semper hōrārum XII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod
 rursus minuyente aestū nāvēs in vadīs afflictaerentur. Ita
 utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī
 quandō māgnitudine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī
 195 aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs,
 dēspērāre fortūnis suis coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium
 appulsō, cūius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua

dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant: ibi sē rūsus isdem opportunitātibus loci dēfendēbant.

3 Haec eō facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod 200
nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbantur, summaque
erat vāstō atque apertō marī, māgnīs aestibus, rārīs ac
prope nullīs portibus, difficultās nāvīgandī.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae
armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam 205
nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcēssum aestūs
2 excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item
puppēs ad māgnitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accom-
3 modātae, nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvis vim
et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in 210
altitūdinem trabibus cōnfixa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis
crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revinctae;
4 pellēs prō vēlis alūtāeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sive propter
inopiam līnī atque eius usūs Inscientiam, sive eō, quod
est magis vērī simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī 215
tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera
nāvium rēgī vēlis nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.
5 Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae clāssī eius modī congressus erat,
ut unā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret, reliqua
prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illīs essent aptiōra 220
6 et accommodātiōra. Neque enim hīs nostrae rōstrō
nocēre poterant (tanta in iīs erat firmitūdō), neque
propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē
7 causā minus commodē cōpulis continēbantur. Accēdēbat,
ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et 225
tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōsisterent tūtius
et ab aestū relictāe nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum
rērū omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

*Venetī nāvālī proeliō dēvictī sē dēdunt, et sub coronā
vënduntur.*

14. Complūribus expūgnātis oppidīs, Caesar, ubi intel-
230 lēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam
captīs oppidīs reprimī neque iīs nocērī posse, statuit
exspectandam clāssē. Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum :
ab hostibus visa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum parātis-
simae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae profectae
235 ex portū nostrīs adversae cōstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, s
quī clāssī praeerat, vel tribūnīs militum centuriōnibusque,
quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōstābat, quid
agerent aut quam ratiōnem pūgnae Insisterent. Rōstrō
enim nocērī nōn posse cōgnōverant; turribus autem
240 excitātis, tamen hās altitudō puppiū ex barbaris nāvibus
superābat, ut neque ex Inferiōre locō satis commodē tela
adigi possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ūna s
erat māgnō ūsul rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs prae-
acūtāe insertae affixaeque longuriīs, nōn absimili fōrmā
245 mūrāliū falcium. Iīs cum fūnēs, quī antemnās ad
mālōs dēstinābant, comprehēnsī adductique erant, nā-
vigio rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscisis :
antemnae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gal-
licīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentisque cōsisteret,
250 hīs ēreptīs, omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur.
Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī s
militēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōn-
spectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut
nullum paulō fortius factum latēre posset : omnēs enim
255 collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus
in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

15. Dēiectis, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae
 ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vī trān-
 2 scendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam
 barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expūgnātis complūribus 260
 nāvibus, cum eī rei nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā
 3 salutem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam
 partem nāvibus, quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia
 ac tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent.
 4 Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōficiendum māximē 265
 fuit opportūna: nam singulās nostrī cōsectātī expūgnā-
 vērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū
 ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā usque
 ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae 270
 2 maritimae cōfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs,
 omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōsiliī
 aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod
 3 ubique fuerat in unum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissis,
 reliquī neque quō sē reciperent, neque quem ad modum 275
 oppida dēfenderent, habēbant. Itaque sē suaeque omnia
 4 Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindi-
 candum statuit, quō diligentius in reliquum tempus
 ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōservārētur. Itaque omnī
 senātū necātō, reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit. 280

III. BELLUM VENELLORUM.

CC. 17-19.

Sabīnus, lēgātus Caesaris, Venellōs superat.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus
 cum iīs cōpiīs, quās ā Caesare accēperat, in finēs Venellō-

rum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx ac summam
 imperiī tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum, quae dēfēce-
 285 rant, ex quibus exercitum māgnāsque cōpiās coēgerat;
 atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulerci Eburovīcēs Lexovīque
 senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant,
 portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt:
 māgnaque praetereā multitudō undique ex Galliā per-
 290 ditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, quōs spēs
 praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī culturā et cotidiānō
 labōre sēvocābat. Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō
 castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum
 milium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotidiēque prōductīs cōpiīs
 295 pūgnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hostibus
 in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum
 militum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīni-
 ōnem timōris praebuit, ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum
 hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod
 300 cum tantā multitudīne hostium, praesertim eō absente,
 quī summam imperiī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut oppor-
 tūnitāte aliquā datā lēgātō dīmīcandum nōn existi-
 mābat.

18. Hāc cōfirmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam
 305 hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iīs, quōs auxiliī
 causā sēcum habēbat. Huīc māgnīs praemiīs pollicitā-
 tiōnibusque persuādet, utī ad hostēs trānseat, et, quid
 fierī velit, ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit,
 timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustiīs ipse
 310 Caesar ā Venetīs premātur, docet neque longius abesse
 quā proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exercitum
 ēducāt et ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendī causā proficiscātur.
 Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs, occāsiōnem

negōtiū bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra Irī
 6 oportēre. Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortāban- 315
 tur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōn-
 firmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei parum diligenter
 ab iis erat prōvisum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē
 7 libenter hominēs id, quod volunt, crēdunt. Iiis rēbus
 adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex 320
 conciliō dīmittunt, quam ab iis sit concēssum, arma
 8 utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concēssā
 laeti, ut explorātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque col-
 lēctis, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra
 pergunt. 325

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab imō
 acclivis circiter passūs mille. Iiuc māgnō cursū con-
 tendērunt, ut quam minimum spatii ad sē colligendōs
 armandōsque Rōmānis darētur, exanimātique pervenē-
 2 runt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus sīgnū dat. 330
 Impeditis hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera,
 3 subitō duābus portis ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est
 opportunitate loci, hostium inscientiā ac dēfatigātiōne,
 virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pūgnārū exercitātiōne,
 ut nē primum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac 335
 4 statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs vīribus mīlites
 nostrī cōsecūtī māgnū numerum eōrum occidērunt;
 reliquōs equitēs cōsectātī paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāse-
 5 rant, reliquērunt. Sic unō tempore et dē nāvālī pūgnā
 Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar est certior factus, 340
 6 civitatēque omnēs sē statim Tituriō dēdidērunt. Nam
 ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōptus est
 animus, sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitatēs
 ferendās mēns eōrum est.

IV. CRASSI IN AQUITANIAM EXPEDITIO.

CC. 20-27.

Sōtiātēs ā Crassō vincuntur.

345 20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquitāniam pervēnisset, quae [pars], ut ante dictum est, et regiōnum lātitudine et multitudine hominum ex tertiā parte Galliae est aestimanda, cum intellexeret in iīs locīs sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius
 350 Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Manlius prōcōnsul impedimentīs āmissīs profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frumentāriā prōvisā, auxiliīs equitātūque comparātō, multis praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā
 355 et Carcarsōne et Narbōne, quae sunt cīvitatēs Galliae prōvinciae finitimae hīs regiōnibus, nōminatim ēvocātis, in Sōtiātium finēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cuius adventū cōgnitō, Sōtiātēs māgnīs cōpiīs coactīs equitātūque, quō plurimum valēbant, in itinere āgmen nostrum adortī prī-
 360 mum equestre proelium commīsērunt, deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque Insequentibus nostrīs subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in convalle in insidiīs collocāverant, ostendērunt. Hi nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

21. Pugnātum est diū atque ācritē, cum Sōtiātēs
 365 superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtius Aquitāniae salutem positam putārent, nostrī autem, quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscentulō duce efficere possent, perspicī cuperent: tandem cōfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum māgnō numerō
 370 interfectō, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vineās turrēs-

que ēgit. Illi aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cuniculis ad aggerem vineāsque actis (cuius rei sunt longē peritissimi Aquitāni, proptereā quod multis locis apud eos aerariae secturaeque sunt), ubi diligentia nostrorum nihil his rebus 375 profici posse intellēxerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittunt seque in deditiōnem ut recipiat, petunt. Quā rē impetrātā arma tradere iussi faciunt.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrorum intentis animis, aliā ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, qui summam imperii 380 tenēbat, cum de devotis, quos illi solduriōs appellant, quorum haec est condicio, ut omnibus in vitā commodis unā cum illis fruantur, quorum se amicitiae dēdiderint, si quid his per vim accidat, aut eundem casum unā ferant 3 aut sibi mortem consciscant; neque adhuc hominum 385 memoriā repertus est quisquam, qui eō interfecto, cuius se amicitiae devovisset, mori recusaret: cum his Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus clamore ab eā parte munitiōnis sublato, cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum 390 tamen, uti eadem deditiōnis condiciōne uteretur, a Crasso impetravit.

Crassus aliās natiōēs aggreditur.

23. Armis obsidibusque acceptis, Crassus in finēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum verō barbari commoti, quod oppidum et naturā loci et manū munitum 395 paucis diebus, quibus eō ventum erat, expugnatum cōgnoverant, legatos quoque versus dimittere, coniurare, 3 obsides inter se dare, copiās parare coeperunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitatēs legati, quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae Aquitāniae: inde auxilia ducēsque arces- 400

suntur. Quōrum adventū māgnā cum auctōritāte et
māgnā [cum] hominum multitudine bellum gerere cōnan-
tur. Ducēs vērō iī dēliguntur, quī unā cum Q. Sertōriō
omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei militāris
405 habere existimābantur. Iī cōsuetūdine populi Rōmānī
loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs inter-
cludere instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit suās
cōpiās propter exiguitatem nōn facile dūdūci, hostem et
vagārī et viās obsidēre et castris satis praesidiū relinquere,
410 ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeā-
tumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī,
nōn cunctandum existimāvit, quīn pūgnā dēcertāret.
Hāc rē ad cōsiliū dēlātā ubi omnēs idem sentire
intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōstituit. .

415 **24.** Primā luce, prōductis omnibus cōpiis duplici acie
institutā, auxiliis in mediam aciem cōniectis, quid hostēs
cōsiliū caperent, exspectābat. Illi, etsi propter multitu-
dinem et veterem belli glōriam paucitatemque nostrōrum
se tūtō dīmicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse
420 arbitrābantur, obsessis viis commeātū interclusō sine
vulnere victōriā potiri, et, si propter inopiam rei frūmen-
tariae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in
āgmine et sub sarcinīs infirmiorēs animō adoriri cōgitā-
bant. Hōc cōsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductis Rōmā-
425 nōrum cōpiis sēsē castris tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā,
Crassus, cum suā cunctatiōne atque opiniōne timōris
hostēs nostrōs militēs alacriorēs ad pūgnandum effēc-
sent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur, exspectārī diūtius
nōn oportēre, quīn ad castra Irētur, cohortātus suōs
430 omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cum alii fossās complērent, alii multis telis

coniectis defēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus cōfidebat, lapidibus tēlisque subministrandis et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandis speciem atque opīniōnem 435 pūgnantium praeberent, cum item ab hostibus cōstanter ac nōn timidē pūgnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitis hostium castris Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse diligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnita facilemque aditum habere. 440

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus, ut māgnis praemiis pollicitatiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fieri velit ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, dēvectis iis cohortibus, quae praesidiō castris relictæ intritæ ab labōre erant, et longiōre itinere circumductis, nē ex hostium 445 castris cōspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pūgnam intentis, celeriter ad eas, quās diximus, mūnitiōnēs pervēnērunt atque hīs prōrutis prius in hostium castris cōstitērunt, quam plānē ab hīs vidēri aut, quid rei gererētur, cōgnōsci posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā 450 parte auditō nostrī redintegrātis vīribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriæ accidere cōsuēvit, ācrius impūgnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventi, dēspērātis omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salutem 455 petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimis campis cōsectātus, ex milium L. numerō, quae ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque convēnisse cōstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recipit.

Māxima pars Aquitāniæ in dēditionem accipitur.

27. Hāc auditā pūgnā, māxima pars Aquitāniæ sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultro mīsit; quō in numerō 460

fuērunt Tarbelli, Biggerriōnēs, Ptiāniī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibuzātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfisae, quod 2 hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

V. EXPEDITIO CAESARIS IN MORINOS MENAPIOSQUE.

cc. 28–29.

465 28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiique supererant, quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnfici posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī
470 longē aliā ratiōne āc reliquī Galli bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant māximās nātiōnēs, quae 2 proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās āc palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum 3
475 Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre Instituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dīpersīs in opere nostrīs subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt 4 eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et complūribus interfectīs
480 longius impeditiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt.

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere Instituit et, nē quis inermibus imprudentibusque mīlitibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam,
485 quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte 3 māgnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī

dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modi sunt tempestātēs
cōnsecūtae, utī opus necessariō intermitterētur et conti- 490
nuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus militēs continērī
3 nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs
aedificiisq̄ue incēnsis, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in
Aulercīs Lexoviisque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus, quae
proximē bellum fēcerant, in hibernīs collocāvit. 495

COMMENTARIUS QUARTUS.

I. BELLUM GERMANORUM.

CC. I-15.

Usipetēs et Tencterī Germānī in Galliam trāseunt, Menapiōs opprimunt.

1. Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī māgnā [cum] multitudīne hominū flūmen Rhēnum trāsiērunt, nōn longē ā mari, quō Rhēnus
5 influit. Causa trāseundi fuit, quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitāti bellō premēbantur et agrī culturā prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bel-
licōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotanni singula mīlia
10 armātōrum bellandī causā ex finibus ēducunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sic neque agrī cultura nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed privāti ac sēparāti agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque
15 longius annō remanēre unō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed māximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt multumque sunt in vēratiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne et libertāte vitāe, quod ā puerīs nullō officiō aut disciplinā
20 assuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et

virēs alit et immānī corporum māgnitudine hominēs
efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētudinem addūxērunt, ut
locis frigidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habērent
quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem māgna est cor-
poris pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus. 25

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae bellō
cēperint, quibus vēndant, habeant, quam quō ullam rem
ad sē importārī dēsiderent. Quin etiam iūmentīs, qui-
bus māmimē Galli dēlectantur, quaeque impēnsō parant
pretiō, [Germānī] importātis nōn utuntur, sed quae sunt 30
apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotidiānā
exercitātiōne, summī ut sint labōris, efficiunt. Eque-
stribus proeliis saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus proe-
liantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstigiō assuēfēcē-
runt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque 35
eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur
quam ephippiis utī. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephip-
piātōrum equitum quamvis paucī adire audent. Vinum
omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn sinunt, quod eā rē ad
labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēmīnārī 40
arbitrantur.

3. Publicē māmimam putant esse laudem, quam lātis-
simē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significārī,
māgnū numerum cīvitatū suam vim sustinēre nōn
posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia 45
passuum centum agrī vacāre dicuntur. Ad alteram
partem succēdunt Ubii, quōrum fuit cīvitas ampla atque
flōrēs, ut est captus Germānōrum; iī paulō, quamquam
sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēteris hūmāniōrēs, proptereā
quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs 50
ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicis sunt

mōribus assuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellis
 expertī propter amplitudinem gravitātemque cīvitātis
 finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectigālēs sibi
 55 fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiorēsque redēgērunt.

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tenctērī, quōs
 suprā diximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim susti-
 nuērunt, ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsi et multīs locīs
 Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt:
 60 quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hi ad utramque rī-
 pam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vicōsque habēbant; sed tan-
 tae multitudinis adventū perterritī, ex iīs aedificiis, quae
 trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāverant et cis Rhēnum
 dispositis praesidiis Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant. Illī
 65 omnia expertī cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam
 nāvium neque clam trānsire propter cūstodiās Menapi-
 ōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulā-
 vērunt et tridui viam prōgressī rūsus revertērunt atque,
 omni hōc itinere unā nocte equitātū cōnfecō, insciōs
 70 inopināntēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germā-
 nōrum discēssū per explorātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine metu
 trāns Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. His inter-
 fectis nāvibusque eōrum occupātis, prius quam ea pars
 Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret,
 75 flūmen trānsiērunt atque, omnibus eōrum aedificiis
 occupātis, reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis
 aluērunt.

Caesar Germānīs obviam exercitum dūcit; eōrum lēgatiō.

5. Iiis dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem
 Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliis capiendīs mōbilēs
 80 et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committen-

2 dum existimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis,
 uti et viātōrēs etiam invitōs cōsistere cōgant et, quid
 quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit,
 quaerant et mercātōrēs in oppidis vulgus circumsistat,
 quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnō- 85
 3 verint, prōnūtiāre cōgant. Hīs rēbus atque auditiōnibus
 permōti, dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum
 eōs in vēstigiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertīs rūmō-
 ribus serviant et plērique ad voluntātem eōrum ficta
 respondeant. 90

6. Quā cōsuētūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē graviōri bellō
 occurreret, mātūrius quam cōsuērat, ad exercitum pro-
 2 ficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae fore sūspicātus erat,
 3 facta cōgnōvit: missās legātiōnēs ab nōn nullis cīvitātibus
 ad Germānōs invitātōsque eōs, uti ab Rhēnō discēderent, 95
 4 omniaque, quae pōstulāssent, ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē
 adducti Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in finēs Eburō-
 num et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, per-
 5 vēnerant. Principibus Galliae ēvocātis, Caesar ea, quae
 cōgnōverat, dissimulanda sibi existimāvit eōrumque 100
 animīs permulsis et cōfirmātis equitātūque imperātō,
 bellum cum Germānis gerere cōstituit.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlectis,
 iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germānōs
 2 audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, 105
 3 lēgāti ab iis vēnerunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Ger-
 mānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre,
 neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quā armīs conten-
 dant, quod Germānōrū cōsuētūdō sit ā māiōribus
 trādita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque 110
 dēprecārī. Haec tamen dīcere, vēnisse invitōs, ēiectōs

domō; sī suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse iīs ūtilēs
 esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs
 tenēre, quōs armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnis Suēbis con-
 115 cēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse
 possint: reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem, quem
 nōn superāre possint.

8. Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum est respondit; sed
 exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: Sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam
 120 esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērū esse
 quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre;
 neque ullōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs, quī darī tantāe prae-
 sertim multitudinī sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī
 velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōnsidēre, quōrum sint lēgātī
 125 apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē
 auxilium petant: hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē
 dēliberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs:
 intereā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id
 130 quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cōgnōverat
 enim māgnam partem equitātūs ab iīs aliquot diēbus
 ante praedandī frūmentandique causā ad Ambivaritōs
 trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque eius
 rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

Mosae et Rhēnī flūminum dēscriptiō.

135 10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus
 Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae
 appellātur Vacalus, Insulam efficit Batāvōrum, neque
 longius inde milibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum influit.
 Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpēs incolunt,
 140 et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum,

Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum
 4 citātus fertur et, ubi Ōceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs
 diffluit partēs, multīs ingentibusque insulis effectis (quā-
 rum pars māgna ā ferīs barbarisque nātiōnibus incolitur,
 5 ex quibus sunt, quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vivere 145
 existimantur) multisque capitibus in Ōceanum Influit.

Victi Germānī trāns Rhēnum sē recipiunt.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII
 milibus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgātī
 revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī māgnopere, nē
 2 longius prōgrederētur, ōrābant. Cum id nōn impe- 150
 trāssent, petēbant, utī ad eōs equitēs, quī āgmen ante-
 cēssissent, praemitteret eōsque pūgnā prohibēret, sibi-
 3 ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī: quōrum
 sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrando fidem fēcisset,
 eā condiciōne, quae ā Caesare ferrētur, sē ūsūrōs osten- 155
 dēbant: ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret.
 4 Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābatur,
 ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abessent,
 reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius milibus passuum
 5 quattuor aquātiōnis causā prōcēssūrum eō diē dixit; hūc 160
 posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum
 6 pōstulātis cōgnōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum
 omni equitātū antecēsserant, mittit, quī nūntiārent, nē
 hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, susti-
 nērent, quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accēssisset. 165

12. At hostēs, ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōspexē-
 runt, quōrum erat quīnque milium numerus, cum ipsī
 nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod īī, quī
 frumentandi causā ierant trāns Mosam, nōndum redie-

170 rant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō
 ante ā Caesare discēsserant atque is diēs indūtilis erat ab
 hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāverunt;
 rursus hīs resistentibus, cōsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsilu- 2
 erunt, suffossisque equis complūribusque nostris dēiectis
 175 reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs
 ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent, quam in cōn-
 spectum āgminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex
 equitibus nostris interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā,
 in hīs vir fortissimus Pisō Aquitānus amplissimō genere
 180 nātus, cuius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat
 amicus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hic cum frātrī
 interclūsō ā hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō
 eripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortis-
 simō restitit; cum circumventus multis vulneribus accep- 6
 185 tis cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excēsserat,
 procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit
 atque interfectus est.

13. Hōc factō proeliō, Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs
 audiendōs neque condiціōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab
 190 iīs, quī per dolum atque insidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum
 intulissent: exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augē- 2
 rentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse
 iudicābat, et cōgnitā Gallōrum infirmitāte, quantum iam
 apud eōs hostēs unō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōse-
 195 cūtī, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōsilia capiēda nihil spatī
 dandum existimābat. Hīs cōstitutis rēbus et cōsiliō
 cum lēgātīs et quaestōre comunicātō, nē quem diem
 pūgnae praetermitteret, opportunissima rēs accidit, quod
 postrīdiē eius diēi māne eādem et simulātiōne et perfi-
 200 diā usī Germānī frequentēs omnibus prīncipibus māiōri-

busque nātū adhibitīs ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dicēbātur, pūrgandī suī causā, quod contrā, atque esset dictum et ipsī petissent, proelium prīdiē commississent, simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinērī 205 iūssit: ipse ōmnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse existimābat, āgmen subsequī iūssit.

14. Acīē triplici īstitutā et celeriter viii milium itinere cōfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid 210 agerētur Germānī sentire possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterriti et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discēssū suōrum, neque cōsiliī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an fugā salutem petere praestāret. 215 Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, militēs nostrī pristinī diēi perfidiā incitātī in castra irrūperunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimenta proelium commiserunt; at reliqua multitudine 220 puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domō exēsserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōsectandōs Caesar equitātum misit.

15. Germānī, post tergum clāmōre auditō, cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs signisque militāribus 225 relictīs sē ex castrīs eiēcērunt, et cum ad cōfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, māgnō numerō interfectō, reliqui sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitudine, vī flūminis oppressi perierunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnes incolumēs, perpaucis 230 vulnerātis, ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus

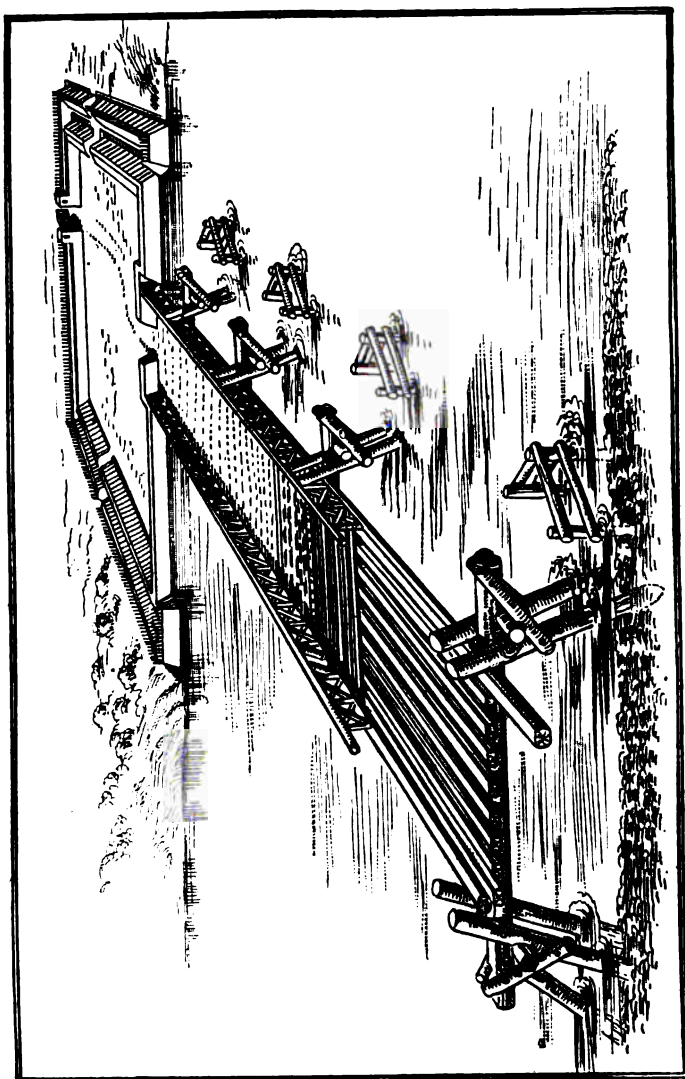
capitum cccxxx milium fuisset, se in castra recēperunt. Caesar iis, quōs in castris retinuerat, discēdendī potestātem 4
fēcit. Illi supplicia cruciātusque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum 5
285 agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertātem concēssit.

II. CAESARIS IN GERMANIAM TRANSITUS.

CC. 16-19.

16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō, multis dē causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit iustissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impelli
240 ut in Galliam venīrent, suis quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellexerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsire. Accēssit etiam, quod illa pars 2
equitātis Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprà *mentioned about Clodius* commorāvī praedandī frumentandique causā Mosam trāns-
245 isse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum his coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset, quī 3
pōstulārent, eōs, quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dēderent, respondērunt: Populī Rōmānī imperium 4
250 Rhēnum finīre: sī sē invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existimārēt, cūr suī quidquam esse imperiī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum pōstulāret? Ubiū autem, 5
quī unī ex Trānsrhēnānis ad Caesarem lēgātōs miserant, amicitiam fēceraut, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere orābant,
255 ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbis premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus rei publicae prohibē- 6
rētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret: id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tan- 7





THE BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE.

tum esse nōmen atque opiniōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō
pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās
Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opiniōne et amicitia populi
Rōmānī tuti esse possent. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad
transportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs, quās commemorāvi, Rhēnum
trānsire dēcreverat; sed nāvibus trānsire neque satis tūtum
esse arbitrābatur, neque suae neque populi Rōmānī digni-
tātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultās faci-
endi pontis prōpōnēbatur propter lātitudinem, rapiditatem
altitudinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut
aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existimābat. Ratiōnem
pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sēsquipedalia paulum
ab imō praeacūta dīmēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis inter-
vāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchi-
nātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat fistūcisque adē-
gerat, nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed
prōnē ac fāstīgātē ut secundum nātūrā flūminis prōcum-
berent, iis item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūcta in-
tervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim
atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utra-
que insuper bipedalibus trabibus immissis, quantum eōrum
tignōrum iūctūra distābat, binis utrimque fibulis ab ex-
trēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrā-
riam partem revinctis tanta erat operis firmitudō atque ea
rērū nātūra, ut, quō māior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc
artius illigāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā materiā iniectā
contexēbantur ac longuriis crātibusque cōnsternēbantur;
ac nihilō setius sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis
obliquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omni
opere coniūctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item

290 *suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sive nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbaris immissae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu ponti nocērent.*

18. *Diēbus decem, quibus māteria coepta erat compor-*
 295 *tārī, omni opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar, ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō, in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus civitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiā petentibus liberāliter respondit obsidēsque ad sē*
 300 *addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore, quō pōns institui coeptus est, fugā comparātā, hortantibus iīs, quōs ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis excēsserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem āc silvās abdiderant.*

305 19. *Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omnibus vicīs aedificiisque incēnsis frūmentisque succīs, sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque iīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab hīs cōgnōvit: Suēbōs, postea quam per explorātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent,*
 310 *mōre suō conciliō habitō, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimississe, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvis dēpōnerent, atque omnēs, quī arma ferre possent, unum in locum convenirent: hunc esse dēlectum medium ferē regiōnum eārum, quās Suēbī obtinērent: hic*
 315 *Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōstituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iīs rēbus cōfectis, quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōstituerat, ut Germānis metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō*
 320 *xviii trāns Rhēnum cōsumptis, satis et ad laudem et ad*

utilitatem profectum arbitratus, se in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

III. BELLUM BRITANNICUM.

CC. 20-36.

Litoribus Britanniae explorātis Caesar classem ad transitum cōgit.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā, Caesar, etsi in hīs locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, 325 quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde
2 subministrata auxilia intellegēbat et, si tempus [anni] ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsui fore arbitrābatur, si modo Insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia 330
3 ferē Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsis quicquam praeter ōram marinam atque eas regiōnēs, quae sunt
4 contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātis ad se undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset Insulae māgnitūdō, neque 335 quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum belli haberent aut quibus Institūtis ūterentur, neque quī essent ad māiōrem nāvium multitudinem idōneī portūs, reperire poterat.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, prius quam periculum faceret, 340 idōneum esse arbitratus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā
2 praemittit. Huic mandat, ut explorātis omnibus rēbus ad
3 se quam primum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britan-
4 niam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimis regiōnibus 345 et, quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat

clāssem, iubet convenīre. Interim cōnsiliō eius cōgnitō
et per mercatōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus
Insulae civitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur
350 obsidēs dare atque imperiō populi Rōmānī obtemperāre.
Quibus auditīs, liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā
sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit, et cum iīs unā
Commiū, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōn-
stituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem
355 sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābatur, cūiusque auctoritās in hīs
regiōnibus māgnī habēbatur, mittit. Hūc imperat, quās
possit, adeat civitatēs horteturque, ut populi Rōmānī fidem
sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus
perspectīs regiōnibus, quantum ei facultātis darī potuit
360 quī nāvi ēgredi āc sē barbarīs committere nōn auderet,
quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset
renūntiat.

*Morinōs, unde trāiectus in Britanniam brevissimus est, in
fidem recipit.*

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā
moratur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī
365 vērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsarent,
quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperitī
bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāset,
factūrōs pollicerentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis oportūnē
accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relin-
370 quere volēbat neque belli gerendī propter annī tempus
facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupā-
tiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iudicābat, māgnū iīs
numerus obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs, eōs in fidem
recēpit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerariīs coāctīs [cōntrāc-

tisque], quot satis esse ad duās transportandās legiōnēs 375
 existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat,
 1 quaestōri, lēgātis praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēde-
 bant xviii onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus
 passuum octō ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem
 3 portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reli- 380
 quum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et L. Aurunculēiō Cottae
 lēgātis in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ā
 4 quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit;
 Sulpicium Rufum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō, quod satis
 esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre iussit. 385

Caesar in insulam trāicit.

23. His cōstitutis rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigan-
 dum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in
 ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē se-
 1 qui iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrā-
 tum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quārtā cum primis nāvibus 390
 Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās
 2 hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Cuius loci haec erat
 nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur,
 3 utī ex locis superiōribus in litus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc
 ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, 395
 dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in
 4 ancoris exspectāvit. Interim lēgātis tribūnisque militum
 convocātis, et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset et quae fieri
 vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut rei militāris ratiō, māximē
 ut maritimae rēs pōstulārent, ut quae celerem atque instā- 400
 bilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs
 5 rēs ab iis administrārentur. His dīmissis et ventum et
 aestum unō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sub-

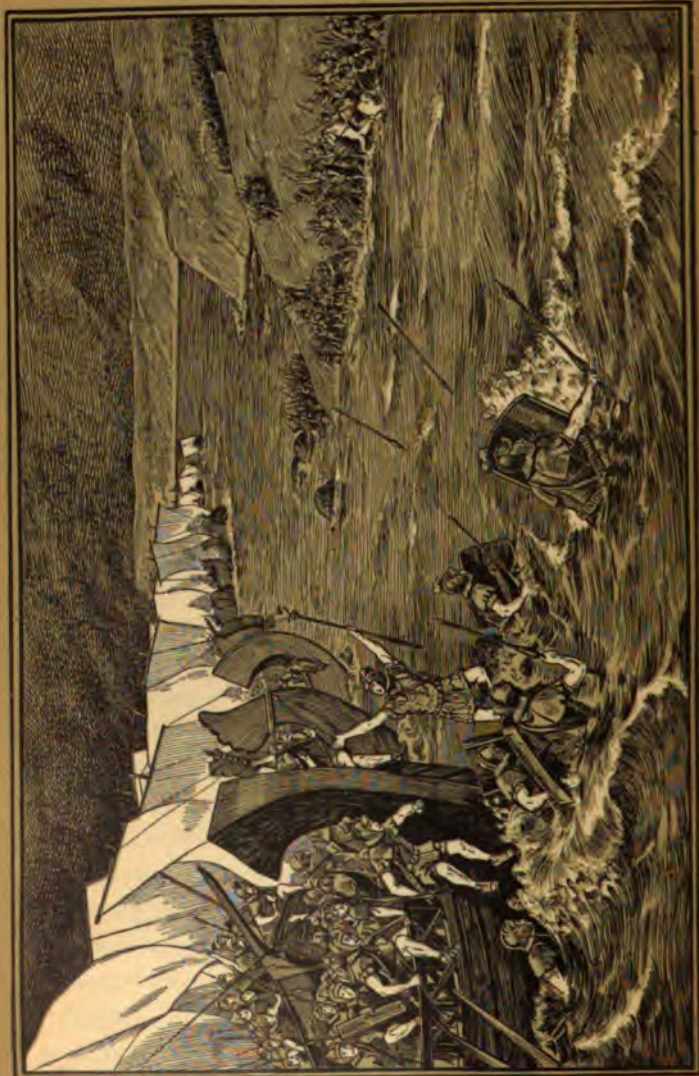
lātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō
405 prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.

Britannōs in fugam vertit. Eōrum dēditio.

24. At barbarī, cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō
equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs
utī cōsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus
ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, 2
410 quod nāvēs propter māgnitudinem nisi in altō cōstitui
nōn poterant, militibus autem, ignōtīs locīs, impeditīs
manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum pressīs, simul
et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum
et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum, cum illi aut ex āridō aut 3
415 paulum in aquam prōgressī, omnibus membrīs expeditīs,
nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tela cōnicerent et equōs insuēfac-
tōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterriti atque hūius 4
omnīnō generis pūgnae imperitī nōn eādē alacritāte
ac studiō, quō in pedestribus utī proeliīs cōsuērunt, utē-
420 bantur.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum
et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitiōr et mōtus ad ūsum
expeditior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs
incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstitui atque inde
425 fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpelli ac submovērī
iūssit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium 2
figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum
permōtī, barbarī cōstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem
rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs militibus cunctantibus, māximē 3
430 propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam
ferēbat, obtēstātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēvenīret,
'Dēsilīte,' inquit, 'commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hosti-





CAESAR'S LANDING IN BRITAIN.

From Garth's

bus prōdere : ego certē meum rei pūblīcae atque imperā-
 • tōri officium praestiterō.' Hōc cum vōce māgnā dixisset,
 sē ex nāvi prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. 485
 • Tum nostrī cohortāti inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus ad-
 • mitterētur, universī ex nāvi dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex
 proximīs nāvibus cum cōspexissent, subsecūti hostibus
 appropinquāvērunt.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, 440
 quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque
 signa subsequī poterant, atque aliū aliā ex nāvi, quibus-
 cumque signīs occurrerat, sē aggregābat, māgnopere per-
 • turbābantur ; hostēs vērō, nōtis omnibus vadīs, ubi ex
 litore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvi ēgredientēs cōspex- 445
 • rant, incitātis equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs
 circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in universōs tēla
 • cōniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās
 longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia militibus
 complēri iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōspexerat, hīs subsi- 450
 • dia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in aridō cōstitērunt, suis
 omnibus cōsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs
 in fugam dedērunt, neque longius prōsequī potuērunt,
 quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere nōn
 potuerant. Hōc unum ad pristinam fortūnam Caesarī 455
 dēfuit.

27. Hostēs proeliō superāti, simul atque sē ex fugā
 recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt ;
 obsidēs datūrōs, quaeque imperāset factūrōs sēsē polliciti
 • sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem 460
 suprā dēmōstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam prae-
 • missum. Hunc illi ē nāvi ēggressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris
 modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque

in vincula cōniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remisērunt et
 465 in petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitudinem contu-
 lērunt et propter imprudentiam ut Ignōscerētur petivē-
 runt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ultrō in continentem
 lēgātis missis pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā
 intulissent, Ignōscere imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque
 470 inperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem
 ex longinquiōribus locis arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē
 datūrōs dixerunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs
 iussērunt, principēsque undique convenire et sē civitā-
 tēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

Clāsse Rōmānā tempestāte afflētā Britannī coniūrant.

475 28. His rebus pāce cōfirmātā, post diem quārtum,
 quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs xviii, dē quibus
 suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex
 superiōre portū lēni ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appro-
 pinquārent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta
 480 tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nulla eārum cursum tenēre
 posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur,
 aliae ad inferiōrem partem Insulae, quae est propius sōlis
 occāsum, māgnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae
 tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complērentur, neces-
 485 sariō adversā nocte in altum provectae continentem
 petiērunt.

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs
 maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Oceanō efficere cōsuēvit,
 nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita unō tempore et longās
 490 nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrā-
 verat quāsque in aridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat,
 et onerāriās quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās

afflictābat, neque ulla nostrīs facultās aut administrandi
 3 aut auxiliandi dabatur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs reli-
 quae cum essent, fūnibus, ancorīs reliquisque armāmentīs 495
 āmissīs ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna, id quod necesse
 erat accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est.
 4 Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent,
 et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī,
 et, quod omnibus cōstābat, hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, 500
 frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnītīs, prīncipēs Britanniae, qui
 post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī,
 cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse
 intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exi- 505
 guitāte cōgnōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiora,
 quod sine impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat,
 2 optimum factū esse dūxerunt rebellīōne factā frūmentō
 commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prō-
 dūcere, quod, hīs superātīs aut reditū interclusīs, nēminem 510
 postea belli inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum
 3 cōnfidēbant. Itaque, rūsus coniūrātiōne factā, paulātim
 ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere
 coepērunt.

Caesar nāvēs reficit.

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, 515
 tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs
 dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, sūspicābatur.
 2 Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et
 frūmentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae
 gravissimē afflictāe erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque 520
 aere ad reliquās reficiendās utēbatur et quae ad eas rēs
 3 erant ūsuī ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque, cum

summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, duodecim
 nāvibus āmissis, reliquis ut nāvigārī commodē posset,
 525 effēcit.

Britannī proeliō pulsī fugiunt.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōsuētudine unā
 frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque
 ullā ad id tempus belli sūspiciōne interpositā, cum pars
 hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra venti-
 530 tāret, il, qui prō portis castrōrum in statióne erant,
 Caesarī nūntiāverunt pulverem māiōrem, quam cōn-
 suētudō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō
 iter fēcisset. Caesar id, quod erat, sūspicātus, aliquid
 novi ā barbaris initum cōnsiliī, cohortēs, quae in statio-
 535 nibus erant, sēcum in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquis
 duās in statiónem cohortēs succēdere, reliquās armārī
 et cōnfestim sēsē subsequi iussit. Cum paulō longius ā
 castris prōcēssisset, suos ab hostibus premi atque aegrē
 sustinēre et, cōnfertā legiōne, ex omnibus partibus tela
 540 cōnici animāadvertit. Nam quod omni ex reliquis parti-
 bus dēmesso frūmentō pars una erat reliqua, sūspicātī
 hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvis delitue-
 rant: tum dispersōs dēpositis armīs in metendō occupātōs
 subito adorti paucis interfectis reliquōs incertis ordinibus
 545 perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedis circumde-
 derant.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedis pūgnae. Primō per
 omnēs partēs perequitant et tela cōniciunt atque ipsō
 terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque
 550 perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāverunt,
 ex essedis dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae
 interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs

collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur,
 3 expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem
 equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac 555
 tantum usum cotidianum et exercitatione efficiunt, uti in
 declivi ac praecipiti loco incitatos equos sustinere et brevi
 moderari ac flectere et per temonem percurrere et in
 iugo insistere et se inde in currus citissime recipere
 consueverint.

560

34. Quibus rebus perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae
 tempore opportunissimo Cacsar auxilium tulit: namque
 eius adventu hostes constituerunt, nostri se ex timore recē-
 3 perunt. Quo facto ad lacessendum hostem et committen-
 dum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus suo se loco 565
 continuit et brevi tempore intermisso in castra legiones
 3 reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis,
 4 qui erant in agris reliqui, discesserunt. Secutae sunt
 continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros
 in castris continerent et hostem a pugna prohiberent. 570
 5 Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes dimiserunt
 paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedicaverunt
 et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui
 liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent,
 6 demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna multitu- 575
 dine peditatus equitatusque coacta, ad castra venerunt.

35. Caesar etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat,
 fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum
 effugerent, tamen nactus equites circiter xxx, quos Com-
 4 mius Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est, secum transporta- 580
 5 verat, legiones in aciem pro castris constituit. Commissio
 proelio diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre
 3 non potuerunt ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto spatio.

secūtī, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, com-
 585 plūrēs ex iis occīdērunt, deindē omnibus longē lātēque
 aedificiis incēnsis sē in castra recēpērunt.

Obsidibus acceptis Caesar in Galliam redit.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē
 pāce vērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante
 imperāverat, duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī
 590 iūssit, quod propinquā diē aequinocii infirmis nāvibus
 hiemī nāvigationem subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse
 idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem
 nāvēs solvit: quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem per-
 vērunt; sed ex iis onerariae duae eōsdem portūs, quōs
 595 reliquae, capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infrā delatae sunt.

*IV. MORINOS MENAPIOSQUE REBELLANTES CAESAR SUBIGIT.
 SUPPLICATIO A SENATU DECRETA.*

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi militēs cir-
 citer trecenti atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quōs
 Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācatōs reliquerat, spē
 praedae adducti primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō
 600 circumsteterunt ac, si sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere
 iūssērunt. Cum illi orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter
 ad clāmōrem hominum circiter milia sex convērunt.
 Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum suis
 auxiliō misit. Interim nostri militēs impetum hostium
 605 sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris quattuor fortissimē
 pūgnāverunt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complūrēs ex
 his occīdērunt. Postea vērō quam equitātus noster in
 cōspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectis armis terga vērunt
 magnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iis 610
legiōnibus, quās ex Britannīā redūxerat, in Morinōs, quī
rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitatēs
palūdum, quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent, quō perfugiō
superiōre annō erant usī, omnēs ferē in potestātem La-
biēnī vērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī 615
in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum
agrīs vāstātis, frūmentis succīs, aedificiis incēnsis, quod
Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad
Caesarem recēperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legiōnum
hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britan- 620
niā obsidēs mīserunt, reliquae neglēxerunt. His rēbus
gestis ex litteris Caesaris diērum vīginti supplicatiō ā
senātu dēcrēta est.

COMMENTARIUS QUINTUS.

I. CAESARIS ILLYRICUM ITER.

C. I.

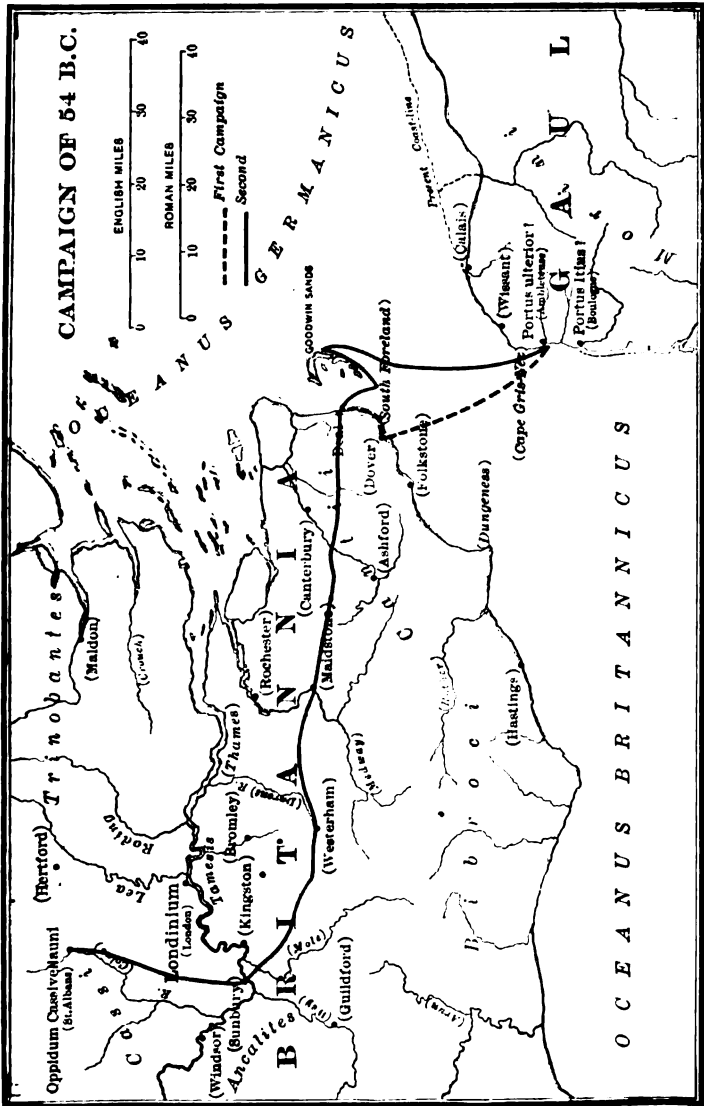
Pācātiō Pīrūstārum.

1. L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōsulibus, discēdēns ab hibernīs Caesar in Ītaliā, ut quotannis facere cōsuērat, lēgātīs imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, utī quam plūrimās possent hieme nāvēs aedificandās veteresque reficiendās cūrent. Eārum modum fōrmamque dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnēsque paulō facit humiliōrēs, quam quibus in nostrō marī utī cōsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crebrās commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs fierī cōgnōverat, ad onera ac multitudinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs, quam quibus in reliquīs utimur maribus. Hās omnēs actuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum humilitās adiuvat. Ea, quae sunt usuī ad armandās nāvēs, ex Hispāniā apportārī iubet. Ipse, conventibus Galliae citeriōris peractis, in Īllyricum proficiscitur, quod ā Pīrūstīs finitimam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in locum convenīre iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā, Pīrūstae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, quī doceant nihil eārum rerum publicō factum cōsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrent omnibus ratiōnibus de

CAMPAIGN OF 54 B.C.

ENGLISH MILES
0 10 20 30 40

ROMAN MILES
0 10 20 30 40
----- First Campaign
----- Second



OCEANUS BRITANNICUS

iniuriis satis facere. Perceptā oratione eorum, Caesar
obsidēs imperat eosque ad certam diem adducī iubet; nisi
ita fecerint, sese bellō civitatem persecuturum dēmon-
strat. Iis ad diem adductis ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter 25
civitātēs dat qui litem aestiment poenamque cōstituant.

II. SECUNDA CAESARIS IN BRITANNIAM EXPEDITIO.

CC. 2-23.

Trēverōrum contentiōnēs compōnuntur.

2. His cōfectis rēbus conventibusque peractis, in cite-
riorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum profi-
ciscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitis omnibus hibernis,
singulārī militum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā 30
circiter sexcentās eius generis, cuius suprà dēmonstrā-
vimus, nāvēs et longās xxviii invēnit instructās neque
multum abesse ab eō, quā paucis diēbus dēducī possint.
3. Collaudatis militibus atque iis, qui negotiō praefuerant,
quid fierī velit, ostendit atque omnēs ad portum Itium 35
convenire iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britan-
niam trāiectum esse cōgnōverat, circiter milium passuum
xxx trāsmissum ā continentī; huic rei quod satis esse
4. vīsum est militum relinquit. Ipse cum legiōnibus expē-
ditis iv et equitibus dccc in finēs Trēverōrum proficiscitur, 40
quod hī neque ad concilia veniebant neque imperiō parē-
bant Germānosque Trānsrhēnānos sollicitāre dicebantur.

3. Haec civitās longē plurimum tōtius Galliae equitātū
valet māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut
2. suprà dēmonstrāvimus, tangit. In eā civitāte duo dē 45
prīncipātū inter se contendēbant, Indutiomārus et Cinge-
3. torix; ex quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnum-

que adventū cōgnitum est, ad eum vēnit, sē suōsque
omnēs in officiō futurōs neque ab amicitia populi Rōmāni
50 dēfectūrōs cōfirmāvit quaeque in Trēverīs gererentur
ostendit. At Indutiomārus equitātum peditātumque cō-
gere iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse nōn poterant,
in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti māgnitudine
per mediōs finēs Trēverōrum ā flumine Rhēnō ad initium
55 Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre instituit. Sed postea
quam nōn nulli principēs ex eā cīvitāte, et auctoritate
Cingetorigis adducti et adventū nostrī exercitus perterriti,
ad Caesarem vēnerunt et de suis privātis rēbus ab eō
petere coeperunt, quoniam cīvitātī cōnsulere nōn possent,
60 veritus nē ab omnibus dēsereretur, lēgātōs ad Caesarem
mittit: Sēsē idcirco ab suis discēdere atque ad eum venīre
nōluisse, quō facilius cīvitātem in officiō contineret, nē
omnis nōbilitātis discēssū plēbs propter imprudentiam
lāberetur: itaque cīvitātem in suā potestate esse, sēque,
65 sī Caesar permetteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, et suās
cīvitātisque fortunās eius fidēi permissūrum.

4. Caesar, etsi intellegēbat, quā de causā ea dicerentur,
quaeque eum rēs ab institutō cōnsiliō dēterreret, tamen,
nē aestātem in Trēverīs cōnsumere cōgeretur, omnibus
70 rēbus ad Britannicum bellum comparātis, Indutiomārum
ad sē cum ducentis obsidibus venīre iussit. His adductis,
in iis filiō propinquisque eius omnibus, quōs nōminatim
ēvocāverat, cōsolātus Indutiomārum hortātusque est,
utī in officiō maneret; nihilō tamen sētius principibus
75 Trēverōrum ad sē convocātis hōs singillatim Cingetorigi
conciliāvit; quod cum meritō eius ab sē fieri intellegēbat,
tum māgnī interesse arbitrābātur eius auctoritātem inter
suos quam plurimum valēre, cuius tam ēgregiam in sē

voluntātem perspexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indutiomārus, [suam grātiā inter suōs minui], et qui iam ante inimicō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc dolore exarsit.

Caesar cōpiās ad portum Itium colligit; Dumnorix infidus a fugā revocātus, resistēns interficitur.

5. His rēbus cōstitutis, Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit LX nāvēs, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus instructās invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtius Galliae convenit numerō milia quattuor prīncipēsque ex omnibus civitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcreverat, quod cum ipse abesset mōtum Galliae verēbatur.

6. Erat unā cum cēteris Dumnorix Aeduus, dē quō ante ā nobis dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in primis cōstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperiī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc, quod in conciliō Aeduōrum Dumnorix dixerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum civitātis dēferri; quod dictum Aeduī graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille omnibus primō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinqueretur, partim quod Insuētus nāvigandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impediri sēsē diceret. Postēā quam id obstinātē sibi negārī vīdit, omni spē impetrandī adēptā, prīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs

hortārīque coepit, utī in continentī remanērent; metū ter-
ritāre: nōn sine causā fierī, ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte
spoliārētur; id esse cōsiliū Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōn-
110 spectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Bri-
tanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere, 6
iūs iūrandum pōscere, ut, quod esse ex usū Galliae
intellēxissent, commūnī cōsiliō administrārent. Haec
ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

115 7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum civitātī Ae-
duae dignitātis tribuēbat, coercendum atque dēterrendum,
quibuscumque rēbus posset, Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod 2
longius eius āmentiam prōgredi vidēbat, prōspiciendum,
nē quid sibi ac rei publicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs 3
120 circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod chōrus ventus
nāvigationem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis
temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōsuēvit, dabat operam, ut
in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret, nihilō tamen sētius
omnia eius cōnsilia cōgnōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus 4
125 tempestātem milītēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvēs iubet.
At omnium impeditīs animīs, Dumnorīx cum equitibus 5
Aeduōrum ā castrīs insciente Caesare domum discēdere
coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā profectiōne 6
atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs, māgnam partem equi-
130 tātūs ad eum insequendum mittit retrahīque imperat; sī 7
vim faciat neque pareat, interfici iubet, nihil hunc sē
absente prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis im-
perium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē 8
manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit saepe
135 clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse civitātis. Illi, ut
erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interfi-
ciunt; at equitēs Aeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

*Caesar in Britanniam exercitum trādūcit, fugatque
Britannōs.*

8. His rēbus gestis Labiēno in cōtinentī cum tribus
legiōnibus et equitum milibus duobus relictō, ut portus
tueretur et rei frumentariae prōvidēret, quaeque in Gal- 140
liā gererentur cōgnōsceret cōsiliūque prō tempore et
2 prō rē caperet, ipse cum quinque legiōnibus et parī
numerō equitum, quem in cōtinentī relinquebat, ad sōlis
occāsum nāvēs solvit; et lenī Africō prōvectus, mediā
circiter nocte, ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit, et 145
longius delātus aestū, ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam
3 relictam cōspexit. Tum rūsus aestūs commutātiōnem
secūtus rēmīs contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet,
quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cōgnōverat.
4 Quā in rē admodum fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī 150
vectōriis gravibusque nāvigiis, nōn intermissō rēmigandī
5 labōre, longārum nāvium cursum adaequāunt. Accēs-
sum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiāno ferē
6 tempore neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut postea
Caesar ex captivīs cōgnōvit, cum māgnae manūs eō con- 155
vērissent, multitudine nāvium perterritae, quae cum
annōtinīs privātisque, quās suī quisque commodi causā
fēcerat, amplius octingentae unō erant vīsae tempore, ā
litore discēsserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castris idōneō captō, 160
ubi ex captivīs cōgnōvit, quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōn-
sēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictis et equitibus ccc,
quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs
contendit eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in litore molli
atque apertō deligātās ad ancorās relinquebat. Eī prae- 165

sidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prō-
gressus milia passuum circiter XII hostium cōpiās cōnspi-
cātus est. Illi equitātū atque essedis ad flūmen prōgressi
ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium commit-
170 tere coepērunt. Repulsi ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidē-
runt, locum nacti ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnitum,
quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante prae-
parāverant; nam crēbris arboribus succisis omnēs intro-
itus erant praeclusi. Ipsī ex silvis rārī prōpugnābant
175 nostrōsque intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At
militēs legiōnis septimae tēstūdine factā et aggere ad
mūnitiōnēs adiectō locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvis expu-
lērunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eōs fugientēs
longius Caesar prōsequi vetuit, et quod loci nātūrā ignō-
180 rābat, et quod māgnā parte diēi consumptā mūnitiōni
castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

Classis tempestāte afflictā in litōre reficitur.

10. Postridiē eius diēi māne tripertitō militēs equitēs-
que in expeditiōnem mīsīt, ut eōs, quī fūgerant, per-
sequerentur. His aliquantum itineris prōgressis, cum
185 iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad
Caesarem vērunt, quī nūntiārent superiōre nocte
māximā coortā tempestāte prope omnēs nāvēs afflictās
atque in litus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque
sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tem-
190 pestātis pati possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium
māgnū esse incommodum acceptum.

11. His rēbus cōgnitis Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque
revocāri atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs
revertitur: eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiis [litteris] cō-

gnōverat, cōram perspicit, sic ut āmissis circiter XL 195
 nāvibus reliquae tamen refici posse māgnō negōtiō vidē-
 3 rentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex con-
 4 tinenti aliōs arcessi iubet; Labiēnō scribit, ut, quam
 plurimās possit, iis legiōnibus, quae sint apud eum, nāvēs
 5 instituat. Ipse, etsi rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, 200
 tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs subducī
 6 et cum castris unā mūnitiōne coniungi. In his rēbus
 circiter diēs x cōsumit nē nocturnis quidem tempo-
 7 ribus ad labōrem militum intermissis. Subductis nāvibus
 castrisque ēgregiē mūnitis eāsdem cōpiās, quās ante, prae- 205
 sidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eōdem, unde redierat, pro-
 8 ficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, māiōrēs iam undique in eum
 locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperiī
 bellique administrandi commūni cōsiliō permissā Cas-
 sivellaunō; cuius finēs ā maritimis civitatibus flūmen 210
 dividit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā mārī circiter milia
 9 passuum LXXX. Hūc superiōre tempore cum reliquis
 civitatibus continentia bella intercēsserant; sed nostrō
 adventū permōti Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque
 praefecerant.

215

Britanniae eiusque incolarum descriptiō.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos nātōs
 in insulā ipsā memoriā prōditum dīcunt, maritima pars
 2 ab iis, quī praedae ac bellī inferendi causā ex Belgiō
 trāsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē isdem nōminibus civitātum
 appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eō prevēnerunt) et 220
 bellō illātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt.
 3 Hominum est infīnita multitudo crēberrimaeque aedificia
 4 ferē Gallicis cōnsimilia, pecoris māgnus numerus. Utun-

tur [aut aere] aut nummō aureō aut tāleis ferreis ad
 225 certum pondus exāminātis prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi
 plumbum album in mediterrāneis regiōnibus, in maritimis
 ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere utuntur importātō.
 Māteria cuiusque generis, ut in Galliā, est praeter fāgum
 atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et ānserem gustāre
 230 fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptātisque
 causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra, quam in Galliā remis-
 siōribus frīgoribus.

13. Insula nātūrā triquetra, cuius unum latus est
 contrā Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad
 235 Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur,
 ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hōc
 latus tenet circiter milia passuum quīngenta. Alterum
 vergit ad Hispāniam, atque occidentem sōlem: quā ex
 parte est Hibernia, insula dimidiō minor, ut existimātur,
 240 quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trāsmisus atque ex
 Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est insula,
 quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs
 obiectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulīs nōn nulli
 scripsērunt diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmam esse noctem.
 245 Nōs nihil de eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus nisi cer-
 tis ex aquā mēnsuris breviōrēs esse quam in continēti
 noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert
 illōrum opīniō, dcc milium. Tertium est contrā septen-
 triōnēs; cui parti nulla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus
 250 alter māximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc milium
 passuum octingentum in longitūdinem esse existimātur.
 Ita omnis insula est in circuitū viciēs centum milium
 passuum.

14. Ex his omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, qui

Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque
 2 multum à Gallicâ differunt cōsuētudine. Interiōrēs
 plērique frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt
 pellibusque sunt vestīti. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō
 inficiunt quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horri-
 3 biliōrēs sunt in pūgnā āspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō 260
 atque omni parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum
 4 superius. Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē
 cōmūnēs et māximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēque
 5 cum liberis; sed quī sunt ex iis nātī, eōrum habentur
 liberī, quō primum vīrgō quaeque deducta est. 265

*Caesar Tamesim trānsit, Britannōs fugat, Cassivellaunum
 ducem subigit.*

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriūque ācriter proeliō cum
 equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen ut
 nostri omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in
 2 silvās collēsque compulerint; ~~sed~~ complūribus interfectis
 3 cupidius Insecūtī nōn nullōs ex suis āmisērunt. At illī 270
 intermissō spatiō, imprudentibus nostris atque occupātis
 in mūnitiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvis eiēcērunt,
 impetūque in eōs factō quī erant in statīōne prō castris
 4 collocātī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missis subsidiō
 cohortibus ā Caesare atque hīs primīs legiōnum duārum, 275
 cum eae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōn-
 stitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritis nostris, per
 mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs
 5 recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus mī-
 litum, interficitur. Illī plūribus submissis cohortibus 280
 repelluntur.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae cum sub oculis omnium

ac prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdētēs possent neque ab sīgnīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse
285 ad hūius generis hostem, equitēs autem māgnō cum periculō proeliō dīmicāre, proptereā quod illi etiam cōnsultō plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsiliērent et pedibus
290 dispari proeliō contenderent. [Equestris autem proeliī ratiō et cēdentibus et īnsequentibus pār atque idem periculum īnferēbat.] Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī māgnisque intervāllis proeliārentur statīōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps
295 exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatigātis succēderent.

17. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōstitērunt rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē cum Caesar pābulandī causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem
300 equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sic utī ab sīgnīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācriter in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt neque finem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē
305 legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, māgnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colligendī neque cōnsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique convēnerant, auxilia discēssērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs
310 nōbīscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in finēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen unō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsiri potest.

2 Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam
 3 māgnās esse cōpiās hostium instructās. Rīpa autem erat 815
 acūtis sudibus praefixisque mūnita, eiusdemque generis
 4 sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. His rēbus
 cōgnitis ā captivīs perfugisque Caesar praemissō equi-
 5 tātū cōfestim legiōnēs subsequi iussit. Sed eā celeritāte
 atque eō impetū militēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā 320
 exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum
 sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae
 mandārent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, omni
 dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissis ampliōribus cōpīs, 325
 milibus circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relictis, itinera
 nostra servābat paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque
 impeditis ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque iis regiō-
 nibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat, pecora atque
 2 hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus 330
 noster liberius praedandi vāstandique causā sē in agrōs
 effunderet, omnibus viis sēmitisque essedāriōs ex silvis
 ēmittēbat et māgnō cum periculō nostrōrum equitum
 cum his cōfligēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagārī pro-
 3 hibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab āgmine 335
 legiōnum discēdi Caesar paterētur, et tantum [in] agrīs
 vāstandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus nocērētur,
 quantum labōre atque itinere legiōnārii militēs efficere
 poterant.

Trinovantium et complūrium civitatum deditio.

20. Interim Trinovantēs, prope firmissima eārum regi- 340
 ōnum civitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris
 fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem [Galliam] vēnerat

(cuius pater in eā civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectus-
que erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vitāverat),
345 legātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pellicenturque sēsē ei dēdi-
tūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt ut Mandubracium
ab iniuriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in civitatem
mittat, quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar
imperat obsidēs quadrāgintā frūmentumque exercitui
350 Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illi imperāta celeriter
fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque misērunt.

21. Trinovantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī militum iniū-
riā prohibitīs Cēnimagnī, Segontiāci, Ancalitēs, Bibroci,
Cassī legātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab hīs
355 cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī
abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis māgnus
hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum au-
tem Britannī vocant, cum silvās impeditās vāllō atque
fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vitandae causā
360 convenīre cōsuērunt. Eō proficiscitur cum legiōnibus;
locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum;
tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit.
Hostēs paulisper morātī militum nostrōrum impetum
nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī eiēcērunt.
365 Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus multique in fugā
sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad
Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōstrāvimus,
quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix,
370 Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque
hīs imperat, utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia
dē imprōvisō adoriantur atque oppugnent. Hi cum ad
castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multis eōrum

interfectis, captō etiam nōbili duce Lugotorige suōs incolūmēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, 375
 tot dētrimentis acceptis, vāstātis finibus, māximē etiam permōtus defectiōne civitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem
 4 Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentinōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset atque id 380
 facile extrahī posse intellexeret, obsidēs imperat et quid in annōs singulōs vectigālis populō Rōmānō Britannia
 5 penderet cōstituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus noceat.

Caesaris in Galliam reditus.

23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum redūcit ad mare, 385
 2 nāvēs invenit refectās. His dēductis, quod et captivōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, et nōn nullae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre Instituit. Āc sic accidit utī ex tantō nāvium
 3 numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hōc neque superiōre 390
 annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis, quae militēs portāret, dēsiderārētur; at ex iis, quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, [et] priōris commeātūs expositis militibus, et quās postea Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō lx, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae ferē omnēs rēice- 395
 5 rentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāssset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne excluderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessariō angustius militēs collocāvit āc, summā tranquillitāte cōsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit omnēsque 400
 incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

III. BELLUM AMBIORIGIS.

CC. 24-52.

Legiōnēs Rōmānae in plūrēs civitatēs distribuuntur.

24. Subductis nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samaro-
brivae perāctō, quod eō annō frumentum in Galliā
propter siccitatēs angustius prōvēnerat, coāctus est aliter
405 ac superiōribus annis exercitum in hibernis collocāre
legiōnēsque in plūrēs civitatēs distribuere. Ex quibus :
unam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alte-
ram in Nervios Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esuviōs L. Rōsciō;
quārtam in Rēmis cum T. Labiēnō in cōfiniō Trēverō-
410 rum hiemāre iussit; trēs in Bellovacis collocāvit; his :
M. Crassum et L. Munātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium
lēgātōs praefecit. Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns
Padum cōscripserat, et cohortēs quinque in Eburōnēs,
quōrum pars māxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī
415 sub imperiō Ambiorigis et Catuvolci erant, misit. His
militibus Q. Titūrium Sabīnum et L. Aurunculēium
Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distri-
būtis legiōnibus facillimē inopiae frūmentāriae sēsē
medērī posse existimāvit. Atque hārum tamen om-
420 nium legiōnum hiberna, praeter eam, quam L. Rōsciō
in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem dūcendam
dederat, milibus passuum centum continēbantur. Ipse
intereā, quoad legiōnēs collocātās mūnitaque hiberna
cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōstituit.

Tasgetius Caesaris amicus ab inimicis interficitur.

425 25. Erat in Carnutibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius,
cuius māiōrēs in suā civitatē rēgnum obtinuerant. Huic :

Caesar prō eius virtute atque in sē benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulari eius operā fuerat ūsus, māiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēgnantem inimici, palam multis ex civitate auctoribus, interfecerunt. Defertur ea res ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plures pertinēbat, nē civitas eōrum impulsū dēficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnutes proficisci iubet ibique hiemāre, quorumque operā cognoverit Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsos ad sē mittere. Interim ab omnibus [lēgātis quaestoribusque], quibus legiōnēs trādiderat, certior factus est in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis esse munitum.

Eburonēs, ducibus Ambiorige et Catuvolcō, castra Sabini et Cottae oppugnant.

26. Diēbus circiter xv, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentinū tumultus ac dēfectiōnis ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolcō; qui, cum ad finēs regni sui Sabino Cottaeque praestō fuissent frumentumque in hiberna comportāvissent, Indutiomārī Trēverī nūntiis impulsī suos concitāvērunt subitōque oppressis lignātōribus magnā manū ad castra oppugnanda vērērunt. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque ascendissent atque unā ex parte Hispanis equitibus emissis equestri proelio superiōres fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suos ab oppugnatiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt, uti aliqui ex nostris ad colloquium prōdīret: habere sēsē, quae de rē commūni dicere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minui posse spērārent.

*Colloquĭo habitō Ambiorix Rōmānōs ut discēdant monet.
Lēgātī inter sē dissentiunt.*

27. Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā C. Arpinēius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūrīi, et Q. Iūnius ex
455 Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante missū Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitāre cōnsuērat; apud quōs Ambiorix ad hunc modum locūtus est: Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiis plurimum eī cōnfiterī debēre, quod eius operā stipendiō liberātus esset, quod Aduatucis, finitimis suis, pendere
460 cōnsuēssset, quodque eī et filius et frātris filius ā Caesare remissī essent, quōs Aduatuci obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnis tenuissent; neque id, quod fēcerit dē oppugnātiōne castrōrum, aut iudiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū civitātis; suaeque esse eius modī im-
465 peria, ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitudō, quam ipse in multitudinem. Civitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentināe Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperītus rerum, ut suis cōpiis populum
470 Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfidat. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium; omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidio venīre posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallis negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūni libertāte cōnsi-
475 lium initum vidērētur. Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfēcerit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem officiī prō beneficiis Caesaris; monēre, orāre Titūrium prō hospitio ut suae ac militum salutī cōnsulat. Māgnam manum Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trānsisse; hanc affore bīduō.
480 Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium, velintne, prius quam finitimī sen-

tiant, ēductōs ex hibernīs militēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēducere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter
 30 quīnquāgintā, alter paulō amplius ab iīs absit. Illud sē
 pollicērī et iūre iūrاندō cōfirmāre tūtum sē iter per
 11 suōs finēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et civitātī sēsē cōn- 485
 sulere, quod hibernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō eius meritis
 grātiā referre. Hāc orātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorix.

28. Arpinēius et Iūnius, quae audierant, ad lēgātōs
 dēferunt. Illī repentinā rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea
 dicēbantur, tamen nōn negligenda existimābant, māximē- 490
 que hāc rē permovēbantur, quod civitātem Ignōbilem
 atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō
 2 bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad cōn-
 silium rem dēferunt, māgnaque inter eos existit contrō-
 3 versia. L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque tribūnī militum 495
 et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum
 neque ex hibernīs iniūssū Caesaris discēdendum existimā-
 4 bant; quantāsvīs cōpiās etiam Germānōrum sustinērī posse
 mūnitīs hibernīs docēbant; rem esse tēstimōniō, quod
 primum hostium impetum multis ultrō vulneribus illā- 500
 5 tis fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī;
 intereā et ex proximīs hibernīs et ā Caesare conventūra
 6 subsidia; postrēmō quid esse levius aut turpius, quam
 auctōre hoste dē summīs rēbus capere cōnsilium?

29. Contrā ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum 505
 māiōrēs manus hostium adiūctīs Germānīs convēnissent,
 aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximīs hibernīs esset
 2 acceptum. Brevem cōsulendī esse occāsionem. Caesarem
 arbitrārī profectum in Ītaliā; neque aliter Carnutēs
 interficiundī Tasgetiī cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs, neque 510
 Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad

castra ventūrōs; sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem spec-
 tāre; subesse Rhēnum; māgnō esse Germānis dolōri
 Ariovistī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; ārdere
 515 Galliam tot contumēliis acceptīs sub populī Rōmānī im-
 perium redāctam, superiōre glōriā rei militāris exstinctā.
 Postrēmō quis hōc sibi persuādēret, sine certā spē Am-
 biorigem ad eius modī cōnsilium dēscendisse? Suam sen-
 tentiam in utramque partem esse tūtā: sī nihil esset
 520 dūrius, nullō cum periculō ad proximam legiōnem perven-
 tūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānis cōsentīret, unam
 esse in celeritāte positam salutem. Cottae quidem atque
 eōrum, quī dissentīrent, cōnsilium quem habēre exitum?
 in quō sī nōn praesēns periculum, at certē longinquā obsi-
 525 diōne famēs esset timenda.

30. Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne habitā,
 cum ā Cottā primisque ōrdinibus ācriter resisterētur,
 ‘Vincite,’ inquit, ‘sī ita vultis,’ Sabinus, et id clāriore
 vōce, ut māgna pars militum exaudīret; ‘neque is sum,’
 530 inquit, ‘quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis periculō terrear:
 hī sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem
 repōscent; quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum proxi-
 mis hibernis coniūcti communem cum reliquis belli
 cāsum sustineant; nōn, rēiecti et relēgāti longē ā cēteris,
 535 aut ferrō aut fame intereant.’

*Rōmānī ē castris ēgrediuntur; in itinere ab Eburōnibus
 circumventi omnēs caeduntur.*

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque
 et ōrant, nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum
 periculum dēdūcant; facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu
 proficiscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant āc probent;

3 contrā in dissēsiōne nullam sē salūtem perspicere. Rēs 540
 disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perducitur. Tandem dat
 Cotta permōtus manūs; superat sententia Sabīnī. Prō-
 4 nūtiātur primā luce itūrōs. Cōsumitur vigiliis reliqua
 pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret, quid
 sēcum portāre posset, quid ex instrūmentō hibernōrum 545
 5 relinquere cōgerētur. [Omnia excōgitantur, quārē nec
 sine periculō maneātur et languōre mīlitum et vigiliis
 6 periculum augeātur.] Primā luce sic ex castris profi-
 ciscuntur, ut quibus esset persuāsum, nōn ab hoste, sed ab
 homine amīcissimō [Ambiorīge] cōnsilium datum, longis- 550
 simō āgmine māximisque impedimentis.

32. At hostēs, postea quam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliis-
 que dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, collocātis insidiis
 bipertitō in silvis opportunō atque occultō locō ā mīlibus
 passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum expectā- 555
 2 bant, et cum sē māior pars āgminis in māgnam convallem
 dēmīssisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendē-
 runt novissimōsque premere et primōs prohibēre āscēnsū
 atque iniquissimō nostris locō proelium committere coe-
 pērunt. 560

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvidisset,
 trepidāre et concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere, haec
 tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidē-
 rentur; quod plērumque iis accidere cōsuēvit, quī in
 2 ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī 565
 cōgitāssset haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam
 causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nullā in rē com-
 mūnī salūtī deerat, et in appellandis cohortandisque mili-
 tibus imperātōris et in pūgnā militis officia praestābat.
 3 Cum propter longitudinem āgminis nōn facile per sē om- 570

nia obire et, quid quoque loco faciendum esset, providere possent, iusserunt pronuntiari, ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem consisterent. Quod consilium, etsi in eius modi casu reprehendendum non est, tamen in-
575 commodè cecidit; nam et nostris militibus spem minuit et hostes ad pugnam alacriores effecit, quod non sine summò timore et desperatione id factum videbatur. Praeterea accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgo milites ab signis discederent, quaeque quisque eorum carissima
580 haberet, ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properaret; clamore et flentu omnia complerentur.

34. At barbaris consilium non defuit. Nam duces eorum tota acie pronuntiari iusserunt, ne quis ab loco discederet; illorum esse praedam atque illis reservari,
585 quaecumque Romani reliquissent; proinde omnia in victoria posita existimarent. [Erant et virtute et numero pugnantis pares.] Nostris tametsi ab duce et a fortuna desererentur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtute ponebant, et quotiens quaeque cohors prouiderat, ab ea parte
590 magnus numerus hostium cadebat. Quam rem animadversam Ambiorix pronuntiari iubet, ut procul tela coniciant ne propius accedant et, quam in partem Romani impetum fecerint, cedant, [levitate armorum et cotidiana exercitatione nihil his noceri posse,] rursus se ad signa recipientes
595 insequantur.

35. Quo praeecepto ab iis diligentissime observato, cum quaequam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fecerat, hostes velocissime fugiebant. Interim eam
partem nudari necesse erat et ab latere aperto tela recipere. Rursus, cum in eum locum, unde erant progressi,
600 reverti coeperant, et ab iis, qui cesserant, et ab iis, qui

4 proximi steterant, circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum
tenere vellent, nec virtūti locus relinquebātur, neque ab
tantā multitudine cōniecta tēla cōfertī vitare poterant.
5 Tamen tot incommodis cōfliktāti, multis vulneribus 605
acceptis resistēbant et magnā parte diēi cōsumptā, cum
ā primā luce ad hōram octāvam pūgnārētur, nihil quod
6 ipsi esset indignum committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō,
qui superiōre annō primum pilum duxerat, virō fortī et
māgnae auctōritātis, utrumque femur trāgulā trāicitur; 610
7 Q. Lucānius, eiusdem ordinis, fortissimē pūgnāns, dum
8 circumventō filiō subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus
omnēs cohortēs ordinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs
fundā vulnerātur.

36. His rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul 615
Ambiorīgē suōs cohortantem cōspexisset, interpretem
suum Cn. Pompēium ad eum mittit rogātum ut sibi
9 militibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondit: Sī velit
sēcum colloqui, licere; spērāre ā multitudine impetrārī
posse, quod ad militum salutem pertineat; ipsi vērō nihil 620
nocitum irī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere.
10 Ille cum Cottā sauciō communicat, sī videātur, pūgnā ut
excēdant et cum Ambiorīge unā colloquantur: spērāre
11 sē ab eō dē suā ac militum salute impetrārī posse.
Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō 625
persevērat.

37. Sabīnus quōs in praesentia tribūnōs militum circum
sē habēbat et primōrum ordinum centuriōnēs sē sequi
iubet et, cum propius Ambiorīgē accēssisset, iūssus
arma abicere imperātum facit suisque, ut idem faciant, 630
12 imperat. Interim, dum dē condiōnibus inter sē agunt
longiorque cōsultō ab Ambiorīge instituitur sermō,

paulatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt impetūque
 635 in nostrōs factō ordinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pūgnāns interficitur cum māximā parte militum. Reliqui sē in castra recipiunt, unde erant ēgressi. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum māgnā multitudīne hostium premeretur aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit, ipse prō castris
 640 fortissimē pūgnāns occiditur. Illi aegrē ad noctem oppūgnātiōnem sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salutē sē ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proeliō elapsi incertis itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestis certiōrem
 645 faciunt.

Hiberna Cicerōnis ab Eburōnibus, adiūctis Aduatucis et Nervis, oppūgnantur.

38. Hāc victoriā sublātus Ambiorix statim cum equitātū in Aduatucōs, quī erant eius rēgnō finitimī, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit peditātumque sē subsequi iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduatucisque
 650 concitātis, posterō diē in Nervios pervenit hortāturque, nē sui in perpetuum liberandī atque ulciscendī Rōmānōs prō iis, quās accēperint, iniuriis occāsionem dimittant: interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs māgnamque partem exercitus
 interisse dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negōtiū, subitō oppressam
 655 legiōnem, quae cum Cicerōne hiemet, interfici; sē ad eam rem profitetur adiutōrem. Facile hāc orātiōne Nervis persuādet.

39. Itaque cōnfestim dīmissis nūntiis ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levacōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs
 660 sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam māximās manūs possunt,

cōgunt et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant,
 nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Tituriī morte perlātā. Huic
 quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn nulli mīlites,
 qui lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā in silvās discēssissent,
 repentinō equitum adventū interciperentur. His circum- 665
 ventis māgnā manū Eburōnēs, Nervii, Aduatuci atque
 hōrum omnium socii et clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre
 incipiunt. Nostri celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum
 cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem
 spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adepti 670
 victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōnfidēbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ā Cicerōne
 litterae māgnis prōpositis praemiis, si pertulissent;
 obsessis omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctū ex
 māteriā, quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant, turrēs 675
 admodum cxx excitantur incredibili celeritāte; quae
 deesse operi vidēbantur, perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō
 diē multō māiōribus coāctis cōpiis castra oppugnant,
 fossam complent. Ā nostris eādē ratiōne quā pridie,
 4) resistitur. Hōc idem reliquis deinceps fit diēbus. Nulla 680
 5) pars nocturni temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn
 aegrīs, nōn vulnerātis facultās quiētis datur. Quae-
 cumque ad proximū diē oppugnātiōnem opus sunt, noctū
 comparantur; multae praeustaē sudēs, māgnus mūrā-
 lium pilōrum numerus instituitur; turrēs contabulantur, 685
 7) pinnae lōricaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō,
 cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem
 sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō militum
 concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

41. Tum ducēs principēsque Nerviorum, qui aliquem 690
 sermōnis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne

habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle dicunt. Factā potestāte, 2
eadem, quae Ambiorix cum Tituriō ēgerat, commemo-
rant: omnem esse in armis Galliam; Germānōs Rhēnum 3
695 trānsisse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hiberna oppugnārī.
Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorigem ostentant 4
fidēi faciundae causā. Errāre eōs dicunt, si quicquam 5
ab iis praesidiī spērent, quī suis rēbus diffidant; sēsē
tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum
700 animō, ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsant atque hanc inve-
terāscere cōsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illis per sē inco- 6
lumibus ex hibernis discēdere et, quāscumque in partēs
velint, sine metū proficisci. Cicerō ad haec unum modo 7
respondet: nōn esse cōsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī acci-
705 pere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; si ab armis discē-
dere velint, sē adiūtōre utantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem 8
mittant; spērāre sē prō eius iustitiā, quae petierint,
impetrātūrōs.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nervii vāllō pedum x et fossā
710 pedum xv hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum 9
cōsuētūdine ā nōbīs cōgnōverant et, quōsdam dē exercitū
nactī captivōs, ab his docēbantur, sed nullā ferrāmen- 10
tōrum cōpiā, quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiis
caespitēs circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exha-
715 rīre cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multi- 11
tūdō cōgnōsci potuit; nam minus hōris tribus mīlium 12
passuum xv in circuitū mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt. Reli-
quīs diēbus turrēs ad altitūdinem vālli, falcēs tēstūdi-
nēsque, quās idem captivī docuerant, parāre ac facere
720 coopērunt.

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē māximō coortō ventō
ferventēs fusilēs ex argillā glandēs fundis et fervefacta

iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentis erant tēctae,
 2 iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt
 et ventī māgnitudine in omnem locum castrōrum distu- 725
 3 lērunt. Hostēs māximō clāmōre, sic utī partā iam
 atque explōrātā victōriā, turrēs tēstudinēsque agere et scā-
 4 lis vāllum āscendere coepērunt. At tanta militum virtūs
 atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā
 torrērentur māximāque tēlōrum multitudine premerentur 730
 suaeque omnia impedimenta atque omnēs fortunās cōn-
 flagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo [dēmigrandī causā] dē
 vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem
 quisquam; āc tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūgnā-
 5 rent. Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen 735
 hunc habuit ēventum ut eō diē māximus numerus ho-
 stium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō
 vāllō cōnstipāverant recēssumquē primīs ultimī nōn da-
 6 bant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō
 turri adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centu- 740
 riōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recēssērunt suōsque omnēs
 remōverunt; nūtū vōcibusque hostēs sī introīre vellent,
 vocāre coepērunt, quōrum prōgredi ausus est nēmō.
 7 Tum ex omni parte lapidibus cōiectis dēturbātī, turris-
 que succēnsa est. 745

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs,
 quī iam primīs ordinibus appropinquārent; T. Pullō et
 2 L. Vorēnus. Hi perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habē-
 bant, uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō
 3 summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum 750
 ācerrimē ad mūnitiōnēs pūgnārētur, ‘Quid dubitās,’
 inquit, ‘Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis
 exspectās? hic diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiis iudicābit.’

Haec cum dixisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs quaeque
 755 pars hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa, irrumpit. Nē
 Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium
 veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō
 relictō Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque unum
 ex multitudine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et
 760 exanimātō hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum universī
 tela cōniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem.
 Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfi-
 gitur. Āvertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēducere
 cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impeditumque hostēs
 765 circumstant. Succurrit inimīcus illi Vorēnus et labō-
 rantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis
 multitūdō convertit [; illum verūtō trānsfixum arbitran-
 tur]. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque unō
 interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius instat,
 770 in locum dēiectus inferiōrem concidit. Huīc rūsus
 circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs
 compluribus interfectīs summā cum laude sēsē intrā
 mūnitiōnēs recipiunt. Sic fortūna in contentiōne et
 certāmine utrumque versāvit ut alter alterī inimīcus
 775 auxiliō salutīque esset, neque diiudicārī posset uter utrī
 virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

Obsidiō adventū Caesaris solvitur; hostēs prōfligantur.

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppū-
 gnātiō, et māximē quod māgnā parte militum cōnfectā
 vulneribus rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat,
 780 tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittē-
 bantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōspectū nostrōrum
 militum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat unus intus :

Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfugerat suamque ei fidem
 3 praestiterat. Hīc servō spē libertātis māgnisque per- 785
 4 suadet praemiis, ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō illigātās effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine
 5 ullā sūspiciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē periculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.

46. Caesar acceptis litteris hōrā circiter undecimā diēi 790
 statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum mittit, cuius
 2 hiberna aberant ab eō milia passuum xxv; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit
 3 cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium finēs legiōnem adducat, quā sibi 795
 4 iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō, si rei publicae commodō facere posset, cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviorum
 5 veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter quadringentōs ex proximīs hibernīs cōgit. 800

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassi adventū certior factus, eō diē milia passuum xx prōgre-
 2 ditur. Crassum Samarebrivae praeficit legiōnemque ei attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitūs, obsidēs civi-
 3 tātum, litterās publicās frumentumque omne, quod eō 805
 4 tolerandae hiemis causā dēvexerat, relinquebat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere
 5 cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus interitū Sabīni et caede cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē, si ex hibernīs fugae similem 810
 profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs recentī victoriā efferrī scīret,
 5 litterās Caesarī remittit quantō cum periculō legiōnem

ex hibernis ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus
 815 perscribit; docet omnēs equitātus peditātusque cōpiās
 Trēverōrum tria milia passuum longē ab suis castris
 cōnsēdisse.

48. Caesar cōsiliō eius probātō, etsī ōpīniōne trium
 legiōnum dēiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen unum com-
 820 mūnī salutī auxilium in celeritātē pōnēbat. Venit 2
 māgnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum finēs. Ibi ex captivīs
 cōgnōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in
 periculō rēs sit. Tum cuīdam ex equitibus Gallis māgnīs 3
 praemiis persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat.
 825 Hanc Graecis cōscriptam litterīs mittit, nē interceptā 4
 epistulā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cōgnōscantur. Si 5
 adire nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad
 āmentum deligātā intrā mūnitiōnēs castrōrum abiciat.
 In litterīs scribit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter 6
 830 affore; hortātur ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus 7
 periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit.
 Haec cāsū ad turrīm adhaesit neque ā nostris bīduō ani- 8
 madversa tertiō diē ā quōdam milite cōspicitur; dēmpla
 ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū 9
 835 militum recitat māximāque omnēs laetitiā afficit. Tum 10
 fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem
 dubitatiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

49. Galli rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relin-
 quunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiis contendunt. Haec
 840 erant armāta circiter milia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte 2
 Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem suprā dēmōstrāvimus,
 repetit, quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet
 iter cautē diligenterque faciat; perscribit in litterīs hostēs 3
 ab sē discēssisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem cōnver-

1 tisse. Quibus litteris circiter mediā nocte Caesar allātis 845
 suos facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmīcandum animō cōn-
 2 firmat. Posterō diē luce primā movet castra et circiter
 milia passuum quattuor prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum
 3 multitudinem hostium cōspiciātur. Erat magni periculi
 rēs tantulis cōpiis iniquō locō dīmīcāre; tum, quoniam 850
 obsidiōne liberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō
 4 remittendum dē celeritātē existimābat; cōsidit et, quam
 aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit atque haec, etsi
 erant exigua per sē, vix hominum milium septem, prae-
 sertim nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustis viarum, 855
 5 quam maximē potest contrahit, eō cōsiliō, ut in sum-
 mam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim speculā-
 tōribus in omnēs partēs dīmīssis explōrat, quō commo-
 dissimē itinere vallem trānsire possit.

50. Eō diē parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis 860
 2 utriusque sēsē suō locō continent: Galli, quod ampliōrēs
 3 cōpiās quae nōndum convēnerant expectābant; Caesar,
 si forte timōris simulatiōne hostēs in suum locum ēlicere
 4 posset, ut citrā vallem prō castris proeliō contenderet;
 si id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātis itineribus minōre 865
 cum periculō vallem rīvumque trānsiret. Primā luce
 hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum
 5 nostris equitibus committit. Caesar cōsultō equitēs
 cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus
 partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūniri portāsque obstrui 870
 atque in his administrandis rēbus quam maximē con-
 cursari et cum simulatiōne agi timōris iubet.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invitāti cōpiās trā-
 ducant aciemque iniquō locō cōstituunt; nostris vērō
 2 etiam dē vāllō dēductis propius accēdunt et tela intrā 875

mūnitiōnem ex omnibus partibus cōiciunt praecōnibusque circummissis prōnūtiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsire, sine periculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac
880 sic nostrōs contempsērunt, ut obstructis in speciem portis singulis ōrdinibus caespitem, quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā equitatūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam
885 dat, sic utī omnīnō pūgnandī causā resisteret nēmō, māgnūque ex iīs numerum occidit atque omnēs armīs exuit.

52. Longius persequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant [neque etiam parvulō dētrīmentō illōrum
890 locum relinqui vidēbat], omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Institūtās turrēs, tēstudinēs mūnitiōnēsque hostium admirātur; prōductā legiōne cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum periculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae; Cicerōnem
895 prō eius meritō legiōnemque collaudat; centuriōnēs singillatim tribūnōsque militum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem tēstimōniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. De cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captivīs cōgnōscit.
900 Posterō diē contiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, militēs cōnsolātur et cōnfīrmat; quod dētrīmentum culpā et temeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferundum docet, quod, beneficiō deōrum immortalium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō, neque hostibus
905 diūtina laetitia neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

IV. MOTUS SENONUM ET TREVERORUM.

CC. 53-58.

Caede Eburōnum auditā, Indutiomārus cōpiās reducit. Caesar in Galliā hiemāre parat.

53. Interim ad Labiēnum per Rēmōs incrēdibili cele-
ritāte dē victōriā Caesaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum ab
hībernīs Cicerōnis mīlia passuum abesset circiter LX, eōque
post hōram nōnam diēi Caesar pervēnisset, ante mediam
noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmor orerētur, quō clāmōre 910
significātiō victōriae grātulātiōque ab Rēmīs Labiēnō
fieret. Hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlātā Indutiomārus, quī
posterō diē castra Labiēnī oppugnāre dēcrēverat, noctū
profugit cōpiāsque omnēs in Trēverōs reducit. Caesar
Fabium cum suā legiōne remittit in hīberna, ipse cum 915
tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvā trīnīs hībernīs
hiemāre cōstituit et, quod tantī mōtūs Galliae exstite-
rant, tōtam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit.
Nam illō incommodō dē Sabīnī morte perlātō omnēs ferē
Galliae cīvitātēs dē bellō cōsultābant; nūntiōs legātiō- 920
nēsque in omnēs partēs dīmittēbant et, quid reliquī cōnsi-
liī caperent atque unde initium bellī fieret, explorābant
nocturnaue in locīs dēsertīs concilia habēbant. Neque
ullum ferē tōtius hiemis tempus sine sollicitūdine Caesaris
intercēssit quīn aliquem dē cōnsiliīs ac mōtū Gallōrum 925
nūntium acciperet. In hīs ab L. Rōsciō, quem legiōnī
tertiaedecimae praefēcerat, certior factus est, māgnās
[Gallōrum] cōpiās eārum cīvitātum quae Aremoricae
appellantur oppugnandī suī causā convēnisse neque
longius milibus passuum octō ab hībernīs suis āfuisse, 930

sed nūntiō allātō dē victōriā Caesaris discēssisse adeō ut fugae similis discēssus vidērētur.

54. At Caesar, principibus cuiusque civitatis ad se evocatis, alios territandō, cum se scire quae fierent, dēnūnti-
935 āret, alios cohortandō, māgnam partem Galliae in officiō tenuit. Tamen Senonēs, quae est civitas in primis firma : et māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis, Cavarīnum, quem Caesar apud eōs rēgem cōstituerat, cuius frāter Moritas-
940 gnum obtinuerant, interficere publicō cōnsiliō cōnātī, cum ille praesēnsisset ac profugisset, usque ad finēs īnsecūtī : rēgnō domōque expulērunt et, missis ad Caesarem satis faciendī causā lēgātīs, cum is omnem ad se senātum venīre iussisset, dictō audientēs nōn fuērunt. Ac tantum apud
945 hominēs barbarōs valuit, esse aliquōs repertōs principēs bellī inferendī, tantamque omnibus voluntātum commūtātiōnem attulit, ut praeter Aeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs praecipuō semper honōre Caesar habuit, alterōs prō vetere ac perpetuā ergā populum Rōmānum fidē, alterōs prō recen-
950 tibus Gallicī bellī officiīs, nulla ferē civitas fuerit nōn sūspecta nobīs. Idque adeō haud sciō mirandumne sit, : cum complūribus aliis dē causis, tum māximē, quod, quī virtūte bellī omnibus gentibus praeferēbantur, tantum se eius opīniōnis dēperdidisse ut populī Rōmānī imperia
955 perferrent, gravissimē dolēbant.

Trēverī duce Indutiomārō Labiēnī castra oppūgnant.

55. Trēverī vērō atque Indutiomārus tōtius hiemis nullum tempus intermiserunt, quān trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs mitterent, civitatēs sollicitārent, pecūniās pollicerentur, māgnā parte exercitūs nostrī interfectā multō

2 minorem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ulli 960
 civitati Germānorum persuaderi potuit ut Rhenum
 transiret, cum se bis expertos dicerent, Ariovisti bello et
 Tencterorum transitu; non esse amplius fortunam temp-
 3 taturis. Hanc spe lapsus Indutiomarus nihil minus
 copias cogere, exercere, a finitimis equos parare, exules 965
 damnatosque tota Gallia magnis praemiis ad se allicere
 4 coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam his rebus in Gallia auctori-
 tatem comparaverat ut undique ad eum legationes con-
 currerent, gratiam atque amicitiam publice privatimque
 peterent. 970

56. Ubi intellexit ultra ad se venire, altera ex parte
 Senones Carnutesque conscientia facinoris instigari,
 altera Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romanis parare,
 neque sibi voluntariorum copias defore, si ex finibus suis
 1 progredi coepisset, armatum concilium indicit. Hoc 975
 more Gallorum est initium belli, quo lege communi
 omnes puberes armati convenire coguntur; qui ex iis
 novissimus venit in conspectu multitudinis omnibus
 2 cruciatibus affectus necatur. In eo concilio Cingetori-
 gem, alterius principem factionis, generum suum, quem 980
 supra demonstravimus Caesaris secutum fidem ab eo
 3 non discessisse, hostem iudicat bonaque eius publicat. His
 rebus confectis in concilio pronuntiat arcessitum se a
 Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque compluribus Galliae
 4 civitatibus; huc iterum per fines Remorum eorumque 985
 agros populaturum ac, prius quam id faciat, castra
 Labieni oppugnaturum. Quae fieri velit praecipit.

57. Labienus, cum et loci naturam et manu munitissimis
 castris sese teneret, de suo ac legionis periculo nihil
 timebat; ne quam occasionem rei bene gerendae dimittit 990

teret cōgitābat. Itaque ā Cingetorige atque eius pro-
 pinquīs orātiōne Indutiomārī cōgnitā, quam in conciliō
 habuerat, nūntiōs mittit ad finitimās civitatēs equitēs-
 que undique ēvocat; his certam diem conveniendi dicit.
 995 Interim prope cotīdiē cum omnī equitātū Indutiomārus
 sub castrīs eius vagābātur, aliās ut situm castrōrum
 cōgnōsceret, aliās colloquendi aut territandi causā:
 equitēs plērumque omnēs tēla intrā vāllum cōniciēbant.
 Labiēnus suōs intrā mūnitiōnem continēbat timōrisque
 1000 opīniōnem quibuscumque poterat rēbus augēbat.

Indutiomārō caesō, Galliā in quiētem redūcitur.

58. Cum māiōre in diēs contemptiōne Indutiomārus ad
 castra accēderet, nocte unā intrōmissīs equitibus omnium
 finitimārum civitātum quōs arcessendōs cūrāverat, tantā
 diligentīā omnēs suōs cūstodiīs intrā castra continuit ut
 1005 nullā ratiōne ea rēs cōnūntiārī aut ad Trēverōs perferri
 posset. Interim ex cōsuetūdine cotīdiānā Indutiomārus
 ad castra accēdit atque ibi māgnam partem diēi cōnsūmit;
 equitēs tēla cōniciunt et māgnā cum contumeliā verbō-
 rum nostrōs ad pūgnam ēvocant. Nullō ab nostrīs datō
 1010 respōnsō, ubi vīsum est sub vesperum dispersi ac dissi-
 pātī discēdunt. Subitō Labiēnus duābus portīs omnem
 equitātum ēmittit; praecipit atque interdicit, perterritīs
 hostibus atque in fugam cōniectīs (quod fore, sic ut
 accidit, vidēbat), unum omnēs petant Indutiomārum, neu
 1015 quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum viderit,
 quod morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere
 nōlēbat; māgna prōpōnit iīs, quī occiderint, praemia;
 submittit cohortēs equitibus subsidiō. Comprobat homi-
 nis cōnsilium fortūna, et cum unum omnēs peterent, in

ipsō fluminis vadō dēprehēsus Indutiomārus interficitur 1020
caputque eius refertur in castra; redeuntēs equitēs quōs
7 possunt cōsectantur atque occidunt. Hāc rē cōgnitā
omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviōrum, quae convēnerant,
cōpiae discēdunt; paulōque habuit post id factum Caesar
quiētiōrem Galliam. 1025

COMMENTARIUS SEXTUS.

I. GALLIAE MOTUS.

CC. 1-8.

Cōpiis auctis Caesar Nervios, Senonēs, Carnutēs, Menapios subigit.

1. Multis dē causis Caesar māiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns per M. Silānum, C. Antistium Rēginum, T. Sextium lēgātōs dilēctum¹ habēre instituit; simul ab Cn. Pompēiō prōcōnsule petit,² quoniam ipse ad urbem cum
5 imperiō rei pūblīcae causā remanēret, quōs ex Cisalpīnā Galliā cōsul sacrāmētō³ rogāssēt ad signa convenīre et ad sē proficisci iubēret; māgnī⁴ interesse etiam in reliquum, tempus ad⁵ opīniōnem Galliae exīstimāns tantās vidērī
Italiae facultātēs ut, sī quid esset in bellō dētrimentī
10 acceptum, nōn modo id brevī tempore sarciri,⁶ sed etiam māiōribus augērī⁷ cōpiis posset. Quod cum Pompēius et rei pūblīcae et amicitiae tribuisset, celeriter cōfectō per
suos dilēctū tribus ante exāctam⁸ hiemem et cōstitutis et adductis legiōnibus duplicātōque eārum cohortium
15 numerō quās cum Q. Tituriō amiserat, et celeritātē et cōpiis docuit quid populi Rōmāni dīsciplīna atque opēs possent.

2. Interfectō Indutiomārō, ut docuimus, ad eius propinquos ā Trēveris imperium dēfertur. Illi finitīmōs Ger-

¹ 'levy.' ² sc. *ut*, with iuberet. ³ *sacramento rogare*: 'enlist.'
⁴ *magni interesse*: 'be of great importance.' ⁵ 'for (influencing).'
⁶ 'repair.' ⁷ sc. *exercitum*. ⁸ 'finish.'

mānōs sollicitāre et pecūniam pollicērī nōn dēsistunt. 20
 2 Cum ā proximīs impetrāre nōn possent, ulteriōrēs temp-
 tant. Inventīs nōn nullīs cīvitatibus iūre iurandō inter sē
 cōnfirmant obsidibusque dē¹ pecūniā cavent²; Ambiorigem
 3 sibi societātē³ et foedere⁴ adiungunt. Quibus rēbus cō-
 gnitis Caesar, cum undique bellum parārī vidēret, Nervios, 25
 Aduatucōs, Menapiōs, adiūctis Cisrhēnānis omnibus Ger-
 mānis, esse in armīs, Senonēs ad⁵ imperātum nōn venīre
 et cum Carnutibus finitimisque cīvitatibus cōnsilia com-
 mūnicāre, ā Trēverīs Germānōs crēbris legātiōnibus sol-
 licitārī, mātūrius sibi dē bellō cōgitandum putāvit. 30

3. Itaque nōndum hieme cōfectā, proximīs quattuor
 coāctis legiōnibus dē imprōvisō in finēs Nerviorum con-
 2 tendit et, prius quam illi aut convenīre aut profugere pos-
 sent, māgnō pecoris atque hominum numerō captō atque
 eā praedā militibus concēssā vāstātisque agrīs, in dēdi- 35
 3 tiōnem venīre atque obsidēs sibi dare coēgit. Eō cele-
 4 riter cōfectō negōtiō rursus in hiberna legiōnēs redūxit.
 Conciliō Galliae prīmō vēre,⁶ ut instituerat, indictō, cum
 reliquī praeter Senonēs, Carnutēs, Trēverōsque vēnissent,
 initium bellī ac dēfectiōnis hōc esse arbitrātus, ut omnia 40
 postpōnere vidērētur, concilium Lutetiam Parisiōrum
 5 trānsfert. Cōnfīnēs⁷ erant hī Senonibus cīvitatēque
 patrum memoriā coniūnxerant, sed ab hōc cōnsiliō āfuisse
 6 existimābantur. Hāc rē prō suggestū⁸ prōnūntiātā eō-
 dem diē cum legiōnibus in Senonēs proficiscitur māgnīs- 45
 que itineribus eō pervenit.

4. Cōgnitō eius adventū Accō,⁹ quī prīnceps eius
 cōnsilii fuerat, iubet in oppida multitudinem convenīre.

¹ 'for.' ² 'give security.' ³ 'alliance.' ⁴ 'league.' ⁵ ad im-
 peratum: 'at his command.' ⁶ 'spring.' ⁷ 'neighboring.' ⁸ 'plat-
 form.' ⁹ nom.

Cōnantibus, prius quam id effici posset, adesse Rōmānōs
 50 nūntiātur. Necessariō sententiā dēsistunt lēgātōsque dē-
 precandī causā ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Aeduōs,
 quōrum antiquitus erat in fidē cīvitās. Libenter Cae-
 sar petentibus Aeduīs dat veniam¹ excūsātiōnemque acci-
 pit, quod aestīvum² tempus Instantis bellī,³ nōn quae-
 55 stiōnis⁴ esse arbitrābātur. Obsidibus imperātis centum
 hōs Aeduīs cūstōdiendōs trādit. Eōdem Carnutēs lēgātōs
 obsidēsque mittunt, ūsī dēprecātōribus Rēmīs, quōrum
 erant in clientelā⁴; eadem ferunt respōnsa. Peragit cōn-
 silium Caesar equitēsque imperat cīvitātibus.

60 5. Hāc parte Galliae pācātā tōtus⁵ et mente et animō
 in bellum Trēverōrum et Ambiorīgis Insistit. Cavarīnum
 cum equitātū Senonum sēcum proficīscī iubet, nē quis
 aut ex hūius Irācundiā⁶ aut ex eō quod meruerat odiō⁷
 cīvitātis⁸ mōtus⁹ exsistat. His rēbus cōstitutīs, quod
 65 prō explōrātō habēbat Ambiorīgem proeliō nōn esse con-
 tentūrum, reliqua eius cōnsilia animō circumspiciēbat.
 Erant Menapiī propinquī Eburōnum finibus, perpetuīs
 palūdibus silvisque mūnītī, quī ūnī ex Galliā dē pāce
 ad Caesarem lēgātōs numquam mīserant. Cum hīs esse
 70 hospitium Ambiorīgī sciēbat; item per Trēverōs vēnisse
 Germānīs in amīcitiā cōgnōverat. Haec prius illī¹⁰
 dētrahenda auxilia existimābat quam ipsum bellō laces-
 seret, nē dēspērātā salūte aut sē in Menapiōs abderet
 aut cum Trānsrhēnānīs congregī¹¹ cōgerētur. Ilōc initō
 75 cōnsiliō tōtū exercitū impedita ad Labiēnum in
 Trēverōs mittit duāsque ad eum legiōnēs proficīscī iubet;
 ipse cum legiōnibus expeditīs quīnque in Menapiōs profi-

¹ 'pardon.' ² '(of) summer.' ³ pred. gen. ⁴ 'protection.'
⁵ totus—*animo*: 'heart and soul.' ⁶ 'passion.' ⁷ 'hatred.' ⁸ sub-
 jective. ⁹ noun. ¹⁰ dat. of separation. ¹¹ 'join.'

7 ciscitur. Illi nullā coāctā manū, locī praesidiō frētī, in silvās palūdēsque cōfugiunt suaque eōdem cōferunt.

6. Caesar, partītis cōpiis cum C. Fabiō lēgātō et M. 80 Crassō quaestōre celeriterque effectis pontibus, adit trīper- titō,¹ aedificia vicōsque incendit, māgnō pecoris atque
2 hominum numerō potitur. Quibus rēbus coāctī Menapii
3 lēgātōs ad eum pācis petendae causā mittunt. Ille obsi- dibus acceptis hostium sē habitūrum numerō cōfirmat, 85
sī aut Ambiorīgem aut eius lēgātōs finibus suis recē-
4 pissent. His cōfirmātis rēbus Commium Atrebātem cum equitātū cūstōdis locō in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Trēverōs proficiscitur.

Labiēnus Trēverōs vincit.

7. Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī māgnis 90 coāctis peditātū equitātūque cōpiis Labiēnum cum unā
2 legiōne quae in eōrum finibus hiemābat adoriri parā- bant; iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum
3 duās vēnisse legiōnēs missū Caesaris cōgnōscunt. Positis castris ā² milibus passuum quīndecim auxilia Germā- 95
4 nōrum exspectāre cōstituunt. Labiēnus, hostium cōgnitō cōnsiliō, spērāns temeritātē³ eōrum fore aliquam dimicandi facultātem, praesidiō quīnque cohortium impedimentis relictō, cum vīginti quīnque cohortibus māgnōque equitātū
5 contrā hostem proficiscitur, et mille passuum intermissō 100
spatiō castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen rīpisque praeruptis. Hōc neque ipse trānsire habēbat in animō neque hostēs trānsi-
6 tūrōs existimābat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotidiē spēs. Loquitur cōsultō palam, quoniam Germānī appropinquāre 105

¹ from *trēs, pars.*

² 'away.'

³ 'rashness.'

dīcantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fortūnās in¹ dubium
 nōn dēvocātūrum et posterō diē primā lūce castra
 mōtūrum. Celeriter haec ad hostēs dēferuntur, ut ex
 magnō Gallōrum equitum numerō nōn nullōs Gallicīs
 110 rēbus favēre nātūra cōgēbat. Labiēnus nocte, tribūnis
 militum primisque ordinibus convocātis, quid suū sit
 cōsiliū prōpōnit et, quō facilius hostibus timōris det
 suspiciōnem, māiōre strepitū et tumultū quam populi
 Rōmānī fert cōnsuētūdō castra mōvērī iubet. His rēbus
 115 fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Haec quoque per
 explorātōrēs ante lūcem in tantā propinquitāte castrō-
 rum ad hostēs dēferuntur.

8. Vix āgmen novissimum extrā mūnitiōnēs prōcēs-
 serat, cum Galli cohortātī inter sē nē spērātam praedam
 120 ex manibus dīmitterent; longum² esse perterritis Rōmānis
 Germānōrum auxilium exspectāre; neque suam patī dīgni-
 tātem ut tantis cōpiis tam exiguam manum praesertim
 fugientem atque impeditam adorīrī nōn audeant flūmen
 trānsīre et inīquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant.
 125 Quae fore sūspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnēs citrā flūmen
 ēliceret, eādē usus simulātiōne itineris placidē³ prōgre-
 diebātur. Tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque
 in tumultō quōdam collocātis, ‘Habētis,’ inquit, ‘militēs,
 quam petistis facultātem; hostem impeditō atque inīquō
 130 locō tenētis; praestāte eandem nobis ducibus virtūtem
 quam saepe numerō imperātōrī praestitistis, atque illum
 adesse et haec cōram cernere⁴ exīstimāte.’ Simul signa
 ad hostem convertī aciemque dīrigi⁵ iubet et paucis tur-
 mis⁶ praesidiō ad impedimenta dīmissis reliquos equitēs

¹ in dubium devocare: ‘endanger.’
² ‘see.’ ³ ‘draw up.’ ⁴ ‘squadron.’

⁵ ‘too long.’ ⁶ ‘calmly.’

6 ad latera dispōnit. Celeriter nostrī clāmōre sublātō pīla 135
 in hostēs immittunt. Illi, ubi praeter spem quōs fugere
 crēdebant infestis¹ signis ad sē ire viderunt, impetum
 nostrōrum ferre nōn potuerunt, ac primō concursū in
 7 fugam coniecti proximās silvās petierunt. Quōs Labiē-
 nus equitātū cōsectātus, māgnō numerō interfectō, com- 140
 pluribus captis, paucis post diēbus cīvitātem recēpit.
 Nam Germānī quī auxiliō veniebant perceptā Trēve-
 8 rōrum fugā sēsē domum contulerunt. Cum hīs pro-
 pinqui Indutiomārī, quī defectionis auctōrēs fuerant,
 9 comitātī² eōs ex cīvitāte excēssērunt. Cingetorigī, quem 145
 ab initio permānsisse in officio dēmōstrāvimus, prīnci-
 pātus atque imperium est trāditum.

ALTER CAESARIS IN GERMANIAM EXPEDITIO.

cc. 9-28.

*Caesar, satisfactiōe Ubiōrum acceptā, contrā Suēbōs pro-
 ficisci cōstituit. Suēbī in ūltimōs finēs suōs sē recipiunt.*

9. Caesar postquam ex Menapiis in Trēverōs vēnit,
 2 duābus dē causis Rhēnum trānsire cōstituit; quārum una
 erat quod [Germānī] auxilia contrā sē Trēverīs miserant; 150
 3 altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorix receptum habēret. Hīs cōn-
 stitūtis rēbus paulō suprā eum locum quō ante exerci-
 4 tum trādūxerat facere pontem instituit. Nōtā atque
 institūtā ratiōne, māgnō militum studiō, paucis diēbus
 5 opus efficitur. Firmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō 155
 relictō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās
 6 cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs
 dederant atque in dēditionem vēnerant, pūrgandī suī
 causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt quī doceant neque auxi-

¹ 'hostile.'

² 'accompany.'

160 lia ex suā civitāte in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem
laesam¹: petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcat,² nē commūnī
odiō Germānōrum³ innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās
pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit dari, pollicentur.
Cōgnitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēbīs auxilia missa
165 esse; Ubiōrum satisfaciōnem accipit; aditūs viāsque in
Suēbōs perquirīt.⁴

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suē-
bōs omnēs in unum locum cōpiās cōgere atque iīs nātiōni-
bus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia
170 peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. Hīs cōgnitīs rēbus rem
frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum dēligit;
Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaeque omnia ex agrīs
in oppida cōferant, spērāns barbarōs atque imperitōs
hominēs inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs ad iniquam pu-
175 gnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūcī; mandat ut crēbrōs
explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant quaeque apud eōs geran-
tur cōgnōscant. Illi imperāta faciunt et paucīs diēbus
intermissīs referunt: Suēbōs omnēs, postea quam cer-
tiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum
180 omnibus suis sociōrumque cōpiīs quās coēgissent, peni-
tus⁵ ad extrēmōs finēs sē recēpisse; silvam esse ibi in-
finitā māgnitudine, quae appellētur Bacēnis; hanc
longē intrōsus pertinēre et prō nātivō mūrō obiectam
Chēruscōs ab Suēbōrum Suēbōsque ab Chēruscōrum
185 iniūriīs incursiōnibusque prohibēre; ad eius silvae ini-
tium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōnsti-
tuisse.

¹ 'break.' ² 'spare.' ³ objective. ⁴ simple verb, *quaerō*.
⁵ 'clear.'

Mōrēs Gallōrum.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est,¹ nōn aliē-
 num² esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et
 2 quō³ differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In 190
 Galliā nōn solum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus
 pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus
 3 factiōnēs sunt; eārumque factiōnum principēs sunt quī⁴
 summam auctōritātem eōrum iudiciō habēre exīstimantur,
 quōrum⁵ ad arbitrium⁶ iudiciumque summa omnium 195
 4 rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat. Idque eius rei causā
 antiquitus institutum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā
 potentiōrem auxiliī egēret⁷; suōs enim quisque opprimī
 et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ullam
 5 inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in 200
 summā tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitātēs dīvisae
 sunt in duās partēs.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis
 2 principēs erant Aeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī cum per sē
 minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antiquitus erat in 205
 Aeduīs māgnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae,⁸ Germānōs
 atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē māgnīs
 3 iactūrīs⁹ pollicitātiōnibusque¹⁰ perdūxerant. Proeliīs vērō
 complūribus factīs secundīs¹¹ atque omnī nōbilitāte Ae-
 duōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecēsserant ut mā- 210
 gnam partem clientium ab Aeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsi-
 4 dēsque ab hīs principum filiōs acciperent et publicē iūrāre
 cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsiliī initūrōs, et

¹ 'we have come.' ² 'out of place.' ³ 'how.' ⁴ 'this clause is
 parenthetical, explaining principes. ⁵ 'characteristic. ⁶ 'discre-
 tion.' ⁷ 'lack' (with gen.). ⁸ 'dependency.' ⁹ 'concession.'
¹⁰ 'promise.' ¹¹ 'successful.'

partem finitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent
 215 Galliaeque tōtīus principātum obtinērent. Quā necessi-
 tate adductus Diviciācus auxiliī petendī causā Rōmam ad
 senātum profectus infectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris
 factā commutātiōne rerum, obsidibus Aeduīs redditīs,
 veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem compa-
 220 rātīs, quod īī quī sē ad eōrum amicitiam aggregāverant
 meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidē-
 bant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplifi-
 cātā,¹ Sēquanī principātum dīmiserant. In eōrum locum
 Rēmī succēsserant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem
 225 grātiā intellegēbātur, īī quī propter veterēs inimicitias
 nullō modō cum Aeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in
 clientēlam dicābant.² Hōs illi³ diligenter tuēbantur⁴; s
 ita et novam et repentē collēctam auctōritātem tenēbant.
 Eō [tamen] statū rēs erat ut longē principēs habērentur
 230 Aeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

13. In omni Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt
 numerō⁵ atque honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs⁶
 paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per⁷ sē,
 nullī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere⁷ aliēnō⁸
 235 aut māgnitudine tributōrum aut iniuriā potentiōrum pre-
 muntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus, quibus in
 hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs⁹ in servōs. [Sed
 dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum
 equitum. Illī rēbus dīvinīs intersunt, sacrificia publica
 240 ac privāta prōcūrant,⁹ religiōnēs interpretantur; ad eōs
 māgnus adulescentium numerus disciplīnae causā concur-

¹ 'increase.' ² 'devote.' ³ i.e. *Remi*. ⁴ 'protect.' ⁵ 'ac-
 count.' ⁶ 5th decl. ⁷ *aes alienum*: 'debt.' ⁸ 'master.'
⁹ i.e. 'attend to.'

rit, māgnōque hī¹ sunt apud eōs² honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversīs publicīs prīvātisque cōstituunt; et, sī quod est admissum³ facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditātē,⁴ dē finibus contrōversia est, idem dēcernunt; 245
 praemia poenāsque cōstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs interdīcunt.
 Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum⁵ habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugi- 250
 unt, nē quid ex contāgiōne⁶ incommodī accipiant, neque iīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ullus commūnī-
 cātur. His autem omnibus druidibus praeest unus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitātē, succēdit, aut, sī sunt 255
 plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs dē principātū contendunt. Iī certō annī tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media habētur, cōnsidunt in locō cōnsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque 260
 dēcrētīs iūdicīisque parent. Disciplina⁷ in Britannīā reperta⁸ atque inde in Galliam trānslāta existimātur,
 et nunc quī diligentius eam rem cōgnōscere volunt plērumque illō⁹ discendī causā proficiscuntur.

14. Druides ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta 265
 unā cum reliquīs pendunt [, militiae¹⁰ vacatiōnem omnī-
 umque rērū habent immunitātem]. Tantīs excitāti praemiīs et suā sponte multī in disciplinam conveniunt
 et ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Māgnū ibi

¹ i.e. *druides*. ² i.e. *Gallōs*. ³ 'commit.' ⁴ 'inheritance.' ⁵ 'criminal.'
⁶ 'association.' ⁷ 'system.' ⁸ as pass., 'originate.' ⁹ adv.
¹⁰ 'war'; locative.

270 numerum versuum ēdiscere¹ dicuntur. Itaque annōs nōn
 nulli vicēnōs² in disciplinā permanent. Neque fās esse
 existimant ea litteris mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus,
 publicis privātisque ratiōnibus, Graecis litteris utantur.
 Id mihi duābus dē causis instituisse videntur; quod neque
 275 in vulgus disciplinam³ efferrī velint neque eōs quī discunt
 litteris cōfīsōs minus memoriae studēre, quod ferē plē-
 risque accidit ut praesidiō litterārum diligentiam in per-
 discendō⁴ ac memoriam remittant. In primis hōc volunt
 persuādere, nōn interire animās,⁵ sed ab aliis post mortem
 280 trānsire ad aliōs; atque hōc māximē ad virtutem exci-
 tāri putant metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē
 sideribus⁶ atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi⁷ ac terrārum
 māgnitudine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortalium
 vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

285 15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est ūsus⁸
 atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris
 adventum quotannis accidere solēbat,⁹ uti aut ipsī iniuriās
 inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versan-
 tur,¹⁰ atque eōrum ut quisque est genere¹¹ cōpilsque amplis
 290 simus, ita plurimōs circum sē ambactōs¹² clientēsque habet.
 Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiamque nōvērunt.

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum¹³ dēdita religiō-
 nibus,¹⁴ atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōribus
 morbis,¹⁵ quīque in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut prō
 295 victimis hominēs immolant¹⁶ aut sē immolātūrōs vovent¹⁷
 administrisque¹⁸ ad ea sacrificia druidibus utuntur, quod,

¹ 'learn by heart.' ² 'twenty' (each); distributive. ³ 'doctrine.'
⁴ cf. *ē-discō*, above. ⁵ 'soul.' ⁶ 'star.' ⁷ 'universe.' ⁸ 'need.'
⁹ 'be accustomed.' ¹⁰ 'engage.' ¹¹ 'family'; specification. ¹² 're-
 tainer.' ¹³ 'very greatly.' ¹⁴ 'superstition.' ¹⁵ 'disease.' ¹⁶ 'sac-
 rifice.' ¹⁷ 'vow.' ¹⁸ 'agent.'

pro vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse
 deōrum immortalium nūmen¹ plācārī² arbitrantur, pū-
 blicēque eiusdem generis habent Institūta sacrificia. Alii
 immānī māgnitudine simulācra³ habent, quōrum con- 300
 texta⁴ vīminibus membra vīvīs⁵ hominibus complent;
 quibus succēnsīs circumventī flammā exanimantur homi-
 nēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō⁶ aut latrōciniō⁷ aut
 aliquā noxiā⁸ sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dīs immortalī-
 bus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, 305
 etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

17. Deōrum māximē Mercurium colunt: hūius sunt
 plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium
 ferunt,⁹ hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad
 quaestūs¹⁰ pecūniae mercātūrāsque¹¹ habēre vim māximam 310
 arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtē et Iovem
 et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs
 habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Miner-
 vam operum¹² atque artificiōrum¹³ initia trādere, Iovem
 imperium caelestium¹⁴ tenēre, Mārtē bella regere. Huīc, 315
 cum prōeliō dīmīcāre cōstituērunt, ea, quae bellō cēpe-
 rint, plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia
 capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt.
 Multīs in cīvitatibus hārum rērum extrūctōs cumulōs
 locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit 320
 ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta¹⁵ apud¹⁶ sē occul-
 tāre¹⁷ aut posita¹⁵ tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī rei
 supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

¹ (divine) 'power.'² 'appease.'³ 'image.'⁴ 'weave.'⁵ 'living.'⁶ 'theft.'⁷ 'robbery.'⁸ 'crime.'⁹ 'call.'¹⁰ 'acquisition.'¹¹ 'trade.'¹² 'trades.'¹³ 'arts.'¹⁴ (celestial)

'gods.'

¹⁵ i.e. ea quas bellō cēperint.¹⁶ apud se: 'in his house.'¹⁷ 'hide.'

18. Galli sē omnēs ab Dīte¹ patre prōgnātōs² praedi-
 825 cant idque ab druidibus prōditum dicunt. Ob eam causam³
 spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium
 finiunt⁴; diēs nātālēs⁴ et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic
 observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs vītae⁵
 Institūtis hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs,
 830 nisi cum adolēverunt⁵ ut mūnus⁶ militiae sustinēre
 possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur filiumque pue-
 rīlī aetāte in publicō in⁷ cōspectū patris assistere turpe⁸
 dūcunt.

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis⁹ nōmine
 835 accēperunt, tantās ex suis bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum
 dōtibus communicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūnc-³
 tim¹⁰ ratiō¹¹ habētur fructūsque¹² servantur; uter¹³ eōrum
 vitā superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus
 superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs sic utī³
 840 in liberōs vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater
 familiae illustriōre locō nātus dēcēssit,¹⁴ eius propinqui
 conveniunt et de morte, si rēs in sūspiciōnem venit, de
 uxōribus in servilem¹⁵ modum quaestiōnem habent et, si
 compertum est, Ignī atque omnibus tormentis excruciatās¹⁶
 845 interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum māgnifica
 et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vivīs cordī¹⁷ fuisse arbi-
 trantur in Ignem Inferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā
 hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, quōs ab iīs dilēctōs¹⁸ esse
 cōnstābat, iustis¹⁹ fūnebribus²⁰ cōfectis unā cremābantur.

¹ *Dis* or *Pluto*, god of the lower world. ² *prō* + (*g*)*nāscor*. ³ 'lim-
 it.' ⁴ 'of birth,' adj. ⁵ 'grow up.' ⁶ 'service.' ⁷ *in conspectu*
assistere: 'appear' (with). ⁸ agrees with *filium assistere*. ⁹ 'dowry.'
¹⁰ 'jointly.' ¹¹ 'account.' ¹² 'income.' ¹³ 'whichever.' ¹⁴ *sc. vīd.*
¹⁵ '(the same as) of slaves.' ¹⁶ 'torture.' ¹⁷ 'to the heart'; here,
 'dear.' ¹⁸ 'love.' ¹⁹ 'regular.' ²⁰ neut. plu. of adj. = *funeribus*.

20. Quae civitatēs commodius suam rem publicam ad- 350
ministrāre existimantur habent lēgibus sānctum,¹ sī quis
quid dē rē publicā ā finitimis rumōre ac fāmā accēperit,²
utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commū-
nicet; quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs³ atque imperitōs
falsis rumōribus terrēri et ad facinus impelli et dē summis 355
rēbus cōnsilium capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātus quae
vīsa sunt occultant, quae esse ex usū iudicāvērunt multi-
tudinī prōdunt. Dē rē publicā nisi per concilium loqui
nōn concēditur.

Mōrēs Germānōrum.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuetūdine differunt. 360
Nam neque druides habent quī rēbus divinis praesint
neque sacrificiis student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs
dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur,
Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem
accēperunt.² Vita omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiis 365
rei militāris cōsistit; ā parvis⁴ labōrī āc dūritiae⁵
student. Quī diūtissimē impuberēs⁶ permānsērunt māxi-
mam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hōc ali⁷ statūrā, ali
virēs nervōsque confirmārī putant. Intrā annum vērō
vicēsimū⁸ fēminae nōtitiā⁹ habuisse in turpissimis 370
habent rēbus; cūius rei nulla est occultātiō,¹⁰ quod et
prōmiscuē in flūminibus perluuntur¹¹ et pellibus aut
parvis rēnōnum¹² tegimentis¹³ utuntur, magnā corporis
parte nūdā.

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, māiorque pars eōrum 375

¹ 'ordain.' ² 'hear of.' ³ 'reckless.' ⁴ 'boyhood.' ⁵ 'hard-
ship.' ⁶ 'chaste.' ⁷ 'strengthen.' ⁸ 'twentieth.' ⁹ 'knowl-
edge.' ¹⁰ 'concealment.' ¹¹ 'bathe.' ¹² 'reindeer skins.' ¹³ 'cov-
ering.'

victus¹ in lacte, cāseō,² carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam² agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs³; sed magistrātus ac prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cōgnātiōnibusque⁴ hominum, quīque unā coierunt,⁵ quantum et
 380 quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuant, atque annō post aliō⁶ trānsire cōgunt. Eius rei multās afferunt causās: nē⁷ assiduā⁷ cōnsuētūdine capti⁸ studium bellī gerendī agrī culturā commutent⁹; nē lātōs finēs parāre¹⁰ studeant potentiōrēs, atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant;
 385 nē accurātius ad frīgora atque aestūs¹¹ vitandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissensiōnēsque nascuntur; ut animī aequitāte¹² plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

390 23. Civitātibus māxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātis finibus sōlitudinēs habēre. Hōc proprium¹³ virtutis existimant, expulsōs agrīs finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōsistere; simul hōc sē fore³ tūtiorēs arbitrantur, repentinae incursiōnis timōre sublātō.
 395 Cum bellum civitās aut illātum dēfendit aut infert,⁴ magistrātus quī ei bellō praesint, et vitae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nullus est com-⁵ mūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs¹⁴ dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.
 400 Latrōcinia nullam habent infāmiam quae extrā finēs⁶ cuiusque civitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidia¹⁵ minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque⁷ ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dixit sē ducem fore,

¹ 'food.' ² 'cheese.' ³ 'private.' ⁴ 'clan.' ⁵ *con. ed.* ⁶ *adv.*
⁷ 'continued.' ⁸ 'charm.' ⁹ 'exchange (for).' ¹⁰ 'acquire.'
¹¹ 'heat.' ¹² 'contentment.' ¹³ 'evidence' (pred.). ¹⁴ *ius dicunt*:
 'act as judges.' ¹⁵ 'idleness.'

quī sequī velint profiteantur,¹ cōsurgunt iī quī et causam et hominem probant² suumque auxilium polli- 405
centur atque ā multitudīne collaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum³ numerō dūcuntur omniumque hīs rērum postea fidēs dērogātur.⁴
Hospitem⁵ violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vērunt ab iniuriā prohibent, sāctōsque⁶ habent, 410
hisque omnium domūs patent victusque communicātur.

24. Ac fuit antea tempus cum Germānōs Galli virtūte superārent, ūtrō bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt, loca 415
circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratosthenī⁷ et quibusdam Graecis fāmā nōtam esse vidē, quam illi Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāverunt atque ibi cōsēderunt; quae gēns ad hōc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summāque habet iustitiae et bellicae laudis 420
opiniōnem. Nunc quod in eādē inopiā, egestāte,⁸ patientiā,⁹ quā ante, Germānī permanent, eōdē victū et cultū corporis utuntur; Gallis autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trānsmarinārum rērum nōtitia multa¹⁰ ad cōpiam atque usūs largitur¹¹; paulatim assuēfactī superārī 425
multisque victī proeliis nē sē quidem ipsī cum illis virtūte comparant.

Hercynia silva et ferarum quae in ea nascuntur, quaedam genera describuntur.

25. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōstrāta est, lātitudō novem diērum iter¹² expeditō¹³ patet; nōn

¹ imper. in ind. dis.; translate, 'for those . . . to signify it.'
² 'approve.' ³ 'traitor.' ⁴ 'withdraw.' ⁵ 'guest.' ⁶ 'sacred.'
⁷ nom. *Eratosthenēs*. ⁸ 'need.' ⁹ 'suffering.' ¹⁰ acc. ¹¹ 'afford.'
¹² cognate acc. ¹³ (one) 'unencumbered.'

430 enim aliter finiri¹ potest, neque mēsurās itinerum nōvē-
runt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracō-
rum finibus rēctaque² flūminis Dānuvii³ regiōne perti-
net ad finēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sini-
strōrsus⁴ diversis⁵ ā flūmine regiōnibus multārumque
435 gentium finēs propter māgnitūdinem attingit; neque
quisquam est hūius⁶ Germāniae qui sē [aut audisse] aut
adisse ad initium eius silvae dicat, cum diērum iter sexā-
gintā prōcēsserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit; mul-
taque in eā genera ferārū⁷ nasci cōstat quae reliquīs
440 in locis vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus quae māximē differant
ā cēteris et memoriae prōdenda videantur haec sunt.

26. Est bōs⁸ cervi⁹ figurā cuius ā mediā fronte¹⁰ inter
aurēs¹¹ unum cornū exsistit excelsius¹² magisque dērēctum¹³
hīs quae nōbīs nōta sunt cornibus; ab eius summō sic ut
445 palmae rāmīque¹⁴ latē diffunduntur.¹⁵ Eadem est fēminae
marisque¹⁶ nātūra, eadem fōrma māgnitūdōque cornuum.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs.¹⁷ Hārum est
cōnsimilis capris¹⁸ figurā et varietās¹⁹ pellium; sed māgni-
tūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque²⁰ sunt cornibus et
450 crūra²¹ sine nōdis²² articulisque²³ habent; neque quiētis
causā prōcumbunt²⁴ neque, si quō afflictāe cāsū conci-
dērunt, ērigere sēsē ac sublevāre possunt. His sunt
arborēs prō cubilibus²⁵; ad eas sē applicant atque ita
paulum modo reclīnatae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex⁴

¹ 'measure.' ² 'recta regione: 'parallel' (to). ³ 'Danube.'
⁴ 'to the left.' ⁵ 'remote.' ⁶ 'this part of.' ⁷ 'wild animal.'
⁸ 'ox.' ⁹ 'stag.' ¹⁰ 'forehead.' ¹¹ 'ear.' ¹² 'elevated.'
¹³ 'straight.' ¹⁴ hendiadys; 'palm branches.' ¹⁵ 'spread out.'
¹⁶ 'male.' ¹⁷ 'elk.' ¹⁸ 'goat.' ¹⁹ 'different colors.' ²⁰ 'broken';
mutilae sunt cornibus: 'have broken horns.' ²¹ 'leg.' ²² 'enlarge-
ment.' ²³ 'joint.' ²⁴ 'lie down.' ²⁵ 'resting-place.'

vēstigiis¹ cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus² quō sē 455
 recipere cōsuērint, omnēs³ eō locō aut ab rādīcibus
 subruunt⁴ aut accidunt⁵ arborēs, tantum ut summa⁶
 speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōn-
 suētūdine reclīnāvērunt, infirmās arborēs pondere affli-
 gunt atque unā ipsae concidunt. 460

28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī urī⁷ appellantur.
 Hī sunt māgnitūdine paulō infrā elephantōs, speciē et
 colōre et figurā taurī.⁸ Māgna vīs eōrum est et māgna
 velōcitās, neque hominī neque ferae quam cōspexērunt
 parcut. Hōs studiōsē⁹ foveīs¹⁰ captōs interficiunt; hōc 465
 sē labōre dūrant¹¹ adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnāti-
 ōnis exercent, et quī plurimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs
 in publicum cornibus quae sint tēstimōniō, māgnam
 ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere¹² ad hominēs et mānsuē-
 fieri¹³ nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitudō 470
 cornuum et figurā et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum
 cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsita ab labrīs¹⁴
 argentō¹⁵ circumclūdunt¹⁶ atque in amplissimīs epulis¹⁷
 prō pōculis¹⁸ utuntur.

III. BELLUM CONTRA AMBIORIGEM ET EBURONES.

CC. 29-44.

*Caesar, ex Germāniā reversus, in Eburōnum finēs exercitum
 dūcit, et omnēs Gallōs ad illōs diripiendōs ēvocat.*

29. Caesar, postquam per Ubiōs explorātōrēs comperit 475
 Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus,

¹ 'rack.' ² 'hunter.' ³ with arbores. ⁴ 'dig under.' ⁵ 'cut
 into.' ⁶ 'exact.' ⁷ 'urochs.' ⁸ 'bull.' ⁹ 'cautiously.' ¹⁰ 'pit.'
¹¹ 'h.rden.' ¹² cf. cōnsuēscō. ¹³ 'tame.' ¹⁴ 'edge.' ¹⁵ 'silver.'
¹⁶ 'līne.' ¹⁷ 'banquet.' ¹⁸ 'drinking cup.'

quod, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, minimē hominēs Germāni agrī cultūrae student, cōstituit nōn prōgredi longius; sed nē omnīnō metum reditūs suī barbaris tolleret :
 480 atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū partem ultimam pontis, quae rīpās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitudinem pedum ducentōrum rescindit, atque in extrēmō¹ ponte turrim tabulātōrum² quattuor cōstituit praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendī causā pōnit
 485 māgnisque eum locum mūnitiōnibus firmat. Eī locō praesidiōque C. Volcācium Tullum adulēscētem praeficit. Ipse, cum mātūrēscere³ frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum⁴ Ambiorīgis profectus per Arduennam silvam, quae est tōtius Galliae māxima atque ab rīpīs Rhēnī finibusque
 490 Trēverōrum ad Nervīōs pertinet milibusque amplius quīngentis in longitudinem patet, L. Minucium Basilum cum omni equitātū praemittit, si⁵ quid celeritāte itineris atque oportunitāte temporis prōficere possit; monet ut ignēs in castris fierī prohibeat, nē qua ēius adventūs
 495 procul significātiō fiat; sēsē cōfestim subsequī dicit.

30. Basilus ut imperātum est facit. Celeriter contrāque omnium opīniōnem cōfectō itinere multōs in agrīs inopīnantēs dēprehendit; eōrum indicio⁶ ad ipsum Ambiorīgem contendit, quō in locō cum paucis equitibus
 500 esse dicēbātur. Multum cum in omnibus rēbus tum in rē militārī potest fortuna. Nam ut māgnō accidit⁷ cāsū ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparātum incideret, priusque⁸ ēius adventus ab hominibus vidērētur quam fāma ac nūntius afferretur, sic māgnae fuit fortunae,
 505 omni⁹ militārī Instrūmentō quod circum sē habēbat

¹ 'story.' ² 'ripen.' ³ 'to see if.' ⁴ 'information.' ⁵ perfect.
⁶ translate prius with quam, below. ⁷ omni crepto; concessive.

ēreptō, raedis¹ equisque comprehēnsis, ipsum effugere
 3 mortem. Sed hōc factum est, quod, aedificiō circumdatō
 silvā, ut sunt ferē domicilia Gallōrum, quī vitandī aestūs
 causā plērumque silvārum ac flūminum petunt propin-
 quitātēs, comitēs² familiārēsque eius angustō in locō 510
 4 paulisper equitum nostrōrum vim sustinuērunt. His
 pūgnantibus illum in equum quīdam ex suis intulit; fugi-
 entem silvae tēxērunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum
 et ad vitandum multum fortuna valuit.

31. Ambiorix cōpiās suās iudiciōne³ nōn condūxerit, 515
 quod proeliō dimicandum nōn existimāret, an tempore
 exclusus et repentinō equitum adventū prohibitus, cum
 2 reliquum exercitum subsequi crēderet, dubium est; sed
 certē dimissis per agrōs nūntiis sibi quemque cōnsulere
 iūssit. Quōrum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in con- 520
 3 tinentēs palūdēs profūgit; quī proximī Ōceanō fuērunt,
 hī insulis sēsē occultāverunt, quās aestūs⁴ efficere cōn-
 4 suērunt; multī ex suis finibus ēgressi sē suaeque omnia
 aliēnissimis⁵ crēdidērunt. Catuvolcus, rēx dimidiaē partis
 5 Eburōnum, quī unā cum Ambiorigē cōnsilium inierat, 525
 aetāte iam cōnfectus, cum labōrem bellī aut fugae ferre
 nōn posset, omnibus precibus dētēstātus⁶ Ambiorigē,
 quī eius cōnsiliī auctor fuisset, taxō,⁷ cūius māgna in
 Galliā Germāniāque cōpia est, sē exanimāvit.

32. Sēgni Condrūsique ex gente et numerō Germānō- 530
 rum, quī sunt inter Eburōnēs Trēverōsque, lēgātōs ad
 Caesarem misērunt orātum nē sē in hostium numerō
 dūceret nēve omnium Germānōrum quī essent citrā

¹ 'wagon.' ² 'companion.' ³ -ne: 'whether'; iudicio: 'deliberately'; explained by quod—existimaret. ⁴ 'tide.' ⁵ 'utter stranger.'
⁶ 'curse,' ⁷ '(the fruit or leaves of) the yew-tree.'

Rhēnum ūnam esse causam iūdicāret; nihil sē dē bellō
 535 cōgitāvisse, nūlla Ambiorīgī auxilia mīsisse. Caesar ex-
 plōrātā rē quaestiōne captīvōrum, sī quī ad eōs Eburōnēs 2
 ex fugā convēnissent, ad sē ut redūcerentur imperāvit;
 sī ita fēcissent, finēs eōrum sē violātūrum¹ negāvit. Tum 3
 cōpiīs in trēs partēs distribūtis impedīmenta omnium
 540 legiōnum Aduatucam contulit. Id castelli nōmen est. 4
 Hōc ferē est in mediīs Eburōnum finibus, ubi Titūrius
 atque Aurunculēius hiemandī causā cōnsēderant. Hunc 5
 cum reliquīs rēbus locum probābat, tum quod superiōris
 anni mūnitiōnēs integrāe manēbant, ut militum labōrem
 545 sublevāret. Praesidiō impedīmentis legiōnem quartam
 decimam reliquit, ūnam ex hīs tribus quās proximē
 cōnscrip̄tās ex Ītaliā trādūxerat. Ei legiōnī castrisque 6
 Q. Tullium Cicerōnem praefēcit ducentōsque equitēs ei
 attribuit.

550 33. Partitō exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus
 ad² Ōceanum versus in eās partēs quae Menapiōs attin-
 gunt proficisci iubet; C. Trebōnium cum parī legiōnum 2
 numerō ad eam regiōnem quae Aduatucis adiacet dē-
 populandam mittit; ipse cum reliquīs tribus ad flūmen 3
 555 Scaldim, quod influit in Mosam, extrēmāsque Arduennae
 partēs ire cōstituit, quō cum paucis equitibus profectum
 Ambiorīgem audiēbat. Discēdēns post diem septimum 4
 sēsē reversūrum cōfirmat, quam ad diem ei legiōnī quae
 in praesidiō relinquēbātur frūmentum dēberi³ sciēbat.
 560 Labiēnum Trebōniumque hortātur, sī rei pūblīcae com- 5
 modō facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur, ut, rūsus
 communicātō cōnsiliō explōrātisque hostium ratiōnibus,
 aliud initium bellī capere possint.

¹ 'invade.'² ad versus: 'toward.'³ 'owe.'

34. Erat, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, manus certa nulla, nōn oppidum, nōn praesidium, quod sē armīs dēfenderet, 585
 2 sed in omnēs partēs dispersa multitudō. Ubi cuique aut
 vallēs abdita aut locus silvestris aut palūs impedita spem
 3 praesidiī aut salutis aliquam offerēbat, cōnsēderat. Haec
 loca vicinitatibus¹ erant nōta, māgnamque rēs diligentiam
 requirēbat, nōn in summā² exercitūs tuendā (nūllum enim 570
 poterat universis³ ā perterritis ac dispersis periculum
 accidere), sed in singulis militibus cōservandis; quae
 tamen ex parte rēs ad salutem exercitūs pertinēbat.
 4 Nam et praedae cupiditās multōs longius sēvocābat, et
 silvae incertis occultisque itineribus cōfertōs adire pro- 575
 hibēbant. Sī negōtium cōficiī stirpemque⁴ hominum
 scelerātōrum interficiī vellet, dīmittendae plūrēs manūs
 6 diducendique erant milites; sī continēre ad signa mani-
 pulōs vellet, ut instituta ratiō et cōsuetūdō exercitūs
 Rōmānī pōstulābat, locus ipse erat praesidiō barbaris, 580
 neque ex⁵ occultō insidiandī et dispersōs circumveniendī
 7 singulis deerat audācia. Ut⁶ in eius modi difficultatibus,
 quantum⁷ diligentīā prōvidērī poterat prōvidēbātur; ut
 potius⁸ in nocendō⁹ aliquid praetermitteretur, etsī omnium
 animī ad ulciscendum ardēbant, quam cum aliquō militum 585
 8 detrimentō nocērētur.⁹ Dīmittit ad finitimās civitatēs
 nūntiōs Caesar; omnēs ēvocat spē praedae ad diripiendōs
 Eburōnēs, ut potius in silvis Gallōrum vīta quam legiō-
 nārius miles periclitētur¹⁰; simul ut māgnā multitudine
 circumfusā prō tālī¹¹ facinore stirps ac nōmen civitātis 590
 tollātur.¹² Māgnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

¹ '(people of the) neighborhood.' ² 'whole.' ³ dat.; sc. *nostris*.

⁴ 'stock.' ⁵ *ex—insidiandi*: 'attack from ambush.' ⁶ (as) 'being.'

⁷ 'as far as.' ⁸ with *quam*, below. ⁹ sc. *hostibus*. ¹⁰ 'endanger.'

¹¹ 'such.' ¹² 'destroy.'

Sugambri eius rei famā mōti Rhēnum trānseunt, sed mūtātō cōnsiliō Cicerōnis castra adoriuntur.

35. Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerēbantur, diēsque appetēbat¹ septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta legiōnemque revertī cōstituerat. Hic² 2
595 quantum in bellō fortuna possit et quantōs afferat cāsūs cōgnōscī potuit. Dissipātis ac perterritis hostibus, ut 3
dēmōstrāvimus, manus erat nūlla quae parvam modo³ causam timōris afferret. Trāns Rhēnum ad Germānōs 4
pervenit fāma diripi Eburōnēs atque ultrō⁴ omnēs ad
600 praedam ēvocārī. Cōgunt equitum duo mīlia Sugambri, 5
quī sunt proximī Rhēnō, ā quibus receptōs ex fugā Tencerōs atque Usipetēs suprā docuimus. Trānseunt Rhēnum 6
nāvibus ratibusque trīgintā⁵ mīlibus passuum infrā eum
605 relictum: primōs Eburōnum finēs adeunt; mūltōs ex
fugā dispersōs excipiunt,⁶ māgnō pecoris numerō, cūius
sunt cupidissimī barbarī, potiuntur. Invītātī praedā 7
longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palūdēs bellō latrōciniisque
nātōs, nōn silvae morantur. Quibus in locis sit Caesar,
610 ex captivīs quaerunt; profectum longius reperiunt om-
nemque exercitum discēssisse cōgnōscunt. Atque unus 8
ex captivīs: ‘Quid vōs,’ inquit, ‘hanc miseram ac tenuem 7
sectāminī⁸ praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortunātis-
simōs? Tribus hōris Aduatucam venīre potestis; hūc
615 omnēs suās fortunās exercitus Rōmānōrum contulit; prae- 9
sidiū tantum est ut nē mūrus quidem cingī⁹ possit, neque
quisquam ēgredi extrā mūnitiōnēs audeat.’ Hāc oblātā 10
spē Germānī quam nactī erant praedam in occultō re-

¹ ‘be at hand.’ ² adv.; ‘here.’ ³ ‘even.’ ⁴ ‘further.’ ⁵ ‘thirty.’
⁶ ‘come upon.’ ⁷ ‘precarious.’ ⁸ ‘run after.’ ⁹ ‘man.’

linquunt; ipsi Aduatucam contendunt usque eodem duce cuius haec indicio cognoverant.

620

36. Cicerō, qui omnes superiōres diēs praeceptis Caesaris summā diligentia militēs in castris continuisset ac ne cālōnem quidem quemquam extrā mūnitiōnem egredi passus esset, septimō diē diffidēs¹ de numerō dierum Caesarem fidem servātūrum, quod longius prōgressum audiēbat neque ulla de reditu eius fama afferēbatur; simul eōrum permōtus vōcibus, qui illius patientiam² paene obsessiōnem³ appellābant, si quidem ex castris egredi nōn liceret, nullum eius modi cāsū expectāns, quō,⁴ novem oppositis⁵ legiōnibus māximōque equitatū, dispersis ac paene delētis hostibus, in milibus passuum tribus offendi⁶ posset, quīque cohortēs frūmentātum in proximās segetēs⁷ mittit, quās inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat. Complūrēs erant in castris ex legiōnibus aegri⁸ relictī; ex quibus qui hōc spatiō dierum convaluerant,⁹ circiter trēcentī, sub vēxillō unā mittuntur; māgna praeterea multitūdō cālōnum, māgna vis iumentōrum, quae in castris subsēderat,¹⁰ factā potestate sequitur.

37. Hōc ipsō tempore et cāsū Germāni equitēs interveniunt¹¹ prōtinusque¹² eodem illō quō vēnerant cursū ab decumānā portā in castra irrumpere cōnantur; nec prius sunt visi, obiectis ab eā parte silvis, quam castris appropinquārent, usque¹³ eō ut qui sub vāllō tenderent¹⁴ mercatōrēs recipiendī sui facultātem nōn habērent. Ino-

645

¹ 'doubt.' ² 'patient waiting.' ³ 'siege.' ⁴ 'abl. of means = ut eō.' ⁵ 'being in the field.' ⁶ **offendi posset**: 'harm could be done.' ⁷ 'corn fields.' ⁸ 'ill.' ⁹ 'get well.' ¹⁰ 'remain behind.'
¹¹ 'appear.' ¹² 'immediately.' ¹³ **usque eo**: '(and were) so near, even.' ¹⁴ 'pitch (a tent).'

pīnantēs nostrī rē novā perturbantur, ac vix primum
 impetum cohors in statīōne sustinet. Circumfunduntur¹ 4
 hostēs ex reliquīs partibus, sī quem aditum reperire
 possint. Aegrē portās nostrī tuentur, reliquōs aditūs 5
 650 locus ipse per sē mūnitiōque dēfendit. Tōtis trepidātur² 6
 castrīs atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit;
 neque quō signa ferantur neque quam in partem quisque
 conveniat prōvident. Alius castra iam capta prōnūntiat, 7
 alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperātōre victōrēs barbarōs
 655 vēnisse contendit; plērique novās³ sibi ex locō religiōnēs 8
 fingunt Cottaēque et Tituriī calamitātem, quī in eōdem
 occiderint castellō, ante oculōs pōnunt. Tālī timōre 9
 omnibus perterritīs cōfirmātur opīniō barbarīs, ut ex
 captivō audierant, nullum esse intus praesidium. Per- 10
 660 rumpere nītuntur sēque ipsī adhortantur nē tantam
 fortūnam ex manibus dīmittant.

38. Erat aeger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius Baculus,
 quī primum pilum apud Caesarem dūxerat, cūius men-
 tiōnem superiōribus proeliis fēcimus, ac diem iam quīn-
 665 tum cibō caruerat.⁴ Hīc diffusus⁵ suae atque omnium 2
 salutī inermis ex tabernāculō prōdit; videt imminēre⁶
 hostēs atque in summō rem esse discrimine⁷; capit arma
 ā proximīs atque in portā cōsistit. Cōsequuntur hunc 3
 centuriōnēs eius cohortis quae in statīōne erat; paulisper
 670 unā proelium sustinent. Relinquit⁸ animus Sextium 4
 gravibus acceptīs vulneribus; aegrē per⁹ manūs trādītus
 servātur. Hōc spatiō interpositō reliquī sēsē cōfirmant 5

¹ 'swarm around'; middle voice. ² 'be in confusion'; impers.
³ novas—fingunt: 'invent new superstitions from the locality.' ⁴ 'be
 without.' ⁵ 'distrust.' ⁶ 'be close at hand.' ⁷ 'danger.'
⁸ relinquit animus: 'faint.' ⁹ per manus: 'from hand to hand.'

tantum ut in mūnitiōnibus cōsistere audeant speciem-
que dēfēnsōrum praebeant.

*Adventū Caesaris dēspērātā castrōrum expūgnātiōne domum
revertuntur.*

39. Interim cōfectā frūmentātiōne mīlitēs nostrī clā- 675
mōrem exaudiunt; praecurrunt equitēs; quantō rēs sit in
2 periculō cōgnōscunt. Hīc vērō nulla mūnitiō est quae
perterritōs recipiat; modo cōscriptī atque ūsus mīlītāris
imperītī ad tribūnum mīlitum centuriōnēsque ōra con-
3 vertunt; quid ab hīs praecipiātur exspectant. Nēmō est 680
4 tam fortis quā reī novitāte perturbētur. Barbarī sīgna
procul cōspicātī oppūgnātiōne dēsistunt: redisse primō
legiōnēs crēdunt, quās longius discēssisse ex captivīs
cōgnōverant; postea dēspectā paucitāte ex omnibus parti-
bus impetum faciunt. 685

40. Cālōnēs in proximum tumulum prōcurrunt. Hinc
celeriter dēiectī sē in sīgna manipulōsque cōiciunt; eō
2 magis timidōs perterrent mīlitēs. Aliī cuneō¹ factō ut
celeriter perrumpant cēnsent,² quoniam tam propinqua
sint castra, et sī pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at 690
3 reliquōs servārī posse [cōnfīdunt]; aliī ut in iugō cōnsi-
4 stant atque eundem omnēs ferant cāsum. Hōc veterēs
nōn probant mīlitēs, quōs sub vēxillō ūnā profectōs
docuimus. Itaque inter sē cohortāti, duce C. Trebōniō,
equite Rōmānō, quī iis erat praepositus, per mediōs ho- 695
5 stēs perrumpunt incolumēsque ad ūnum omnēs in castra
perveniant. Hōs subsecūtī cālōnēs equitēsque eōdem
6 impetū mīlitum virtūte servantur. At iī quī in iugō

¹ 'wedge'; this abl. abs. belongs in sense within the *ut* clause, which
is obj. of cēnsent. ² 'determine.'

cōstitērant, nullō etiam nunc usū rei militāris perceptō,
 700 neque in eō quod probāverant cōsiliō permanēre, ut sē
 locō superiōre dēfenderent, neque eam¹ quam prōfuisse²
 aliis vim celeritatemque viderant, imitārī potuerunt; sed
 sē in castra recipere cōnātī inīquum in locum dēmiserunt.
 Centuriōnēs, quōrum nōn nullī ex inferiōribus ordinibus
 705 reliquārum legiōnum virtūtis causā in superiōres erant
 ordinēs hūius legiōnis trāductī, nē ante partam³ rei mili-
 tāris laudem amitterent, fortissimē pūgnantēs concidē-
 runt. Militum pars, hōrum virtūte submōtis hostibus,⁴
 praeter spem incolumis in castra pervēnit; pars ā bar-
 710 baris circumventa periit.

41. Germānī dēspērātā expūgnātiōne castrōrum, quod
 nostrōs iam cōstitisse in mūnitiōnibus vidēbant, cum eā
 praedā quam in silvīs dēposuerant trāns Rhēnum sēsē
 recēperunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discēssum hostium
 715 terror ut eā nocte cum C. Volusēnus missus cum equi-
 tātū in castra vēnisset, fidem nōn faceret adesse cum
 incolumī Caesarem exercitū. Sic omnium animōs timor
 occupāverat ut paene aliēnātā⁴ mente, dēlētis omni-
 bus cōpiis, equitātum sē ex fugā recēpisse dicerent, neque
 720 incolumī exercitū Germānōs castra oppūgnātūrōs fuisse
 cōntenderent. Quem timōrem Caesaris adventus sustulit.⁴

42. Reversus ille, ēventūs bellī nōn ignōrāns, ūnum
 quod cohortēs ex statīōne et praesidiō essent ēmissae
 questus—nē minimum quidem cāsui locum relinqui dē-
 725 buisse—multum⁵ fortūnam in repentinō hostium adventū
 potuisse iūdicāvit; multō etiam amplius, quod paene ab

¹ agreeing w. vim celeritatemque, which is attracted into the rel. clause. ² 'be of advantage.' ³ 'gain.' ⁴ alienata mente: 'having lost their reason.' ⁵ adv. acc. with potuisse.

3 ipsō vāllō portisque castrōrum barbarōs āvertisset. Quā-
rum omnium rērum māximē admirandum vidēbatur,
quod Germānī, quī eō cōnsiliō Rhēnum trānsierant, ut
Ambiorīgis finēs dēpopulārentur, ad castra Rōmānōrum 730
dēlātī optātissimum¹ Ambiorīgī beneficium obtulerant.

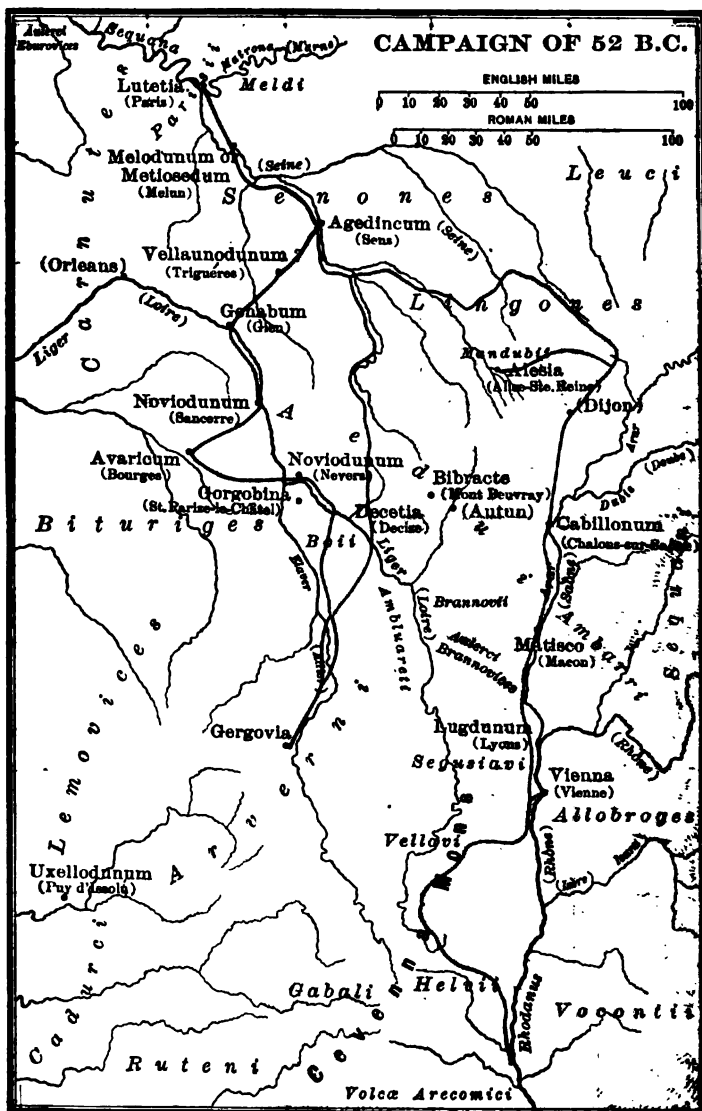
*Caesar Eburōnum finēs vāstat; tum conciliō habitō et sup-
pliciō dē Accōne sūmptō in Italiam proficiēscitur.*

43. Caesar rūrsus ad vēxandōs hostēs profectus, māgnō
coāctō numerō ex finitimīs civitātibus [equitum] in omnēs
2 partēs dīmittit. Omnēs vīcī atque omnia aedificia quae
quisque cōspexerat incendēbantur; praeda ex omnibus 735
3 locīs agēbatur; frūmenta nōn solum ā tantā multitudīne
iūmentōrum atque hominum cōnsūmēbantur, sed etiam
annī tempore atque imbribus prōcubuerant, ut, sī quī
etiam in praesentiā sē occultāssent, tamen hīs dēductō
4 exercitū rērum omnium inopiā pereundum vidērētur. Āc 740
saepe in eum locum² ventum est, tantō in omnēs partēs
dīmissō equitātū, ut [nōn] modo³ vīsum ab sē⁴ Ambiorīgem
in fugā circumspicerent⁵ captīvī nec⁶ plānē etiam abisse⁷
5 ex cōspectū contenderent,⁸ ut, spē cōsequendī illātā
atque infīnitō labōre susceptō, quī sē summam ā Caesare 745
grātiā inītūrōs⁹ putārent, paene nātūram studiō vin-
cerent,¹⁰ semperque paulum¹¹ ad summam felicitātem
6 dēfuisse vidērētur, atque ille latebrīs¹² aut saltibus¹³ sē
ēriperet; et noctū occultātus aliās regiōnēs partēsq̄
peteret nōn māiōre equitum praesidiō quam quattuor, 750
quibus sōlīs vītā suā committere audēbat.

¹ 'welcome.' ² 'point.' ³ 'just.' ⁴ with vīsum. ⁵ trans.:
'look around for.' ⁶ negative with plane. ⁷ sc. eum. ⁸ 'declare.'
⁹ 'gain.' ¹⁰ 'outdo.' ¹¹ paulum ad defuisse videretur: 'he (Caesar)
seemed barely to miss.' ¹² 'hiding-place.' ¹³ 'woods.'

44. Tālī modō vāstātīs regiōnibus exercitum Caesar
 duārum cohortium damnō¹ Dūrocortōrum² Rēmōrum
 dedūcit; conciliōque in eum locum Galliae indictō dē
 755 coniūrātiōne Senonum et Carnutum quaestiōnem habēre
 instituit; et dē Accōne, quī princeps eius cōsiliī fuerat, ⁊
 graviōre sententiā prōnūtiātā, mōre māiōrum³ suppli-
 cium sūmpsit. Nōn nūllī iūdicium veritī profugērunt. ⁊
 Quibus cum aquā⁴ atque Ignī interdixisset, duās legiōnēs
 760 ad finēs Trēverōrum, duās in Lingonibus, sex reliquās in
 Senonum finibus Agēdinci⁵ in hibernīs collocāvit; frūmen-
 tōque exercitui prōvisō, ut Instituerat, in Ītaliā ad con-
 ventūs agendōs profectus est.

¹ 'loss.' ² acc. ³ sc. *nostrōrum*. ⁴ aqua—interdixisset : for-
 mula for banishment. ⁵ locative.



COMMENTARIUS SEPTIMUS.

BELLUM VERCINGETORIGIS.

CC. 1-90.

Caesar cum urbānō mōtū in Italiā retinēri dicerētur, nova dē bellō cōnsilia ineunt Galli. Primī Carnutēs, deinde Arvernī, auctōre Vercingetorige bellum suscipiunt.

1. Quiētā Galliā Caesar, ut cōstituerat, in Italiā ad
conventūs agendōs proficiscitur. Ibi cōgnōscit dē P.
Clodii caede, dē senātusque cōsultō certior factus, ut
omnēs iūniōrēs¹ Italiae coniūrārent,² dilēctum tōtā prō-
2 vinciā habere instituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpīnam 5
celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et affingunt³ rumōri-
bus Galli, quod rēs pōscere vidēbātur, retinēri urbānō⁴
mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum
3 venīre posse. Hāc impulsī occāsiōne quī iam ante sē
populi Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent liberius atque 10
4 audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictīs inter
sē prīncipēs Galliae conciliis silvestribus āc remōtīs locīs
queruntur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs
recidere dēmōstrant; miserantur commūnem Galliae
5 fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus āc praemiis dēpō- 15
scunt quī⁵ bellī initium faciant et suī capitis periculō
6 Galliam in libertātem vindicent.⁶ In primīs ratiōnem
esse habendam dicunt, prius quam eōrum clandestina⁷

¹ (younger) 'of military age.' ² 'take the military oath.' ³ 'in-
vent (other stories) in addition.' ⁴ i.e. at Rome. ⁵ sc. eōs; pur-
pose clause. ⁶ 'restore.' ⁷ 'secret.'

cōnsilia efferantur,¹ ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdatur.

20 Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente ⁊
imperātore ex hibernīs ēgredi, neque imperātor sine
praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenire possit; postrēmō in
aciē praestāre interficī, quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam
libertātemque, quam ā māiōribus accēperint, recuperāre.

25 2. Hīs rēbus agitātis profitentur Carnutēs sē nūllum
pericūlum commūnis salutis causā rectūsāre principēsque²
ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur et, quoniam in
praesentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs
efferātur,¹ at iūre iūrاندō ac fidē sanciatūr petunt, collā-
30 tīs militāribus signīs, quō mōre eōrum gravissima caer-
imōnia continētur, nē factō initiō bellī ab reliquīs dēseran-
tur. Tum collaudātis Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrاندō ab
omnibus quī aderant, tempore eius rei cōstitutō, ā con-
ciliō discēditur.

35 3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs Cotuātō et Conconne-
todumnō ducibus, dēspērātīs hominibus, Cēnabum signō
datō concurrunt civēsque³ Rōmānōs quī negōtiandi⁴ causā
ibi cōnstitērant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equi-
tem Rōmānum, quī rei frūmentāriae iūssū Caesaris prae-
40 erat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum diripiunt. Celeriter ad
omnēs Galliae civitatēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae
māior atque illustrior incidit rēs, clāmōre⁵ per agrōs
regiōnēsque significant; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et
proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī
45 oriente sōle gesta essent ante primam cōnfectam vigiliam
in finibus Arvernōrum audīta sunt, quod spatium est mī-
lium passuum circiter centum et sexāgintā.

4. Similī ratiōne ibi Vercingetorix, Celtillī filius, Ar-

¹ 'spread abroad.' ² 'first.' ³ 'citizen.' ⁴ 'do business.' ⁵ 'shout.'

vernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cūius pater prīncipātum tōtius Galliae obtinuerat et ob eam causam quod 50
rēgnum appetēbat ā cīvitate erat interfectus, convocātis
2 suis clientibus facile incendit.¹ Cōgnitō eius cōsiliō ad
arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitiōne, patruō²
suō, reliquisque prīncipibus, quī hanc temptandam fortū-
nam nōn existimābant; expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; 55
3 nōn dēsistit tamen atque in agrīs habet dilēctum egen-
tium ac perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū quōscumque adit
4 ex cīvitate ad suam sententiam perducit; hortatur ut
commūnis libertātis causā arma capiant, māgnisque coāc-
tis cōpiis adversāriōs suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiec- 60
5 tus, expellit ex cīvitate. Rēx ab suis appellatur. Dīmittit
quoque³ versus lēgatiōnēs; obtēstatur⁴ ut in fidē maneant.
6 Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parisiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turo-
nōs, Aulercōs, Lemovicēs, Andōs reliquōsque omnēs quī
7 Ōceanum attingunt adiungit; omnium cōsēnsū ad eum 65
dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte omnibus hīs
cīvitatibus obsidēs imperat; certum numerum mīlitum
ad sē celeriter adduci iubet; armōrum quantum quaeque
8 civitās domī, quodque⁵ ante tempus efficiat, cōstituit; in
9 prīmīs equitatū studet. Summae diligentiae summam 70
imperii sevērītatem addit; māgnitudine supplicii dubi-
10 tantēs cōgit. Nam māiōre commissō delictō⁶ Ignī atque
omnibus tormentis necat; leviōre dē causā auribus dēsec-
tis⁷ aut singulis effossis⁸ oculis domum remittit, ut sint re-
liquis documentō⁹ et māgnitudine poenae perterreant aliōs. 75

5. His suppliciis celeriter coāctō exercitū Lucterium

¹ 'excite.' ² 'uncle.' ³ quoque versus: (turned each way) 'in every direction.' ⁴ 'adjure.' ⁵ i.e. quod-que, quod w. tempus.
⁶ 'offence.' ⁷ 'cut off.' ⁸ 'put out.' ⁹ 'example.'

Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpi-
 ārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturīgēs proficīscitur.
 Eius adventū Biturīgēs ad Aeduōs, quōrum erant in fidē, 2
 80 lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium
 cōpiās sustinēre possint. Aeduī dē¹ cōnsiliō lēgātōrum, 3
 quōs Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, cōpiās equitātūs
 peditātūsque subsidiō Biturīgibus mittunt. Quī cum ad 4
 flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs ab Aeduīs divi-
 85 dit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsire ausī do-
 mum revertuntur lēgātīsque nostrīs renūntiant sē Bitu-
 rīgum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōnsiliū fuisse 5
 cōgnōverint ut, sī flūmen trānsissent, unā ex parte ipsī,
 alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent. Id eāne dē causā quam 6
 90 lēgātīs prōnūntiārint, an perfidiā adductī fēcerint, quod²
 nihil nōbīs cōstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnen-
 dum. Biturīgēs eōrum discēssū statim sē cum Arvernīs 7
 coniungunt.

*Caesar ex Italiā reversus Arvernōs opprimit, Gergobinae, Bōiō-
 rum urbī ā Vercingetorige oppugnātae, auxilio proficīscitur.*

6. Hīs rēbus in Italiā Caesarī nūntiātīs, cum iam ille
 95 urbānās rēs virtute Cn.³ Pompēi commodiōrem in statum
 pervēnisse intellexeret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus
 est. Eō cum vēnisset, māgnā difficultāte afficiēbātur, quā 2
 ratiōne ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam sī legiōnēs 3
 in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō
 100 dīmīcātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, 4
 nē iīs quidem eō tempore quī quiētī vidērentur suam salū-
 tem rēctē⁴ committī vidēbat.

¹ de consilio: 'by the advice.'
 not at all clear to us. ³ Gnaeus.

² quod—constat: 'because it is
 (rightly) 'safely.'

7. Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam
 : civitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobrogēs
 et Gabalōs ab utrīsq̄ue obsidēs accipit et māgnā coāctā 105
 manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus¹ irruptionem facere
 : contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnibus cōsiliis ante-
 : vertendum² existimāvit, ut Narbōnem proficisceretur. Eō
 cum vēnisset, timentēs cōfirmat, praesidia in Rutēnīs prō-
 vinciālibus, Volcis Arecomicis, Tolōsātibus circumque Nar- 110
 : bōnem, quae loca hostibus erant finitima, cōstituit; par-
 tem cōpiarum ex prōvinciā supplēmentumque³ quod ex
 Italiā addūxerat in Helviōs, quī finēs Arvernōrum con-
 tingunt, convenire iubet.

8. His rēbus comparātis, repressō iam Lucteriō et remōtō, 115
 quod intrāre intrā praesidia periculōsum putābat, in Hel-
 : viōs proficiscitur. Etsi mōns Cebenna, quī Arvernōs ab
 Helviīs discludit, dūrissimō tempore annī altissimā nive⁴
 iter impediēbat; tamen, discussā⁵ nive in altitudinem pe-
 dum sex atque ita viīs patefactis, summō militum labōre 120
 : ad finēs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressis inopī-
 nantibus, quod sē Cebennā ut mūrō mūnitōs existimā-
 bant, ac nē singulārī quidem umquam hominī eō tem-
 pore annī sēmitae⁶ patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam
 lātissimē possint vagentur et quam māximum hostibus 125
 : terrōrem inferant. Celeriter haec fāma ac nūntiī ad
 Vercingetorigem perferuntur; quem perterriti omnēs Ar-
 verni circumsistunt atque obsecrant ut suis⁷ fortūnis
 cōnsulat, neu sē ab hostibus diripi patiātur; praesertim
 : cum videat omne ad sē bellum trāslātum. Quōrum ille 130

¹ 'toward'; obj. is Narbonem. ² 'take precedence'; subj. is ut—
 proficisceretur. ³ 'reënforcement.' ⁴ 'snow.' ⁵ 'remove.'
⁶ 'path.' ⁷ i.e. Arvernorum.

precibus permōtus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

9. At Caesar bīduum in hīs locīs morātus, quod haec¹ dē² Vercingetorīge usū³ ventūra opīniōne⁴ praecēperat, per⁵ causam supplēmentī equitātusque cōgendi ab exercitū discēdit; Brūtum adulēscētem hīs cōpiīs praeficit; hunc² monet ut in omnēs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur; datūrum⁶ sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castrīs absit. Hīs cōstitutīs rēbus, suis inopīnantibus, quam³ 140 māximīs potest itineribus Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus recentem⁷ equitātum, quem multīs ante diēbus eō praemiserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per finēs Aeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant ut, sī quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Aeduīs inīrē- 145 tur cōsiliī, celeritātē praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit priusque omnēs in unum locum cōgit, quam dē eius adventū Arvernīs nūtiārī posset. Hāc rē cōgnitā Vercingetorīx rūsus in Biturīgēs exercitum reducit atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum 150 oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proeliō victōs Caesar collocāverat Aeduīsque attribuerat, oppūgnāre instituit.

10. Māgnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōsiliū capiendum afferēbat: sī reliquam partem hiemis unō locō legiōnēs contineret, nē stipendiāriīs Aeduōrum expūgnātīs 155 cūncta Gallia dēficeret, quod nullum amīcīs⁸ in eō⁹ praesidium positum vidēret¹⁰; sī mātūrius ex hībernīs ēdūceret, nē ab¹¹ rē frūmentāriā dūrīs subvectiōnibus¹² labōrāret.

¹ 'these movements.' ² 'on the part of.' ³ *usu ventura*: 'come to pass.' ⁴ *opinione praeceperat*: 'conjecture.' ⁵ *per causam*: 'for the ostensible reason.' ⁶ *daturum operam*: 'take pains.'
⁷ 'rested.' ⁸ *dat.* ⁹ i.e. Caesar. ¹⁰ *sc. Gallia.* ¹¹ 'in the matter of.' ¹² 'transportation.'

2 Praestāre vīsum est tamen omnēs difficultātēs perpeti,¹
 quam, tantā contumēliā acceptā, omnium suōrum volun-
 3 tātēs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Aeduōs dē supportandō 160
 commeātū, praemittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant
 hortenturque ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum
 4 māgnō animō sustineant. Duābus Agēdinci legiōnibus
 atque impedimentīs tōtius exercitūs relictis ad Bōiōs pro-
 ficiscitur.

165

*In itinere Vellaunodūnum, Cēnabum, Noviodūnum capit, ad
 Avaricum proficiscitur.*

11. Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodu-
 num vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, et quō
 expeditiōne rē frumentāriā ūteretur, oppugnāre instituit
 2 eōque bīduō circumvallāvit²; tertiō diē missis ex oppidō
 lēgātis dē dēditione arma cōferri, iūmenta prōducī, sex- 170
 3 centōs obsidēs dari iubet. Ea quī cōficeret C. Trebōnium
 lēgātum relinquit, ipse ut quam primum iter cōficeret.
 4 Cēnabum Carnutum proficiscitur; quī tum primum allātō
 nūntiō dē oppugnātiōne Vellaunodūnī, cum longius eam
 rem ductum irī exīstimārent, praesidium Cēnabī tuendī 175
 5 causā, quod eō mitterent, comparābant. Hūc bīduō per-
 venit. Castris ante oppidum positīs, diēi tempore exclusus
 in posterum oppugnātiōnem differt quaeque ad eam rem
 6 ūsuī sint militibus imperat et, quod oppidum Cēnabum
 pōns flūminis Ligeris contingēbat, veritus nē noctū ex 180
 oppidō profugerent, duās legiōnēs in armīs excubāre³
 7 iubet. Cēnabēnsēs paulō antē mediam noctem silentiō
 8 ex oppidō ēgressi flūmen trānsire coepērunt. Quā rē per
 explorātōrēs nūntiātā Caesar legiōnēs, quās expeditās esse

¹ simple verb, *pallior*.² 'invest.'³ 'lie under arms.'

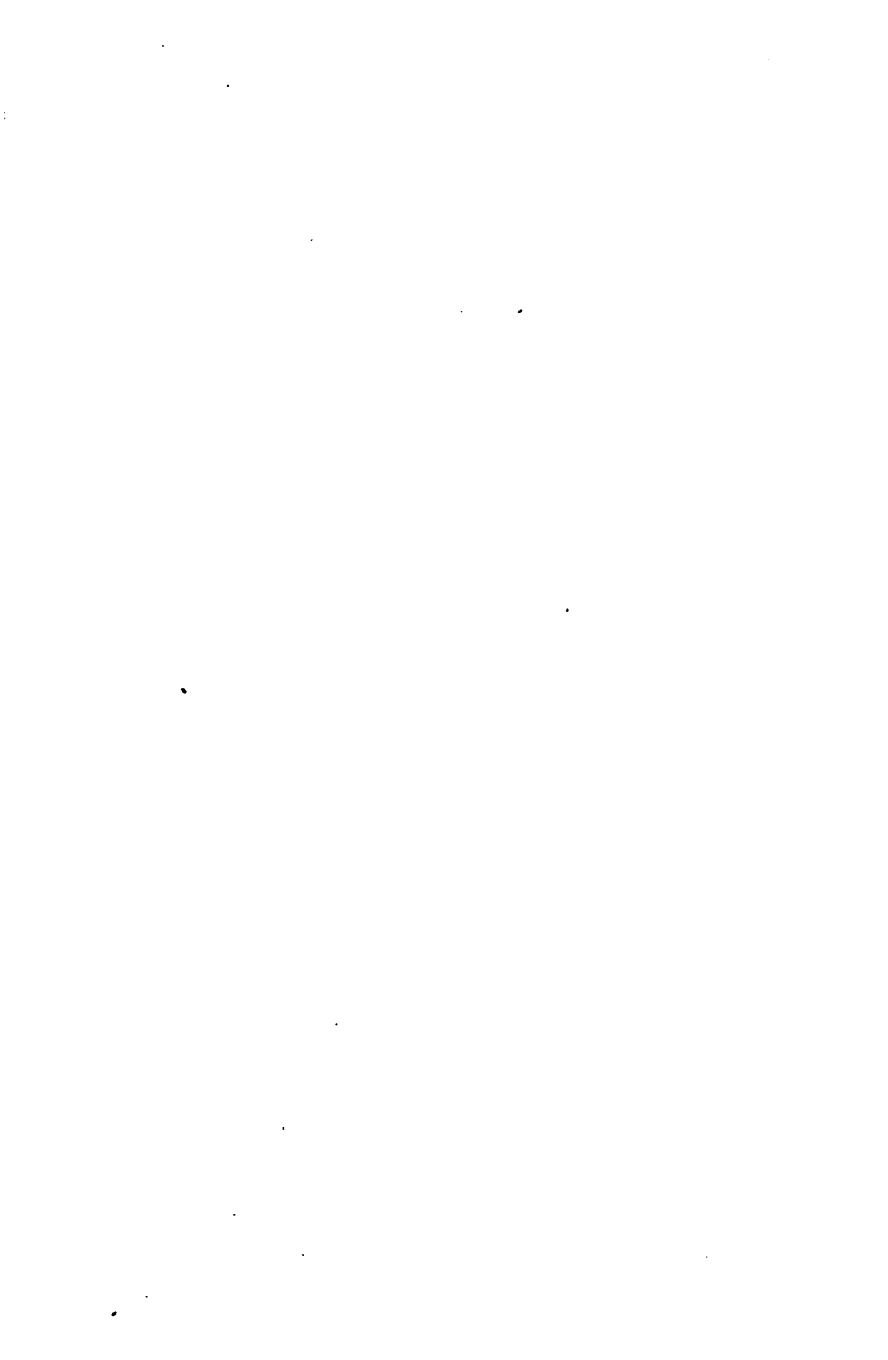
185 iusserat, portis incensis, intrōmittit atque oppidō potitur,
perpaucis ex hostium numerō dēsiderātis¹ quā cūcti
caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitu-
dinī fugam intercluserant. Oppidum diripit atque incen-
dit, praedam militibus dōnat, exercitum Ligerim trādūcit
190 atque in Biturīgum finēs pervenit.

12. Vercingetorix, ubi dē Caesaris adventū cōgnōvit,
oppugnātiōne dēsistit atque obviam² Caesarī proficiscitur.
Ille oppidum Biturīgum positum in viā Noviodūnum op-
pugnāre Instituerat. Quō ex oppidō cum lēgātī ad eum
195 vēnissent orātum ut sibi ignōsceret suaeque vitāe cōsule-
ret, ut celeritāte reliquās rēs cōnficeret quā plēraque erat
cōnsecutus, arma cōnferri, equōs prōducī, obsidēs dari
iubet. Parte iam obsidum trādītā, cum reliqua admini-
strārentur, centuriōnibus et paucis militibus intrōmissis
200 quī arma iumentaue conquīrerent, equitātus hostium
procul vīsus est, quī āgmen Vercingetorigis antecēsserat.
Quem simul atque oppidānī cōspexērunt atque in spem
auxiliī vērunt, clāmōre sublātō arma capere, portās
claudere, mūrum complēre coepērunt. Centuriōnēs in op-
205 pidō, cum ex significātiōne Gallōrum novī aliquid ab iis
iniri cōnsiliū intellēxissent, gladiis dēstrictis portās occu-
pāvērunt suosque omnēs incolumēs recēpērunt.

13. Caesar ex castris equitātum educī iubet, proelium-
que equestre committit; laborantibus iam suis Germānōs
210 equitēs circiter quadringentōs submittit, quōs ab initio
secum habēre Instituerat. Eōrum impetum Gāllī susti-
nere nōn potuērunt atque in fugam coniecti multis āmis-
sis sē ad āgmen recēpērunt. Quibus prōfligātis rursus

¹ 'miss.'
'to meet.'

² sc. *viam*, cognate acc.; lit. 'an opposite way'; trans.





From *Charité*.

VERCINGETORIX, WITH THE GALLIC CHIEFTAINS.

oppidānī perterritī comprehēnsōs eōs quōrum operā¹ plēbem concitātā existimābant ad Caesarem perdūxērunt 215
sēsēque ei dēdidērunt. Quibus rēbus cōfectis Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat māximum mūnītissimum-
que in finibus Biturigum atque agrī fertilissimā regiōne, profectus est, quod eō oppidō receptō cīvitatē Biturigum
sē in potestātē redāctūrum cōfidēbat. 220

Biturigum oppida praeter Avaricum ā Gallis incenduntur.

14. Vercingetorix tot continuīs incommodis Vellaunodūnī, Cēnabī, Noviodūnī acceptis suōs ad concilium con-
vocat. Docet longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum gerendum
atque² antea gestum sit. Omnibus modis huic³ rei stu-
dendum ut pābulatiōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibean- 225
tur. Id esse facile, quod equitātū ipsī abundant et quod
annī tempore sublevantur. Pābulum secārī⁴ nōn posse;
necessariō dispersōs hostēs ex aedificiis petere⁵; hōs om-
nēs cotidiē ab equitibus delērī posse. Praeterea salutis
causā rei⁶ familiāris commoda neglegenda; vicōs atque 230
aedificia incendiī oportēre hōc spatiō [ā Bōiā] quōque ver-
sus, quō pābulandī causā adire posse videantur. Hārum
ipsis rerum cōpiam suppetere, quod quōrum in finibus
bellum geratur eōrum opibus sublevantur: Rōmānōs aut
inopiam nōn lātūrōs aut māgnō cum periculō longius ab 235
castris prōcēssūrōs; neque interesse ipsōsne interficiant
an impedimentis exuant, quibus āmissis bellum gerī nōn
possit. Praeterea, oppida incendiī oportēre quae nōn mū-
nitiōne et locī naturā ab omnī sint periculō tūta, nē suis

¹ 'activity.' ² 'than.' ³ huic—studendum: 'it was desirable.'

⁴ 'cut.' ⁵ sc. frumentum, obj. ⁶ rei—commoda: 'personal interests.'

- 240 sint ad dētrectandam ¹ militiam receptācula ² neu Rōmānīs
 prōposita ³ ad cōpiam commeātūs praedamque tollendam.⁴
 Haec sī gravia aut acerba ⁵ videantur, multō illa gravius ¹⁰
 aestimārī debēre, liberōs, cōiugēs ⁶ in servitūtem abs-
 trahī, ipsōs interfici; quae sit necesse accidere victis.
- 245 15. Omnium cōsēnsū hāc sententiā probatā unō diē
 amplius viginti urbēs Biturīgum incenduntur. Hōc idem ²
 fit in reliquīs cīvitatibus. In omnibus partibus incendia
 cōspiciuntur; quae etsī māgnō cum dolōre omnēs ferē-
 bant, tamen hōc sibi sōlāciū ⁷ prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope
 250 explorātā victoriā celeriter āmissa recuperātūrōs cōnfidē-
 bant. Deliberātur dē Avaricō in commūnī conciliō, in-
 cendi placeat an dēfendi. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallis ad
 pedēs Biturīgēs, nē pulcherrimam ⁸ prope tōtius Galliae
 urbem, quae et praesidiō et ōrnāmētō sit cīvitatī, suis
 255 manibus succendere cōgantur; facile sē locī nātūrā dēfēn-
 sūrōs dicunt, quod, prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et
 palūde circumdatā, unum habeat et perangustum aditum.
 Datur petentibus venia, dissuādente primō Vercingeto-
 rige, post concēdente, et precibus ipsōrum et misericordiā
 260 vulgī. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōneī dēliguntur.

*Caesar, Avaricum aliquamdiū dēfēnsū, tandem expūgnat,
 incolāsque omnēs ferē trucidat.*

16. Vercingetorix minōribus Caesarem itineribus subse-
 quitur et locum castris dēligit palūdibus silvisque mūnī-
 tum ab Avaricō longē milia passuum sēdecim. Ibi per
 certōs explorātōrēs in singula ⁹ diēi tempora ¹⁰ quae ad
 265 Avaricum gererentur cōgnōscēbat et, quid fierī vellet im-

¹ 'escape.' ² 'refuge.' ³ 'present.' ⁴ 'get.' ⁵ 'bitter.'
⁶ (spouse) 'wife.' ⁷ 'comfort.' ⁸ 'beautiful.' ⁹ 'every.' ¹⁰ 'hour.'

³ perābat. Omnēs nostrās pābulātiōnēs frūmentātiōnēsque observābat dispersōsque, cum longius necessariō prōcēderent, adoriēbātur māgnōque incommodō afficiēbat; etsī, quantum ratiōne prōvidērī poterat, ab nostrīs occurrēbātur, ut incertīs temporibus diversīsque itineribus irētur. 270

17. Castrīs ad eam partem oppidi positīs Caesar quae intermissa [ā] flūmine et palūde aditum, ut suprā diximus, angustum habēbat, aggerem apparāre, vineās agere, turrēs duās cōstituere coepit; nam circumvallāre loci
² nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frūmentāriā Bōiōs atque Aeduos 275
 duos adhortārī nōn dēstitit: quōrum alterī,¹ quod nullō studiō agēbant, nōn multum adiuvābant; alterī nōn māgnīs facultātibus, quōd civitās erat exigua et infirma, celeriter quod habuērunt cōsumpsērunt. Summā difficultāte reī frūmentariae affectō exercitū, tenuitāte² Bōiōrum, 280
 indiligentiā Aeduōrum, incendiis aedificiōrum, usque eō ut complūrēs diēs frūmentō militēs caruerint et pecore ex longinquiōribus vicīs adāctō extrēmam famem sustentārint, nulla tamen vōx est ab iīs audita populi Rōmānī
⁴ māiestāte et superiōribus victōriis indigna. Quīn etiam 285
 Caesar cum in opere singulās legiōnēs appellāret, et, sī acerbius inopiam ferrent, sē dīmissūrum oppugnātiōnem
⁵ diceret, univērsī ab eō nē id faceret petēbant: sic sē complūrēs annōs illō imperante meruisse ut nullam ignōmi-
⁶ niam³ acciperent, numquam⁴ infectā⁵ rē discēderent; hōc 290
 sē ignōminiae lātūrōs locō, sī inceptam oppugnātiōnem
⁷ reliquissent: praestāre omnēs perferre acerbitatēs⁶ quam nōn civibus Rōmānīs quī Cēnabī perfidiā Gallōrum
⁸ interīssent parentārent.⁷ Haec eadem centuriōnibus tri-

¹ i. e. Aedui.² 'poverty.'³ 'dishonor.'⁴ (nowhere) 'never.'⁵ 'unfinished.'⁶ cf. *acerba*, ch. 14, § 10.⁷ 'avenge.'

295 bñisq̄ue militum mandābant, ut per eōs ad Caesarem dēferrentur.

18. Cum iam mūrō turrēs appropinquāssent, ex captivīs Caesar cōgnōvit Vercingetorigem cōsumptō pābulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum atque ipsum cum equitatū
300 expeditisq̄ue quī inter equitēs proeliārī cōsuēssent, insidiandī causā eō profectum quō nostrōs posterō diē pābulātum ventūrōs arbitrārētur. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis mediā nocte silentiō profectus ad hostium castra māne pervēnit. Illi celeriter per explorātōrēs adventū Caesaris cōgnitō
305 carrōs impedimenta q̄ue sua in artiōrēs¹ silvās abdidērunt, cōpiās omnēs in locō editō atque apertō instruxērunt. Quā rē nūtiatā Caesar celeriter sarcinās cōferri, arma expediri iussit.

19. Collis erat lēniter ab infimō acclivis. Hunc ex
310 omnibus ferē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedita cingēbat nōn lātior pedibus quinquāgintā. Hōc sē colle, interruptis pontibus, Galli fiduciā² locī continēbant generatimq̄ue³ distribūtī [in civitatēs] omnia vada [ac saltūs⁴] eius palūdis obtinēbant sic⁵ animō parātī ut, si eam palūdem Rōmānī perrumpere cōnārentur, haesitantēs⁶ premerent ex locō superiōre; ut, quī propinquitatem locī
vidēret, parātōs prope aequō Mārte⁷ ad dīmicandum existimāret; quī inīquitatem⁸ condiciōnis⁹ perspiceret, inānī¹⁰ simulatiōne¹¹ sēsē¹² ostentāre cōgnōsceret. Indignantēs
320 milites Caesar, quod cōspectum suum¹³ hostēs ferre possent tantulō spatiō interiectō, et sīgnum proeliī expō-

¹ 'dense.' ² 'confidence' (in). ³ 'by tribes.' ⁴ 'defile.' ⁵ sic—ut: 'determined to.' ⁶ 'struggle' (as in mud). ⁷ 'combat.' ⁸ 'advantage.' ⁹ 'situation.' ¹⁰ 'vain.' ¹¹ 'pretence' (of bravery). ¹² obj. of ostentare, of which sc. Gallōs as subj. ¹³ for obj. gen., referring to milites.

scentēs ēdocet quantō dētrimentō¹ et quot² virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōnstāre³ victōriam; quōs cum sic animō parātōs videat ut nūllum prō suā⁴ laude periculum recūsant, summae sē inīquitātis⁵ condemnārī dēbere, nisi 325 eōrum vītā laude suā habeat cārīorem. Sic milītēs cōnsōlātus eōdem diē reducit in castra reliquaque quae ad oppugnātiōnem oppidī pertinēbant administrāre instituit.

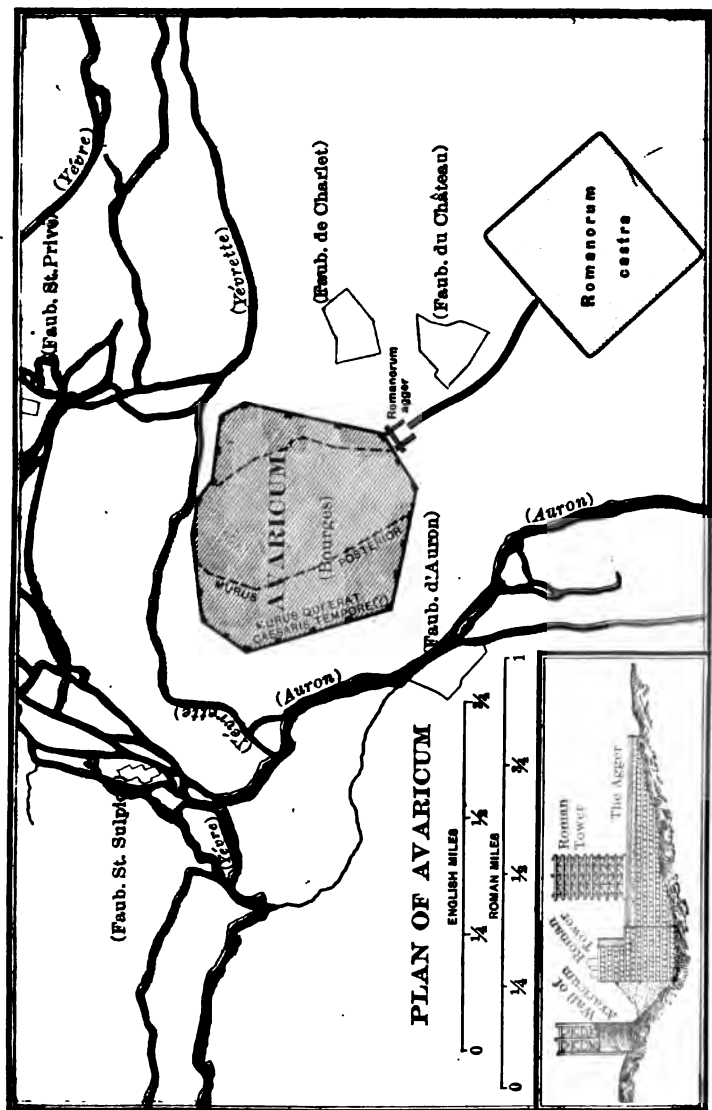
20. Vercingetorix, cum ad suōs redisset, prōditiōnis⁶ insimulātus,⁷ quod castra propius Rōmānōs mōvisset, quod 330 cum omnī equitatū discēssisset, quod sine imperiō tantās cōpiās reliquisset, quod eius discēssū Rōmānī tantā oportunitate⁸ et celeritate vēnissent; nōn haec omnia fortuitō⁹ aut sine cōnsiliō accidere potuisse; rēgnū illum¹⁰ Galliae malle Caesaris concēssū quam ipsōrum habēre 335 beneficiō—tālī modō accūsātus ad haec respondit: Quod castra mōvisset, factum¹¹ inopiā pābuli etiam ipsīs hortantibus; quod propius Rōmānōs accēssisset, persuāsum loci¹² oportunitate, quī sē ipse sine mūnitiōne dēfenderet; equitum vērō operam¹³ neque in locō palūstrī dēsiderārī 340 dēbuisse et illic¹⁴ fuisse ūtilem quō sint profectī. Summam imperiī sē cōnsultō¹⁵ nūllī discēdentem trādidiisse, nē is multitudinis studiō ad dīmicandum impelleretur, cui rei propter animī mollitiem¹⁶ studēre omnēs vidēret, quod diūtius labōrem ferre nōn possent. Rōmānī sī cāsū inter- 345 vēnerint, fortunae¹⁷; sī alicūius indiciō vocātī,¹⁸ huīc¹⁹ habendam grātiā, quod et paucitatem eōrum ex locō superiōre cōgnōscere et virtutem dēspicere potuerint, quī

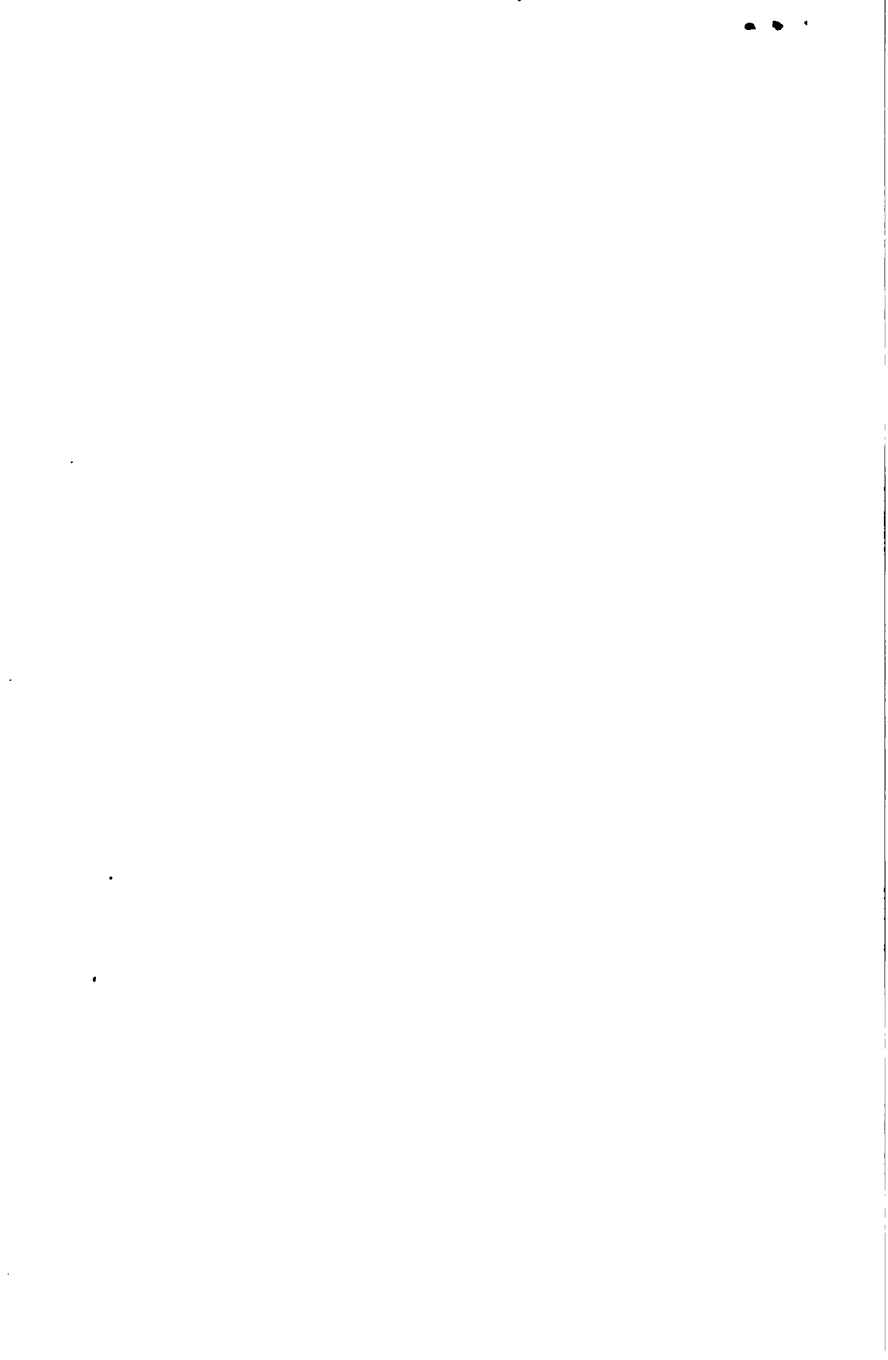
¹ 'loss,' abl. of price. ² 'how many.' ³ 'be obtained.' ⁴ i.e. *Caesaris*. ⁵ 'injustice.' ⁶ 'treason.' ⁷ 'charged.' ⁸ 'seasonableness.'
⁹ cf. *forte*. ¹⁰ i.e. Vercingetorix. ¹¹ sc. *esse*. ¹² 'services.' ¹³ 'there.'
¹⁴ 'purposely.' ¹⁵ 'weakness.' ¹⁶ sc. *grātiā habendam esse*. ¹⁷ sc. *Rōmānī intervēnerint*. ¹⁸ antecedent alicuius.

dimicāre nōn ausī turpiter sē in castra recēperint. Im-
 350 perium sē ā Caesare per prōditiōnem nullum dēsiderāre,
 quod habēre victōriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque
 omnibus Gallis explorāta: quīn etiam ipsīs¹ remittere, sī
 sibi² magis honōrem tribuere quam ab sē³ salutem accipere
 videantur.³ ‘Haec ut intellegātis,’ inquit, ‘ā mē sin-
 355 cērē⁴ prōnūtiārī, audite Rōmānōs milītēs.’ Prōducit
 servōs, quōs in pābulātiōne paucīs ante diēbus excēperat
 et famē vinculisque excruciāverat. Hī, iam ante ēdoctī
 quae interrogātī prōnūtiārent, milītēs sē esse legiōnāriōs
 dicunt; famē atque inopiā adductōs clam ex castris exīsse,
 360 sī quid frūmentī aut pecoris in agrīs reperīre possent; si-
 milī omnem exercitum inopiā premī, nec iam virēs sufficere
 cūiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse: itaque statuisse
 imperātōrem, sī nihil in oppugnātiōne oppidī prōfēcisset,
 trīduō exercitum dēducere. ‘Haec,’ inquit, ‘ā mē’ [Vercin-
 365 getorīx], ‘beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis insimulātis;
 cūius operā sine vestrō⁵ sanguine⁶ tantum exercitum
 victōrem famē cōnsūmptum vidētis; quem turpiter sē ex
 hāc fugā recipientem nē qua cīvitās suis finibus recipiat,
 ā mē prōvīsum est.’

370 21. Conclāmat omnis multitūdō et suō mōre armīs con-
 crepat,⁷ quod facere in⁸ eō cōnsuērunt cūius ōrātiōnem
 approbant: summum esse Vercingetorīgem ducem nec dē
 eius fide dubitandum, nec māiōre ratiōne bellum admini-
 strārī posse. Statuunt ut decem mīlia hominum dēlēcta:
 375 ex omnibus cōpiīs in oppidum submittantur, nec sōlis
 Biturīgibus commūnem salutem committendam cēnsent;

¹ sc. sē imperium. ² i.e. Vercingetorix. ³ ‘think.’ ⁴ ‘in good faith.’
⁵ Poss. pfo., 2d pers. plu. ⁶ ‘blood.’ ⁷ ‘rattle.’ ⁸ ‘in the case of.’





quod paene in eō, si id oppidum retinuissent, summam victōriae cōnstāre intellegēbant.

22. Singulā^m militum nostrōrum virtūtī cōnsilia cūius-
que modī Gallōrum occurrēbant,¹ ut est summae genus
sollertiae² atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda quae ā
2 quōque trāduntur³ aptissimum. Nam et laqueis⁴ falcēs
āvertēbant, quās, cum dēstināverant,⁵ tormentis intrōrsus
reducēbant; et aggerem cuniculis⁶ subtrahēbant,⁷ eō
scientius,⁸ quod apud eōs māgnae sunt ferrariae⁹ atque 385
omne genus cuniculōrum nōtum atque usitātum¹⁰ est.
3 Tōtum autem mūrū ex omnī parte turribus contabulā-
4 verant¹¹ atque hās coriis¹² intēxerant.¹³ Tum crēbris diurnis
nocturnisque ēruptiōnibus aut aggeri ignem inferēbant
aut militēs occupātōs in opere adoriēbantur et nostrārum 390
turrium altitudinem, quantum hās cotidiānus¹⁴ agger ex-
5 presserat,¹⁵ commissis¹⁶ suārum turrium mālīs¹⁷ adaequā-
bant et apertōs cuniculōs praestā et praeacūtā materiā et
pice¹⁸ fervefactā¹⁹ et māximī ponderis saxīs morābantur
moenibusque appropinquāre prohibēbant. 395

23. Mūrī autem omnēs Gallici hāc ferē fōrmā sunt.
Trabēs dērectae,²⁰ perpetuae²¹ in longitudinem, paribus
intervāllis distantēs inter sē binōs pedēs, in solō collo-
2 cantur. Hae revinciuntur²² intrōrsus et multō aggere²³
vestiuntur; ea autem quae diximus intervālla grandibus 400
3 in fronte saxīs efferciuntur.²⁴ His collocātis et coāgmen-

¹ 'oppose.' ² 'ingenuity.' ³ 'impart.' ⁴ 'noose.' ⁵ 'draw tight.'
⁶ 'mine.' ⁷ 'take away material from.' ⁸ (knowingly) 'skilfully.'
⁹ 'iron mine.' ¹⁰ 'familiar.' ¹¹ 'cover.' ¹² 'hide.' ¹³ 'cover.'
¹⁴ 'daily (addition to the)'. ¹⁵ 'increase.' ¹⁶ 'splice.' ¹⁷ 'post.'
¹⁸ 'pitch.' ¹⁹ 'hot.' ²⁰ 'perpendicular' (to the front of the wall).
²¹ perpetuae in longitudinem: 'along the entire length.' ²² 'mortise.'
²³ 'rubble'; earth and stone. ²⁴ 'completely fill.'

tātis¹ alius insuper² ōrdō additur, ut idem illud intervallum servētur neque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed paribus intermissis spatiis, singulae³ singulis saxīs inter-
 405 iectis artē⁴ contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus con-
 textitur dum iūsta⁵ mūrī altitudō expleātur.⁶ Hōc cum in
 speciem varietātemque opus dēfōrme nōn est alternis tra-
 bibus ac saxīs, quae rēctis lineis⁷ suōs ordinēs servant,
 tum ad ūtilitātem et dēfēnsiōnem urbium summam habet
 410 opportunitātem, quod et ab incendiō lapis et ab ariete mā-
 teria dēfendit, quae perpetuis⁸ trabibus pedum quadrāgē-
 num⁹ plērumque intrōrsus revincta neque perrumpī neque
 distrahī potest.

24. His tot rēbus impeditā oppugnātiōne militēs, cum
 415 tōtō tempore frīgore et assiduīs imbribus tardārentur,
 tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt et diē-
 bus vīginti quīnque aggerem lātum pedēs trecentōs et
 trīgintā altum pedēs octōgintā exstruxērunt. Cum is
 mūrū hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus
 420 cōnsuetūdine excubāret¹⁰ militēsque hortārētur nē quod
 omnīnō tempus ab opere intermitterētur, paulō ante ter-
 tiam vigiliam est animadversum fumāre¹¹ aggerem, quem
 cuniculō hostēs succenderant; eōdemque tempore, tōtō
 mūrō clāmōre sublātō, duābus portis ab utrōque latere
 425 turrium ēruptiō fiēbat: aliī facēs¹² atque āridam māte-
 riam dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus¹³ iaciēbant; picem reli-
 quāsque rēs quibus ignis excitārī potest fundēbant; ut,
 quō primum occurrerētur aut cui rei ferrētur auxilium,
 vix ratiō inīrī posset. Tamen, quod institūtō Caesaris :

¹ 'cement.' ² 'above.' ³ sc. *trabēs*. ⁴ 'closely.' ⁵ 'intended.'
⁶ 'reach.' ⁷ 'line.' ⁸ 'repeated.' ⁹ 'forty each.' ¹⁰ 'watch.'
¹¹ 'smoke.' ¹² 'torch.' ¹³ 'from a distance.'

duae semper legiōnēs prō castris excubābant plūrēsq̄ue 430
partitīs temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est ut
alii ēruptiōnibus resisterent, alii turrēs redūcerent agge-
remque interscinderent,¹ omnis vērō ex castris multitudō
ad restinguendum² concurreret.

25. Cum in omnibus locis, cōsumptā iam reliquā parte 435
noctis, pūgnārētur semperque hostibus spēs victōriae red-
integrārētur, eō magis quod deūstōs³ pluteōs⁴ turrium
vidēbant nec facile adire⁵ apertōs ad auxiliandum anim-
advertēbant, semperque ipsī recentēs dēfessīs succēde-
rent omnemque Galliae salūtem in illō vestigiō⁶ temporis 440
positam arbitrārentur; accidit inspectantibus nōbīs quod
dignum⁷ memoriā vīsum⁸ praetereundum nōn exīstimā-
vimus. Quidam ante portam oppidī Gallus per manūs
sēbī⁹ ac picis trāditās glēbās¹⁰ in Ignem ē¹¹ regiōne turris
prōiciēbat; scorpiōne¹² ab latere dextrō trāiectus exani- 445
mātusque concidit. Hunc ex proximīs unus iacentem
trāsgressus eōdem illō mūnere¹³ fungēbātur¹⁴; eādem
ratiōne iētū scorpiōnis exanimātō alterō succēssit tertius
et tertiō quārtus; nec prius ille est ā prōpūgnātōribus
vacuus relictus locus quam, restinctō aggere atque omnī 450
parte submōtīs hostibus, finis est pūgnandī factus.

26. Omnia expertī Gallī, quod rēs nūlla succēsserat,
posterō diē cōsiliū cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere hor-
tante et iubente Vercingetorige. Id silentiō noctis cōnātī
nōn māgnā iactūrā¹⁵ suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant; 455
proptereā quod neque longē ab oppidō castra Vercingeto-
rīgis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdēbat, Rō-

¹ 'cut into.' ² 'extinguish (the flames).' ³ *dē, ūrō.* ⁴ 'screen.'
⁵ sc. *nostrōs* as subj. ⁶ 'moment.' ⁷ 'worthy.' ⁸ 'seeming.' ⁹ 'suet.'
¹⁰ 'ball.' ¹¹ e—*turris*: 'opposite a tower.' ¹² '(a dart from a) scor-
pion.' ¹³ 'service.' ¹⁴ 'perform'; w. abl. ¹⁵ 'loss.'

mānōs ad Insequendum tardābat. Iamque hōc facere :
 noctū apparābant, cum mātres familiae repentē in publi-
 460 cum prōcurrērunt flentēsq̄e prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum
 omnibus precibus petiērunt nē sē et commūnēs liberōs
 hostibus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fu-
 gam nātūrae et vīrium Infirmītās impediret. Ubi eōs in
 sententiā perstāre¹ vidērunt, quod plērumque in summō
 465 periculō timor misericordiam nōn recipit,² conclāmāre et
 significāre dē fugā Rōmānīs cōpērunt. Quō timōre per-
 territi Galli, nē ab equitatū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupā-
 rentur, cōsiliō dēstitērunt.

27. Posterō diē Caesar prōmōtā turri dērēctisque³ ope-
 470 ribus quae facere Instituerat, māgnō coortō imbrī, nōn
 inūtilem hanc ad capiendum cōsiliū tempestātem arbi-
 trātus, quod paulō incautius cūstōdiās in mūrō dispositās
 vidēbat, suōs quoque languidiū in opere versārī iussit
 et quid fierī vellet ostendit. Legiōnibusque [intrā vineās]⁴
 475 in occultō expeditis, cohortātus ut aliquandō⁵ prō tantis
 labōribus fructum victōriae perciperent, iis quī primī mū-
 rum āscendissent praemia prōposuit militibusque signum
 dedit. Illi subitō ex omnibus partibus ēvolāvērunt mū-
 rumque celeriter complēvērunt.

480 28. Hostēs rē novā perterriti, mūrō turribusque dēiecti,
 in forō⁶ ac locis patentioribus cuneātim⁷ cōstitērunt, hōc
 animō ut, si quā ex parte obviam venīrētur, aciē Instructā
 dēpūgnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum⁸ locum sēsē dē-
 mittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundī vidērunt,
 485 veritī nē omnīnō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectis armīs ul-
 timās oppidī partēs continentī⁹ impetū petivērunt, pars-

¹ 'persist.' ² 'show.' ³ 'arrange.' ⁴ 'at length.' ⁵ 'market place.'
⁶ 'in close formation.' ⁷ 'level.' ⁸ 'continenti impetu': 'without halting.'

que ibi, cum angustō exitū portārum sē ipsī premerent, ā militibus, pars iam ēgressa portīs ab equitibus est interfecta. Nec fuit quisquam quī praedae studeret. Sic et Cēnabēnsī caede et labōre operis¹ incitātī nōn aetāte cōn- 490
fectis, nōn mulieribus, nōn infantibus pepercērunt. Dē-
nique ex omnī numerō, quī fuit circiter mīlium quadrā-
gintā, vix octingentī, quī primō clāmōre auditō sē ex
oppidō eiēcērant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorīgē pervē-
nērunt. Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā 495
excēpit, et veritus nē qua in castrīs ex eōrum concursū et
misericordiā vulgī sēditio oreretur, [ut] procul in viā dis-
positis familiāribus suis prīncipibusque cīvitatū, dispa-
randōs² dēducendōsque ad suos³ cūravit, quae cuique
civitātī pars⁴ castrōrum ab initiō obvenerat. 500

*Bellum ā Vercingetorige continuatur. Caesar discēdere
cogitur ut dissēsiōnem Aeduōrum sēdet.*

29. Posterō diē conciliō convocātō cōnsolātus cohor-
tātusque est: nē sē admodum animō dēmitterent nēve
perturbārentur incommodō; nōn virtūte neque in aciē
vīcissee Rōmānōs, sed artificiō⁵ quōdam et scientiā oppū-
gnātiōnis, cuius rei fuerint ipsī imperitī; errāre, sī quī in 505
bellō omnēs secundōs rerū prōventūs⁶ exspectent; sibi
numquam placuisse Avaricum dēfendī, cuius rei tēstēs
ipsōs habēret, sed factum imprudentiā Biturigum et
nimiā⁷ obsequentia⁸ reliquōrum utī hōc incommodum
acciperetur; id tamen sē celeriter māiōribus commodis 510

¹ 'siege.' ² 'separate'; sc. *esse*, and *eūs* as subj., referring to quos.
³ explained in the following clause. ⁴ attracted into subordinate
clause; quae pars castrorum = *eam partem castrōrum* (explaining suos)
quae. ⁵ 'cunning.' ⁶ 'result.' ⁷ 'excessive.' ⁸ 'willingness
to yield.'

sānātūrum.¹ Nam, quae ab reliquīs Gallīs cīvitatēs dis-
sentirent, hās suā diligentiā adiūctūrum atque unum
cōnsilium tōtius Galliae effectūrum, cūius cōnsensui nē
orbis quidem terrārum possit obsistere; idque sē prope
515 iam effectum habēre. Intereā aequum esse ab iīs com-
mūnis salutis causā impetrārī ut castra mūnīre Institue-
rent, quō facilius repentinōs hostium impetūs sustinēre
possent.

30. Fuit haec ōrātiō nōn ingrāta² Gallīs, et māximē
520 quod ipse animō nōn dēfēcerat tantō acceptō incommodō,
neque sē in occultum abdiderat et cōnspectum multitu-
dinis fūgerat; plūsque animō prōvidēre et praesentīre
existimābātur, quod rē integrā primō incendendum Ava-
ricum, post dēserendum cēnsuerat. Itaque, ut reliquōrum
525 imperātōrum rēs adversae auctōritātem minuunt, sic
hūius ex contrāriō dignitās incommodō acceptō in diēs
augēbātur. Simul in spem veniebant ēius affirmātiōne
dē reliquīs adiungendis cīvitatibus; primumque eō tem-
pore Galli castra mūnīre Instituērunt, et sic erant animō
530 cōnsternāti hominēs insuētī labōris, ut omnia quae impe-
rārentur sibi patiēda existimārent.

31. Nec minus quam est pollicitus Vercingetorīx
animō labōrābat ut reliquās cīvitatēs adiungeret, atque
eārum prīncipēs dōnīs³ pollicitātiōnibusque alliciēbat.
535 Huīc rei idōneōs hominēs dēligēbat, quōrum quisque aut
ōrātiōne subdolā⁴ aut amicitīā facillimē capere⁵ posset.
Quī Avaricō expūgnātō refūgerant, armandōs vestien-
dōsque cūrat; simul, ut dēminūtae cōpiae redintegrāren-
tur, imperat certum numerum militum cīvitatibus, quem,
540 et quam ante diem, in castra addūcī velit; sagittāriōsque

¹ (cure) 'make up for.' ² 'displeasing.' ³ 'gift.' ⁴ 'crafty.' ⁵ 'win.'

omnēs, quōrum erat permāgnus in Galliā numerus, con-
 quīrī et ad sē mittī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter id quod
 5 Avarici dēperierat explētur. Interim Teutomatus Ollo-
 vicōnis filius, rēx Nitibrogum, cūius pater ab senātū
 nostrō amicus erat appellātus, cum māgnō numerō equi- 545
 tum suōrum et quōs ex Aquitāniā condūxerat¹ ad eum
 pervēnit.

32. Caesar Avarici complūrēs diēs commorātus sum-
 mamque ibi cōpiam frūmentī et reliquī commeātus nac-
 2 tus exercitum ex labōre atque inopiā reficit. Iam prope 550
 hieme cōfectā, cum ipsō annī tempore ad gerendum
 bellum vocārētur et ad hostem proficisci cōstituisset,
 sive² eum ex palūdibus silvisque elicere sive obsidiōne
 premere posset, lēgātī ad eum principēs Aeduōrum veni-
 unt ōrātum ut māximē necessariō tempore civitāti sub- 555
 3 veniat: summō esse in periculō rem, quod, cum singulī
 magistrātūs antiquitus creārī atque rēgiā potestātem
 annum obtinēre cōsuēssent, duo magistrātum gerant et
 4 sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creātum dicat. Hōrum esse
 alterum Convictolitavem, flōrentem³ et illūstrem adulē- 560
 scentem, alterum Cotum, antiquissimā familiā nātum
 atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et māgnae
 cōgnātiōnis,⁴ cūius frāter Valetīacus proximō annō eun-
 5 dem magistrātum gesserit. Civitātem esse omnem in
 armīs, dīvisum senātum, dīvisum populum, suās⁵ cūiusque 565
 eōrum clientēlās. Quod sī diūtius alātur contrōversia,
 fore utī pars cum parte civitātis cōnfligat. Id nē accadat
 positum in eius dīligentiā atque auctōritāte.

¹ 'hire.' ² '(to see) whether.' ³ 'influential.' ⁴ 'number of
 kinsmen.' ⁵ *suas*—*clientelas*: lit. 'of each of them his own clientage';
 i.e. 'each had his own organized partisans.'

33. Caesar, etsi ā bellō atque hoste discēdere dētrīmen-
 570 tōsum¹ esse exīstimābat, tamen nōn Ignōrāns quanta ex
 dissēnsiōnibus incommoda orīrī cōnsuēssent, nē tanta et
 tam coniūcta populō Rōmānō civitās, quam ipse semper
 aluisset omnibusque rēbus ōrnāsset,² ad vim atque arma
 dēscenderet, atque ea pars quae minus sibi cōfideret
 575 auxilia ā Vercingetorīge arcesseret, huīc rei praeverten-
 dum³ exīstimāvit; et, quod lēgibus Aeduōrum iis quī
 summum magistrātum obtinērent excēdere ex finibus nōn
 licēret, nē quid dē iure aut dē lēgibus eōrum dēminuisse
 vidērētur, ipse in Aeduōs proficīsci statuit senātumque
 580 omnem et quōs⁴ inter contrōversia esset ad sē Decetiam
 ēvocāvit. Cum prope omnis civitās eō convēnisset docē-
 rēturque,⁵ paucis clam convocātis, aliō⁶ locō, aliō⁶ tem-
 pore atque oportuerit, frātrem⁷ ā frātre⁸ renūtiātum,⁹
 cum lēgēs duo ex unā familiā vīvō utrōque nōn solum
 585 magistrātus creārī vetārent,¹⁰ sed etiam in senātū esse
 prohibērent, Cotum imperium dēpōnere coēgit; Convic-
 tolitavem, quī per sacerdōtēs¹¹ mōre civitātis intermissis
 magistrātibus esset creātus, potestātem obtinēre iussit.

*Caesar Labiēnum cum quattuor legiōnibus in Senonēs et
 Parisiōs mittit; ipse sex ad Gergoviam oppidum dūcit.*

34. Hōc dēcrētō interpositō, cohortātus Aeduōs ut
 590 contrōversiārum āc dissēnsiōnis obliviscerentur atque
 omnibus omissis [hīs] rēbus huīc bellō servīrent,¹² eaque
 quae meruissent praemia ab sē dēvictā Galliā expec-
 tārent equitātumque omnem et peditum mīlia decem sibi

¹ 'disadvantageous.' ² 'honor.' ³ 'attend first.' ⁴ 'obj. of
 inter; sc. eōs as antecedent. ⁵ subj. is frātrem—renūtiātum (esse).
⁶ 'alio—atque: 'other than.' ⁷ i.e. Cotus. ⁸ i.e. Valetiacus. ⁹ 'de-
 clare elected.' ¹⁰ 'forbid.' ¹¹ 'priests,' i.e. the Druids. ¹² 'attend.'

(Mt. Rognon)

(Mt. Rognon)

(Prat)°

(1441810-1 1710-1)

Diagram illustrating the conversion of Roman miles to English miles. A horizontal line is divided into three equal segments. The first segment is labeled $\frac{1}{3}$ below and ENGLISH MILES above. The second segment is labeled $\frac{1}{3}$ below and ROMAN MILES above. The third segment is labeled 1 below and 16 above.

ENGLISH MILES

ROMAN MILES

o (Clemensat)

(Le Cendré)°

(Dom de Gergovia)

(Mandana)

(Heights of Risolles)

(Orme)

(Puy de

10

11

(Orcet)

(Puy Giroux)

(la Roche Blanche)

(no)

(M. de S. 1915)

(Le Crest)

UNIONATED, CHINA, N.Y.



celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiis rei frumentariae causam disponeret, exercitum in duas partes divisit: quat- 595
 2 tuor legiones in Senones Parisiosque Labienō ducendas dedit; sex ipse in Arvernōs ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flumen Elaver duxit; equitatus partem illi
 3 attribuit, partem sibi reliquit. Quā rē cognitā Vercingetorix omnibus interruptis eius fluminis pontibus ab 600 alterā fluminis parte iter facere coepit.

35. Cum uterque utrimque exisset exercitus, in cōspectū ferēque ē¹ regione Caesaris castra pōnēbat. Dispositis exploratoribus, necubi² effectō ponte Rōmānī cōpiās trāducerent, erat in magnis Caesarī difficultatibus 605 rēs nē maiōrem aestātis partem flumine impedirētur, quod nōn ferē ante autumnum Elaver vadō trānsiri solet.
 2 Itaque, nē id accideret, silvestri locō castris positīs, ē¹ regione unius³ eōrum pontium quōs Vercingetorix rescindendōs cūrāverat, posterō diē cum duābus legionibus 610
 3 in occultō restitit⁴; reliquās cōpiās cum omnibus impedimentis, ut cōsuērat, misit, distractis quibusdam cohortibus, ut numerus legionum cōstāre vidērētur. His quam longissimē possent prōgredi iussis, cum iam ex diēi tempore coniecturam⁵ caperet in castra perventum,⁶ isdem 615 sublicis,⁷ quārum pars inferior integra remanēbat, pontem reficere coepit. Celeriter effectō opere legionibusque trāductis et locō castris idōneō delēctō reliquās cōpiās revocāvit. Vercingetorix rē cognitā, nē contrā suam voluntātem dimicāre cōgerētur, magnis itineribus ante- 620 cēssit.

¹ e regione: 'opposite.' ² 'in order that nowhere.' ³ with e regione; (to) 'one.' ⁴ 'remain behind.' ⁵ coniecturam capere: 'conjecture, judge.' ⁶ sc. esse ab iis; impersonal. ⁷ 'pile.'

36. Caesar ex eō locō quīntis castrīs¹ Gergoviam per-
vēnit, equestrīque eō diē proeliō levī factō, perspectō
urbis sitū, quae posita in altissimō monte omnēs adi-
625 tūs difficilēs habēbat, dē oppugnātiōne dēspērāvit; dē
obsessiōne nōn prius agendum cōstituit quam rem frū-
mentāriam expēdisset. At Vercingetorix castrīs prope
oppidum in monte positīs, mediocribus circum sē inter-
vallīs sēparātīm singulārum civitātum cōpiās collocā-
630 verat, atque omnibus eius iugī collibus occupātis quā
dīspici poterat, horribilem² speciem praebēbat; prīnci-
pēsque eārum civitātum, quōs sibi ad cōsiliū capi-
endum dēlēgerat, primā luce cotīdiē ad sē convenīre
iubēbat, seu quid commūnicandum, seu quid administran-
635 dum vidērētur; neque ullum ferē diem intermittēbat quīn
equestrī proeliō, interiectīs sagittāriīs, quid in quōque
esset animī ac virtūtis suōrum periclitārētur. Erat ē
regiōnē oppidī collis sub ipsīs rādīcibus montis ēgregiē
mūnitus atque ex omni parte circumcīsus³; quem si tenē-
640 rent nostrī, et aquae māgnā parte et pābulātiōne liberā
prohibitūrī hostēs vidēbantur. Sed is locus praesidiō
ab hīs nōn infirmō tenēbātur. Tamen silentiō noctis
Caesar ex castrīs ēgressus, prius quam subsidiō ex oppidō
veniri posset, dēiectō praesidiō potitus locō, duās ibi
645 legiōnēs collocāvit fossamque duplicem duodēnum⁴ pe-
dum ā māiōribus castrīs ad minōra perdūxit, ut tūtō
ab repentinō hostium incursū etiam singulī commeāre
possent.

¹ 'day's march.' ² 'formidable.' ³ 'with abrupt slope.' ⁴ 'each
(part) of twelve'; gen. plu.

Novae apud Aeduos turbae; deficiunt auxilia Caesaris missa, quibus obviam proficiscitur Caesar. Aegre interim castra contra Gallios defenduntur.

37. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitaris Aeduus, cui magistratum adiudicatum¹ à Caesare demōn- 650
strāvimus, sollicitatus² ab Arvernīs pecuniā cum quibus-
dam adulēscētibz colloquitur, quōrum erat princeps
Litaviccus atque eius frātrēs, amplissimā familiā nātī
2 adulēscētēs. Cum hīs praemium communicat hortatur-
3 que ut sē liberōs et imperiō nātōs meminerint. Unam 655
esse Aeduōrum civitatem, quae certissimam Galliae vic-
tōriam distineat; eius auctoritate reliquās continēri; quā
trāductā locum cōsistendi Rōmānīs in Galliā nōn fore.
4 Esse nōn nullō sē Caesaris beneficiō affectum, sic tamen
5 ut iustissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plūs com- 660
muni libertati tribuere. Cūr enim potius Aeduī dē suō
iure et dē lēgibus ad Caesarem disceptātōrem,³ quam
6 Rōmānī ad Aeduos veniant? Celeriter adulēscētibz et
orātiōne magistrātus et praemiō dēductis, cum sē vel
prīncipēs eius cōnsilii fore profiterentur, ratiō perficiendi 665
quaerēbātur, quod civitatem temerē ad suscipiendum bel-
7 lum adduci posse nōn cōnfidēbant. Placuit ut Litaviccus
decem illis milibus quae Caesarī ad bellum mitterentur
praeficerētur, atque ea⁴ dūcenda cūrāret frātrēsque eius ad
Caesarem praecurrerent. Reliqua quā ratiōne agi placeat 670
cōstituunt.

38. Litaviccus acceptō exercitū, cum milia passuum
circiter trigintā à Gergoviā abesset, convocātis subitō
militibus lacrimāns,⁵ ‘Quō proficiscimur,’ inquit ‘militēs?

¹ ‘award.’ ² sollicitatus pecunia : ‘bribe.’ ³ ‘(as) arbitrator.’
⁴ sc. milia. ⁵ ‘weep.’

675 Omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interiit; principes
 civitatis, Eporëdorix et Viridomarus, insimulati prödi-
 tionis, ab Römānīs indictā¹ causā interfecti sunt. Haec
 ab hīs cōgnōscite, quī ex ipsā caede effūgērunt; nam ego
 fratribus atque omnibus meis propinquis interfectis, dolore
 680 prohibeor quae gesta sunt prönūntiāre.' Pröducuntur ii
 quōs ille edocuerat quae dici vellet, atque eadem quae
 Litaviccus prönūntiāverat multitudinē expōnunt: omnēs
 equitēs Aeduōrum interfectōs, quod collocūti cum Arvern-
 nīs dicerentur; ipsōs sē inter multitudinem militum occul-
 685 tāsse atque ex mediā caede effūgisse. Conclāmant Aeduī
 et Litavicum obsecrant ut sibi cōnsulat. 'Quasi² vērō,'
 inquit ille, 'cōnsiliū sit rēs, ac nōn necesse sit nobīs Ger-
 goviam contendere et cum Arvernīs nōsmet coniungere.
 An dubitāmus quīn nefariō³ facinore admissō Römānī
 690 iam ad nōs interficiendōs concurrant? Proinde, si quid in
 nobīs animi est, persequāmur⁴ eōrum mortem quī indignis-
 simē interiērunt, atque hōs lātrōnēs interficiāmus.' Osten-
 dit civēs Römānōs, quī eius praesidiū fiduciā unā⁵ erant;
 continuō māgnū numerum frūmentī commeātūque diri-
 695 pit, ipsōs crudēliter excruciatōs interficit. Nūntiōs totā
 civitate Aeduōrum dimittit, eōdem mendaciō⁶ dē caede
 equitum et principum permovet; hortātur ut similī ratiōne
 atque ipse fēcerit suās iniuriās persequantur.

39. Eporëdorix Aeduus, summō locō nātus adulēscēns
 700 et summae domī potentiae, et unā Viridomarus, pari
 aetate et grātiā, sed genere dispari, quem Caesar ab Divi-
 ciācō sibi trāditum ex humili locō ad summam dignitatem
 perdūxerat, in equitum numerō convēnerant nōminatim

¹ adj. 'unsaid'; w. causa: 'without a trial.' ² 'as if.' ³ 'abomi-
 nable.' ⁴ 'avenge.' ⁵ 'with him.' ⁶ 'lie.'

2 ab eō ēvocātī. Hīs erat inter sē dē prīncipātū contentiō,
 et in illā magistrātuum contrōversiā alter prō Convicto- 705
 3 litave alter pro Cotō summīs opibus pūgnāverant. Ex hīs
 Eporēdorix cōgnitō Litaviccī cōnsiliō mediā ferē nocte
 rem ad Caesarem dēfert; ōrat nē patiātur cīvitātem prā-
 vīs¹ adulēscentium cōnsiliis ab amicitīā populī Rōmānī
 dēficere; quod futūrum prōvideat, sī sē tot hominum 710
 milia cum hostibus coniūnxerint, quōrum salutem neque
 propinquī neglegere neque cīvitās levī mōmentō² aesti-
 māre posset.

40. Māgnā affectus sollicitūdine hōc nūntiō Caesar,
 quod semper Aeduōrum cīvitātī praecipuē indulserat, 715
 nullā interpositā dubitātiōne³ legiōnēs expeditās quattuor
 2 equitātumque omnem ex castrīs ēdūcit; nec fuit spatium
 tāli tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod rēs posita in
 3 celeritāte vidēbātur; C. Fabium lēgātum cum legiōnibus
 duābus castrīs praesidiō rēlinquit. Frātrēs Litaviccī cum 720
 comprehendī iūssisset, paulō ante reperit ad hostēs pro-
 4 fugisse. Adhortātus milītēs nē necessariō tempore iti-
 neris labōre permoveantur, cupidissimīs omnibus prōgres-
 sus milia passuum quīnque et vīgintī, āgmen Aeduōrum
 cōnspicātur; immissō equitātū iter eōrum morātur atque 725
 impedit interdicitque omnibus nē quemquam interficiant.
 5 Eporēdorigem et Viridomārum, quōs illī interfectōs exī-
 stimābant, inter equitēs versārī suōsque appellāre iubet.
 6 Hīs cōgnitis et Litaviccī fraude perspectā, Aeduī manūs
 tendere, et dēditiōnem sīgnificāre, et prōiectīs armīs mor- 730
 7 tem dēprecārī incipiunt. Litaviccus cum suis clientibus,
 quibus mōre Gallōrum nefās est etiam in extrēmā fortunā
 dēserere patrōnōs,⁴ Gergoviam profugit.

¹ 'vicious.'² 'consequence.'³ 'hesitation.'⁴ 'leader.'

41. Caesar nūntiis ad cīvitātem Aeduōrum missis qui
 735 suō beneficiō cōservātōs docērent, quōs iūre bellī interficere potuisset, tribusque hōrīs [noctis] exercituī ad quīetem datīs castra ad Gergoviam movet. Mediō ferē itinere :
 equitēs ā Fabiō missi, quantō rēs in periculō fuerit expōnunt. Summīs cōpiis castra oppugnāta dēmōnstrant, cum
 740 crēbrō¹ integrī dēfessīs succēderent nostrōsque assiduō labōre dēfatigārent, quibus propter māgnitudinem castrōrum perpetuō esset isdem² in vāllō permanendum. Mul- :
 titūdine sagittārum atque omnī genere tēlōrum multōs vulnerātōs; ad haec sustinenda māgnō ūsuī fuisse tor-
 745 menta. Fabium discēssū eōrum duābus relictīs portīs, obstruere cēterās pluteōsque³ vāllō addere et sē in posterum diem similemque cāsum apparāre. His rēbus :
 cōgnitis Caesar summō studiō militum ante ortum sōlis in castra pervēnit.

Dēficiunt Aeduī.

750 42. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Aeduī prīmīs nūntiis ab Litaviccō acceptīs nullum sibi ad cōgnōscendum spatium relinquunt. Impellit aliōs avāritia, aliōs :
 Irācundia⁴ et temeritās,⁵ quae māximē illi hominum generi est innāta, ut levem auditiōnem habeant prō rē
 755 compertā. Bona cīvium Rōmānōrum diripiunt, caedēs faciunt, in servitūtem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem prōclī- :
 nātā⁶ Convictolitavis plēbemque ad furōrem impellit, ut facinore admissō ad sānitātem revertī pudeat.⁷ M. Ari- :
 stium, tribūnum militum, iter ad legiōnēs facientem fidē

¹ adv. of *crēber*. ² w. quibus. ³ 'screen.' ⁴ 'passion.' ⁵ 'rashness.'

⁶ '(already) started (in that direction).' ⁷ 'shame,' impers.; translate, 'they may be ashamed.'

datā ex oppidō Cavillōnō ēducunt; idem facere cōgunt 760
 6 eōs quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōstitērant. Hōs continuō¹
 in itinere adortī omnibus impedimentīs exuunt; repū-
 gnantēs diem noctemque obsident; multis utrimque inter-
 fectīs māiōrem multitudinem ad arma concitant.

43. Interim nūtiō allātō omnēs eōrum militēs in po- 765
 testātē Caesaris tenērī, concurrunt ad Aristium; nihil
 publicō factum cōsiliō dēmōstrant; quaestiōnem dē bo-
 2 nīs direptīs dēcernunt; Litaviccī frātrumque bona publi-
 cant; lēgātōs ad Caesarem pūrgandī suī grātiā² mittunt.
 3 Haec faciunt recuperandōrum suōrum causā; sed contā- 770
 minātī³ facinore et captī compendiō⁴ ex direptīs bonīs,
 quod ea rēs ad multōs pertinēbat, et timōre poenae exter-
 ritī cōsilia clam dē bellō inire incipiunt cīvitātēque
 4 reliquās lēgātiōnibus sollicitant. Quae tametsī Caesar
 intellegēbat, tamen quam mītissimē⁵ potest lēgātōs ap- 775
 pellat: nihil sē propter Inscientiam levitātemque vulgī
 gravius dē cīvitātē iudicāre neque dē suā in Aeduōs
 5 benevolentīā dēminuere. Ipse māiōrem Galliae mōtum
 exspectāns, nē ab omnibus cīvitātibus circumsisterētur,
 cōsilia inibat quem ad modum ā Gergoviā discēderet 780
 āc rūsus omnem exercitum contraheret, nē prōfectiō nāta
 ā timōre dēfectiōnis similisque fugae vidērētur.

Rōmānōrum ad Gergoviam clādēs.

44. Haec cōgitantī accidere vīsa est facultās bene ge-
 rendae rei. Nam cum in minōra castra operis perspi-
 ciendī causā vēnisset, animadvertit collem quī ab hostibus 785
 tenēbātur nudātum hominibus, quī superiōribus diēbus

¹ 'immediately.' ² like *causa*. ³ 'implicated' (in). ⁴ 'profit.'
⁵ 'mildly.'

vix prae multitudine cerni poterat. Admiratus quaerit ex perfugis causam, quorum magnus ad eum cotidie numerus confluēbat.¹ Cōstābat inter omnes, quod² iam
 790 ipse Caesar per explorātōrēs cōgnōverat, dorsum³ esse eius iugī prope aequum, sed silvestre et angustum, quā esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidī; vehementer huic illōs locō timēre nec iam aliter sentīre, unō colle ab Rōmānis occupātō, si alterum amīssissent, quā paene circumvallātī atque omni exitū et pābulatiōne interclūsi vidērentur; ad hunc mūniendum locum omnes ā Vercin-
 795 getorīge ēvocātōs.

45. Hāc rē cōgnitā Caesar mittit complūrēs equitum turmās eō dē mediā nocte; imperat ut paulō tumultuōsius
 800 omnibus locis pervagentur. Primā luce māgnū numerum impedimentōrum⁴ ex castris mūlōrumque prōdūci dēque hīs strāmenta⁵ dētrahī mūliōnēsque⁶ cum cassidibus,⁷ equitum speciē ac simulatiōne, collibus circumvehī iubet. Hīs paucōs addit equitēs quī lātius ostentatiōnis
 805 causā vagantur. Longō circuitū eādem omnes iubet petere regiōnēs. Haec procul ex oppidō vidēbantur, ut erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus in castra, neque tantō spatiō, certi quid esset, explorārī poterat. Legiōnem decimam eōdem luce mittit et paulum prōgressam inferiōre cōstituit locō
 810 silvisque occultat. Augētur Gallis sūspiciō atque omnes illō ad mūnitiōnem cōpiae trādūcuntur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar cōnspicātus tēctis insignibus suōrum occultātisque signis militāribus rārōs milites, nē ex oppidō animadverterentur, ex māiōribus castris in minōra trā-
 815 dūcit, lēgātisque quōs singulis legiōnibus praefecerat quid

¹ 'stream' (into camp).² sc. *id.*³ 'summit.'⁴ 'beast of

burden.'

⁵ 'pack-saddle.'⁶ 'mule-driver.'⁷ 'helmet.'

fieri velit, ostendit: in primis monet ut contineant milites
 ne studio pugnandi aut spe praedae longius progredian-
 tur; quid iniquitas loci habeat incommodi proponit; hoc
 una celeritate posse vitari; occasionis esse rem, non proe-
 10 lii. His rebus expositis signum dat et ab dextra parte 820
 alio ascensu eodem tempore Aeduos mittit.

46. Murus oppidi a planitie atque initio ascensus recta¹
 regione,² si nullus amfractus³ intercederet, mille et ducen-
 2 tos passus aberat; quicquid huc circuitus ad molliendum⁴
 3 clium accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. A medio 825
 ferē colle in longitudinem, ut natura montis ferēbat, ex
 grandibus saxis sex pedum murum qui nostrorum impe-
 tum tardaret praeduxerant Galli atque, inferiore omni
 spatio vacuo relictō, superiorem partem collis usque ad
 4 murum oppidi densissimis castris⁵ complēverant. Milites 830
 dato signo celeriter ad munitiōnem perveniunt eamque
 5 transgressi trinīs⁶ castris⁵ potiuntur; ac tanta fuit in
 castris capiendis celeritas ut Teutomatus, rex Nitibro-
 gum, subito in tabernaculo oppressus, ut meridiē conquie-
 verat,⁷ superiore parte corporis nudā, vulnerato equo, vix 835
 se ex manibus praedantium militum eriperet.

47. Consecutus id quod animo proposuerat Caesar re-
 ceptu⁸ cani⁹ iussit, legionisque decimae, quaecum erat,
 2 continuo signa constituerunt. At reliquarum legionum
 milites non audito sono tubae, quod satis magna vallis 840
 intercēdebat, tamen a tribunis militum legatisque, ut erat
 a Caesare praeceptum, retinebantur. Sed elati spe celeris

¹ 'straight.' ² 'line.' ³ 'bend.' ⁴ molliendum clium: (lit.
 'softening the slope'), 'lessening the steepness.' ⁵ plu. in significa-
 tion. ⁶ distributive of *trēs*; used to show that *castris* is plu. in sig-
 nification. ⁷ 'rest.' ⁸ 'retreat.' ⁹ 'sound'; impers. pass. infin.

victōriæ et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundis proeliis nihil adeō arduum sibi existimābant quod
 845 nōn virtūte cōnsequī possent; neque finem prius sequendī
 fecerunt quam mūrō oppidī portisque appropinquārent.
 Tum vērō ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clāmōre, quī
 longius aberant repentinō tumultū perterriti, cum hostem
 intrā portās esse existimārent, sē ex oppidō eiēcērunt.
 850 Mātrēs familiae dē mūrō vestem¹ argentumque iactābant²
 et pectore³ nudō prōminentēs⁴ passis manibus obtestā-
 bantur Rōmānōs ut sibi parcerent; neu,⁴ sic ut Avaricī⁵
 fecissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque Infantibus absti-
 nērent. Nōn nullae dē mūro per manūs dēmissae sēsē⁶
 855 militibus tradēbant. L. Fabius, centuriō legiōnis octāvae,
 quem inter suōs eō diē dixisse cōstābat excitārī sē A-
 varicēnsibus praemiis, neque commissūrum ut prius quis-
 quam mūrum āscenderet, trēs suōs⁶ nactus manipulārēs
 atque ab iis sublevātus mūrum āscendit. Hōs ipse rūsus
 860 singulōs exceptāns⁷ in mūrum extulit.

48. Interim iī quī ad alteram partem oppidī, ut suprā
 dēmōstrāvimus, mūnitiōnis causā convēnerant, primō
 exaudītō clāmōre, inde etiam crebris nūntiis incitātī op-
 pidum ā Rōmānīs tenērī, praemissis equitibus māgnō
 865 cursū eō contendērunt. Eōrum ut quisque primus vēne-
 rat, sub mūrō cōsistēbat suōrumque pūgnantium nume-
 rum augēbat. Quōrum cum māgna multitudō convēnis-
 set, mātrēs familiae, quae paulō ante Rōmānīs dē mūrō
 manūs tendēbant, suōs obtestārī et mōre Gallicō passum
 870 capillum ostentāre liberōsque in cōnspectum prōferre coe-
 pērunt. Erat Rōmānīs nec locō nec numerō aequa con-

¹ 'robes.' ² 'breast.' ³ 'lean over.' ⁴ 'and not.' ⁵ locative.
⁶ suos manipulares: 'of his own maniples.' ⁷ 'help.'

tentiō; simul et cursū et spatiō pūgnae dēfatigātī nōn facile recentēs atque integrōs sustinēbant.

49. Caesar cum iniquō locō pūgnārī hostiumque cōpiās augērī vidēret, praemetuēns¹ suis ad T. Sextium lēgātum, 875 quem minōribus castris praesidiō reliquerat, misit ut cohortēs ex castris celeriter ēdūceret et sub infimō colle ab
 2 dextrō latere hostium cōstitueret; ut, si nostrōs locō dēpulsōs vidisset, quō minus liberē hostēs Insequerentur
 3 terrērēt. Ipse, paulum ex eō locō cum legiōne prōgressus 880 ubi cōstitērat, ēventum pūgnae exspectābat.

50. Cum ācerrimē comminus pūgnārētur, hostēs locō et numerō, nostrī virtūte cōfiderent, subitō sunt Aeduī vīsī ab latere nostris apertō, quōs Caesar ab dextrā parte aliō
 2 āscēnsū manūs distinendae causā miserat. Hī similitū- 885 dine armōrum vehementer nostrōs perterruērunt, āc, tametsī dextris umeris² exsertis³ animadvertēbantur,⁴ quod Insigne⁵ pāctum⁶ esse cōnsuērat, tamen id ipsum suī fallendi causā militēs ab hostibus factum exīstimābant.
 3 Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quique unā mūrū 890 āscenderant circumventī atque interfectī dē mūrō praecipitābantur. M. Petronius, eiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās excīdere cōnātus esset, ā multitudīne oppressus āc sibi dēspērāns, multis iam vulneribus acceptis, manipularibus suis quī illum secūtī erant, ‘Quoniam,’ inquit, ‘mē 895 unā vōbiscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vitae prōspiciam, quōs cupiditāte glōriae adductus in
 4 periculum dēdūxī. Vōs datā facultāte vōbis cōsultite.’ Simul in mediōs hostēs irrūpit duōbusque interfectis re-
 5 liquōs ā portā paulum submōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliārī 900

¹ ‘fear in advance.’² ‘shoulder.’³ (thrust out) ‘bare.’⁴ ‘identify.’ ⁵ ‘signal.’⁶ part. of *pangō*, ‘agree.’

suīs, ‘Frūstrā,’ inquit, ‘meae vītae subvenīre cōnāminī, quem iam sanguis vīrēsque dēficiunt. Proinde abīte dum est facultās vōsque ad legiōnem recipite.’ Ita pugnāns post paulum concidit ac suīs salūti fuit.

905 51. Nostri cum undique premerentur, sex et quadrāgintā centuriōnibus āmissis dēiecti sunt locō. Sed intolerantius¹ Gallōs insequentēs legiō decima tardāvit, quae prō subsidio paulō aequiōre locō cōstitērat. Hanc rūsus tertiae decimae legiōnis cohortēs excēperunt,
910 quae ex castris minōribus ēductae cum T. Sextiō lēgātō cēperant locum superiōrem. Legiōnēs ubi primum plāntiis attigērunt, infestis contrā hostem signis cōstitērunt. Vercingetorix ab rādīcibus collis suōs intrā
mūnitiōnēs redūxit. Eō diē milites sunt paulō minus
915 septingenti dēsiderāti.

Cōntiōne habitā et cōfirmātis militibus, Caesar contrā Aeduōs exercitum dūcit.

52. Posterō diē Caesar cōntiōne advocātā temeritātem cupiditātemque militum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsi iudicāvissent quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum vidēretur, neque signō recipiendi datō cōstitissent neque ā
920 tribūnis militum lēgātisque retinēri potuissent. Exposuit quid iniquitās loci posset, quod ipse ad Avaricum sēnsisset, cum sine duce et sine equitatū dēprehēnsis hostibus explōratam victōriam dīmīssisset, nē parvum modo dētrīmentum in contentiōne propter iniquitātem loci ac
925 cideret. Quantō opere eōrum animi māgnitudinem admirārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum mūnitiōnēs, nōn altitūdō montis, nōn mūrus oppidi tardāre potuisset, tantō opere

¹ ‘too recklessly.’

licentiam¹ arrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plūs sē quam imperātōrem dē victōriā atque exitū rērum sentire
 4 existimārent; nec minus sē ā milite modestiam² et con- 980
 tinentiam³ quam virtūtem atque animī māgnitudinem dēsiderāre.

53. Hāc habitā cōtiōne et ad extrēmum [ōrātiōne] cōfirmātis militibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permovērentur, neu, quod iniquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī 935
 hostium tribuerent; eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae ante sēnserat, legiōnēs ex castris ēdūxit aciemque idōneō
 2 locō cōstituit. Cum Vercingetorix nihilō magis in aequum locum dēscenderet, levī factō equestrī proeliō
 3 atque eō secundō, in castra exercitum redūxit. Cum hōc 940
 idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem minuendam militumque animōs cōfirmandōs factum
 4 existimāns in Aeduōs mōvit castra. Nē tum quidem insecūtis hostibus, tertiō diē ad flūmen Elaver vēnit; pontem refēcit exercitumque trādūxit. 945

54. Ibi ā Viridomārō atque Eporēdorige Aeduīs appellātus discit cum omni equitātū Litavicum ad sollicitandōs Aeduōs profectum; opus esse ipsōs antecēdere ad
 2 cōfirmandam civitātem. Etsī multis iam rēbus perfidiam Aeduōrum perspectam habēbat atque hōrum discēssū 950
 mātūrārī defectiōnem civitātis existimābat, tamen eōs retinendōs nōn cēnsuit nē aut inferre iniūriam vidērētur
 3 aut daret timōris aliquam sūspiciōnem. Discēdentibus iis breviter sua in Aeduōs merita exposuit; quōs⁴ et quam
 4 humilēs accēpisset, compulsōs in oppida, multātōs⁵ agrīs, 955
 omnibus ēreptis sociīs, impositō stipendiō, obsidibus

¹ 'insubordination.' ² 'subordination.' ³ 'self-restraint.' ⁴ 'quos humiles: 'in what condition and how humble.' ⁵ 'deprive.'

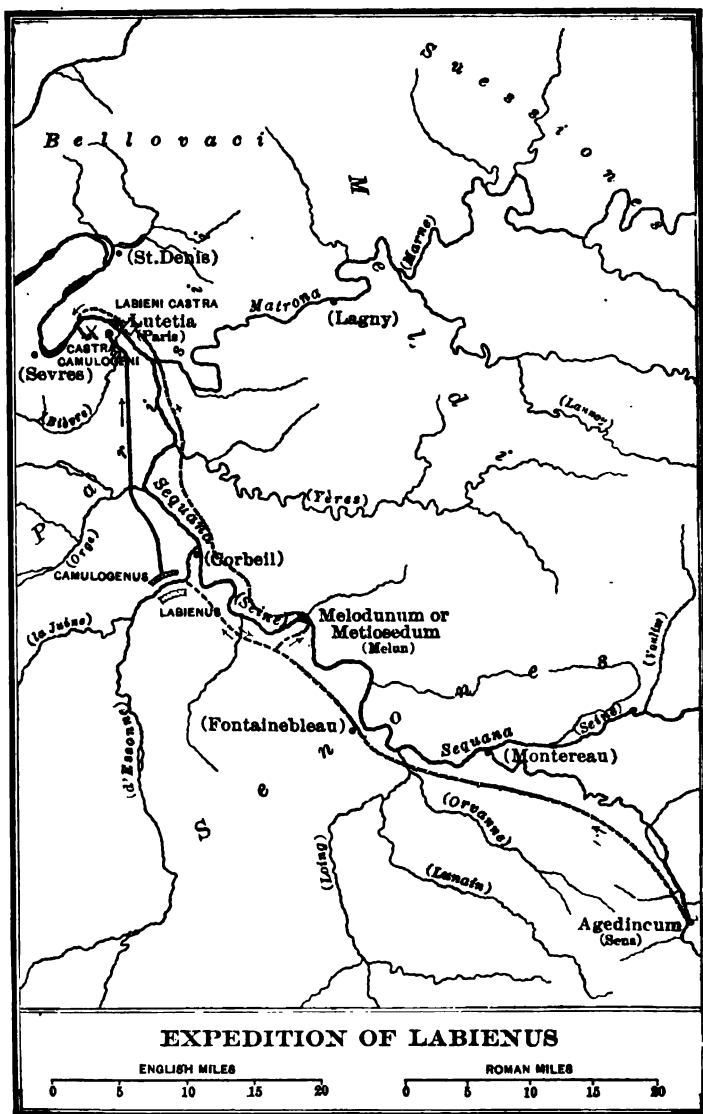
summā cum contumeliā extortis,¹ et quam in fortunam
 quamque in amplitudinem dūxisset, ut nōn solum in prī-
 stinum statum redissent, sed omnium temporum dignitatem
 960 et grātiā antecēssisse vidērentur. His datis mandātis
 eōs ab sē dimisit.

55. Noviodūnum erat oppidum Aeduōrum ad rīpās
 Ligeris opportunō locō positum. Hūc Caesar omnēs :
 obsidēs Galliae, frūmentum, pecūniā publicā, suōrum
 965 atque exercitūs impedimentōrum māgnā partē con-
 tulerat; hūc māgnū numerū equōrum hūius bellī :
 causā in Italiā atque Hispaniā coēptū miserat. Eō
 cum Eporēdorix Viridomārusque venissent et de statū
 civitātis cōgnovissent, Litaviccū Bibracte² ab Aeduīs
 970 receptū, quod est oppidū apud eōs māximae auctōri-
 tātis, Convictolitavem magistratū māgnāque partē
 senātūs ad eū convēnisse, lēgātōs ad Vercingetorigem
 de pāce et amicitia conciliandā publicē missōs, nōn praeter-
 mittendū tantū commodū existimāvērunt. Itaque
 975 interfectis Noviodūni cūstōdibus quique eō negōtiandī
 causā convēnerant, pecūniā atque equōs inter sē partiti
 sunt; obsidēs civitātū Bibracte ad magistratū dedū-
 cendōs cūrāvērunt; oppidū, quod ā sē tenēri nōn posse
 iudicābant, nē cui esset usū Rōmānis, incendērunt;
 980 frūmentū quod subitō potuērunt nāvibus avexērunt, reli-
 quū flūmine atque incendiō corrūpērunt. Ipsī ex finī-
 timīs regiōnibus cōpiās cōgere, praesidia cūstōdiāsque
 ad rīpās Ligeris dispōnere, equitātūque omnibus locis
 iniciendī timōris causā ostentāre coepērunt, sī ab rē frū-
 985 mentāriā Rōmānōs excludere [aut adductōs inopiā ex
 prōvinciā expellere] possent. Quam ad spem multum eōs

¹ 'force from (them).'

² abl.





adiuvābat quod Liger ex nivibus crēverat, ut omnīnō vadō nōn posse trānsīrī vidērētur.

56. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis Caesar mātūrandum sibi cēnsuit, si esset in perficiendīs pontibus periclitandum, ut 990 prius quam essent māiōrēs eō coāctae cōpiae dīmicāret. 2 Nam nē commūtātō cōnsiliō iter in prōvinciam converteret, ut [nōn] nēmō tum quidem necessariō faciundum exīstimābat, cum Infāmia atque indignitās rei et oppositus mōns Cebenna viārumque difficultās impediēbat, tum 995 māximē quod abiūctō¹ Labiēnō atque iīs legiōnibus 3 quās tūā miserat vehementer timēbat. Itaque admodum māgnīs diurnīs nocturnisque itineribus cōfectīs, contrā 4 omnium opiniōnem ad Ligerim vēnit vadōque per equitēs inventō prō rei necessitatē opportūnō, ut braccia modo 1000 atque umerī ad sustinenda arma liberī ab aquā esse possent, dispositō equitatū, quī vim flūminis refringeret, atque hostibus primō āspectū perturbātis incolumem 5 exercitum trādūxit frūmentumque in agrīs et pecoris cōpiam nactus replētō² hīs rēbus exercitū iter in Senonēs 1005 facere instituit.

Rēs ā Labiēnō prōsperē in Parisiis gestae.

57. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labiēnus eō supplēmētō quod nuper ex Italiā vēnerat relictō Agēdincī, ut esset impedimentis praesidiō, cum quattuor 3 legiōnibus Lutetiam profisciscitur. Id est oppidum Parī- 1010 siōrum positum in Insulā flūminis Sēquanae. Cuius adventū ab hostibus cōgnitō māgnae ex finitimīs civitatibus cōpiae convēnerunt. Summa imperiī trāditur Camulo- 3 genō Aulercō, quī prope cōfectus aetāte tamen propter

¹ 'detach.' ² 'supply amply.'

1015 singulārem scientiam rei mīlītāris ad eum est honōrem
 ēvocātus. Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse palū-
 dem, quae Influeret in Sēquanam atque illum omnem
 locum māgnopere impedīret, hic cōnsēdit nostrōsque
 trānsitū prohibēre instituit.

1020 58. Labiēnus primō vīneās agere, crātibus atque aggere
 palūdem explēre atque iter mūnīre¹ cōnābatur. Post-
 quam Id difficilīus fieri² animadvertit, silentiō ē castris
 tertiā vigiliā ēgressus eōdem quō vēnerat itinere Meti-
 osēdum pervēnit. Id est oppidum Senonum in insulā
 1025 Sēquanāe positum, ut paulō ante dē Lutetiā diximus.
 Dēprehēnsīs nāvibus circiter quīnquāgintā celeriterque
 coniūctis atque eō mīlitibus impositis et rei novitāte
 perterritis oppidānis, quōrum māgna pars erat ad bel-
 lum ēvocāta, sine contentiōne oppidō potitur. Refectō
 1030 ponte, quem superiōribus diēbus hostēs resciderant, exer-
 citum trādūcit et secundō flūmine ad Lutetiam iter facere
 coepit. Hostēs rē cōgnitā ab iis qui Metiosēdō profu-
 gerant, Lutetiam incendi pontēsque eius oppidi rescindi
 iubent; ipsi profecti ā palūde in ripā Sēquanāe ē regiōne
 1035 Lutetiae contrā Labiēnī castra cōnsīdunt.

59. Iam Caesar ā Gergovia discēssisse audiēbātur, iam
 dē Aeduōrum dēfectiōne et secundō Galliae mōtū rumōrēs
 afferēbantur, Gallique in colloquiis interclūsum itinere et
 Ligeri³ Caesarem inopiā frūmentī coāctum in prōvinciam
 1040 contendisse cōfirmābant. Bellovacī autem dēfectiōne
 Aeduōrum cōgnitā, quī iam ante erant per sē infidēlēs,
 manūs cōgere atque apertē bellum parāre coepērunt.
 Tum Labiēnus tantā rerum commutātiōne longē aliud
 sibi capiendum cōnsilium atque antea sēnserat intellegē-

¹ 'construct.'² 'be accomplished.'³ abl.⁴ 'wavering.'

bat, neque iam ut aliquid acquireret proeliōque hostēs 1045
 lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum Agēdincum redū-
 ceret cōgitābat. Namque alterā ex parte Bellovacī, quae
 cīvītās in Galliā māximam habet opīniōnem virtūtis,
 Instābant, alteram Camulogenus parātō atque instructō
 exercitū tenēbat; tum legiōnēs ā praesidiō atque impedi- 1050
 mentis interclūsās māximum flūmen distinēbat. Tantīs
 subitō difficultātibus obiectis ab animi virtūte auxilium
 petendum vidēbat.

60. Itaque sub vesperum cōnsiliō convocātō cohortātus
 ut ea quae imperāset diligenter industriēque administrā- 1055
 rent, nāvēs quās Metiosēdō dēdūxerat singulās equitibus
 Rōmānīs attribuit et primā cōfectā vigiliā quattuor
 mīlia passuum secundō flūmine silentiō prōgredi ibique
 sē exspectāre iubet. Quīnque cohortēs quās minimē
 firmās ad dimicandum esse exīstimābat castris praesidiō 1060
 relinquit; quīnque eiusdem legiōnis reliquās dē mediā
 nocte cum omnibus impedimentis adversō flūmine māgnō
 tumultū proficisci imperat. Conquirit etiam līntrēs; hās
 māgnō sonitū rēmōrum incitātās in eandem partem mit-
 tit. Ipse post paulō silentiō ēgressus cum tribus legiōni- 1065
 bus eum locum petit quō nāvēs appellī iūsserat.

61. Eō cum esset ventum, explōrātōrēs hostium, ut
 omni flūminis parte erant dispositi, inopīnantēs, quod
 māgna subitō erat coorta tempestās, ā nostris opprimun-
 tur; exercitus equitatusque, equitibus Rōmānīs admini- 1070
 strantibus quōs ei negōtiō praefēcerat, celeriter trānsmit-
 titur. Ūnō ferē tempore sub lūcem hostibus nūntiātur
 in castris Rōmānōrum praeter cōnsuetūdinem tumultu-
 āri¹ et māgnū ire āgmen adversō flūmine sonitumque

¹ 'be in confusion'; impers.

1075 rēmōrum in eādem parte exaudīri et paulō infrā mīlitēs
 nāvibus trānsportārī. Quibus rēbus audītīs, quod ex-
 stimābant tribus locīs trānsīre legiōnēs, [atque omnēs
 perturbātōs dēfectiōne Aeduōrum fugam parāre,] suās
 quoque cōpiās in trēs partēs distribuērunt. Nam prae-
 1080 sidiō ē regiōne castrōrum relictō et parvā manū Metio-
 sēdum versus¹ missā quae tantum prōgrederētur quantum
 nāvēs prōcēssissent, reliquās cōpiās contrā Labiēnum
 dūxērunt.

62. Primā luce et nostrī omnēs erant trānsportātī et
 1085 hostium aciēs cernēbātur. Labiēnus mīlitēs cohortātus :
 ut suae prīstinae virtūtis et tot secundissimōrum proeliō-
 rum retinērent memoriā atque ipsum Caesarem, cūius
 ductū saepe numerō hostēs superāssent, praesentem adesse
 existimārent, dat sīgnum proeliī. Primō concursū ab dex-
 1090 trō cornū, ubi septima legiō cōstitērat, hostēs pelluntur
 atque in fugam cōiciuntur ; ab sinistrō, quem locum duode-
 cima legiō tenēbat, cum primī ōrdinēs hostium trānsfixī
 pīlis concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant, nec
 dabat sūspiciōnem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium :
 1095 Camulogenus suīs aderat atque eōs cohortābātur. At in-
 certō etiam nunc exitū victōriae, cum septimae legiōnis tri-
 būnīs esset nūntiātum, quae in sinistrō cornū gererentur,
 post tergum hostium legiōnem ostendērunt² signaque in-
 tulērunt. Nē eō quidem tempore quisquam locō cēssit,
 1100 sed circumventī omnēs interfectīque sunt. Eandem fortū-
 nam tulit Camulogenus. At īi quī in praesidiō contrā
 castra Labiēnī erant relictī, cum proelium commissum au-
 dissent, subsidiō suīs iērunt collemque cēpērunt, neque
 nostrōrum militum victōrum impetum sustinēre potuē-

¹ 'toward.' ² 'unmask.'

runt. Sic cum suis fugientibus permixti, quos non silvae 1105
 10 montesque texerunt, ab equitatu sunt interfecti. Hoc
 negotio confecto Labienus revertitur Agedincum, ubi
 impedimenta totius exercitus relictæ erant; inde cum om-
 nibus copiis ad Caesarem pervenit.

*Dēficiunt omnēs ferē Gallī; summum ducem cōstituunt
 Vercingetorīgē; vincuntur ā Caesare equestri proeliō.*

63. Defectione Aeduorum cognita bellum augetur. Lē- 1110
 2 gationes in omnes partes circummittuntur; quantum grā-
 tia, auctoritate, pecuniā valent, ad sollicitandās civitatēs
 3 utuntur; nacti obsides quos Caesar apud eos deposuerat,
 4 horum supplicio dubitantes teritant. Petunt ā Vercin-
 getorige Aeduū ut ad se veniat rationesque belli gerendi 1115
 5 communicet. Rē impetratā contendunt ut ipsis summa
 imperii tradatur; et rē in contrōversiam deductā, totius
 Galliae concilium Bibracte indicitur. Conveniunt undique
 6 frequentes. Multitudinis suffragiis res permittitur; ad
 7 unum omnes Vercingetorigem probant imperatorem. Ab 1120
 hoc concilio Remi, Lingonēs, Trēveri āfuērunt: illi, quod
 amicitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēveri, quod abe-
 rant longius et ā Germānis premēbantur, quæ fuit causa
 quā rē totō abessent bellō et neutris auxilia mitterent.
 8 Magnō dolore Aeduū ferunt se delectos principatū; que 1125
 runtur fortunæ commutationem et Caesaris in se indul-
 gentiam requirunt¹; neque tamen susceptō bellō suum
 9 cōsiliū ab reliquis separare audent. Inviti summae
 spei² adulescentes, Eporēdorix et Viridomārus, Vercinge-
 torigī parant.

1130

64. Ille imperat reliquis civitatibus obsides; denique

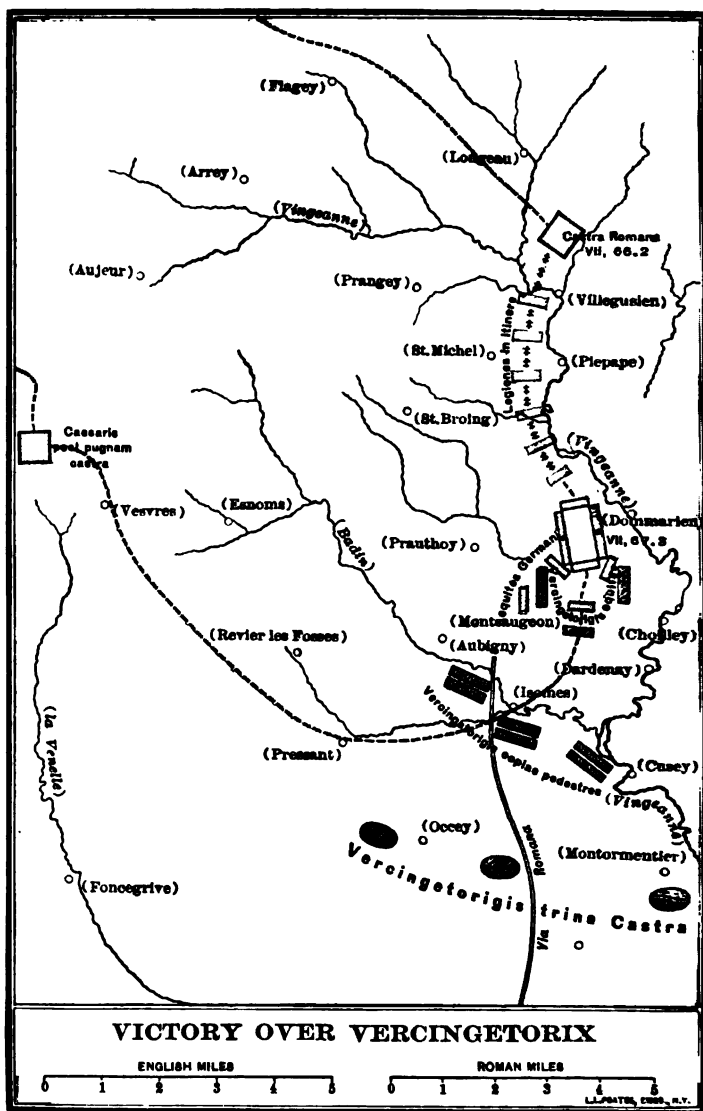
¹ 'recall.' ² 'ambition.'

ei rei constituit diem. Huc omnes equites, quindecim milia numero, celeriter convenire iubet: peditatu, quem ante habuerit se fore contentum dicit, neque fortunam temptaturum aut acie dimicaturum; sed quoniam abundet equitatu, perfacile esse factu frumentationibus pabulationibusque Romanos prohibere; aequo modo¹ animo sua ipsi frumenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant; qua rei familiaris iactura perpetuum imperium libertatemque se consequi videant. His constitutis rebus Aeduus Segusiavisque, qui sunt finitimi provinciae, decem milia peditum imperat; huc addit equites octingentos. His praeficit fratrem Eporodorigis bellumque inferre Allobrogibus iubet. Altera ex parte Gabalos proximisque pagos Arvernorum in Helvios; item Rutenos Cadurcosque ad fines Volcarum Arecomicorum depopulandos mittit. Nihilominus claudis nuntiis legationibusque Allobrogas sollicitat, quorum mentes nondum ab superiore bello resedissem sperabat. Horum principibus pecunias, civitati autem imperium totius provinciae pollicetur.

65. Ad hos omnes casus provisae erant praesidia cohortium duarum et viginti, quae ex ipsa coacta provincia ab L. Caesare legato ad omnes partes opponebantur. Helvii sua sponte cum finitimis proelio congressi pelluntur et C. Valerio Domnotaurō, Caburi filio, principe civitatis, compluribusque aliis interfectis intra oppida murosque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crebris ad Rhodanum dispositis praesidiis magnā cum curā et diligentia suos fines tumentur. Caesar, quod hostes equitatu superiores esse intellegebat et interclusis omnibus itineribus nullā re ex provincia atque Italia sublevari poterat, trans Rhenum in

¹ 'only.'



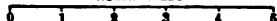


VICTORY OVER VERGINGETORIX

ENGLISH MILES



ROMAN MILES



L.L. POPE, CORP., N.Y.

Germāniam mittit ad eās civitatēs quās superiōribus annis
pācāverat; equitēsque ab hīs arcēssit et levis armātūrae
5 peditēs, quī inter eōs proeliārī cōsuērant. Eōrum ad-
ventū, quod minus idōneīs equīs utēbantur, ā tribūnīs 1105
militum reliquisque equitibus Rōmānīs atque ēvocātīs¹
equōs sūmit Germānīsque distribuit.

66. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Ar-
vernīs equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī conveni-
unt. Māgnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēqua- 1170
nōs per extrēmōs Lingonum finēs iter faceret, quō
facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter milia
passuum decem ab Rōmānīs trīnīs castrīs Vercingetorix
cōnsēdit, convocātisque ad consilium praefectīs equitum
vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: fugere in prōvin- 1175
ciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem
obtinendam libertātem satis esse; ad reliquū temporis
pācem atque ōtium parum² prōfici³; māiōribus enim
coāctīs cōpiīs reversūrōs neque finem bellandī factūrōs;
proinde in āgmine impeditōs adorianur; sī peditēs suis 1180
auxilium ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn
posse; sī, id quod magis futurum cōnfidat, relictīs impe-
dimentīs suae salutī cōnsulant, et usū rerū⁴ nēces-
sariarū et dignitāte spoliātum irī. Nam dē equiti-
bus hostium, quīn nēmō eōrum prōgredi modo extrā 1185
āgmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem dēbere dubitāre. Id
quō māiōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castrīs
habitūrum et terrōrī hostibus futurum. Conclāmant
equitēs, sānctissimō iūre iūrاندō cōnfirmārī oportēre, nē
tēctō recipiātur, nē ad liberōs, nē ad parentēs, nē ad 1190

¹ 'veteran' (who had been personally 'called out'). ² 'too little.'

³ 'gain advantage'; impers. ⁴ *res necessariae*: 'necessities.'

uxōrem aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per āgmen hostium perequitārit.¹

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus ad iūs iūrandum adāctis, posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū duae sē acies
 1195 ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā primō āgmine iter impedire coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar suum quoque : equitātum tripartitō dīvisum contrā hostem ire iubet. Pūgnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōsistit āgmen ; impedimenta inter legiōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte
 1200 nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō sīgna inferri Caesar aciemque convertī iubēbat ; quae rēs et hostēs ad Insequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxiliī cōfirmābat. Tandem Germānī ab dextrō latere summum iugum nactī hostēs locō dēpellunt : fugientēs usque
 1205 ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorīx cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōsēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā reliquī, nē circumvenīrentur veritī, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs. Trēs nōbilissimī : Aeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur : Cotus, praefectus
 1210 equitum, quī contrōversiam cum Convictolitave proximīs comitiīs² habuerat, et Cavarillus, quī post dēfectiōnem Litaviccī pedestribus cōpiīs praefuerat, et Eporēdorīx, quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Aeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

Vercingetorīx Alesiam sē cōnfert, omnem Galliam ad bellum evocat.

1215 68. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cōpiās suās, ut prō castrīs collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit celeri-

¹ 'ride' (through).

² 'election' ; no sing.

terque impedimenta ex castris educi et se subsequi iussit.
 2 Caesar impedimentis in proximum collem ductis, duabus
 legionibus praesidio relictis, secutus hostes quantum diei 1220
 tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus ex novissimò ag-
 mine interfectis, alterò diè ad Alesiam castra fecit. Per-
 3 spectò urbis sitū perterritisque hostibus, quod equitatu, quā
 maximè parte exercitus confidebant, erant pulsī, adhortā-
 tus ad laborem milites Alesiam circumvallare instituit. 1225

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summò admodum
 editò locò, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnari nōn posse vi-
 2 deretur; cuius collis radicēs duo duabus ex partibus
 3 flumina subluēbant.¹ Ante oppidum planitiēs circiter
 4 milia passuum tria in longitudinem patēbat; reliquis ex 1230
 omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī interiectò spatiò, parī
 5 altitudinis² fastigiò³ oppidum cingebant. Sub mūrō,
 quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc om-
 nem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et
 māceriam⁴ in altitudinem sex pedum praeduxerant. 1235
 6 Eius munitiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs instituēbātur circuitus
 7 undecim milia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportunis locis
 erant posita octōna castellaque trēs et vīgintī facta; qui-
 bus in castellis interdū stationes pōnēbantur, nē qua su-
 bitò eruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitoribus⁵ ac 1240
 firmis praesidiis tenēbantur.

70. Opere institutò fit equestre proelium in eā planitiē
 quam intermissam⁶ collibus tria milia passuum in longi-
 tudinem patēre suprā dēmōstrāvimus. Summā vī ab
 2 utrisque cōtenditur. Laborantibus nostris Caesar Ger- 1245
 mānōs submittit legiōnēque prò castris cōstituit, nē qua

¹ 'wash.' ² w. pari. ³ 'summit.' ⁴ 'wall.' ⁵ 'sentinel.'
⁶ 'interrupt.'

subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fiat. Praesidiō legi-
 ōnum additō nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam
 conlectī sē ipsī multitudine impediunt atque angustioribus
 1250 portīs relictīs coartantur.¹ Germānī ācrius usque ad mū-
 nitiōnēs sequuntur. Fit māgna caedēs; nōn nulli relictīs
 equīs fossam trānsire et māceriam trāscendere cōnantur.
 Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō cōstituerat prō-
 movērī iubet. Nōn minus quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant
 1255 Galli perturbantur; venīrī ad sē cōnfestim existimantēs
 ad arma conclāmant; nōn nulli perterriti in oppidum
 irrumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet portās claudī, nē castra
 nudentur. Multis interfectis, complūribus equīs captis,
 Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

1260 71. Vercingetorix, prius quam mūnitiōnēs ab Rōmānis
 perficiantur, cōsiliū capit omnem ab sē equitātum
 noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suā quisque
 eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnēsque quī per aetātem arma
 ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Spā in illōs merita prō
 1265 pōnit obtēstāturque ut suae² salutis ratiōnem habeant,
 neu sē³ optimē dē commūni libertāte meritum hostibus
 in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indiligentiōrēs fuerint,
 milia hominum dēlecta octōgintā unā sēcum interitura
 dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frūmentum sē exigūe dierum
 1270 trigintā habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tōlerārī posse
 parcendō. Hīs datīs mandātis, quā erat nostrum opus
 intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit.
 Frūmentum omne ad sē referrī iubet; capitis poenam iis
 quī nōn paruerint cōstituit; pecus, cūius māgna erat
 1275 cōpia ā Mandubiis compulsā, virītim³ distribuit; frūmen-

¹ 'crowd together.'
 'individually.'

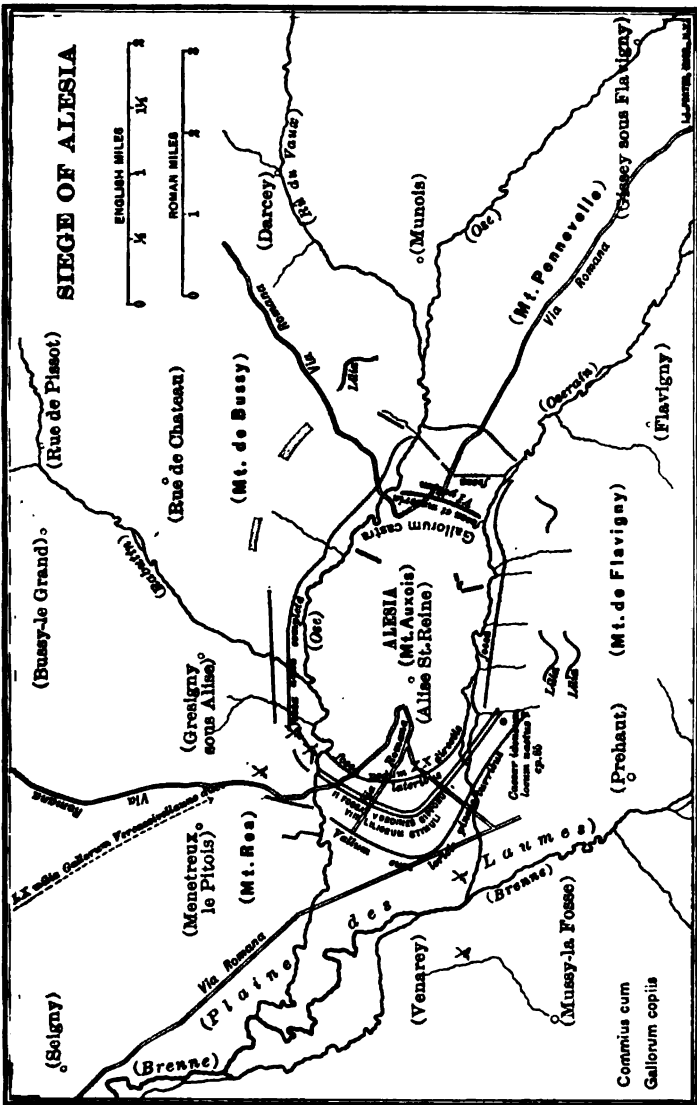
² i.e. Vercingetorix.

³ (man by man)

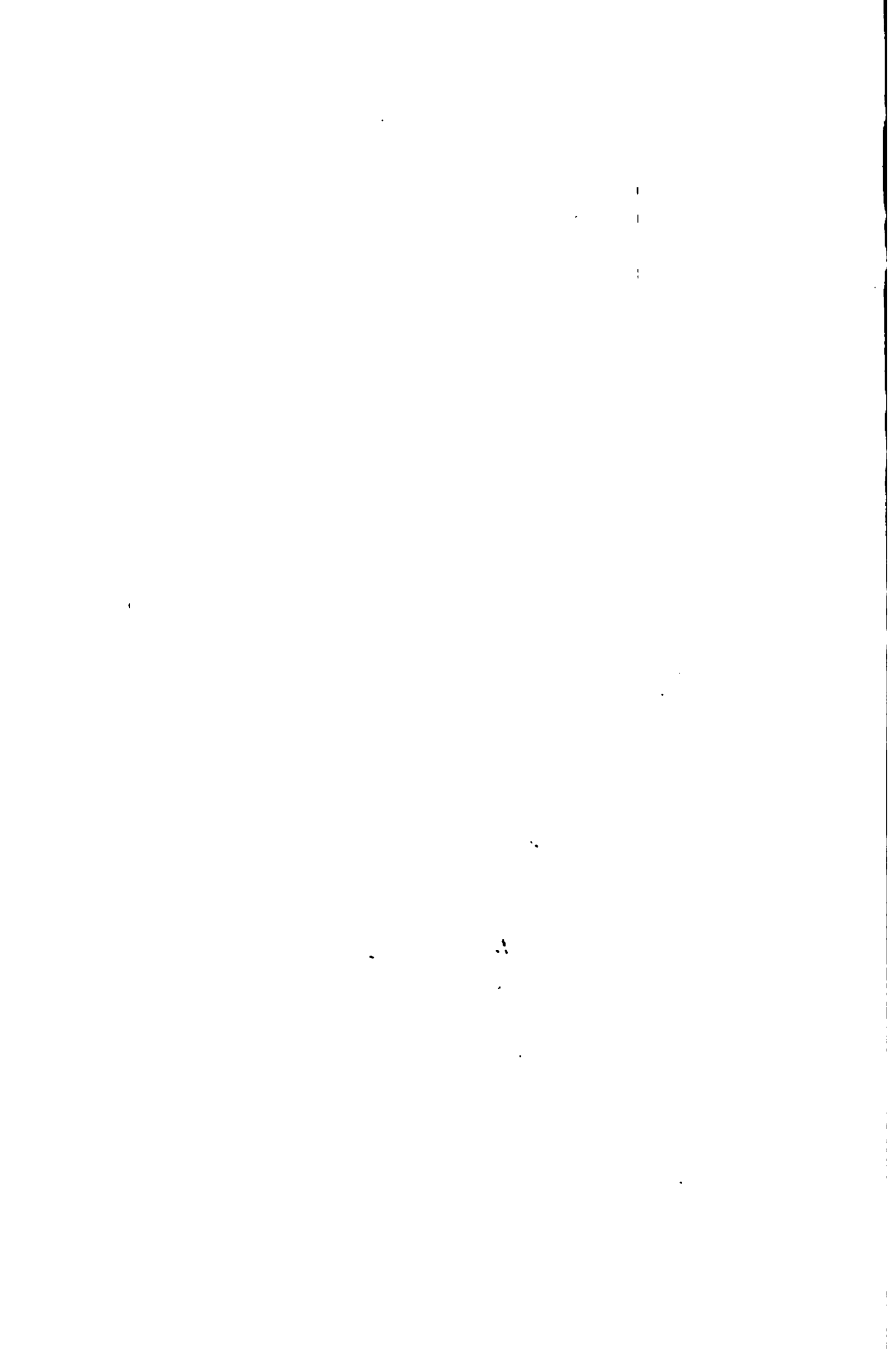
SIEGE OF ALESIA

ENGLISH MILES
1 1/2 2

ROMAN MILES
1 1/2 2



Conventus cum
Gallorum copia



tum parcē¹ et paulātim mētūrī Instituit. Cōpiās omnēs quās prō oppidō collocāverat in oppidum recipit. His ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

Caesar oppidum variis mūnitiōnibus cingit.

72. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis ex perfugis et captivis Caesar 1280 haec genera mūnitiōnis Instituit. Fossam pedum viginti dērectis lateribus dūxit, ut eius fossae solum² tantundem³ patēret quantum summa labra⁴ distārent. Reliquās omnēs mūnitiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs quadringentōs reduxit; [id] hōc cōnsiliō, quoniam tantum esset necessariō 1285 spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā⁵ militum cingeretur, nē dē imprōvisō aut noctū ad mūnitiōnēs multitudō hostium advolāret,⁶ aut interdiū tela in nostrōs operī dēstinātōs⁷ cōicere possent. Hoc intermissō spatiō duās fossās quīndecim pedēs lātās, eādē altitū- 1290 dine perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus⁸ ac dēmissis⁹ locis aquā ex flūmine dērivātā complēvit. Post eās aggerem ac vāllum duodecim pedum extrūxit. Huic lōricam¹⁰ pinnāsque¹¹ adiēcit, grandibus cervis¹² eminentibus¹³ ad¹⁴ commissūrās¹⁵ pluteōrum atque aggeris, 1295 quī āscēsum hostium tardārent, et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs octōgintā inter sē distārent.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī¹⁶ et frūmentārī et tantās mūnitiōnēs fierī necesse, dēminūtis nostris cōpils, quae longius ā castris prōgrediēbantur; ac nōn 1300

¹ 'sparingly.' ² 'bottom.' ³ 'as much.' ⁴ 'edge.' ⁵ 'cordon.'
⁶ 'charge' (upon). ⁷ 'detail.' ⁸ 'level.' ⁹ 'low.' ¹⁰ 'parapet.'
¹¹ 'battlement.' ¹² 'chevaux-de-frise.' ¹³ 'project.' ¹⁴ 'at.'
¹⁵ 'junction.' ¹⁶ 'cut timber.'

numquam opera nostra Galli temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus portis summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quā rē ad haec rūsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, 2 quō minōre numerō militum mūnitiōnēs dēfendi possent.

1305 Itaque truncis arborum aut admodum firmis rāmis abscisis atque hōrum dēlibrātis¹ ac praeacūtis cacūminibus² perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc³ illi stipitēs⁴ dēmissi et ab infimō revincti, nē revelli possent, ab⁵ rāmis ēminēbant. Quīnī erant ordinēs coniuncti 4

1310 inter sē atque implicāti; quō quī intrāverant, sē ipsi acūtissimis vāllis⁶ induēbant.⁷ Hōs cippōs⁸ appellābant. Ante hōs obliquis ordinibus in⁹ quīncūncem dispositis scrobēs¹⁰ in altitudinem trium pedum fodiēbantur¹¹ paulatim angustiore ad infimum fāstigiō. Hūc teretēs¹²

1315 stipitēs feminis¹³ crassitudine¹⁴ ab summō praeacūtī et praeuisti dēmittēbantur ita, ut nōn amplius digitis¹⁵ quatuor ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōfirmandi et stabiliendi¹⁶ causā singuli¹⁷ ab infimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur¹⁸; reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās insidiās

1320 vīminibus ac virgultis integēbātur. Hūius generis octōnī¹⁹ ordinēs ducti ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitudine flōris²⁰ lilium²¹ appellābant. Ante haec tāleae²² pedem longae ferreis hamis²³ infixis²⁴ tōtae in

¹ 'trim.' ³ 'top.' ⁵ 'in these trenches.' ⁴ 'tree trunks.'
⁶ 'with.' ⁸ nom. *vallus*, 'stake.' ⁷ 'impale.' ⁸ 'boundary-post':
used ironically. ⁹ in quīncūncem: (like a five-spot on cards or dice)
'unevenly,' i.e. the alternate rows having the holes opposite each
other, the intervening ones having theirs opposite the middle of the
space between two holes in the other. ¹⁰ 'pit.' ¹¹ 'dig.' ¹² 'round
and smooth.' ¹³ 'thigh.' ¹⁴ 'thickness.' ¹⁵ 'finger's breadth.'
¹⁶ 'secure.' ¹⁷ singuli pedes: 'a foot of each stake.' ¹⁸ 'pack
down.' ¹⁹ 'eight' (distrib.). ²⁰ 'flower.' ²¹ 'lily'; cf. cippos
above. ²² 'bar.' ²³ 'hook.' ²⁴ 'set in.'

terram infodiēbantur mediocribusque intermissis spatiis omnibus locis dissecebantur,¹ quos stimulōs² nōminā- 1325 bant.

74. His rebus perfectis regiōnēs secutus quam potuit aequissimās prō loci nātūrā, quattuordecim mīlia passuum complexus parēs eiusdem generis mūnitiōnēs, dīversās³ ab his, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē 1330 magnā quidem multitudine [sī ita accidat eius discēssu], mūnitiōnum praesidia circumfundī possent; nē autem cum periculō ex castris ēgredi cōgātur, diērum trīgintā pābulum frumentumque habēre omnēs convectum iubet.

Galli māximis cōpiis coactis ad Alesiam proficiscuntur.

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Galli conciliō 1335 prīncipum indictō nōn omnēs quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorix, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique cīvitātī imperandum; nē tantā multitudine cōfūsā nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frumentandī ratiōnem habēre possent. Imperant Aeduīs 1340 atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvīs, Ambivaretīs, Aulercīs Brannovīcibus, [Blannōviīs,] mīlia trīgintā quīnque; parem numerum Arvernīs adiunctīs Eleutetīs, Cadūrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellaviīs, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōnsuerunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Ru- 1345 tēnīs, Carnutibus duodēna mīlia; Bellovacīs decem; totidem Lemovīcibus; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parisiīs et Helvētiīs; sēna Andibus Ambianīs, Mediomatricīs, Petrocoriīs, Nervīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrogibus; quīna mīlia Aulercīs Cēnomanīs; totidem Atrebātibus; 1350 quattuor Veliocassīs; [Lexoviīs et] Aulercīs Eburovīci-

¹ 'scatter.'

² 'spur.'

³ 'opposite.'

bus tria; Rauricis et Bôis bina; decem universis civi-
tätibus quae Oceanum attingunt quaeque eorum consue-
tudine Aremoricae appellantur, quod sunt in numero
1355 Coriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs, Osismī, Venetī,
Lexoviī, Venellī. Ex his Bellovaci suum numerum non
contulerunt, quod se suo nomine atque arbitrio¹ cum Rō-
mānis bellum gestūrōs dicerent neque cuiusquam impe-
riō obtemperātūrōs²; rogātī tamen ā Commiō prō eius
1360 hospitio duo milia miserunt.

76. Huius operā Commiī, ut antea demonstrāvimus,
fideli atque utili superioribus annis erat usus³ in Britan-
niā Caesar; prō quibus meritis civitatem eius immūnem⁴
esse iusserat, iura legesque reddiderat atque ipsi⁵ Morinōs
1365 attribuerat. Tanta tamen universae Galliae consensio
fuit libertatis⁶ vindicandae et pristinae belli laudis⁶ re-
cuperandae ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoriā
movērētur, omnesque et animo et opibus in id bellum
incumberent.⁷ Coactis equitum milibus octo et peditum
1370 circiter ducentis et quinquaginta, haec in Aeduorum
finibus recensēbantur,⁸ numerusque inibatur,⁹ praefecti
constituēbantur. Commiō Atrebati, Viridomārō et Epo-
rēdorīgi Aeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, consobrino¹⁰
Vercingetorigis, summa imperii traditur. His¹¹ delēcti ex
1375 civitatibus attribuuntur quorum consilio bellum admini-
strārētur. Omnes alacres et fiduciae pleni ad Alesiam
proficiscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam qui aspec-
tum modo tantae multitudinis sustinēri posse arbitrārē-
tur, praesertim ancipiti proelio, cum ex oppido eruptione

¹ 'discretion.' ² 'obey.' ³ 'find.' ⁴ 'exempt (from tribute).'

⁵ i.e. *Commiō*. ⁶ sc. *causa*. ⁷ 'bend one's energies.' ⁸ 'muster.'

⁹ 'record.' ¹⁰ 'cousin.' ¹¹ w. *attribuuntur*.

pūgnārētur, foris¹ tantae cōpiae equitātis peditātisque 1380
cernerentur.

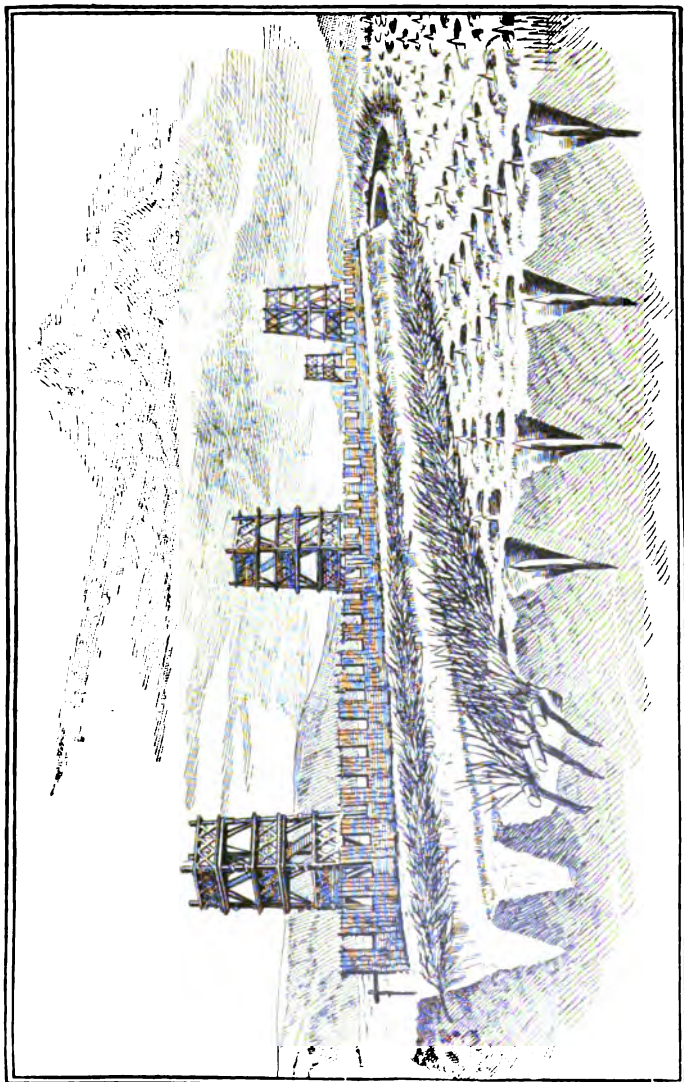
*Itē quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, conciliō coāctō, dē condiōne
suā dēliberant.*

77. At ii quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā
auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōsumptō omni frūmentō,
in scii quid in Aeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitu
suārum fortūnarum cōsultābant. Ac variis dictis sen- 1385
tentiis, quarum pars dēditionem, pars, dum vīrēs sup-
peterent, ēruptionem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda ōrātiō
Critognātī vidētur propter eius singulārem et nefāriam²
crūdēlītatem. Illic summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et
māgnae habitus auctōritātis: 'Nihil,' inquit, 'dē eōrum 1390
sententiā dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servitūtem dēdi-
tīōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō
neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnsēō. Cum hīs mihi³
rēs est quī ēruptionem probant; quōrum in cōsiliō
omnium vestrum cōsēnsū prīstinae residēre⁴ virtutis 1395
memoria vidētur. Animī est ista⁵ mollitia,⁶ nōn virtūs,
paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ūltrō mortī
offerant facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter
ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tantum
apud mē dignitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam⁷ vitae 1400
nostrae iactūram fieri vidērem; sed in cōsiliō capiendō
omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium
conciāvimus. Quid⁸ hominum milibus octōgintā ūnō locō
interfectīs, propinquīs cōsanguineisque nostrīs animī

¹ 'outside' (of the Roman works). ² 'abominable.' ³ *mihi res est*:
'I am concerned.' ⁴ 'remain.' ⁵ 'that.' ⁶ 'weakness.' ⁷ 'except.'
⁸ *w. animi*: 'what feelings.'

1405 fore existimātis, si paene in ipsis cadāveribus proeliō
 decertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspo-
 liāre¹ quī vestrae salutis causā suum periculum neglēxē-
 runt, nec stultitiā² ac temeritate vestrā aut animī im-
 becillitate³ omnem Galliam prōsternere⁴ et perpetuae
 1410 servitūtī subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn vērunt, dē 10
 eōrum fidē cōstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō?⁵ Rō-
 mānōs in illis ulteriōribus mūnitiōnibus animine⁶ causā
 cotidiē exercēri putātis? Si illōrum⁷ nūntiis cōfirmārī 11
 nōn potestis omni aditū praesaepitō,⁸ his utimini tēstibus
 1415 appropinquāre⁹ eōrum adventum; cūius rei timōre exter-
 ritī diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid ergō mei¹²
 cōsiliū est? Facere quod nostrī māiōrēs nequāquam¹⁰
 parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in
 oppida compulsī ac simili inopiā subāctī,¹¹ eōrum cor-
 1420 poridus quī aetate ad bellum Inūtilēs vidēbantur vitam
 tolerāvērunt neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cūius rei 13
 si exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen libertātis causā in-
 stitui et posteris prōdī pulcherrimum¹² iudicārem. Nam
 quid illi simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī 14
 1425 māgnāque illātā calamitate finibus quidem nostris ali-
 quandō excēssērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra,
 lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbis reliquērunt. Rōmānī vērō 15
 quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā¹³ adductī,
 quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cōgnōvērunt, hōrum
 1430 in agrīs civitātibusque cōsidere atque his aeternam
 iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā con-

¹ 'deprive.' ² 'folly.' ³ 'feebleness.' ⁴ 'destroy.' ⁵ '(there-
 fore) 'then.' ⁶ *animi causa*: 'for their health.' ⁷ i.e. the other
 Gauls. ⁸ 'cut off.' ⁹ ind. dis.: 'is at hand.' ¹⁰ 'by no means':
 w. *pari*. ¹¹ 'constrain.' ¹² 'a glorious act'; agreeing w. *institui*
 and *prodi*, and used as pred. appos. ¹³ 'envy.'



THE FORTIFICATIONS BEFORE ALESIA.



16 diciōne bella gesserunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquis
nātiōnibus geruntur Ignōrātis, respicite finitimam Gal-
liam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commū-
tātis, securibus ¹ subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte.' 1435

78. Sententiis dictis cōstituunt ut illi qui valētudine ²
aut aetate inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia
prius experiantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dē-
scendant: illō tamen potius ūtendum cōsiliō, sī rēs cōgat
atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditionis aut pācis 1440
subeundam condiōnem. Mandubiī, qui eōs oppidō re-
cēperant, cum liberis atque uxōribus exire cōguntur.
4 Hi cum ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum accēssissent, flentēs
omnibus precibus ōrābant, ut sē in servitūtem receptōs
5 cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis in vāllō cūstodiis 1445
recipi prohibēbat.

*Galli bis repulsi ā septentrionibus castra Caesaris adoriri
cōstituunt.*

79. Intereā Commius reliquique ducēs, quibus summa
imperii permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiis ad Alesiam
perveniant et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mille
2 passibus ā nostris mūnitiōnibus cōsīdunt. Posterō diē 1450
equitātū ex castris ēductō omnem eam plānitiem, quam
in longitudinem milia passuum tria patēre dēmōstrā-
vimus, complent pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō
3 abductās in locis superiōribus cōstituunt. Erat ex op-
pidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxi- 1455
liis visis; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animi ad
4 laetitiam excitantur. Itaque prōductis cōpiis ante oppi-
dum cōsistunt et proximam fossam crātibus integunt

¹ the licitor's 'axes,' as symbolizing subjection; dat. ² 'ill health.'

atque aggere expleant sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs
1460 cāsūs comparant.

80. Caesar omni exercitū ad utramque partem mūnī-
tīōnum dispositō, ut, si ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum
teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castris ēdūci et proelium
committi iubet. Erat ex omnibus castris, quae summum :
1465 undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus, atque omnēs milites
intentī pūgnae prōventum¹ exspectābant. Galli inter :
equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae
interiēcērant, quī suis cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et
nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs com-
1470 plūrēs dē imprōvisō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum :
suos pūgnā superiōrēs esse Galli cōfiderent et nostrōs
multitudine premi vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et iī quī
mūnitiōnibus continēbantur et iī quī ad auxilium con-
venerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōfirmābant.
1475 Quod in cōspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē :
aut turpiter factum celārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis
cupiditās et timor Ignōminiae ad virtutem excitābat.
Cum ā meridiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā :
pūgnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertis turmīs in
1480 hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in :
fugam cōiectis sagittārii circumventi interfēctique sunt.
Item ex reliquis partibus nostri cēdentēs ūsque ad castra :
Insecūti sui colligendi facultātem nōn dedērunt. At iī :
quī Alesiā prōcēsserant, maestī² prope victōriā dēsperātā
1485 sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

81. Ūnō diē intermissō Galli atque hōc spatiō³ māgnō
crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum⁴ numerō effectō, mediā
nocte silentiō ex castris ēgressi ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs

¹ 'outcome.' ² 'sad.' ³ sc. *temporis*. ⁴ 'hook for tearing down walls.'

2 accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā significātiōne qui
 in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cōgnōscere pos- 1490
 sent, crātēs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē
 vāllō prōturbāre reliquaue quae ad oppugnātiōnem per-
 3 tinent parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre
 exaudītō dat tubā sīgnum suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex
 4 oppidō ēducit. Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuique 1495
 erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnitiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs¹
 librilibus sudibusque quās in opere disposuerant ac glan-
 5 dibus² Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebris³ adēptō
 multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormen-
 6 tīs tēla cōniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius 1500
 lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvenerant,
 quā ex parte nostrōs premi intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex
 ūlteriōribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

82. Dum longius ā mūnitiōne aberant Gallī, plūs mul-
 titudine telōrum prōficiēbant; postea quam propius suc- 1505
 cēssērunt, aut sē stimulis inopināntēs induēbant aut in
 scrobēs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turri-
 2 bus trāiectī pilīs mūrālibus interībant. Multīs undique
 vulneribus acceptīs, nullā mūnitiōne perruptā, cum lūx
 appeteret, veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus 1510
 castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenirentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt.
 3 At interiōrēs, dum ea quae ā Vercingetorige ad ērup-
 tiōnem praeparāta erant, prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent;
 4 diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī prius suōs dis-
 cēssisse cōgnōvērunt quam mūnitiōnibus appropinquā- 1515
 rent. Ita rē infectā in oppidum revertērunt.

83. Bis māgnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Gallī quid agant,

¹ fundis librilibus: 'stones weighing a pound each' (thrown from slings). ² 'leaden slugs.' ³ 'darkness.'

cōsulunt; locōrum peritōs adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum
 castrōrum sitūs mūnitiōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā sep-
 1520 tētriōnibus collis, quem propter māgnitudinem circuitūs
 opere circumplectī¹ nōn potuerant nostrī; necessariōque
 paene iniquō locō et lēniter dēclivī castra fēcerant. Haec
 C. Antistius Rēginus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum
 duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cōgnitis per explōrātōrēs
 1525 regiōnibus ducēs hostium sexāgintā mīlia ex omni nu-
 merō dēligunt, eārum cīvitātum quae māximam virtūtis
 opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pāctō² agī placeat,
 occultē inter sē cōstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfiniunt
 cum merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellau-
 1530 num Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum
 Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs primā vigiliā
 ēgressus, prope cōfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem
 sē occultāvit militesque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere
 iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea
 1535 castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque
 tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdere et
 reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

*Vercingetorix ex oppidō auxiliō Gallīs ēgreditur māgnā caede
 fugantur Gallī. Alesiā expūgnātā Vercingetorix capitur.*

84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suōs cōspicātus ex
 oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs,³ mūsculōs,⁴ falcēs
 1540 reliquaeque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert.
 Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs atque omnia temp-
 tantur; quae minimē visa pars firma est hūc concurritur.
 Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnitiōnibus distinētur nec
 facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs no-

¹ 'surround.' ² 'manner.' ³ 'long pole.' ⁴ 'shed.'

strōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum pūgnantibus existit, 1545
quod suum periculum¹ in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre;
omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius homi-
num mentēs perturbant.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus quid quāque in parte
gerātur cōgnōscit; labōrantibus subsidium submittit. 1550
Utrisque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus,
quō māximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint
mūnitiōnēs, dē omni salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, sī rem
obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant. Māximē
ad superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellau- 1555
num missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum² locī ad dēcli-
vitātem fāstigium māgnū habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla
cōiciunt, aliī tēstūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs in vicem
integrī succēdunt. Agger³ ab ūniversīs in mūnitiōnem
cōniectus et āscēnsū dat Gallīs et eā quae in terrā oc- 1560
cultāverant Rōmānī contegit⁴; nec iam arma nostrīs nec
vīrēs suppetunt.

86. His rēbus cōgnitīs, Caesar Labiēnum cum cohorti-
bus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit. Imperat, sī susti-
nēre nōn possit dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnet; id 1565
nisi necessariō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs, cohortātur
nē labōrī succumbant⁵; omnium superiōrum dīmiciātiō-
num⁶ fructum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōnsistere.
Interiōrēs dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter māgni-
tūdinem mūnitiōnum loca praerupta [ex] āscēnsū temp- 1570
tant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōferunt. Multitudine
tēlōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantēs dēturbant, aggere et

¹ Eng. idiom, 'safety.' ² iniquum—momentum: 'the unfavorable downward slope gives great advantage' (to the enemy). ³ i.e. earth, stones, etc. ⁴ 'cover.' ⁵ 'give way under.' ⁶ 'struggle.'

crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum āc lōricam rescindunt.

1575 87. Mittit primum Brūtum adulēscētem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō āc repulsis hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum miserat contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex prox-
1580 imō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequi, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adoriri iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctis undecim cohortibus, quās ex proximis praesidiis dēductās fōrs obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiorē quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proeliō intersit.

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītus¹ cōgnitō, [quō Insigni in proeliis uti cōsuērat,] turmisque equitum et cohortibus visis quās sē sequi iusserat, ut dē locis superiori-
1590 ōribus haec dēclivia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit, rursus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnitiōnibus clāmor. Nostri ēmissis pilis gladiis rem gerunt. Repentē post, tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae appropinquant.
1595 Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit magna caedēs. Sedulius, dūx et princeps Lemovicum occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā comprehenditur; signa militāria septuāgintā quattuor ad Caesarem referuntur; pauci ex tantō numerō sē inco-
1600 lumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōspiciātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum dēspērātā salūte cōpiās ā mūnitiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē audītā ex castris

¹ 'dress,' i.e. his purple or scarlet military cloak.

6 Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbris subsidiis ac tōtius
 diēi labōre militēs essent dēfessi, omnēs hostium cōpiaē
 7 dēlēri potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus no- 1605
 vissimum āgmen cōnsequitur: māgnus numerus capitur
 atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in cīvitatēs discēdunt.

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorix conciliō convocātō id
 bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum sed com-
 2 mūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit for- 1610
 tūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu
 morte suā Rōmānis satis facere seu vīvum trādere velint.
 3 Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma
 4 trādī, principēs prōducī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castris
 cōnsidit¹; eō ducēs prōducuntur; Vercingetorix dēditur; 1615
 5 arma prōiciuntur. Reservātis Aeduīs atque Arvernīs, si
 per eōs cīvitatēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquis captivīs
 tōtī exercitūi capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

*Aeduī et Arvernī in dēditiōnem accipiuntur. Caesar legiōnēs
 in hiberna mittit. Rōmae supplicātiō redditur.*

90. Hīs rēbus cōnfectis in Aeduōs proficiscitur; cīvītā-
 2 tem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret 1620
 sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat māgnū numerum
 3 obsidum. Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit. Captivōrum cir-
 4 citer vīgintī milia Aeduīs Arvernisque reddit. T. Labi-
 ēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs
 proficisci iubet; huīc M. Sempronium Rutilum attribuit. 1625
 5 C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōni-
 bus duābus in Rēmīs collocat, nē quam ā finitimīs Bel-
 6 lovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēginum
 in Ambivarētōs, T. Sextium in Biturigēs, C. Caninium

¹ 'take position.'

1630 Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulis legiōnibus mittit. Q.
Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cavillōnī et Mati- 7
scōne in Aeduīs ad Ararim rei frūmentāriae causā col-
locat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōstituit. Hīs [rēbus ex
Caesaris litterīs] cōgnitis Rōmae diērum viginti suppli- 8
1635 cātiō redditur.

NOTES

The references are to the section numbers in the Appendix.

BOOK I.

58 B.C.

TITLE.

Various headings for this work are found in the manuscripts; the whole is sometimes called *Commentarii de Bello Gallico*, "Commentaries on the Gallic War," with the additional heading *Liber Primus*, etc., for each book. *Commentarius Primus* amounts to the same thing. The subject of a Roman book was usually expressed by *de* with the ablative; in English the nominative case is usually employed. Thus, *Cicero de Senectute* becomes in English "Cicero's Old Age."

I. DESCRIPTION OF GAUL.

CHAPTER I.

This outline of the geography of the country was necessary to enable Caesar's readers at Rome to understand the situation, because Gaul had been entirely unknown to them until Caesar went there.

1. **Gallia**: for the sense in which the word is used here as compared with I. 19, see vocabulary. **omnis**: predicate use, *as a whole*. **est** **divisa**: the force of each part of the compound tense form is retained, the perfect participle showing that the division was made in the past, and the *est* that it still exists. Translate by the present. **quarum**: §§ 47 and 136. The structure of the sentence is:

	<i>Object.</i>	<i>Verb.</i>	<i>Subject.</i>
quarum	unam (partem)	incolunt	Belgae
	aliam (")	(")	Aquitani
	tertiam (")	(")	(ei) qui—appellantur

2. **Belgae**: the Belgians were closely related to the Germans. **aliam**: *another, a second*, used instead of *alteram, the second*, because the

GIT

C

(1) No
(2) No pe
(3) No pe
(4) The f
book
a bod
prop

three parts are not enumerated in order; contrast l. 33. **Aquitani:** their descendants are the modern Basques in southwestern France, who are still very different from the people surrounding them, being short and thickset, dark-complexioned, and speaking an entirely different language. (ei) qui: § 129. ipsorum: § 132. lingua: § 82.

3. **Celtae:** sc. appellantur; for the case, see § 17. The Celts were to the Romans the typical Gauls; they were probably of mixed descent, but mainly of the division of the Aryan race known to us as Celtic, probably akin to the Irish. nostra: i.e. (sed) nostrā (linguā).

4. inter se: see vocabulary under inter. Aquitanis: § 65.

5. flumen: §§ 1 and 2. dividit: § 142. A portion of the boundary is omitted.

6. horum: §§ 47 and 52. propterea quod: see vocabulary and §§ 170 and 215, 1, b.

7. cultu, humanitate: *civilization, refinement*; the former refers to customs of life, the latter to the mental and moral condition of the people. provinciae: the sense shows this to be genitive singular; for the district thus named, see vocabulary and map.

8. minime, etc.: construe saepe with commeant, minime with both commeant and important; *least of all do traders (often resort) make frequent journeys back and forth to them and bring in*, etc. mercatores: nom. Traders and peddlers from Massilia (Marseilles) and northern Italy brought wine (their most attractive commodity) and other luxuries on pack mules or even on their own backs.

9. ad effeminandos animos; §§ 271 and 272. animos: *character*.

10. proximique sunt: i.e. et Belgae fortissimi sunt propterea quod proximi sunt. Germanis: § 33. quibuscum: § 90, note.

11. qua de causa: § 136. This refers to the reason just given for the bravery of the Belgians.

12. quoque: i.e. as well as the Belgians. virtute: § 82. quod contendunt: §§ 170 and 215, 1, b. This explains qua de causa more particularly.

13. proeliis: such border warfare as half-civilized people carry on. For the case, see § 72. cum prohibent: § 182. suis: § 125. This sentence shows that it is often necessary to translate pronouns by the nouns to which they refer; Latin has so many more pronouns than English that it can make clear distinctions with pronouns where we can not.

14. finibus: § 65. eos: §§ 121 and 129. ipsi: § 130. finibus: § 91. eorum: §§ 121 and 125.

15. *Eorum*: of all these, i.e. of the Gauls in general. *quam—est*:
 § 257. *Gallos*: i.e. the Gauls in the narrower sense (= *Celtas*).
 16. *initium capit*: see vocabulary under *capio*. *ab: at*; § 98.
 17. *ab*: see vocabulary.
 18. *vergit*: i.e. looking at the country from the Roman province.
 All the directions are from the same standpoint, e.g. *extremis*, l. 19,
spectant, l. 20, *spectat*, l. 23.
 21. *in—solem*: i.e. northeast.
 23. *ad: off* or *near*. *inter—septentriones*: i.e. in what direc-
 tion?

II. THE WAR WITH THE HELVETIANS.

CHAPTERS 2-29.

The Helvetians after three years of preparation were now on the move with all their possessions, bound for the western part of Gaul. Caesar hastened from Rome to Geneva and prepared to stop the Helvetian horde from entering the province. He had one legion and some hastily gathered recruits. He constructed fortifications between the Lake of Geneva and the Jura Mountain. By this means the march of the Helvetians was stopped, and they took the only other route available through the Jura by way of the Pas de l'Écluse, about 18 miles below Geneva.*

Caesar now returned to Cisalpine Gaul for more troops.

With five legions he hastened to Ocelum, the frontier town of Cisalpine Gaul, and thence by way of Mount Genève across the Alps. In seven days he made his way into the country of the Vocontii, thence into that of the Allobroges, and thence into the land of the Sequanians, which lay between the rivers Rhone and Saône (Arar). The precise route is uncertain, and is not essential. The Helvetians had already passed through the country of the Sequanians, and were in the land of the Aeduans. They now attempted to cross the Arar not far from the site of the modern city of Lyons. A part of the Helvetian forces, the Tigurini, had not yet crossed, and they were cut to pieces by Caesar. He now built a bridge and crossed the Arar in order to follow up the Helvetians. The route of the latter is uncertain, but Caesar says they moved about five miles ahead of his vanguard for a fort-

* The above and subsequent summaries are based mainly upon the conclusions of Mr. T. Rice Holmes, as stated in his lately published work, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*. London, 1899.

night, and remarks that they had moved away from the Arar. From his various statements, it seems that the general direction of the march was northwest. When Caesar had reached a point 18 miles from Bibracte (Mont Beuvray), he turned towards that place. In this neighborhood was fought the battle which settled the case of the Helvetians for all time. Just where this battle occurred is not certainly known, but it was less than 18 miles from Bibracte, and probably to the south of that town.

After the battle the survivors of the Helvetians fled into the territory of the Lingones, northeast of Bibracte. Caesar remained three days on the battlefield, and then started in pursuit. He had previously notified the Lingones that they should give no assistance to the fugitives, who, reduced to the utmost extremity, finally surrendered at discretion.

Movement of the Helvetians, stirred up by Orgetorix ; his secret plans and death.

CHAPTER 2.

Caesar's first operations in Gaul were directed towards preventing the Helvetians from leaving their territory and attempting a conquest of the other Gallic states. He gives the history of this movement, though its beginning was three years before he came to Gaul to prevent its execution.

Helvetia embraced in a general way the country now included within the limits of Switzerland, although it was somewhat smaller. The population, as stated by Caesar in Chapter 29, was 368,000.

26. **Orgetorix**: note the position, as the emphatic word of the sentence. **is**: § 122. **consulibus**: §§ 87 and 88; that is, the year 61 B.C. As the term of office of the consuls was one year, the Romans designated the year of any event by naming the consuls of that year. Educated Romans might be supposed to know the list of consuls as a matter of necessary general information, but undoubtedly this knowledge was often no more accurate than our knowledge of the presidents of the United States. **regni**: § 40.

27. **nobilitatis**: the political system of Helvetia was a confederacy of leaders, each of whom had a large body of retainers; thus it somewhat resembled the feudal system of later times; but the kings had nearly all been deposed, and these rough, strong, turbulent "nobles," or chiefs, held the power among themselves. **nobilitas, civitas, etc.**: such

words, originally abstract or collective in meaning, like English *nobility*, *state*, may often be better translated by concrete nouns like *nobles*, *citizens*. That the thought is plural in Latin is shown by *exirent*, following. *civitati*: § 23.

28. *ut exirent*: §§ 25 and 208. *de*: notice the use of *de* with *ex* in composition. *copiis*: *possessions*.

29. *esse*: §§ 227 and 236. *cum*: §§ 172, 228 and 239. *omnibus*: § 27.

30. *Galliae*: § 40. *imperio*: § 73. *potiri*: this is the subject accusative of *esse*, and *perfacile* agrees with it. *id*: §§ 12 and 25. *hoc*: § 84. *eis*: §§ 23 and 25.

31. *loci natura*: *by natural boundaries*. *continentur*: *are shut in*.

32. *parte*: see vocabulary. *flumine*: § 71. *Rheno*: §§ 1 and 2. *latissimo atque altissimo*: § 117. Caesar adds these adjectives after their noun, like a short parenthesis, for the benefit of his Roman readers, who knew little or nothing about the Rhine.

33. *parte*: see *parte*, l. 32.

34. *altissimo*: see note on l. 32. *tertia*: *sc. ex parte*.

36. *rebus*: § 84. *fiebat*: § 148. *ut vagarentur*: § 213. *et . . . et*: *both . . . and*.

37. *finitimis*: § 27.

38. *qua ex parte*: (from this side, i.e. of the matter), *for this reason*. *homines*: (*being*) *men*. *bellandi*: §§ 58 and 267. *cupidi*: agrees with *homines*. *afficiebantur*: § 148.

39. *pro*: *in proportion to*. *multitudo hominum*: (number of human beings), *population*. *gloria—fortitudinis*: (glory of war and bravery), *reputation for bravery in war*; §§ 280 and 40. *se habere*: (*that*) *they had*; §§ 228, 235 and 238. *angustos*: (*too*) *narrow*.

41. *milia*: § 14. *passuum*: § 47. The distance indicated by *mille passus* was about 4854 English feet; but it may be considered roughly as a mile and so translated. Helvetia then, according to these figures, was not far from the size of New York State, whose population in 1900 was over 7,000,000.

CHAPTER 3.

43. *rebus*: the word *res* does not mean *thing* in the sense of *any thing*, but always refers to some definite thing or circumstance previously mentioned. Here it refers to all the *considerations* mentioned in Chapter 2 which tended to cause the Helvetians to leave their country.

44. *proficiscendum*: § 267. *pertinerent*: § 229.

45. *quam*: see vocabulary, and § 117. *carrorum*: § 48. These were two-wheeled, drawn mostly by oxen. See the rear wagons in the following illustration.



BAGGAGE WAGONS.

48. *ad eas res conficiendas*: §§ 271 and 272.

49. *sibi*: § 28. *duxerunt*: see vocabulary. *in*: see vocabulary. *in annum tertium* means directly after the end of the two years' preparation; we might say, *at the beginning of the third year*.

50 *lege*: i.e. by a popular vote, by which the Gauls and Helvetians made their laws. *confirmant*: *establish, determine*; § 147.

51. *sibi*: § 27.

52 *Castico*: § 23. *filio, Sequano*: § 1.

53. *cuius—appellatus erat*: in order to get at the meaning of a complicated Latin sentence, the most important words to be considered are the connectives. Observe these words carefully and thus determine the dependence of clauses upon one another. Here the clause, *cuius—appellatus erat*, is parenthetical; in working out the sentence, omit it until the rest has been thoroughly grasped. Then go back and translate this clause; then read the entire sentence. *regnum*: *chief power*, not that of a king (see note on l. 27), but the authority of the most powerful chief in the state; compare *principatum*, below. *annos*: § 14.

54. *amicus*: § 17; the Romans sometimes gave this distinction to barbarian chiefs whose aid they wished to gain.

55. *ut occuparet*: with *persuadet*; §§ 25, 152 and 208. *quod*: relative.

56. *itemque*, etc.: the structure of this sentence is exactly like that of the preceding.

57. tempore: § 89.

58. plebi: § 33.

59. perfacile esse: cf. l. 30. factu: § 276. filiam dat: this was a common method of securing friendly relations, like intermarriage among the royal families of Europe to-day.

60. perficere: for construction, see portiri, l. 30. civitatis: § 40.

61. obtenturus esset: §§ 153, 228 and 277. esse quin: § 214.

62. Galliae: §§ 47 and 52. plurimum: see vocabulary and § 12. se conciliaturum: § 237. Note the very common omission of esse. copiis: § 71.

63. illis: § 19. regna: plural, because the Latin thinks of a regnum for each man; English uses the singular.

65. regno occupato: (the royal power having been seized), *after seizing the power in their respective states*; this modifies posse.

66. Galliae: § 73, note. sese: subject acc. of posse; there is no fut. infin. of possum, and posse here refers to the future; *they hope (hoped) that they will (would) be able*, etc.

CHAPTER 4.

67. res: here, *conspiracy*. moribus: § 86.

69. damnatum, etc.: poenam is subject acc. of sequi, and poenam sequi taken together is the subject of the impers. verb oportebat; for translation, see § 257. damnatum agrees with eum (Orgetorigem) understood, which is the object of sequi. damnatum literally means *having been condemned*, but is best translated freely, *if condemned*; § 264, 3. ut igni cremaretur explains poenam; § 213.

70. die—causae: (the day of the pleading of the case having been appointed), *on the day appointed for trying the case*. die, § 36. causae, § 40. ad iudicium: *at the place of trial*.

71. familiam: his clansmen and retinue of followers. ad: *to the number of*.

72. clientes: 'supporters,' a general term for those who followed his lead. obaeratos: men who had got into debt to him, who, according to the Gallic customs, had bound themselves over to his service (Book VI., Chapter 13).

73. eodem: adverb; so most demonstrative pronouns have a corresponding adverb, e.g. eo, illo. per eos: *through (the help of) these*. ne diceret: § 209.

74. Cum conaretur: *while the state was trying*; § 182.

75. *armis*: with *exsequi*; § 71. *multitudinem*—*cogerent*: the same as when we have the militia called out to enforce the law and preserve order.

77. *ut*: see vocabulary.

78. *quin*: § 214. *ipse*: § 133.

The Helvetians first attempt to march through the province, but afterward, being prevented from doing this by Caesar's fortifications, they start through the country of the Sequanians.

CHAPTER 5.

79. *nihilo*: see vocabulary and § 81. Although the scheme of Orgetorix had been shown to be one of personal ambition, its brilliancy had fascinated the Helvetians.

80. *ut*—*exeat*: explains *id quod (facere) constituerat*; (*namely*), *to go out*; § 208. *e*: compare with *de*, l. 28. *ubi arbitrati sunt*: § 176.

81. *se*—*esse*: § 228, etc.

82. *numero*: § 82. *ad*: *about*.

84. *quod*: *sc. id*, (that which), *what*; so often, when antecedent is omitted. *secum*: § 90, note. *portaturi erant*: § 277.

domum: § 95; it modifies *reditionis*, a verbal noun. This construction is contrary to the usage of the best Latin style; we should expect *redeundi*. *reditionis*: § 40. *spe*: § 87. *paratiores*: see vocabulary. *ad*—*subeunda*: §§ 271 and 272.

86. *mensium*: §§ 44 and 45. *molita cibaria*: as this must have been the chief article of food, an immense amount had to be carried in order to feed 368,000 persons; no wonder they had decided to obtain *iumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum* (l. 45). The length of the caravan has been variously estimated at from thirty to seventy miles. *sibi*: § 32.

87. *domo*: § 97. *Rauracis*: § 23.

88. *uti, . . . usi . . . oppidis suis . . . exustis, . . . profisciscantur*: (that they, having used . . . their towns . . . having been burned, should set out), *to adopt . . . burn their towns . . . and set out . . .* *una*: adverb.

89. *Boios receptos*—*asciscunt*: (they associate to themselves the Boii, having been received to themselves as allies), *they allow the Boii to join their movement and make them their allies*; but the Latin order may be retained thus: *and the Boii, who, etc. . . . , they allow to join their movement and make their allies.*

CHAPTER 6.

93. *erant: there were.* *duo itinera: one on each side the Rhone.*
quibus: § 135. *itineribus: when an antecedent is repeated*
after a relative adjective, omit it in translation. Here the repetition
seems to be for the sake of emphasis only.

94. *possent: § 168.* *unum: sc. iter.*

95. *vix—ducerentur: where carts could barely be drawn one at a time.*

97. *ut possent: §§ 165 and 167.* *alterum: sc. iter.*

98. *multo: § 81.*

100. *non nullis: some.* *locis: § 92.* *vado transitur:*
(is crossed by a ford), is fordable. The choice of routes here described
 was either to move down the right bank of the Rhone through the coun-
 try of the Sequanians, who were friendly, or to pass through the prov-
 ince of the Allobroges and thence into the Roman territory. About
 nineteen miles below Geneva by the former route they must pass
 through the narrow defile described in the text; the passage of this by
 so large a force was well-nigh impossible. *pacati erant: they had*
been annexed to the Roman province some time before, had re-
belled and again been subdued ("pacified," the Romans called it) in
61 B.C.

101. *proximum: (the one) nearest.* Note the order; Geneva is the
 key to the situation, hence its place at the end of the sentence. See
 l. 26.

102. *finibus: § 33.*

103. *Helvetios: compare this with finibus Helvetiorum above.* So
 the name of any tribe may be used for its territory; the repetition of
fines is thus avoided. *sese, etc.: § 228, etc.*

104. *animo: § 80.* *in: toward.* *viderentur: § 229.*

105. *ut—paterentur: this is the object of both persuasuros and*
coacturos; § 208.

107. *qua die: see quibus itineribus, l. 93 and § 163.*

108. *convenient: § 162.* *is dies: compare gender with l. 107,*
and see vocabulary. *a.d. etc.: § 108.*

109. *consulibus: see l. 26. Year 58 B.C.*

CHAPTER 7.

110. *cum esset: § 182.* *eos—conari: in apposition with id;*
conari is progressive, (in direct discourse conantur, they are trying), that
they were trying.

111. *urbe: the city*, i.e. Rome. Though appointed governor of Gaul at the close of his consulship two or three months before, Caesar had not yet gone to his province; on the other hand, he was not in Rome but in its vicinity, under the law that forbade any one holding military authority to be inside the gates.

112. *quam— itineribus*: (by the greatest marches that he is able to make), *with all possible speed*; § 71. We learn from Plutarch that he travelled 90 miles a day.

113. *ad Genavam*: § 95. *provinciae*: § 27. *quam—nume- rum*: see l. 112.

115. *una legio*: this was the famous *tenth legion* of the Roman "standing army"; *una* here has the force of *only one*.

116. *de: of*. *certiores facti sunt*: § 17.

117. *legatos*: § 2, note. *nobilissimos*: § 111.

119. *qui dicerent*: § 162. *sibi esse in animo*: see § 30.

120. *facere*: subject of *esse*.

121. *haberent*: §§ 229, 239 and 170. *rogare*: coördinate with *esse*; *that they asked*. *ut liceat*: see vocabulary under *licet*. *voluntate*: § 86.

122. *memoria*: see vocabulary and § 92.

123. *occisum*: 107 B.C. Supply *esse* and so with *pulsum*, *missum* and *concedendum*.

124. *concedendum*: § 277; sc. *sibi* (§ 31); for translation, see § 215, 1, a.

125. *neque existimabat*: *neither did he think (that men, etc.)*. *animo*: § 80. *data facultate*: § 264, 3.

126. *faciundi*: old form for *faciendi*; § 267.

128. *dum convenirent*: § 180.

129. *diem*: see vocabulary. *quid*: § 139. *vellent*: § 242, 1.

130. *reverterentur*: § 245.

CHAPTER 8.

131. *legione*: § 71.

134. *milia*: § 14. *milia—novem* is best translated after *murum fossamque*,—(both) *nineteen miles long*. This wall and ditch formed a rampart on the south side of the Rhone. A great part of the distance was occupied by steep cliffs, and it was necessary to construct the artificial defences only where the natural failed. The undertaking was not so formidable as might appear from a mere statement of height and distance.

135. *pedum*: § 45.

136. *disponit, communit*: the omission of the conjunction (*asyndeton*) indicates the haste of the action.

137. *quo—posset*: § 160. *si conarentur*: § 242, 5.

139. *negat*: see vocabulary. *more*: § 86.

141. *facere*: see vocabulary.

142. *spe*: figurative use of the abl. of separation; § 65. *deiecti*: see vocabulary.

navibus—factis: (boats having been joined and many rafts having been made), (*some*) *by bridges of boats and numerous rafts that they had made*; ablative absolute.

143. *alii*: § 4.

145. *conati si—possent, repulsi, destiterunt*: (having tried . . ., if they were able, having been repulsed, desisted), *tried (to see) if they could, etc.; (but) being repulsed, they gave up.* *si possent*: § 243, note.

munitione: see vocabulary.

146. *concursum*: (running together), *charges.* *telis*: *weapons (showered upon them).* *conatu*: § 65.

CHAPTER 9.

147. *Relinquebatur*: (was left), *there remained.* *una*: *only.*

148. *angustias*: see ll. 94–97. *cum*: § 172.

150. *eo*: i.e. *Dumnorix*; § 88. *a Sequanis*: § 67.

151. *gratia*: § 84.

153. *Orgetorigis—duxerat*: see l. 59. *cupiditate regni adductus*: almost the same phrase used to describe *Orgetorigis*, l. 26. They were evidently “kindred spirits.”

154. *novis*: see vocabulary. *rebus*: § 23. *quam*: see vocabulary and § 117.

155. *habere obstrictas*: a case of the so-called “maintenance of the result,”—(*to bind and*) *keep bound.*

156. *ut—patiantur*: obj. of *impetravit*.

157. *obsides*: object of *dent*. When an agreement was made by a tribe, certain members were often put into the hands of the other party to the agreement, as a pledge of good faith. This was the only form of security known among barbarous tribes; the idea was, that the friends of these hostages would use their influence to have the tribe keep the agreement. Now national honor takes the place of such security. *inter*: see vocabulary.

158. *Sequani*: sc. as *predicate obsides dent*, (give hostages), *promise*; so after *Helvetii.* *ne—prohibeant, ut transeant*: § 208.

CHAPTER 10.

160. *Helvetiis*—*animo*: see l. 119. *per agrum*, etc.: trace this intended route on the map; it was not the most direct way, but probably the easiest on account of the topography of the country.

162. *non longe*, etc.: note on map the position of the *Santones* and *Tolosates*; the distance between them

was about a hundred miles. This then does not appear to be sufficient excuse for Caesar's interference. But the *Helvetian* migration would undoubtedly have been the starting point for another general movement of the German tribes such as had occurred when Rome was sacked, 390 B.C., and such as had been narrowly averted by Marius fifty years before, when he crushed the *Cimbri* and *Teutones*. On this ground Caesar was justified in interfering. *quae civitas*: § 135.

163. *si fieret*, *futurum (esse)*: § 242, 5.

164. *magno*—*provinciae*: (with great danger of the province), *very dangerous to the province*; §§ 76 and 40. *ut haberet*: this clause is the subject of *futurum (esse)*; the subject of *haberet* is *provincia*. Translate, *that it should have, or, to have*.

165. *locis*—*frumentariis*: § 92; translate exactly in the Latin order (except *-que*, of course).

166. *finitimos*: (*as*) *neighbors*; § 2, note. *munitioni*, *Labienum*: § 27; see also vocabulary, *Labienus*.

168. *Italiam*: Caesar speaks of Italy here as including *Cisalpine Gaul* (i.e. Gaul south of the Alps). As a matter of fact, however, all Italy north of the *Rubicon* was embraced in Caesar's province of Gaul. *magnis itineribus*: *forced marches*, usually 25 or 30 miles, but perhaps longer here, because he probably took only a small force with him as a body guard, and went through a friendly country. *duas legiones*: the eleventh and twelfth.



LEGIONARY SOLDIER.

169. tres: the seventh, eighth and ninth. hiemabant: § 148.

171. quinque legionibus: as one legion was already near Geneva, Caesar's army now consisted of six legions, or about 22,000 men, together with the troops, probably cavalry, ordered from the province, as told in Chapter 6. The number of the latter is uncertain.

172. locis, etc.: these Alpine tribes, hearing of Caesar's approach, seized elevated positions along the road and tried to prevent him from passing; either because they thought he intended to annex their territory to the province, or because they sympathized with the Helvetians and thought they could help them by delaying Caesar or perhaps forcing him to turn back.

173. itinere: see vocabulary under prohibeo.

174. his pulsus: § 87. compluribus proeliis: § 72. This "interlocked" order seems very peculiar to us here, where the terminations which usually make Latin agreements clear are of no assistance and the sense alone shows the agreement.

175. extremum: sc. oppidum; extremum means *last*, in the sense of *most western*, the farthest from Rome. After leaving this town, Caesar passed over the Alps by the pass of Mount Genève, through the territory of two tribes of the western province, and moved on in pursuit of the Helvetians, who had gone something less than a hundred miles on their way. ulterioris provinciae: § 46; (*a tribe*) of the further province.

176. die septimo: i.e. *in six days*; § 104. When the Romans measured intervals of time, they included the day on which they started. The French do the same; they would call Wednesday the third day after Monday. In English the usage varies.

177. Allobrogibus: contrast with fines Allobrogum above, and see note on l. 103.

Complaints of the Gauls about the depredations of the Helvetians.

CHAPTER 11.

179. angustias: see l. 95 and l. 148.

181. Aedui: the Aeduans, it appears, had previously been recognized as allies of Rome, having been styled by the senate "brothers and kinsmen"; see ll. 670-675, 864-869. populabantur: contrast with the previous tense used and see § 148.

183. rogatum: §§ 274 and 275. ita se, etc.: (*saying that*) they had so well, etc., §§ 227 and 228, etc. omni tempore. (every time), on every occasion. de: of.

185. *vastari, abduci*: complementary infinitives with *non debuerint*. In cases where words are expressed with one phrase and understood with others, English usually expresses them with the first, Latin with the last.

188. *depopulatis*: § 362. *non facile*: (not easily), i.e. *with difficulty*. This is *litotes*, the use of a negative for a strong affirmative, or an expression by which more is meant than meets the ear. *ab—prohibere*: (they were keeping the force of the enemy from their towns), *they were defending their towns from the attacks of the enemy*. Note that in l. 158 *prohibere* has no *ab*; §§ 65 and 66.

191. *sibi*: § 30. *agri*: § 47.

192. *reliqui*: § 49. *expectandum sibi (esse)*: §§ 31 and 278.

194. *pervenirent*: *should arrive*, or, less carefully in ordinary English, *arrived*; § 180. Caesar now finds a more immediate reason for attacking the Helvetians than the one mentioned in Chapter 10.

The slaughter of the Tigurini.

CHAPTER 12.

195. *flumen est Arar*: *there is a river (called) the Arar* (now the Saône).

196. *incredibili lenitate ita ut*: (of incredible smoothness, so that), *so very slowly that*; §§ 80 and 165.

197. *fluat*: § 243. *id*: emphatic, *this*; keep the same order in translating.

198. *ratibus, lintribus*: abl. of means, not abl. absolute; *iunctis* is used merely as an adjective modifying *lintribus*, (boats joined), *bridges of boats*. These were all rude affairs, which they either found there, intended for light weights, or built hastily on the spot.

199. *tres partes*: *three fourths*, the regular way of expressing such a fraction.

200. *flumen*: § 11.

201. *reliquam, de*: see vocabulary. *vigilia*: the night was divided into four equal *watches*. Hence the length of a watch would vary with the season, but the third would always begin at midnight. Since the time was now midsummer, the first watch would end at about 2 A.M.

205. *in*: see vocabulary under *abdo*; also § 94.

208. *domo*: § 96. *memoria*: § 89.

211. *quae pars, ea*: (which part, this), *that part which, this*; *pars*, the antecedent, is attracted into the subordinate clause, and the relative is used adjectively; § 135.

212. *principes*: *was the first to*, etc.; § 115.

213. *re*: *affair*. *privatas*: notice how very *personal* it turns out to be!

214. *quod*, etc.: order, *quod Tigurini eodem proelio quo (interfece- rant) Cassium, interfecerant L. Pisonem legatum, avum eius (i.e. Cae- sari) soceri*. Piso's daughter Calpurnia was Caesar's fourth wife.

The Helvetians treat with Caesar through ambassadors.

CHAPTER 13.

218. *faciendum*: see §§ 269 and 270.

220. *cum*, etc.: the construction is: *cum intellegerent, illum . . . fecisse id, that he had done . . . that*, which is explained by *quod— confecerant*, and *ut flumen transirent, (namely), cross the river*.

223. *bello Cassiano*: see l. 122. This was 107 B.C., so Divico must have been a man of great age. From the standpoint of the Helvetians he was just the man to head the embassy.

224. *egit*: see vocabulary.

Here begins the first long speech in the indirect discourse. The direct discourse is given below. See first that you understand about direct and indirect discourse in English, as explained in §§ 217–226. Study the words that are changed and get the reasons for each change from §§ 227–246; these sections should all be read over, and then the special references looked up.

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet (§§ 228 and 242, 5), in eam partem ibunt (§§ 228 and 237) atque ibi erunt (like ibunt) Helvetii (§§ 222 and 237), ubi eos tu (§§ 222, 232 and 233) constitueris (fut. perf. indic., see §§ 239, 200, 203 and 153) atque esse volueris (like constitueris): sin bello persequi perseverabis (like faciet), reminiscere (§§ 228 and 245) et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improvise unum pagum adortus es (§§ 228, 239 and 215, 3), cum ei qui flumen transierant (§§ 239 and 153), possent (§ 182), noli (§ 347, note) ob eam rem aut tuae (§ 222) magnopere virtuti tribuere (§ 347, note) aut nos (§ 222) despicere (like tribuere): nos (§ 322) ita a patribus maioribusque nostris (like nos) didicimus (§237), ut magis virtute contendamus (§§ 239 and 208) quam dolo aut insidiis nitamur (like contendamus). Qua re noli committere (like noli tribuere) ut hic locus ubi constitimus (like constitueris, except for tense) ex calamitate populi Romani et internecone exercitus nomen capiat (like contendamus) aut memoriam prodant (like capiat).

224. *si faceret, ituros, futuros (esse):* § 242, 5.
 225. *partem:* sc. Galliae. *futuros:* (be), *remain.*
 226. *ubi—voluisset:* explains *eam partem* (Galliae) and *ibi*. *ubi*, being relative, is correlative to a form of *is* as well as to *ibi*. *constituisset:* (should have decided), *should decide*; so *voluisset*. English rarely uses the future perfect or its representatives.
 227. *perseveraret:* § 242, 5. *reminisceretur:* §§ 226 and 245.
 228. *incommodi, virtutis:* § 59. This refers to the defeat of Cassius; see l. 123.
 229. *quod:* § 215, 3.
 231. *ne tribueret:* § 245.
 232. *patribus:* § 67.
 233. *magis:* see vocabulary and translate after *contenderent virtute:* § 71. *contenderent, niterentur:* § 156. *dolo:* § 72.
 234. *ne committeret:* like *ne tribueret*, l. 231.
 236. *memoriam proderet:* i.e. to future generations.

CHAPTER 14.

The direct discourse of this chapter is given without references. The student may now find for himself the reasons for the changes.

Hoc mihi minus dubitationis datur quod eas res quas vos, legati Helvetii, commemorastis, memoria teneo atque hoc gravius fero quo minus merito populi Romani acciderunt; qui si alicuius iniuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuit difficile cavere; sed eo deceptus est quod neque commissum a se intellegebat quare timeret neque sine causa timendum putabat. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci volo, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod me invito iter per provinciam per vim temptastis, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexastis, memoriam deponere possum? Quod vestra victoria tam insolenter gloriamini, quodque tam diu vos impune tulisse iniurias admiramini eodem pertinet. Consueverunt enim di immortales quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci volunt, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum haec ita sint, tamen si obsides a vobis mihi dabuntur, uti ea, quae pollicemini, facturos intellegam et si Aeduis de iniuriis quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulistis, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciatis, ego vobiscum pacem faciam.

237. *eo:* on this account, for this reason; § 84. *minus:* § 111.
dubitationis: § 49.

239. *eo—minus: sc. se* as subject: (he bore them the more heavily by this, by which the less), *he was the more displeased, the less*, etc. *merito populi Romani*: (by the merit of the Roman people), *deservedly to the Roman people*. The mention by the Helvetian ambassadors of the defeat of Cassius made him grow more and more angry, the more he thought how little the Romans had deserved such a defeat. He could not allow himself to hesitate in the present matter, because this old disaster demanded revenge, and he considered that he was the man and here was the opportunity to inflict it.

240. *qui si*, etc.: he goes on to explain how this defeat had happened, how treacherously they had attacked Cassius. *qui, sibi, conscius, fuisset, deceptum, se, intellegeret, timeret, putaret*, all refer to *populus Romanus*, and so, though singular in Latin, they are all translated plural: e.g. *qui si, if they*. *sibi*: (to themselves); omit.

241. *fuisse: it would have been*. This would be *fuit* in direct discourse; § 192, note. *eo quod*: ll. 237, 238.

242. *commissum (esse)*: impersonal; (*that*) (*anything*) *had been done*. *qua re timeret*: (on account of which thing they should fear), *to make them afraid (of being attacked)*; § 163.

243. *timendum (sibi esse)*: (that it ought to be feared by them), *that they ought to fear*. Caesar says that the army of Cassius was taken off its guard because they thought the Helvetians had no reason for attacking them, and they didn't think it necessary to keep guard and be ready for battle unless they expected an attack. "A poor excuse is better than none." *quod*: see vocabulary. *vellet*: the subject here changes to Caesar. *num*: see vocabulary. *posse*: § 246.

244. *contumeliae*: § 59.

245. *iniuriarum*: objective genitive with *memoriam*. *quod*: § 215, 2, a. *eo: se* would have been more natural, as referring to Caesar, but *eo* leaves no ambiguity.

246. *Allobrogas*: for ending, see vocabulary.

247. *quod—gloriarentur, quod—admirarentur*: the use of *quod* is the same as in l. 245; the two clauses are subjects accusative of *pertinere*. These were just two more facts pointing to the vengeance that was coming.

250. *Consuesse*, etc.: Caesar implies that he is the instrument of the gods sent to punish the Helvetians for their sins. He says that punishment comes harder on men if it is delayed, because they have concluded

that it is not coming at all. From what we know of Caesar's character, it is hard to believe that this reference to a divine government of the fortunes of men was sincere. quo—doleant: § 160; do not translate this clause until after the rest. ex: as a result of.

251. quos, etc.: translate his immediately after concedere, then quos—velint, then the accusatives, finally quo—doleant.

253. cum sint: §§ 197 and 199. si dentur: § 242, 5. Divico had at first (l. 223–225) spoken of coming to terms, but had gone on from that to making threats as to what would happen if Caesar did not meet him halfway. Caesar first replies to his threats, and then offers terms which the Helvetians could not help thinking insulting, though he really could not afford to offer anything less. It was an encounter between a free, unconquered people and a man who would not yield an inch, both looking for the sovereignty of Gaul. The Gauls would despise whichever gave way: one or the other must be destroyed.

254. facturos (esse): sc. eos (Helvetios) as subject accusative.

255. Aeduis: sc. satis faciant; § 23.

257. a maioribus: compare the similar phrase in ll. 232, 233.

259. consuerint: = consueverint.

Caesar's cavalry routed by the Helvetians. March of each army.

CHAPTER 15.

261. loco: this was just across the Saône. See Chapter 12.

264. coactum habebat: § 266. qui videant: § 162; plural, because the antecedent, equitatum, is collective. partes: see vocabulary.

265. faciant: § 243. qui: § 136. cupidius: too eagerly; § 116.

266. loco: § 92.

267. de nostris: § 53.

268. equitibus: note the use of persons as means; see § 71 and compare militibus, l. 231.

269. non numquam et: (and) sometimes even, modifying lacesse.

270. agmine: § 92. proelio: § 72.

271. satis: see vocabulary.

272. rapinis: § 65.

273. dies: § 14. prohibere: subject accusative of (esse), satis being a predicate adjective.

274. ita uti interesset: §§ 165 and 166.

275. amplius: § 111. milibus: § 69.

Caesar's conference with the Aeduan leaders Liscus and Diviciacus as to the condition of their state and the treachery of Dumnorix.

CHAPTER 16.

277. *Caesar flagitare*: § 258. *Aeduos frumentum*: § 15. *quod*: relative.

278. *essent*: § 229.

280. *frumenta*: see vocabulary, and contrast with *frumentum* and *pabulum*. *matura*: it was now probably well along in June.

283. *frumento*: § 73. *flumine*: § 72. *navibus*: § 71.

284. *a quibus = et ab eis*: § 201. *diem ex die*: see vocabulary *ducere*: § 258, and see vocabulary.

285. *dicere*: historical infin., like *ducere* above; the other infinitives are ind. dis., with subj. acc. *frumentum* and conjunction omitted, as we might say hastily, "Said 't was being collected, brought to one spot, was right near." This historical infinitive generally occurs in groups, and *flagitare*, l. 277, is only an apparent exception, because what *intervenies* is parenthetical. *diutius*: too long; § 116.

287. *metiri*: a legionary soldier had four bushels of corn a month, a cavalryman twelve bushels of corn and forty-two bushels of barley. *oporteret*: § 228. *convocatis principibus, accusat*: (the chiefs having been called together, he blames them), *he calls together the chiefs and blames them*. After this long, loose sentence has been mastered as a whole, it should be broken into three parts. Translate *convocatis* by a main verb, as suggested above. Then make another sentence of *in his—potestatem*: among these (were), etc. Then the remainder—*these chiefs he blames*, etc.

288. *copiam*: number. *in*: among. *Diviciaco, Lisco*: § 4.

289. *magistratui praeerat*: held the office; § 27.

290. *annuus*: § 114.

291. *in suos*: over his (countrymen).

292. *possit*: sc. *frumentum* as subject.

293. *tempore, hostibus*: § 88; (the time so critical, the enemy so near), at so critical a time, with the enemy so near.

294. *ex in*. *cum susceperit*: § 172. *quod sit destitutus*: that, as he said, he was deserted (by them); §§ 170 and 215, 2, a.

CHAPTER 17.

297. *quod*: see l. 84.

298. *esse*: the indirect discourse is in apposition with (id) *quod tacuerat*; that there were some, etc.

299. *plurimum valeat*: see vocabulary under *valeo*, and § 13. *plus possint*: *were more powerful*; § 13. This state of affairs exists as much to-day as it did then. Almost any community can show a politician or a man of great wealth who by his influence can nullify a law.

301. *ne conferant*: § 209.

302. *praestare*: for impersonal *praestat* (see vocabulary) in direct discourse; (*saying that*) *it was better*. *si possint*; § 242, 1.

304. *debere*: sc. *multitudinem* as subject; *and that they ought not*. *quin sint*: §§ 214 and 277. *si superaverint*: § 242, 5.

305. *una*: adverb. *Aeduis*: § 29.

306. *sint erepturi*: § 277. *quaeque*: = *et quae*; see l. 84.

308. *quin etiam*: see vocabulary. *quod*: § 215, 3. *coactus*: see vocabulary.

309. *id fecerit*: i.e. had made the statement; the antecedent of *id* is the thought of clause *quod—enuntiavit*; for the mood of *fecerit*, see § 243.

310. *potuerit*: § 228.

CHAPTER 18.

314. *ex solo quaerit*: sc. *eo*, *he asks from him alone about*; § 8.

316. *vera*: agrees with *ea* understood, from *eadem*, whose antecedent is *ea*, l. 314. *ipsum*: *the very one*.

317. *summa audacia*: (*a man*) *of the greatest boldness*; § 80; so *magna gratia*.

318. *rerum novarum*: see vocabulary under *novus*, and § 58.

319. *pretio*: § 75.

320. *redempta habere*: § 266. It was a common practice in those days for a government to get its revenue by selling the right to collect taxes to the highest bidder. Then, armed with the authority of the state, this man collected all the money he could and pocketed the difference between what he got and what he had bid. This process is known as *farming the revenues*. Tax collectors are never very popular, and since under this system they usually resorted to every means of extorting money, they were always the most hated and dreaded class of people. Such were the publicans mentioned in the Bible. *illo licente*: (*he bidding*), *when he bid*. *contra*: *against (him)*. It was not safe to oppose Dumnorix.

321. *his rebus*: *by these means*. *auxisse*: *augeo* is transitive; so *familiam* is object, and *se*, understood, the subject.

323. *suo sumptu*: § 72.

324. domi: § 93. apud civitates: § 101.
 325. huius potentiae: of (increasing) this power. causa: see vocabulary and § 84.
 326. in: among; order, homini in Biturigibus nobilissimo ac potentissimo illic.
 328. nuptum: § 275; together with collocasse, here it has the same force as collocasse alone, l. 327.
 329. Helvetiis: § 23.
 332. gratiae: § 36.
 333. si quid accidat: §§ 139 and 242, 5; we use exactly the same indefinite expression; it means here, *if any disaster should occur*. spem: see vocabulary.
 334. imperio: under the government; § 89.
 336. quod proelium: (in regard to what battle), in regard to the (adversum equestre) battle which. ante: adverb. diebus: §§ 81, 107.
 339. equitatui: § 27. auxilio Caesari: § 32.

CHAPTER 19.

343. accederent: see vocabulary and § 172. quod traduxisset: § 215, 2, b.
 344. dandos: § 270.
 345. et: connecting a possessive pronoun and a genitive (i.e. possessive) case. So this is only an apparent, not a real, exception to the rule that coordinate conjunctions connect like constructions.
 346. ipsis: refers to suo et civitatis, Caesar and the Aeduans.
 347. qua re—iuberet: § 243.
 349. rebus: § 23. quod—cognoverat: § 115, 2, b.
 350. Diviciaci—studium: §§ 39, 41. fratris: § 1. ne offenderet: § 211.
 352. eius supplicio: (by the punishment of him), by punishing Dumnorix; § 40.
 353. animum: feelings. itaque, etc.: this incident shows Caesar's statecraft. As a deliberate policy, he never offended any one unnecessarily, though never hesitating to do so when there was no other way. Here the situation was critical. If the Aeduans were alienated, he would be forced out of the country for lack of a base of supplies. So he made his interests coincide with those of the better class of Aeduans, and held them loyal to him for six years.
 354. conaretur: § 181.

357. cui: *in whom*; §§ 23, 24. omnium rerum: *in all matters*.
 358. ipso: i.e. Diviciacus. quae dicta sint: § 243.
 360. apud se: *before him* (Caesar).
 361. ut ipse statuatur: (that he himself may take measures), *that he*
 (Caesar) *be allowed to take measures*; § 208. sine—animi: (without
 hurting his feelings), *but in such manner as not to hurt his feelings*;
 § 40.
 362. causa cognita: (the case having been ascertained), *after investi-*
gating the case.

CHAPTER 20.

363. multis cum lacrimis: modifies obsecrare. complexus: § 261.
 364. in: *against*. ne—statueret: see vocabulary and § 139.
 365. illa: *those (charges)*, referring to the matters mentioned in ll.
 358–360. scire se: § 227; (*saying that*) *he knew (that)*, etc. eo:
that fact. plus doloris capere: (took more of grief), *was more*
grieved; §§ 47, 49 and 111. Note carefully the use of pronouns in this
 passage, and in translation use names of persons referred to whenever
 the meaning of the translation would be obscure without them.
 366. cum ipse plurimum (posset et) ille minimum posset, per se cre-
 visset: *when he* (Diviciacus) *was very powerful and Dumnorix had very*
little power, the latter had increased (his power) at his expense.
 368. opibus: *power*.
 370. fraterno: = fratris, objective genitive. suam: this refers
 to Diviciacus, and is understood with gratiam. uteretur: coördi-
 nate with crevisset; this might have been considered a main clause,
 and the infinitive used.
 371. si accidisset: see § 242, 5 or 6. a: *at the hands of*.
 existimatione vulgi: (the thought of the common people), *public opinion*.
 373. apud: *with*. neminem existimaturum (esse) non factum
 (esse): *no one would think that it had not happened, i.e. every one would*
think that it had happened.
 374. futurum (esse): *it would (be) happen*.
 377. faciat: § 212. tanti: § 62.
 378. rei publicae: § 40.
 379. condonet: §§ 165 and 166. The dative accompanying this verb
 is the indirect object, due to the original meaning *present*; when not a
 person, use *at* in translating; otherwise, as below, *for the sake of*.
 380. quae: interrogative, and so below.
 381. quae queratur; § 8.

Caesar's plan is foiled by the mistake of Publius Considius.

CHAPTER 21.

386. *hostes consedisso*: indirect discourse after *certior factus*.

387. *milia*: § 99.

388. *qui*: antecedent omitted because indefinite,—(*men*) *who*; the indefiniteness is kept by translating by the infinitive, *he sent to ascertain*; §§ 162 and 164. *facilem*: agrees with (*ascensum*), subject of *esse*.

390. *legatum pro praetore*: a lieutenant acting temporarily as commander. This was a special designation for Labienus, as second in command.

391. *iis ducibus qui*: (*as*) *guides, those who*.

393. *consili*: § 46.

394. *quo*: *by which*; §§ 71 and 72.

395. *rei*: § 58.

CHAPTER 22.

398. *luce*: § 104. *summus*: § 113.

399. *ipse*: (*and when*) *he himself*.

400. *passibus*: § 103. *neque . . . aut . . . aut*: *and neither . . . nor*.

404. *Gallicis*: i.e. *Helvetian*. Caesar concluded from this information that Labienus had been repulsed in his attempt to seize the hill, that perhaps his force had been overwhelmed, and that he himself with diminished forces might be attacked at once.

406. *erat ei praeceptum*: (it had been commanded him), *he had been commanded*; § 27. The subject is *ne—committeret*, a substantive clause of purpose (§ 208), while it is modified by *ut—fieret*, an adverbial clause of purpose (§ 157).

407. *nisi visae essent*: § 242, 5.

409. *expectabat, abstinebat*: translate accurately; § 148.

410. *multo die*: see vocabulary and § 113. *et . . . et . . . et*: omit the first in translation; the English *both* implies only two statements. Notice the effect of leisurely progress here as compared with the hurried report of Considius above.

412. *quod*: see l. 84. *vidisset*: § 168. *pro viso*: (for seen), *as a fact*.

413. *quo—intervallo*: (at the interval at which he had become accustomed), *at the usual interval*. Caesar now resumes the pursuit, looking for another opportunity to attack the Helvetians.

The slaughter of the Helvetians, their flight and return to their own country.

CHAPTER 23.

416. diei: § 56. omnino: (in all), only.

417. cum: before. oporteret: § 182

419. milibus: § 103. rei: § 23.

420. prospiciendum (sibi esse): (that it ought to be looked out for by him), *that he ought to look out for*; §§ 31 and 278. His conference with Liscus and Diviciacus had not yet had the effect of securing grain.

421. Bibracte: § 94.

422. Aemilii: i.e. who belonged to the troop of Aemilius; hence the genitive (§ 37).

423. seu quod existimarent—sive eo: *either because they thought* (§ 171) —or on this account, explained by quod—confident. timore perterritos: (having been terrified by fear), *because they* (the Romans) *were afraid of them.*

424. eo magis—commisissent: this is a parenthesis, explaining that the Helvetii thought that the Romans were afraid of them (timore perterritos), not only on general principles, but especially on account of their curious movements the day before; translate, *and still more for this reason, because, etc.*; § 170. superioribus locis occupatis: ablative absolute, *although they had seized, etc.*; § 264, 4.

427. commutato, converso: translate as finite verbs,—*changed their plan, reversed their direction, and, etc.* The Helvetians would have done better to go about their business; they could then have got a long distance ahead; but they could not resist the opportunity of turning on the man who had caused them so much trouble and the loss of one-fourth of their number.

CHAPTER 24.

429. id animum advertit: § 11.

430. qui sustineret: §§ 162 and 163.

431. medio: see vocabulary and § 113.

432. triplicem aciem: see introduction. legionum: § 36.

433. [ita uti supra]: these words do not make sense and probably got into the manuscript by mistake; omit in translating.

435. ac: *and (in this way).*

436. eum: sc. locum.

439. acie: § 78. reiecto . . . facta: *having driven back . . . (and)*

having formed ; the cavalry were generally used in such cases to check the advance of the enemy until the legions were ready for battle.

440. sub: see vocabulary.

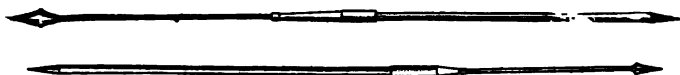
CHAPTER 25.

442. suo: sc. equo remoto. omnium: i.e. of all his staff officers.

443. aequato periculo: (the danger having been made equal), *by making the danger equal*.

444. cohortatus: a Roman army always expected a few words of encouragement before going into battle. e loco: limits missis.

445. pilis missis: § 264. The position of advantage in the ancient style of fighting was of course the higher ground.



PILA.

447. ad pugnam: *in fighting*. impedimento: § 32.

448. quod: § 215, 2, a. scutis transfixis et colligatis: ablative absolute ; translate as coördinate with poterant,—*their shields would be pierced and pinned together, and, cum ferrum, etc.*

449. se inflexisset: (had bent itself), *bent*. The tip of the Roman spear was of hardened iron, but the shank was of soft iron, and the weight of the long wooden shaft caused the shank to bend.

451. ut: translate before multi. iactato: as the shields overlapped one another and the Roman javelins had pierced several, there was no freedom of motion for the soldiers holding the shields, but they were pulled about by every movement of the phalanx.

454. spatio: § 81. eo: adverb. capto, succedentibus: notice the change of tense and voice;—*when they had gained the mountain and our men were coming up*.

456. milibus: § 71.

457. praesidio: § 32; see impedimento, l. 447, and vocabulary.

latere aperto: this means the right flank, because the shield was carried on the left arm. Hence the right was the post of honor in battle.

458. circumvenire: sc. coeperunt from l. 460; in military language, they tried to turn the right flank of the Romans.

460. conversa, etc.: see vocabulary. The first and second lines kept



GLADIUS.

the same front, while the third wheeled and faced the oncoming Boii and Tulingi.

461. *victis ac submotis*: see §§ 23 and 111; (*those who had once been conquered and driven back*, i.e. the Helvetians).

462. *venientes*: (*those who were*) *coming*, i.e. the Boii and Tulingi.

CHAPTER 26.

463. *pugnatum est*: § 144, 2.

465. *alteri... alteri*: i.e. the Helvetians—the Boii and Tulingi; see vocabulary.

467. *proelio*: § 92. *cum pugnatum sit*: §§ 199 and 144, 2.

469. *pro vallo*: *as a barricade*.

470. *in*: *upon*. *venientes*: (*coming*), *as they came up*.

471. *coniciebant*: notice the change of tense, and see § 148. Perhaps the most common error in translating arises from a lack of care in observing these things. The Latin is very exact in its use of tenses,—much more so than English.

473. *impedimentis castrisque*: § 73.

474. *e filiis*: § 53. *captus est*: not the usual form of agreement; § 110.

476. *nocte*: it is impossible to draw a distinct line between the three expressions of time, see §§ 104, 105 and 106; this seems like duration of time, but the Latin might regard it as answering the question, *When?* This is regularly the case when *totus* is employed.

477. *partem*: § 106; contrast with *nocte* above.

479. *occisorum*: (*of the having-been-slain*), *of the dead*. *triduum morati*: this statement, together with the reasons assigned for the delay, shows that the Romans were pretty severely handled in the battle.

481. *alia*: see vocabulary. *ne iuvarent*: § 208; *not to help*. *qui si iuissent*: §§ 227 and 242, 5; (*saying that*) *if they did help them*.

482. *loco quo Helvetios (haberet) habiturum*: (*he would hold them in the place in which he held the Helvetians*), *he would treat them like the Helvetians*.

CHAPTER 27.

485. *rerum*: § 40.

486. *qui cum*: *when they*.

488. *iussisset*: supply *Caesar* as subject.

489. *essent*: § 203.

491. perfugissent: § 168.

492. conquiruntur: § 178.

494. perterriti: agrees with milia in number and case, but takes its gender from hominum, which is here the real but not the grammatical gender of milia. ne—afficerentur: in apposition with timore, which takes the construction of a verb of fearing; § 211.

496. occultari: i.e. from Caesar.

497. prima: § 113. existimarent: § 171.

CHAPTER 28.

499. quod: *this*. quorum: antecedent his.

500. his: § 27. uti—reducerent: §§ 25 and 208. sibi: (with reference to him), *in his sight*; § 28.

501. reductos habuit: (he held them, having been brought back), *when they were brought back, he considered them*. in numero hostium: see vocabulary under numerus; this is a grim way of implying that they were all put to death; they had broken the terms of surrender, and Caesar wished to make an example immediately of men who did not keep their word with him.

504. suos: by emphasis here referring to Helvetios, etc., instead of to Caesar; § 123.

505. quo tolerarent: § 168.

506. Allobrogibus: § 23. ut facerent: §§ 25 and 208; *to furnish*.

509. ne: § 159.

512. provinciae: § 33. Boios: object of collocarent. petentibus Aeduis: (the Aeduans seeking), *at the request of the Aeduans*.

513. virtute: § 84.

516. atque—erant: = atque erat condicio in quâ ipsi erant, *as was the condition in which*, etc. Adjectives of similarity are followed often by atque for quam.

CHAPTER 29.

517. litteris Graecis: not in the Greek *language*, but merely using the Greek characters and numeral signs; perhaps they had become acquainted with them through traders from Marseilles, originally a Greek colony. The Greek system of numerals was easier to handle than the Roman.

518. relatae: sc. sunt.

519. qui: interrogative adjective, *what*.

520. exisset: § 243. possent: § 168.

522. *capitum*: omit; we use the expression, "so many head," of cattle, but we do not apply it to human beings.

The figures in this last chapter tell the story of the campaign so plainly that no comment is required.

III. THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS.

CHAPTERS 30-54.

The assembled Gallic chieftains congratulated Caesar on his victory, and besought him to assist them against the inroads of Ariovistus, a German prince who had settled with his followers on this side of the Rhine. Caesar assented, and after fruitless negotiations took the field. Hearing that Ariovistus was advancing towards Vesontio (Besançon), a Sequanian town about 110 miles from his camp, in the country of the Lingones, Caesar hastened forward by forced marches and occupied this town.

He remained a few days in the neighborhood and then started out to find Ariovistus. He tells us that he reached his final camping-ground on the seventh day.

Where was Ariovistus? Apparently he had annexed to his German dominions the northern part (third) of the Sequanian territory, the modern Alsace. The distance from Vesontio to Caesar's camping-ground is in doubt. He says, *B. G. I. 41*, that the circuitous route he took, in order to have open country, was more than fifty miles. It is thought by many that this means that the distance by the route he took was greater by fifty miles than the distance by the most direct route. It is likely that the distance was 100 miles at least.

Here was fought Caesar's great battle with Ariovistus, and the German invasion of Gaul was checked and the career of Ariovistus practically ended. This battle was fought in September, and immediately afterwards the Roman army went into winter quarters.

Having called a general council of Gaul, the chiefs of the various states confer with Caesar secretly. Complaints about Ariovistus, a German king.

CHAPTER 30.

528. *confecto*: about the first of July. *Galliae*: i.e. Celtic Gaul. The other two divisions (see Chapter 1) had not yet fully realized Caesar's arrival.

529. *gratulum*: § 275.

530. *intelligere sese . . . tamen eam rem accidisse*: (*saying that*) *they understood that*, (*tametsi—repetisset*), *this (thing) campaign nevertheless (had happened) had been*. *tametsi—repetisset*: § 198; direct discourse, *tametsi—repetisti, tamen ea res accidit, although you have sought satisfaction, nevertheless this thing has happened*; since the tenses are *present* perfect, this is a concessive sentence of the *present* time. *Helvetiorum, populi Romani*: § 42.

531. *his*: if this is translated before its antecedent, *Helvetiorum*, the noun should be used here and the pronoun afterward.

533. *eo consilio*: (this being their design), *with this design*. *florētissimis rebus*: (things being most flourishing), *though enjoying a season of great prosperity*; § 87.

534. *uti*: introduces a clause with four predicates, which explains *eo consilio*; *quem—iudicassent* is parenthetical and explains *locum*; § 203.

536. *domicilio*: § 32. *magna copia*: (the great supply), *the many localities that lay open to their choice*.

539. *concilium*: they wished to forestall objection to a convention on the part of Caesar by obtaining his consent beforehand, although technically he had nothing to do with the matter.

540. *sese habere*: see l. 530, *intelligere sese*. *liceret*: see vocabulary.

541. *ex*: *in accordance with*.

543. *ne quis enuntiaret*: (that not any one, etc.), *that no one should disclose (its proceedings)*; this is the object of *sanxerunt*; §§ 139, 209. *nisi (ei) quibus mandatum esset (enuntiarent)*: (unless those to whom it was ordered should disclose), *except those who were directed to do so*; §§ 23 and 242, 5.

CHAPTER 31.

545. *eo concilio dimisso*: the briefest possible way of saying that the assembly met and decided upon a plan of action, to be disclosed in the present chapter. *idem* = *iidem*.

548. *Caesari*: § 28.

549. *non minus quam*: (not less . . . than), *as much . . . as*. *se laborare*: (*saying that*) *they strove and labored for*. *id*: § 8; it is explained by *ne—enuntiarentur*, and contrasted with *uti—impetrarent*.

550. *dixissent*: this would be the future perfect in direct discourse; (should have said), *were going to say*.

553. *Galliae totius*: i.e. eastern Gaul.

554. *alterius*: see vocabulary and § 40.

556. *contenderent*: translate by pluperfect. Latin emphasizes the

continuance, English the beginning, of the act.
came about; the subject is the following clause.

factum esse: *it*

558. **postea quam:** see vocabulary.

561. **millium:** § 35.

562. **clientes:** *dependent states*.

563. **accepiſſe:** sc. **eos** (i.e. **Aeduos eorumque socios**), as subject of **accepiſſe** and **amiſiſſe**, modified by **pulsos**; (*that*) *they, having been routed, had suffered*, etc. **omnem:** the triple repetition of the word adds to the pathos of the complaint.

565. **fractos:** agreeing with (**eos**), antecedent of **qui**, and subject of **coactos esse**; (*that*), *crushed . . . , they who*, etc.—**potuiſſent**, *had been forced*, etc.

567. **obsides:** (*as*) *hostages*.

569. **ſeſe**, etc.: this indirect discourse is in apposition with **iure iurando**,—*that they would neither*, etc.

570. **quo minus eſſent:** § 210.

571. **unum:** *the only one*.

573. **potuerit:** §§ 168 and 152, note.

574. **Romam:** § 94.

575. **postulatum:** § 275.

576. **peiſus:** subject of **accidiſſe**; see vocabulary.

581. **iuberet:** notice the change of tense; direct discourse, **iubet**, *he is ordering*; indirect discourse, *he was ordering*. **menſibus:** § 107.

582. **eum:** i.e. **Arioviſtus**.

583. **futurum eſſe:** *it would happen*. **quibus:** = **et iis**, *and for them*; § 201. **locus ac ſedes:** see vocabulary under **ſedes**; and § 280.

pararentur: *was being provided*. **paucis annis:** §§ 89 and 105. **omnes:** i.e. the natives.

585. **neque enim:** *for neither*, introducing a strong point of confirmation. **conferendum:** § 270.

586. **Gallicum:** sc. **agrum**. **hanc—ſuam:** i.e. **Gallorum**.

587. **illa:** *that (of the Germans)*. **comparandum:** means nearly the same as **conferendum** and may be omitted in translation.

588. **ut:** in direct discourse **vicerit** would be indicative; hence **ut** means *as* or *when*; § 176. For tense of **vicerit** and other perfects, see § 152, note.

590. **nobiſſimi cuiusque:** § 140.

591. **exempla cruciatusque:** § 280. **edere:** *inflict publicly*.

592. **hominem eſſe**, etc.: observe this characterization of **Arioviſtus** and see if it is borne out by subsequent proceedings.

593. **imperia:** (commands), *rule* or *authority*.

594. nisi—sit: § 242, 1. quid: § 139. auxilli: with quid;
 §§ 47 and 49. Gallis: § 31.
 596. ut emigrant: in apposition with idem; *namely, emigrate*; § 213.
 599. dubitare: sc. *se*; *that he did not doubt*. Quin: § 214.
 de: see vocabulary under sumo.
 602. ne—traducatur: § 209.
 603. Rhenum: §§ 10 and 11.

CHAPTER 32.

607. unos: see vocabulary.
 609. quae—esset: with miratus; § 243.
 610. respondere: § 258.
 611. taciti: with an historical infinitive a predicate adjective is
 in the nominative like the subject; § 258.
 613. hoc: *for this reason*, explained by quod—horrent.
 614. reliquorum: sc. fortunam; *that of the rest*.
 616. crudelitatem: § 8. velut si adesset: § 196.
 617. reliquis: indirect object; *to the rest*.
 618. Sequanis: dat. of agent; *by the Sequanians*.

*A conference, asked by Caesar, is refused by the king. Ambassadors are
 sent by Caesar. The reply of Ariovistus.*

CHAPTER 33.

622. curae: see vocabulary and § 32. futuram: § 227.
 623. se habere: (*saying that*) *he had*. et: both. beneficio,
 auctoritate: Caesar thought that Ariovistus might be influenced by the
 service Caesar had rendered him in getting for him the title "friend
 of the Roman people,"—a formal *recognition* of him, as Cuba was *recog-*
nized by this country when fighting for independence; or if this did not
 weigh with Ariovistus, then perhaps the prestige which the Helvetian
 campaign had given Caesar would be just as effective in a different
 way.
 624. Ariovistum facturum (esse): in apposition with spem.
 625. secundum: see vocabulary. multae res: *many (other)*
considerations.
 626. qua re putaret: (*why he should think*), *to think*; § 208.
 sibi: § 31.
 627. Aeduos teneri: object of videbat.

631. *quod*: relative, the antecedent being the indirect discourse, *Aeduos teneri* and *obsides esse*; translate, (*a condition of affairs*) which in : in the case of, under. *populi*: (as that) of, etc.

632. *sibi*: § 33.

633. *Germanos consuescere*: these words and *multitudinem venire* taken together are the subject accusative of (*esse*) *periculosum*, which is indirect discourse governed by *videbat*; he saw that it was dangerous that the Germans, etc.

634. *populo*: § 33.

635. *sibi*: § 23.

636. *quin exirent*: § 214. *cum*—*occupavissent* should be translated before *quin*.

637. *ut fecissent*: indirect discourse, *ut fecerunt*; what then is the meaning of *ut* here? see l. 77, or vocabulary. See note on l. 768.

639. *cum divideret*: § 172.

640. *Rhodanus*: i.e. nothing but the Rhone; which we have been told (l. 100) was fordable. *rebus*: § 27. *occurrendum*: sc. *sibi esse*; see vocabulary.

642. *ferendus*: § 270.

CHAPTER 34.

644. *ei*: § 21. *ut mitteret, qui postularent, uti deligeret*: distinguish the use of these three clauses; §§ 208, 162; condense each to infinitive in translating.

646. *utriusque*: § 58; see vocabulary under *medius*. *colloquio*: § 32. *velle sese*: see l. 623, note to *se habere*.

647. *summis utriusque rebus*: (the most important matters of each), *matters of the greatest importance to each*.

648. *si—esset*: (that if there were any need to himself from Caesar), *that if he needed anything of Caesar*; § 30; for form of condition in protasis, see § 242, 2; for *venturum fuisse* in apodosis, see § 242, 4. *ipsi*, and *se* in ll. 649, 650, refer to Ariovistus. Why Ariovistus sent such a message is a matter of conjecture. In all probability it was merely for effect, intended to increase his prestige among his own people. He must have known, as his subsequent message shows, that the occasion was a serious one.

649. *si—velit*: (if he wished him at all), *if Caesar wanted anything of him*; § 242, 1. *quid*: § 13.

654. *mirum*: predicate adjective agreeing with clause *quid—esset*, subject accusative of *videri*.

655. *quid Caesari negotii esset*: (what of business there was to Caesar), *what business Caesar had*; §§ 30, 49, 245. For the variations in sequence in this speech, see § 152.

CHAPTER 35.

657. *quoniam . . . affectus*, (*cum—appellatus esset*), *hanc . . . gratiam referret*, (*ut—putaret*), *haec esse*: (*that*) *since . . . having been treated* (explained by the *cum* clause), *he returned this (sort of) thanks* (explained by the *ut* clause), *THESE WERE THE THINGS. tanto suo beneficio*: (with his so great kindness), *with such kindness on his part (and that of, etc.)*.

658. *consulatu suo*: 59 B.C., one year before.

659. *cum appellatus esset*: § 172.

661. *invitatus*: (having been invited), *when asked to do so*. *de—cognoscendum*: *that he ought to talk or learn about their common interests*.

663. *quam*: § 139.

666. *permitteret ut illis liceret*: (allow that it might be permitted to them), *allow the Sequanians*. *illi*: i.e. the Sequanians. *eius*: i.e. Ariovistus.

667. *iniuria*: see vocabulary.

669. *sibi populoque Romano cum eo*: (to himself and the Roman people with him), *between him (on the one side) and himself and the Roman people (on the other)*.

670. *impetraret*: subject, Caesar. *sese*: translate here.

672. *provinciam*: (as a) province.

673. *quod*: § 215, 4. *commodo*: § 79.

674. *se*: a repetition of *sese*, l. 670, for emphasis; to be repeated in English for the same reason; *he, since, etc., HE would not, etc.*

CHAPTER 36.

The direct discourse of this chapter is given for comparison :

Ius est belli ut qui vicerunt eis quos vicerunt quem ad modum velint imperent ; item *populus Romanus victis non ad alterius praescriptum . . . imperare consuevit*. Si *ego populo Romano non praescribo quem ad modum suo iure utatur, non oportet me . . . in meo iure impediri*. *Aedui mihi, quoniam belli fortunam temptaverunt et . . . superati sunt, stipendiarii sunt facti*. *Magnam Caesar iniuriam facit qui suo adventu vectigalia mihi deteriora faciat*. *Aeduis (ego) obsides non reddam, neque his . . . bellum inferam, si in eo manebunt quod con-*

venit stipendiumque . . . pendent ; si id non fecerint, longe eis frater-num nomen populi Romani aberit. Quod mihi Caesar denuntiat se Aeduum iniurias non neglecturum, nemo mecum sine sua pernicie contendit. Cum volet, congregiatur ; intellet quid invicti Germani . . . qui inter annos xvi tectum non subierunt (subierint) virtute possint.

677. qui: sc. ei as antecedent. iis: § 23. vellent: § 243.

678. ad: at, according to.

679. alterius: another's ; the genitive of alius is not in common use, so alterius takes its place.

680. si praescriberet, oportere: § 242, 1.

681. suo, uteretur: plural in translation, because referring to populus Romanus. Suo below refers to Ariovistus.

685. facere: in the direct discourse, facit is progressive, is doing; hence, in indirect discourse, was doing. se: i.e. Ariovistus.

qui: because he; § 173. sibi: § 28. deteriora: § 16.

686. non: very emphatic. neque, etc.: but on the other hand he would not.

687. si—manerent: § 242, 5; see also vocabulary.

688. convenisset: vocabulary; so with fraternum, afuturum below.

689. iis: § 28.

690. populi Romani: this modifies fraternum as if it were fratrum, to which it is equivalent. sibi: § 23.

691. se: refers to Caesar. neminem contendisse: in such a sentence both English and Latin may omit what is logically the main clause; in regard to the fact that Caesar had threatened him, (he would say) that no one, etc. se cum: refers to Ariovistus.

692. sua: antecedent neminem; translate, without being annihilated. congregeretur: §§ 245 and 226.

694. qui, etc.: this he states as evidence of their vigor.

695. possent: could (effect).

Alarmed by the complaints of the Aeduians, Caesar hastens against Ariovistus and occupies Vesontio.

CHAPTER 37.

697. Aedui: sc. veniebant.

698. questum: § 275. quod, etc.: §§ 170, 229.

700. datis: by giving; § 264, 7. Treveri: sc. veniebant questum.

704. *vehementer commotus*: the only use of this expression in Caesar. It marks a very serious condition of affairs, in Caesar's opinion, for he was very seldom *seriously alarmed*. ne: § 159.

706. *resisti posset*: sc. *iis*; (it could be resisted them), *they could be resisted*; §§ 23 and 26.

707. *quam*—*potuit*: see *quam potest*, l. 112.

CHAPTER 38.

709. *tridui*: §§ 44 and 45. *viam*: § 12, note.

711. *Vesontionem*: Caesar's description fits very nearly the site of the modern French town of Besançon (see map), and excavations have brought to light many remains of an ancient town.

713. *magnopere praecavendum*: (it ought to be guarded in advance earnestly), *that he ought to take great precaution*.

714. *usui*: see vocabulary and § 32.

717. *ut (flumen) circumductum*: (as a river drawn around), *as though its course had been described*.

719. *pedum*: §§ 45 and 70. The distance given in the manuscripts is 600 feet, but since the distance now is found to be nearly 1,600 feet, it is thought that the M of the Roman MDC may have disappeared in process of manuscript transmission.

720. *altitudine*: § 80. *radices*: accusative. *ripae*: nominative.

722. *hunc (montem)*: § 11. *circumdatus*: (having been put around), *surrounding*.

Panic in the Roman camp; Caesar's speech, and march against Ariovistus.

CHAPTER 39.

727. *percontatione*, etc.: the soldiers naturally inquired about this unknown foe from those traders who always follow and mingle with an army.

728. *qui*—*praedicabant*: this with the following parenthesis would best be omitted until the rest of the sentence is understood. *magnitudine*: § 80; so *virtute* and *exercitatione*, all predicate with *esse*.

731. *cum his congressos*: (having met with them), *when they encountered them in battle*. This, then, is a statement of the Gauls, not of the traders.

732. *timor*, etc.: i.e. the army was thrown into a panic. The description that follows, while very brief, shows exactly the way in which

a body of men becomes demoralized. You can see the spread of the panic in each successive sentence, until it culminates in the report (really a threat) that not a man will stir from Vesontio except to retreat.

733. *non* : modifies *mediocriter* ; another example of litotes ; see l. 188.

735. *tribunis*, etc. : see introduction.

736. *amicitiae causa* : (for the sake of friendship), *out of friendship*; these men were politicians, who had attached themselves to Caesar for the patronage he had to bestow; they were after what they could get for themselves, were ready to desert when danger threatened, and Caesar is either ironical or politic in using this expression.

737. *alius* : see vocabulary. *quorum* : §§ 47 and 136.

738. *diceret* : § 229 ; singular, agreeing with *alius*, but may be translated plural. *voluntate* : *with his consent* ; § 86.

744. *castris* : § 92.

745. *horum vocibus ac timore*; *from their expressions of fear*; § 280.

747. *centuriones*, etc. : these officers had risen from the ranks, in contrast to those mentioned in l. 735.

748. *qui ex his* : *those of these who*; § 53.

751. *ut posset* : § 211.

754. *dicto* : see vocabulary under *audio* and § 33.

CHAPTER 40.

756. *convocatis, adhibitis*; *calling, admitting*.

757. *omnium ordinum* : as a rule only centurions of the first rank were admitted to such assemblies, but in this case Caesar wanted to get at a man in every manipule, so that his words could reach the whole army more quickly; not so much for the purpose of argument as to inspire every officer in the army with confidence instead of fear, through his own wonderful personality and magnetism.

758. *vehementer eos incusavit*: *he lectured them severely, or he reproached them bitterly*. In the same way that the successive steps in the spread of the panic are shown in Chapter 39, note the course of Caesar's speech to quiet it. It is wonderfully shrewd.

758-760. Censure for breach of discipline. Obedience was the first duty of a Roman soldier. They had no business to ask or even to think where they were going or why.

759. *ducerentur* : § 245. *sibi quaerendum (esse)*: (it ought to be asked by them), *they ought to ask*. *putarent* : § 229.

760-765. But (since they had made these things their business) he wanted to tell them that Ariovistus was not going to fight at all; he would find there was no reason for it; so there was no need for them to be afraid of those Germans.

760. *Ariovistum appetisse*: all the rest of the speech is in indirect discourse; the introductory conjunction *that* of English indirect discourse may be omitted. *se consule*: § 88.

761. *hunc*: § 128.

762. *iudicaret*: direct discourse, *iudicet*; § 155. *sibi*—*persuaderi*: (it was persuaded him indeed), *HE, indeed, was persuaded (that)*; § 26.

764. *eum*: *Ariovistus*.

765-780. But just supposing (merely for the sake of argument), that Ariovistus was fool enough to fight, what in the world were they afraid of? The Cimbri and Teutones, a generation before, and more lately the Gladiators, many of whom were Germans, trained to Roman methods of fighting, had gone down before Roman armies; and two weeks ago they themselves had annihilated the Helvetii, who had fought on equal terms with these very Germans.

765. *quod*: see vocabulary.

766. *intulisset*: *did declare war*; § 242, 5. *quid*—*vererentur*: see synopsis above; § 228.

767. *sua*: *their own*. *ipsius*: *his*; § 132. By this he puts the soldiers in the position of going back on themselves as well as on him.

768. *desperarent*: § 155. *factum*: supply *esse*. *hostis*: § 40. *periculum*: see vocabulary. Rome (all but the capitol) had once been taken and sacked by the Gauls, in 390 B.C. After that time, the words *Gaul* and *German* struck terror to the Romans. A similar threatened invasion by the Cimbri and Teutones had been checked in northern Italy (102 and 101 B.C.) by Marius, to the intense relief of Rome. *memoria*: § 105.

771. *meritus*: *sc. esse*, forming complementary infinitive with *videbatur*. *videbatur*: §§ 182 and 240. *factum*: supply *eius hostis periculum* from l. 768. *servili*: *quos* follows as if we had *servorum*, to which *servili* is equivalent.

772. *aliquid*: *somewhat*; § 13.

773. *ex quo*: *from this (experience)*.

774. *quantum—constantia*: (how much of good firmness had in itself), *how much advantage there was in firmness*.

775. *quos, hos*: (*those*) *whom, these*; the antecedent is postponed in Latin, and repeated in English, for emphasis.

777. quibuscum saepe numero Helvetii congressi plerumque superarint: (with whom the Helvetii having met had generally defeated), *whom the Helveti had very often encountered . . . and generally defeated.*

779. exercitui: § 33.

780-788. It was true that Ariovistus had defeated the Gauls at Magetobriga; but it was by a threadbare stratagem, which he would scarcely try to repeat against the Romans.

780. quos: *any*, i.e. of these men who were so scared. *proelium*: see synopsis above, and l. 589.

781. hos: antecedent quos, l. 780. *posse*: the structure of the rest of the sentence, in indirect discourse after *reperire*, is as follows: *Ariovistum, cum tenuisset . . . (Gallos) desperantes et dispersos adortum, vicisse: (that) Ariovistus, after he had, etc., having attacked the Gauls when they were despairing and were dispersed, had conquered them.*

782. defatigatis Gallis: ablative absolute, *when the Gauls*, etc.

783. castris ac paludibus: § 92. *sui*: § 43.

784. de: *of*.

786. cui rationi, hac (ratione): *by this stratagem for which*. Compare *si quos . . . hos*, above.

787. locus: *opportunity*. *ipsum*: Ariovistus.

788. capi: see vocabulary.

788-794. The supply of grain would be all right; three tribes were furnishing it. As for the road, they would soon have a chance to judge for themselves.

788. rei: *concerning*, etc.; § 40.

790. facere arroganter: *were assuming a good deal*. *cum viderentur*: *in seeming*; § 172.

791. praescribere: i. e. *to him*. *curae*: § 32.

793. de itinere: see synopsis above. This is a good example of Caesar's "nerve." He knew nothing at all about the country into which they were going, and he could rely on no one except Diviciacus to tell him anything. But so thoroughly had he shamed and at the same time encouraged the officers that, when he came to the one point on which he could not give them assurances, he felt that he could just pass over it, though a few minutes before it had been one chief reason for the panic.

794-800. It was said that the army would mutiny if ordered to advance. He did not believe it, for an army never mutinied except for one of two reasons, neither of which applied in his case.

794. quod non fore dicantur: *in regard to the fact that (they were said not to be about to be) it was said that they would not be*; Latin uses the

personal construction where English prefers the *impersonal*. dicto:
see l. 754.

795. nihil: § 13.

796. scire, quibuscumque . . . aut fortunam (eis) defuisse: *he knew that, to whomsoever . . . either fortune had failed them.* male: see vocabulary.

797. vita: § 105.

798. innocentiam: Caesar has said that an army loses confidence in a general because he has been proven either *inefficient* (male re gesta) or *dishonest* (aliquo—convictam). He now speaks first of his *honesty*, then of his *success*. This shift in the order is rhetorical.

800-806. So he would put them to the test at once and find out immediately whether they were a set of cowards or not. The tenth legion, he knew, would go with him and the rest might do as they chose.

800. quod: *what*.

801. collaturus fuisset: (he had been going to put off), *he had intended to put off*; § 277.

803. utrum—an: double or alternative question; in direct discourse utrum is not translated.

804. quod: cf. l. 765.

806. sibi eam futuram: (it would be to him), *he would make it*; § 30.

807. legioni: § 23. Though the Latin style requires the verb at the end of the clause, the position here lays particular stress on *praecipue* and *maxime*.

CHAPTER 41.

811. princeps: § 115.

813. iudicium: see vocabulary. fecisset: § 170.

814. paratissimam: see vocabulary.

816. egerunt: *arranged*. satis facerent: see vocabulary under satis, and § 208. se: (*saying that*) *they*, etc. nec umquam = numquam.

817. de summa: *as to the conduct*. suum: predicate after esse.

818. imperatoris: § 46; in the same construction as suum, one being a possessive adjective, the other a possessive case.

820. ei: *in him*; §§ 23 and 24.

821. circuitu amplius: (*though*) *by a circuit of more than*, etc.; § 70. locis: § 92. The idea is that Caesar thought best to march through an open country even if he had to take a roundabout way to do it.

822. duceret: § 157; *limits exquisito*.

Caesar's conference with Arionistus is broken off by an attack of the Germans.

CHAPTER 42.

827. *quod*: (saying that) *what*. *postulasset*: the subject is Caesar. *per se*: as far as he was concerned.

828. *quoniam accessisset*: §§ 170 and 228. *se*: supply another *se* as subject of *posse*.

831. *petenti*: *sc. sibi*, (to him asking), *when he asked it*.

832. *magnam—veniebat*: see vocabulary under *venio*, and note the tense. *pro—beneficiis*: see note on l. 657; translate after the *that* suggested in the next note.

834. *fore uti desisteret*: (that it would be that he would desist) *that he would give up*; *fore* is in indirect discourse, in apposition with *spem*. *uti—desisteret* is the subject accusative of *fore*; § 213, 2. *colloquio*: § 32.

837. *vereri*: see note on *se*, l. 816.

838. *ne*: § 211, 3. *uterque veniret*: § 155, 1.

839. *non esse venturum*: supply introductory verb again as for *vereri*.

843. *equitibus*: § 29. *detractis*: ablative absolute with *equis*; translate coördinate with *imponere*, *to take—and place*. *eo*: adv. (thither), *on them*, i.e. in his *equis*.

845. *quid*: § 13. *facto*: § 74.

846. *non irridicule*: another example of litotes; see note on l. 188.

847. *ex militibus*: § 53.

848. *facere*: progressive, *was doing*; direct discourse, *facit*, *is doing*. *pollicitum*: (having promised), *while he had promised merely that*, etc.

849. *ad equum rescribere*: this is Caesar's famous pun (hence *irridicule* above); and like almost every play upon words it is untranslatable. The point is that these three words were the regular formula for enrolling a man among the knights (*equites*) at Rome, while the soldier considered that the phrase also described pretty well what Caesar was doing with the legion. Translate, *he was actually knighting them*.

CHAPTER 43.

850. *terrenus*: (of earth), perhaps *smooth*.

851. *spatium*: § 99. *castris*: here plural in sense.

852. *cum haberet*: § 199. *postulandi*: *sc. aditum*.

864. *quam*: *how*.

865. *cum*: *and*.

866. *quotiens*: adv., (how often); translate as adjective, *how frequent*.

867. *ut*: *how*.

869. *prius quam appetissent*: § 181.

871. *sui nihil*: (nothing of their own), *none of their prestige*. *gratia*:

§ 82.

872. *auctiores*: *more (and more) increased*.

873. *iis*: § 29. *posset*: §§ 228, 243 and 244. *postulavit*

eadem: (demanded the same things), *made the same demands*; § 12.

877. *quos*: § 139.

CHAPTER 44.

878-879. *pauca respondit, multa praedicavit*; cf. *postulavit eadem*,
II. 873, 874; § 12.

881. *spe praemisque hendiadys* = *spe praemiorum*; § 280.

882. *ipsis*: i.e. *Gallis*.

884. *capere*: *exacted*. *quod*: antecedent, *stipendium*.

889. *si velint*: § 242, 1.

892. *ornamento*, etc.: § 32.

893. *petisse*: sc. *eam* (i.e. *amicitiam populi Romani*), as object.
si remittatur: § 242, 5.

896. *appetierit*: § 228. *quod*: § 215, 3.

897. *traducat*: progressive; cf. l. 848; so *facere*, in the next line.
sui muniendi causa: §§ 55 and 272.

899. *quod*: § 215, 2, *b*.

900. *defenderit*: sc. *bellum*, and see vocabulary.

903. *quid—vellet*: see vocabulary under *volo*, and § 28. *sibi*
refers to Caesar, *suas* to Ariovistus.

904. *veniret*: §§ 243 and 244. *hanc Galliam*: i.e. Celtic Gaul,
contrasted with Transalpine Gaul; the latter was limited, as Ariovistus
considered, to the small territory near the Mediterranean coast and
bounded by the Rhone; this was all that had really been subdued
to Rome before Caesar came.

905. *ut oporteret*: (as it ought not to be yielded to him, i.e. by the
Roman people), *as we ought not to yield to him*; *ut* would have the indic-
ative in direct discourse.

909. *rerum*: § 58. *ut non sciret*: (that he did not know), *as not*
to know; §§ 165 and 166.

913. *debere*: see vocabulary. *simulata Caesarem amicitia*:

(that) *Caesar under the pretence of friendship, had, etc.* When an ablative absolute has a word inserted which does not belong to it, this word is almost always one which denotes the real agent of the participle; so here the friendship was feigned by Caesar.

914. *sui opprimendi causa*: see l. 897.

915. *nisi decedat*: § 245, 5.

916. *pro: as.*

917. *eum*: i.e. Caesar. *interfecerit*: § 245, 5. The statement here given was probably true, but Caesar had as little fear of his enemies at Rome as of Ariovistus, and he publishes this threat to show it.

918. *se id comertum habere*: (he had this found out), *he had found this out*; § 266.

921. *discessisset*: same construction as *interfecerit* above; these two verbs show how little the law of sequence is regarded in a long speech. Other examples may easily be found.

922. *praemio*: § 75.

923. *eius*: *on his* (Caesar's) *part*; § 39.

CHAPTER 45.

926. *qua re posset*: § 243. The clause is in apposition with *sententiam*.

927. *uti desereret*: (that he desert), *him to desert*. *optime meritos*: *well-deserving*.

929. *Ariovisti*: § 46.

930. *quibus*: § 23. With *redegisset* we ought strictly to have *quos*, and with *imposuisset* we would have *quibus* again, but with different construction; English uses the objective in each case.

932. *quod*: *therefore*. *si oporteret*: § 245, 1. *antiquissimum—tempus*: (each most ancient time), *priority of arrival in Gaul*.

935. *si oporteret*: § 242, 1. *liberam*: i.e. from such encroachments as that of Ariovistus. Caesar does not allow for a moment that he is taking away the freedom of Gaul, but poses as the champion of an invaded country.

936. *victam*: (*though*) *conquered*. *suis*: *its own*, referring to Galliam. *voluisset*: § 228; the subject is *is* (i.e. the senate), *it*.

The argument beginning with l. 929 is as follows: Rome had established a claim to Gaul before Ariovistus, though she had not made it a province; so Ariovistus had no claim on the ground of previous possession. Furthermore, if he still paid any regard to the Roman senate, he was in the wrong, for the senate had taken the ground that Gaul

was to remain free. Caesar's coming was no encroachment, that of Ariovistus was.

CHAPTER 46.

937. propius tumulum: § 33, note.

940. suis: § 23.

941. quod: § 139.

942. legionis: § 40.

943. committendum ut dici posset: (that it ought to be permitted that it could be said), *that he should give the enemy a chance to say*; the subject of committendum is ut dici posset, and the subject of dici posset is the following infinitive clause.

944. pulsus hostibus: *when they were routed*.

946. usus: see vocabulary.

947. Gallia: § 65. Romanis: § 27. interdixisset: § 243.

948. ut: *how*.

949. multo: § 81.

950. exercitui: § 27.

Two Gauls, sent to Ariovistus as ambassadors, are thrown into chains.

CHAPTER 47.

951. biduo: § 81.

952. coeptae essent: see vocabulary.

953. uti—constitueret: object of velle; § 208.

954. minus: *less*, i.e. than the other proposition; translate, *not*.
ex legatis: § 53.

955. Caesari visa non est: *there did not seem to Caesar (to be)*.

956. diei: § 56.

957. quin conicerent: *from hurling*; § 214.

958. legatus ex suis: as we say, "a lieutenant of his"; *one of his legati*.

959. missurum (esse) cum: (would send with), *could not send without*.

960. visum est: subject, mittere, l. 866.

961. virtute: § 80.

962. civitate: §§ 20 and 21.

963. et: *both*.

964. qua multa utebatur: (which he used much), *which he spoke freely*; multa agrees with qua.

965. in eo: (in the case of him), *in his case*. Germanis: § 30.

970. *quid venirent*: *why did they come*; §§ 243 and 244.

971. *conantes*: *sc. eos*: (trying), *when they tried*.

A cavalry battle.

CHAPTER 48.

972. *promovit*: Caesar had been marching northeast toward Ariovistus. The latter now moves forward, i.e. south. *milibus*: § 81.

973. *diei*: § 56.

974. *traduxit*: he probably took his line of march some distance up the slope of neighboring hills, so that, if Caesar tried to attack him, as he undoubtedly would have done had he tried to pass in the plain, the Romans would have to fight uphill. Thus he really outgeneraled Caesar.

976. *supportaretur*: § 203; the tense indicates continued action; use past progressive to translate.

980. *ei*: § 30. *non deesset* = *esset*; litotes again.

981. *diebus*: § 104; contrast with *dies*, l. 977.

984. *numero*: § 82.

985. *singuli singulos*: *each selecting a man*. *cum*: *in company with*.

986. *versabantur*: § 148; so with the following imperfects.

987. *hi*: i.e. *pedites*. *quid erat durius*: (there was anything harder), *the engagement was unusually sharp*. *quid, qui*: § 139.
concurrabant: *ran to their aid*.

988. *quo*: see vocabulary.

989. *longius*: *further (than usual)*, and so *celerius*. *prodeundum*: § 278.

990. *exercitatione*: *as a result of their practice*; § 84. The method of fighting here described was afterwards adopted by Caesar.

Ariovistus attacks Caesar's smaller camp, but does not dare to fight a pitched battle.

CHAPTER 49.

992. *castris*: § 92. *ut—prohiberetur*: this shows that Ariovistus was succeeding in his design; see ll. 972–977.

993. *ultra*: i.e. to the south, along the line of his communications.

994. *passus*: § 99.
 995. *castris*: § 32 or § 33.
 999. *numero*: § 82. *hominum milia expedita*: (light-armed thousands of men), *thousand light-armed troops*.
 1000. *quae prohiberent*: § 162.
 1001. *nihilo*: see vocabulary and § 81.

CHAPTER 50.

1006. *instituto suo*: § 86.
 1007. *paulum*: § 99.
 1009. *circiter*: this adverb modifies the adjectival idea in *meridie*.
 1012. *pugnatum est*: § 144, 2.
 1013. *multis — vulneribus*: (many wounds having been both inflicted and received), *after an indecisive engagement*.
 1015. *quam ob rem*: see vocabulary under *ob* and § 243.
 1016. *quod—esset*: § 215, 2, a.
 1017. *ut—declararent*: § 213.
 1018. *utrum—esset*: § 243.



LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIER.

Being finally forced to fight, the Germans are conquered and flee to the Rhine. The Gallic ambassadors are freed.

CHAPTER 51.

1021. *praesidio*: § 32.
 1024. *minus valebat*: (was less strong), *was weaker*. *multitudine*: § 82. *pro hostium numero*: (in proportion to the number of the enemy), *than the enemy*.
 1031. *eo*: (thither), *on these*; see l. 843.
 1032. *proficiscentes*: (setting out), *as they advanced*.
 1033. *manibus*: § 78. *fientes*: with *quae*. *se*: i.e. *mulieres*.

CHAPTER 52.

1035. *legionibus*: § 27. *quaestorem*: Caesar perhaps had only five *legati*, and had to use his *quaestor* as general officer for the other legion.
 1037. *a*: § 98.

1039. *ita*: with *acriter*.

1040. *itaque*: = *et ita*, with *repente celeriterque*.

1041. *ut daretur*: §§ 165 and 166.

1043. *ex*: as a result of, according to; § 85.

1045. *insilirent*: § 168.

1047. *a*: § 98; see l. 1037.

1051. *tertiā aciem*: for the use of the third line in battle, see introduction.

1052. *laborantibus*: see vocabulary.

subsidio: § 32.

This was the end of the battle. "The victory was decisive. The Suevi, who were on the point of crossing the Rhine, lost heart and set out homewards. And Caesar—where was he to go? What was he to make of his victory? It would be fatal to withdraw his legions into the Province. That would be to invite the German to attempt a new invasion: to confess weakness to the Gaul. Fortune beckoned him on. Gaul was disunited: her foremost state was on his side: and others felt the spell of his success. For the present indeed he must return to Cisalpine Gaul to conduct the civil duties of his government and watch the politics of Italy: but leaving his legions under the command of Labienus, he quartered them for the winter in the stronghold of Vesontio. In this last act of his we may read the registration of a great resolve: and doubtless he reflected, as he travelled southward, upon the magnitude of the undertaking to which he had committed himself. For to all who had eyes to see and ears to hear he had made it evident that his purpose was nothing less than the conquest of Gaul."—HOLMES.

CHAPTER 53.

1056. *viribus*: § 72.

1057. *inventis, reppererunt*: *invenio* means *find* (by chance), *come upon*; *reperio*, *find* (by seeking).

1060. *consecuti interfecerunt*: (having followed, killed), *followed and killed*.

1061. *natione*: § 82. *duxerat*: *had brought*.

1063. *duxerat*: sc. *in matrimonium*.

1064. *filiae*: sc. *fuerunt*, from l. 1060.

1066. *trinis*: (triple), *three sets of*. *hostes*: object of *insequentem*.

1071. *restitutum*: sc. *et*, connecting with *eraptum*. *calamitate*: loss. *tanta*: (so great as *his*), *his great*.

1073. *consultum (esse)*: impersonal;—(it had been consulted), *the Germans had consulted*.

1075. *beneficio*: see vocabulary.

*The Suebi return home. The army is stationed in winter quarters.
Caesar hastens into nearer Gaul.*

CHAPTER 54.

1077. Suebi: the most powerful German tribe; see ll. 700-708.

1078. quos: *that they*; § 136.

1079. Ubii: the most civilized German tribe. Rhenum: § 33,

note. perterritos: sc. esse.

1081. paulo: § 81.

1084. ad conventus agendos: see vocabulary under ago; § 271.

BOOK II.

57 B.C.

For the heading *Commentarius Secundus*, see note on similar heading for Book I. Those who have not studied the first book should read the summaries of the two campaigns given on pp. 3 and 28.

I. THE WAR WITH THE BELGIANS.

CHAPTERS 1-33.

The campaign of 58 B.C. had brought to Caesar the submission of central Gaul, at least for the time being. But the Belgians were as yet untterrified. They formed a league to resist the further progress of Caesar and, if possible, to drive him from the country. The Remi cast in their lot with Caesar. Every other Belgian tribe joined the league against him. Galba, king of the Suesiones, was chosen commander-in-chief, and was able to muster more than 200,000 men, while Caesar had less than 50,000.

But Caesar was not caught napping for a moment. He made preparations during the late winter and crossed from Cisalpine Gaul in the early spring. He marched from the country of the Sequani, entered the territory of the Remi and remained there some days. His headquarters probably were near Durocortorum (Rheims), their chief town.

Hearing that the Belgae were marching against him, he crossed the Axona by a bridge which was within an easy march of the eastern frontier of the Suessiones, and there, close to the right bank of the river, pitched his camp. The camp was on a hill, which, with the defences which he constructed, is described in Chapter 8. It was probably situated near the modern town of Berry-au-Bac, about seven miles from Bibrax, a stronghold of the Remi, which the Belgae proceeded to attack.

Caesar came to the assistance of the garrison and defeated the Belgae, but did not care to attack the camp of so vast a host. The armies faced each other for some time, neither caring to make an advance, although the Roman cavalry was making havoc with the Belgian forces. Caesar at length led his army back into camp.

The Belgae finally moved down the Axona about two miles, to a place where the river was fordable. Caesar attacked them while

they were crossing with his cavalry and light-armed troops and inflicted serious losses upon them. Disheartened by this, they decided to disband and go home. Caesar pursued with his cavalry and slaughtered them in great numbers. He then pushed on to the westward, down the river to Noviodunum, the stronghold of the Sueviones. This town surrendered shortly after and Caesar moved on still farther westward to Bratuspantium, chief town of the Bellovaci, which also surrendered. Continuing northward, he received the submission of the Ambiani.

"But now he learned that his progress was about to be disputed. On the northeast, among the inhospitable forests of the Sabis (Sambre) and the marshes of the Scaldis (Scheldt), dwelt a tribe whose primitive virtues had not yet been enfeebled by contact with civilization. No traders were suffered to cross their frontier, for fear the luxuries of which the rude warriors were still ignorant might sap their manhood." These people would not yield without a stubborn resistance, and here was fought one of the hottest fights of Caesar's career. After the battle, Caesar moved eastward against the Aduatuci, whose stronghold was finally taken; and the campaign of 57 B.C. ended in the complete overthrow of the Belgian Confederacy.

Confederation of the Belgians, with the exception of the Remi, who intrust themselves to Caesar's protection.

CHAPTER 1.

1. *cum esset*: §182. *citeriore Gallia*: this was the part of modern Italy north of the Po. *ita*: omit in translation. *uti*: for the meaning with the indicative, see vocabulary. *supra demonstravimus*: this refers to the closing statement of Book I.

2. *afferebantur, fiebat*: note the imperfect tense used of repeated action; §148.

3. *certior*: see vocabulary and §§ 16 and 17. *omnes Belgas coniurare*: in direct discourse, *omnes Belgae coniurant*, progressive, *all the Belgians are uniting*; hence in indirect discourse, *that all the Belgians were uniting*; it is governed by *certior fiebat*, an expression of saying. If indirect discourse has not been studied before, see §§ 217-246.

4. *quam*: subject accusative of *esse*; it agrees with *partem*, but in English we must make it agree with its antecedent and say *whom*. *dixeramus*: see Book I, Chapter 1. In such an expression the English prefers the present perfect, which the Latin may use, as in l. 2, above.

5. **dare**: like **coniurare**; see l. 3. For the phrase **inter se dare**, see vocabulary under **inter**.

6. **coniurandi**: §§ 40 and 267. **has esse**: indirect discourse, like **coniurare** and **dare**; *that these were*, etc.; for the case, see § 1. **quod vererentur**, **quod sollicitarentur**: substantive clauses in apposition with **causas**: §§ 215, 2, a, 170 and 228. **ne adducerentur**: § 211.

7. **omni pacata Gallia**: (all Gaul having been "pacified"), *now that all (Celtic) Gaul was subdued*. For the sense in which **Gallia** is used, see notes on Book I, Chapter 1. **ad**: *against*.

8. **ab non nullis Gallis**: § 68.

9. **qui**: sc. **eis** as antecedent, in distributive apposition with **non nullis Gallis** (§ 4); *those who*. **Germanos versari noluerant**: § 257. The subjunctive might have been expected instead of **noluerant**, **ferebant**, etc. (§ 228). In using the indicative, Caesar gives the explanations as a fact; § 170.

10. **hiemare**, **inveterascere**: progressive, like **coniurare**, l. 5.

11. **qui**: see note, l. 9. **mobilitate**, etc.: § 84. **ferebant**, **studebant** and **occupabantur**: these imperfects denote a continued condition; § 148.

12. **novis imperiis**: see vocabulary under **novus**, and § 23. **ab non nullis**: this is in addition to those designated by the **non nullis** of l. 8.

13. **ad conducendos homines**: § 272.

14. **regna**: plural, because the Latin thinks of a **regnum** in each state; translate, *the power in individual states*.

15. **imperio nostro**: *under our rule*; a combination of the idea of time and cause: §§ 84 and 89.

This chapter means that the Belgians feared "(1) annexation, (2) foreign garrisons, (3) repression of irregular native greatness founded on birth or wealth."—MOBERLEY.

CHAPTER 2.

17. **duas legiones novas**: the thirteenth and fourteenth; he already had six in transalpine Gaul, numbered seventh to twelfth inclusive; see Book I, Chapter 10.

18. **inita aestate**: ablative absolute; see vocabulary under **ineo**.

19. **qui deduceret**: §§ 156, 162 and 163. **legatum**: §§ 1 and 2.

20. **cum primum inciperet**: (when first began), *as soon as there began*; § 182. This would be late in June; see Book I, Chapter 16. **cum primum** almost always takes the indicative.

21. *dat negotium*: see vocabulary under *negotium*, and §147.

22. *Belgis*: § 33. *uti cognoscant, faciant*: in apposition with *negotium*: § 208. *quae gerantur*: § 203.

24. *de: of. certiozem*: see vocabulary and §§ 16 and 17. *manus, exercitum*: the former refers to small numbers of men from single localities, the latter to the force that was organized when the small bands had been drilled and brought together. So in this country in 1861 companies were recruited in towns and villages, and regiments were organized in the cities, which were afterwards united into brigades, divisions and corps. *cogi, conduci*: progressive passive: *were being collected*, etc.

25. *dubitandum (sibi esse)*: §278.

26. *quin proficisceretur*: § 214. *re frumentaria comparata*: (a grain supply having been prepared), *after he had provided for a supply of grain*.

27. *castra movet*: (he moves camp), *he breaks up his winter quarters*. *diebus*: §§ 89 and 105.

CHAPTER 3.

29. *cum venissent*: § 182. *opinione*: see vocabulary and § 69.

30. *Galliae*: § 33. *ex Belgis*: § 53.

31. *primos*: in apposition with *legatos*; §§ 1 and 111.

32. *qui dicerent*: §§156, 162 and 163. The rest of the chapter is indirect discourse. For the use to be made in study of the direct form given below, see Book I, l. 224.

Nos (§ 222) *nostraque* (like *nos*) *omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittimus* (§ 237); *neque [nos]* (§§ 222 and 122) *cum Belgis reliquis consensimus* (like *permittimus*) *neque contra populum Romanum coniuravimus, paratique sumus et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare: reliqui omnes Belgae* (§ 237) *in armis sunt, Germanique, qui cis Rhenum incolunt* (§§ 239 and 202), *sese cum his coniunxerunt, tantusque est eorum omnium furor ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque nostros, qui eodem iure et isdem legibus utuntur* (like *incolunt*), *unum imperium unumque magistratum nobiscum habent, detertere potuerimus* (§§ 239 and 165) *quin cum his consentiant* (§§ 239 and 214).

32. *se*: this is object, as shown by *suaque omnia* (§ 111); another *se* is to be understood as subject accusative of *permittere*; *that they intrusted*, etc.

35. *et*: see note, Book I, l. 410. *dare*: this and the three following infinitives are complementary to *paratos*, which is to be considered as a predicate adjective.

36. *facere*: see vocabulary. *oppidis*: §92. *frumento*: §71. *recipere, iuvare*: supply object.

37. *esse, coniunxisse, esse*: these are infinitives of indirect discourse after *dicerent*, like *permittere*, etc.

38. *cis*: *on this side of*, i.e. on the side towards Rome, the south-western side. *incolant*: §228.

40. *ut potuerint*: §§ 151, 152, note, 165 and 166. *Suessiones*: accusative; this may be translated after *ut ne quidem*, then the following appositives and clauses, finally *detertere potuerint*, *could they prevent*.

41. *iure*: § 73. *isdem* = *iisdem*. *utantur*: § 228; after it supply *et qui*, with *habeant*.

43. *quin consentirent*: § 214.

The origin of the Belgians and their forces.

CHAPTER 4.

44. *ab his*: § 67. *quae, quantae*: interrogative adjectives.

45. *essent*: § 243. *quid*: interrogative pronoun; contrast with *quae* above. *quid possent*: (what they were able), *how strong they were*; §13. *sic reperiebat*: the direct discourse of the rest of the chapter would be as follows:

Plerique Belgae sunt orti ab Germanis, Rhenumque antiquitus traducti propter loci fertilitatem ibi consederunt, Gallosque qui ea loca incolebant expulerunt, solique sunt qui patrum nostrorum memoria, . . . Teutonos Cimbroque intra suos fines ingredi prohibuerint: qua ex re fit uti . . . magnam sibi auctoritatem . . . sumant. De numero eorum omnia (nos) habemus explorata . . . propterea quod propinquitatibus . . . coniuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem . . . ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognovimus. Plurimum inter eos Bellovaci . . . valent; hi possunt conficere armata milia centum, polliciti (sunt) ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulant. Suessiones nostri finitimi; fines latissimos feracissimosque agros possident. Apud eos fuit rex nostra etiam memoria Diviciacus, totius Galliae potentissimus, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit; nunc est rex Galba; ad hunc . . . summa totius belli . . . defertur; oppida habent numero duodecim, pollicentur milia armata quinquaginta: totidem Nervii, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habentur, longissimeque absunt; quindecim milia Atrebates, Ambiani xxv milia, Morini,

etc. . . Condrosos, Eburones, etc. . . qui . . . Germani appellantur arbitramur ad XL milia.

46. ab Germanis: § 67.

48. Gallos: object of *expulsi*; Belgas is the subject of all the infinitives in this sentence. solos: *the only ones*.

49. patrum: § 39. memoria: see vocabulary and §§ 89 and 105.
omni Gallia vexata: *when all*, etc.; §§ 87 and 264, 1.

50. ingredi prohibuerint; see vocabulary under *prohibeo*, and § 168. Verbs meaning to *bid* and *forbid* (e.g. *iubeo* and *prohibeo*) govern the infinitive as a rule; *impero*, which takes an *ut* clause, means *command*.

51. qua ex re fieri: (from which fact it was happening), *the result was*; the subject accusative of *fieri* is the clause *uti—sumerent* (§ 213).
rerum: § 40; contrast with *patrum*, l. 49. memoria: § 84.

53. omnia habere explorata: § 266.

54. propterea: modifies *habere*.

55. coniuncti: agrees with the subject of *cognoverint*. quantam
—polliciti sint: indirect question after *cognoverint*.

57. cognoverint: §§ 170 and 228. For the primary tenses of the subjunctive here and below, as compared with *sumerent*, l. 53, see § 152, note.
plurimum valere: (availed most), *were strongest*; § 13.
virtute, etc.; § 84.

59. conficere: see vocabulary. armata milia: (armed thousands),
thousand armed men. pollicitos: sc. *esse*. electa: agrees with
milia; translate similarly, *picked men*.

61. suos: i.e. of the Remi. fines—agros: notice the so-called
chiastic arrangement of the words—noun, adjective; adjective, noun.

62. possidere: subject, *eos* (i.e. *Suessiones*).

63. memoria: see vocabulary and § 105.

64. cum . . . tum: § 279, 3.

66. hunc: § 128. summam: see vocabulary under *summa*.

67. voluntate: § 86.

68. numero: § 82. milia armata: see l. 59.

69. maxime feri: superlative, *fiercest*; this adjective is not compared by terminations. inter ipsos: (among themselves, i.e. the Belgians),
among them. habeantur: *were considered*; this is a quite common
meaning of *habeo*.

70. absint: i.e. from the Remi; they were in the northwest of Belgic Gaul.
quindecim milia Atrebates, Ambianos decem milia: see note on l. 61. This and the different forms of expression employed here serve to break the monotony of the passage.

74. *appellantur*: § 240. Contrast with *habeantur*, l. 69.

75. *arbitrari*: i.e. (Remos) *arbitrari* Condrusos, . . . *ad XL milia* (*conficere posse*); *that they (the Remi) thought that the Condrusi . . . (could furnish) about forty thousand.*

Caesar's camp at the Aisne.

CHAPTER 5.

76. *cohortatus*: § 261.

77. *prosecutus*: see vocabulary. *senatum venire*: § 255.

78. *obsides*: § 2, note. This was a characteristic act on Caesar's part. He took the Remi at their word when they said they intrusted *se suaque omnia* to him, and thus got security that they would assist him. The Gauls were notably fickle (see Chapter 1 of this book), and Caesar never felt that he could trust them unless their direct interests or their fears compelled them to side with him. In this case, however, as it turned out, the Remi proved the most faithful to Caesar of all the Gallic states. *quae*: § 136. *omnia*: § 111. *ab his*: § 68.

79. *diem*: see vocabulary. *Diviciacum Aeduum*: the year before, Caesar had taken the part of the Aeduans, one of the strongest states of Celtic Gaul, in their contests with other states for the leadership; Diviciacus was the most influential leader of the conservative party among the Aeduans, and a trusted adviser of Caesar.

80. *quanto—distineri*: § 63.

82. *ne configendum (sibi) sit*: (that it might not have to be contended by him), *that he might not have to contend*; §§ 31, 156 and 278.

83. *id*: i.e. *manus hostium distineri*. *posse*: sc. *docet*.

84. *si introduxerint*: § 242, 5 or 6.

85. *postquam vidit*: § 176.

86. *venire*: in direct discourse, *veniunt*, *are coming* (§145, 1); hence in indirect discourse, *were coming*. *neque*: connects *vidit* and *cognovit*, but negatives *longe*. *abesse*: sc. *a se*, *from him*; the subject is *copias Belgarum*. *ab iis . . . exploratoribus et ab Remis*: ablatives of source modifying *cognovit*; translate immediately after it.

88. *flumen*: § 11.

90. *quae res*: *this movement*. *et*: *both*.

91. *ripis*: § 71. *post eum quae essent*: (what were behind him), in military language, *his communications*.

92. *tuta*: predicate adjective agreeing with *ea* understood, the antecedent of *quae*; § 16. *commeatus ut possent efficiebat*: (effected that provisions were able), *made it possible for provisions*; § 213.

95. *in altera parte*: i.e. on the southern side; see map.

97. *pedum duodecim*: §§ 44 and 45.

98. *munire*: sc. *eum* (i.e. *Sabinum*), as subject.

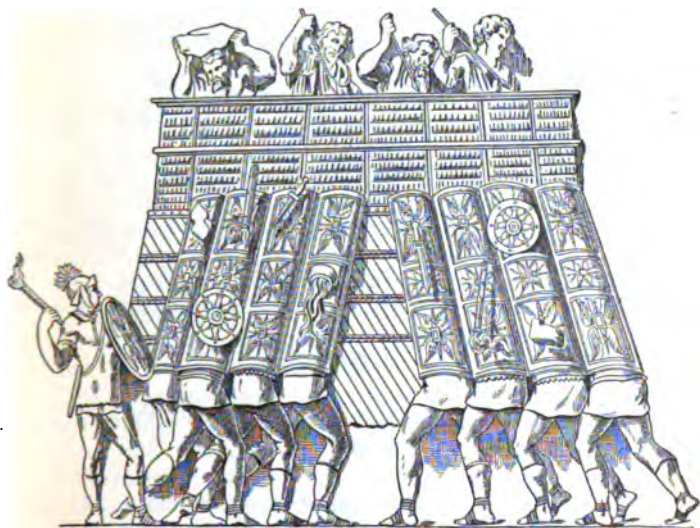
*Bibrax, a town of the Remi besieged by the Belgians, is relieved by Caesar.
The Belgians, while withdrawing, suffer heavy loss.*

CHAPTER 6.

99. *nomine*: § 82.

100. *milia*: §§ 14 and 99. *magno impetu*: § 78.

101. *die*: § 104. *sustentatum est*: § 144, 2.



TESTUDO.

102. *eadem atque Belgarum*: (*which is*) *the same as that of the Belgians*; parenthetical.

103. *moenibus*: § 27.

105. *defensoribus*: § 65. *testudine facta*: (a "testudo" having been made), *they form a testudo and*.

106. *quod*: § 136. *tum*: i.e. in the storming of *Bibrax*.

107. *conicerent*: § 143.

108. *potestas erat nulli*: § 30. Note the emphatic position of *nulli*.
finem oppugnandi: § 267.

109. *summa nobilitate*: § 80.
 110. *oppido*: § 27. *ex iis*: § 53.
 111. *legati*: § 2, note. *de*: *concerning, to sue for*.
 112. *nisi*, etc.: (*saying that*) *unless*, etc.; § 227. For mood and tense, see § 242, 5.

CHAPTER 7.

114. *de media nocte*: (from, i.e. after, the middle of the night), *about midnight*; § 113. *isdem* = *iisdem hominibus*. *ducibus*: § 2, note. So *nuntii*, l. 115.
 115. *Cretas*: notice Greek ending. *sagittarios*: appositive to *Numidas et Cretas*, but the latter may be translated as adjectives.
 116. *subsidio*: § 32.
 117. *et . . . et*: *not only . . . but also*. *Remis*: § 27.
 118. *hostibus*: § 29. *potiundi*: old form of gerundive. For the use of the gerundive of such verbs, see § 273, 2.
 121. *quo adire poterant*: (whither they were able to go to), *which they could get at*. *omnibus vicis aedificisque incensis*: this ablative absolute is coördinate with *morati* and *populati*, but since deponent verbs have no passive participle and active verbs have no perfect active participle, we find this awkward combination. In translating make the voices of all the participles the same, here rendering *incensis* by the perfect active. *omnibus copiis*: § 77.
 122. *a*: adverb, *away*. *milibus duobus*: §§ 70 and 81.
 123. *quae*: § 136.
 124. *milibus*: § 69. This statement is given to show the great number in the Belgian army. See Chapter 4.

CHAPTER 8.

126. *primo*: § 115.
 127. *virtutis*: § 40. *proelio*: § 65.
 128. *quid—posset*: (what the enemy could in bravery), *how brave the enemy was*; §§ 13, 82 and 243.
 129. *quid—auderent*: like the above clause, *how daring our men were*. *periclitabatur*: notice tense; § 148.
 130. *loco pro castris idoneo*: *the ground in front of the camp (being) convenient*. This use of *pro*, local, is rare. It is so employed only when it means *immediately before*, practically, *on the edge of*.
 131. *natura*: § 84.
 132. *quod redibat*: this gives the reason for *opportuno atque idoneo*.

133. *editus*: agrees with *collis*; *rising*. *tantum*—*patebat*: (extended in breadth, turned toward the camp, so much as of place as a line drawn up could occupy), *covered as much space in front of the camp as his line of battle would fill*. In describing a hill it is hard to use definitely such terms as *width*, *end*, *side*, etc., unless it has a very distinct ridge, which was not the case here. *tantum*: § 14.

134. *quantum*: object of *occupare*. *loci*: § 47.

135. *ex utraque parte*: *on each end (of the ridge)*; § 98. *lateris deiectus*: (slopes of side), *comparatively steep slopes*.

136. *ab utroque latere*: compare *ex utraque parte* above. It means, on either side of the ridge at the end near which the camp was.

137. *transversam*: *at right angles (to the front of his line of battle)*; this was on his right, the *latus apertum*; see Book I, line 457, note.

"The camp was situated on rising ground between the river (Aisne) and its tributary, the Miette, a small stream flowing through a marshy ooze. The camp was, as usual, quadrilateral, as nearly square as the lie of the land permitted. The rampart, eight feet high, was faced with sods and revetted with timbers and fascines, to keep its slope of the requisite steepness; along the top of it was set a palisade of interlaced branches, and the ditch which surrounded it was eighteen feet wide and ten feet deep. Caesar's rear was protected by the Aisne; and his supplies could be brought up in safety by the Remi."—HOLMES.

138. *extremas*: § 113.

139. *tormenta*: *engines*, which corresponded exactly to modern artillery. *ne possent*: § 157. *cum instruxisset*: § 182.

140. *quod—poterant*: *because they were so strong in numbers; with their superior numbers*; it modifies *possent*, and should be translated immediately after it. *ab lateribus circumvenire*: (to come around on the sides), *to outflank*.

141. *pugnantes*: (*while*) *fighting; during the battle*.

143. *si quo*: (if anywhere), *wherever*; *quo*, adverb, is indefinite after *si*, like forms of *quis* and *qui* (§ 139). *opus*: the indeclinable noun; see vocabulary. *esset*: § 242, 5. *subsidio*: § 32.

145. *copias eductas instruxerunt*: (drew up their troops, having been led out), *led out their troops and drew them up*.

CHAPTER 9.

147. *si transirent*: § 243, note. *expectabant*: § 148.

148. *si—fieret*: (in case a beginning of crossing should be made

by them), *if they began to cross*; § 242, 5. **transeundi**: § 267. **impeditos**: sc. eos; for translation, see vocabulary.

150. **proelio equestri contendebatur**: impersonal; (it was contended by means of a cavalry battle), *a cavalry battle was fought*. **ubi faciunt**: § 176.

151. **neutri**: *neither army*; when designating one of two *bodies of men*, the plural of this word, as of **alter**, is used. **secundiore proelio**: §§ 87 and 88. For the translation of **secundiore**, see § 116.

152. **nostris**: § 33.

156. **eo consilio**: (this being their plan), *with this design*. **si possent**: § 242, 5. **cui**: § 27.

157. **pontemque interscinderent**: they would thus have the Romans cut off from provisions and from retreat. It was good strategy, if they could have carried it out.

158. **minus potuissent**: (should be less able), *could not do this*; § 242, 5. **popularentur, prohiberent**: sc. ut; they are coördinate with **ut expugnarent**, **interscinderent**, above. **qui**: the antecedent is **agros**.

159. **usui**: see vocabulary and § 32. **gerendum**: gerund or gerundive? See § 271. **commeatu**: § 65.

CHAPTER 10.

161. **certior factus**: it is not stated of what he was informed, but it can be easily supplied,—*of their attack, of what was going on, etc.*

162. **levis armaturae**: § 44. He takes these troops because they can get there more quickly than the heavily armed legionaries. The fact that he goes with them shows that he understood the vital importance of preventing the enemy from crossing.

163. **pontem**: § 10. This is the bridge mentioned in l. 94. **eos**: i.e. the Belgians.

164. **pugnatum est**: § 144. **hostes**: the case is shown by **impeditos**; for the latter, see l. 148.

165. **per**: *on, over*. Without any fear or sentiment, the others tried to use the bodies of the men in the front ranks as a causeway across the stream, so as to be better able to get at the Romans.

166. **reliquos . . . conantes . . . reppulerunt**: keep the Latin order; *the rest, trying . . . , they drove back*. Observe Caesar's terse description of the fight. He divides the slaughter into three parts: first, those who were trying to cross when he came (**hostes impeditos in flumine**); second, those who tried to cross after them (**reliquos per eorum corpora audacissime transire conantes**); third, those who had crossed before he

arrived (*primos qui transierat*). He did not deal first, as might at first thought be expected, with this last division, because not enough had crossed to do any harm and it was more important to stop the rest; but he kept them occupied with the cavalry, while dealing with the others, and finally cut them to pieces.

168. *equitatu*: § 71. *primos circumventos interfecerunt*: keep the order and translate participle by main verb, *they surrounded and killed*.

169. *oppido*: i.e. Bibrax; see Chapters 6 and 7. *spem se fefellisse*: (that the hope had deceived them), *that they were disappointed in the hope* (of, etc.).

170. *neque*: = *et non*; take the negative part of the conjunction with *progredi*, *did not advance*. It was a great feature of Caesar's tactics in Gaul to get the enemy to attack him in a place of his own choosing.

171. *pugnandi causa*: §§ 54 and 55. *ipsos*: emphatic, contrasted with the Romans, whom a little while before they had hoped to cut off from their base of supplies.

172. *convocato consilio*: translate by main clause: *called a council and, etc.*

173. *optimum*: predicate adjective agreeing with the subject accusative of *esse*, i.e. the infinitive clauses following. *domum*: § 94. *suam quemque*: in this combination the possessive regularly precedes. *quemque reverti*: § 257. *quorum in fines*: *into whose territory*; the antecedent of *quorum* is *eos*, l. 175. *introduxissent*: *should lead*; §§ 153 and 203.

175. *convenirent*: this is the second object of *constituerunt*; the first was a mere statement of a fact, that a certain thing was best; hence the accusative and infinitive. The *purpose* of their decision was that they should reassemble; hence the subjunctive, which, used thus without *ut*, is much like the use that appears when an imperative becomes subjunctive in indirect discourse; §§ 208, 212, 221 and 245. *ut*

—*uterentur*: adverbial purpose clause modifying *convenirent*.

176. *finibus*: § 91. *copiis*: § 73.

178. *quod*—*cognoverant*: § 215, 2, b.

179. *finibus*: § 27. *appropinquare*: progressive, *was approaching*.

180. *his persuaderi non poterat*: (it could not be persuaded these), *these* (the Bellovaci) *could not be persuaded*; §§ 23 and 26. So this terrible league dissolved, and Caesar proceeds against the various tribes separately.

181. *neque*: *and not*; see l. 170.

CHAPTER 11.

182. *ea re constituta: when this move had been settled on.* magno—tumultu: § 78.

183. *nullo—imperio: attendant circumstance; § 78.*

184. *cum—properaret: § 172: this clause modifies fecerunt ut—videretur.* sibi: § 28.

185. *ut videretur: § 213.*

186. *fugae: § 33.* hac re cognita: § 264, 4.

187. *veritus: § 261.* qua de causa: *for what reason, why.* qua is here an interrogative adjective.

188. *discederent: § 245.* Note the tenses of *perspexerat* and *discederent*; the latter is progressive.

189. *castris: § 92.*

190. *qui moraretur: §§ 162 and 163.*

191. *his: § 27.* *Pedium, Cottam:* these two *legati* were often detailed together. We find that they were men of different characteristics, so that perhaps Caesar thought that one would serve to balance the other.

192. *Labienum: see vocabulary.*

195. *fugientium: (while) fleeing.* cum (ei) ab extremo agmine, ad quos ventum erat, consisterent . . . (et) priores (i.e. priores hostes) praesidium ponerent: (since those on the extreme end of the line of march, to whom it had been come, made a stand, . . . and those in front placed a guard), since, (while) those on the extreme rear who were overtaken made a stand . . . those in advance took refuge. ab: § 98. extremo: § 113.

197. *priores: § 111.* quod viderentur: § 170. abesse a: be out of.

199. *perturbatis ordinibus: (their ranks having been disturbed), broke ranks and.*

201. *tantam quantum fuit diei spatium: as great as (was the space of the day) the day allowed.* The comparison is careless and illogical.

The Suessiones are received in surrender.

CHAPTER 12.

205. *postridie eius diei: § 56.* prius quam reciperent: § 181.

207. *Remis: what other case might have been used? See § 33, note.*

208. *ex itinere: i.e. without encamping or making any especial preparations.*

209. *ab defensoribus*: § 65.
 211. *paucis defendentibus*: § 264, 4.
 212. *quaeque*: *and (the other things) which*.
 213. *usui*: see l. 159.



VINEA.

215. *actis*: *being pushed*. For the methods of the Romans in siege operations, see introduction.

216. *quae*: *such as; the like of which*.

219. *petentibus Remis*: see note on Book I, l. 512. *ut conservaretur*: object of *petentibus*; § 208.

At the request of Diviciacus, Caesar receives the Bellovaci in surrender; he inquires about the character and customs of the Nervii.

CHAPTER 13.

220. *primis*: (the first), *the chief men*; § 111.

221. *ex oppido*: we use an adjective phrase, *the arms in the town*; the Latin uses an adverbial phrase, *having been handed over out of the town*.

223. *qui—contulissent*: *when they had retired with all their possessions into the town (of) Bratuspantium*.

226. *natu*: see vocabulary under *magnus*, and § 276.

227. *voce*: *tone of voice*, for Caesar would not have understood their language.

230. *accessisset, ponerent*: notice tenses.

231. *ex muro*: (*standing*) *on the wall*. *more*: § 86.

CHAPTER 14.

The direct discourse of this chapter would be as follows:

Bellovaci omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Aeduae

fuerunt; impulsī ab suis principibus, qui dicebant, "Aedui a Caesare in servitutem redacti omnes indignitates . . . preferunt," et ab Aeduis defecerunt et populo Romano bellum intulerunt. Qui eius consili principes fuerant, quod intellegebant quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugerunt. Petunt non solum Bellovaci sed etiam pro his Aedui ut tua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utaris. Quod si feceris, Aeduorum auctoritatem apud omnis Belgas amplificabis, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderunt, sustentare consuerunt.

235. omni tempore, fide: see vocabulary. civitatis: § 39.

236. impulsos, etc.: the construction is (eos), impulsos . . . , et defecisse et intulisse, (*that*) they (the Bellovaci), (having been) urged on . . . , had both revolted and waged. qui dicerent: § 228; this governs the indirect discourse, Aeduos . . . redactos, . . . perferre, *that the Aeduians, having been, etc. . . , were enduring.*

239. Qui: sc. eos as antecedent and subject accusative of profugisse; *that those who* etc. . . . , *had fled.*

240. quod: conjunction. quantam—intulissent: § 243.

242. Bellovacos, Aeduos: subjects of petere, the object of which is the clause ut—utatur.

243. sua: *his (usual), his (well known)*; this is not an unusual force of suus. quod si fecerit: *if he did this*; § 242, 5.

245. amplificaturum: sc. eum (Caesarem) as subject. si qua bella inciderint (Aedui) consuerint: for the form in direct discourse, see above; English, *if any wars happen, we are accustomed.* Indirect discourse, *if any wars happened, they were accustomed*; § 228. qua: this form may be used instead of quae in the feminine singular and neuter plural of the indefinite pronoun.

CHAPTER 15.

247. honoris Diviciaci causa: (for the sake of the honor of Diviciacus), as a mark of honor to Diviciacus; honoris, § 54; Diviciacus, § 40.

249. magna auctoritate: § 80.

250. multitudo: § 82.

251. ex oppido: see note on l. 221.

254. quorum: § 135. Caesar cum quaereret: *when Caesar inquired.* It would be possible here to consider Caesar the subject of reperiebat; but often a nominative preceding a cum clause cannot be the subject of the main verb. This shows that, in such a sentence as we have here, the subject that is expressed belongs to the subordinate clause.

255. mercatoribus: § 30.

256. vini: § 49. pati: sc. eos as subject.

259. magnae virtutis: § 44.

260. qui: *because they*; § 173.

261. confirmare: progressive; see note on l. 179. It is coördinate with *esse*, *incredere* and *incusare*. sese—accepturos: this is indirect discourse, object of *confirmare*.

The Nervii, with the Atrebatas and Viromandui, are defeated by Caesar with heavy loss on both sides, and their surrender is accepted.

CHAPTER 16.

263. cum fecisset: § 182. eorum: i.e. of the Nervii. tri-
duum: § 14.

264. ex captivis: § 67. Sabim: note the ending.

265. milia: §§ 14 and 70.

266. consedissee, expectare: note change of tense, *had encamped, were waiting for*.

268. uti—experirentur: object of persuaserant; §§ 25 and 208. eandem: (the same), *with them*.

270. copias: notice the voice of expectari; then is copias subject or object? quique: = et eos qui.

271. coniecisse: notice voice; then is mulieres subject or object? eum locum quo: = talem locum ut eo, *such a place that to it*; §§ 165 and 166.

272. exercitui: § 30.

CHAPTER 17.

273. exploratores, centuriones: the former would try to find various possible sites; then the latter, experienced officers, would confer and select the best place.

274. qui deligant: §§ 162 and 163. castris: § 33. cum facerent: § 182. ex: § 53. Notice here the difference between a bad and a good translation. Following the Latin we might say, "When from the surrendered Belgians and the remaining Gauls, several, having followed Caesar, were making a march," etc. This is "Latin-English." Contrast the following: "When quite a number of other Gauls and of the recently surrendered Belgians had joined Caesar and were marching with him," etc.

276. *ex his*: cf. *ex*—Gallis, above. *ex captivis*: § 67.
277. *cognitum est*: § 148. *eorum dierum*: (of) *during these days*; with *itineris*; § 37. *consuetudine*: (custom), *order*.
278. *nostri exercitus*: with *itineris*; § 39. *nocte*: § 89.
279. *inter singulos legiones*: *between* (the single) *every two legions*.
280. *numerus*: *amount*. *neque—negotii*: (nor was anything of trouble), *and that it was not a difficult matter*; § 49.
281. *cum venisset*, *abessent*: in direct discourse, *cum venerit* (future perfect indicative), *aberunt*, (when it shall have come, shall be away), *when it has come, are behind*; § 182. In indirect discourse the English tenses are like the Latin.
283. *adoriri*: in apposition with *quidquam negotii*. *qua pulsa*: (which having been driven), *that when this had been routed*.
284. *futurum (esse)*: *it would* (be) *happen* (*that*, etc.); object of demonstrant.
285. *adiuvabat*, etc.: the subject is the clause *quod—effecerant*; (the fact that the Belgians had made . . . , aided the plan of those who . . .); translate passively, *the advice of those who . . . , was reinforced by the fact that the Belgians . . .*
286. *equitatu nihil possent*: (since they were nothing able in respect to cavalry), *since they had no cavalry at all*; §§ 13 and 82.
287. *neque enim*: see vocabulary under *enim*. *ad hoc tempus*: (to this time), *at present*; i.e. when Caesar was writing. *ei rei*: *this arm of the service*. *quicquid possunt*: *so far as they can*.
288. *valent*, etc.: (they are strong in), *they rely on*. *quo facilius impedirent*: § 160.
289. *si venissent*: § 242, 5. *praedandi causa*: see vocabulary under *causa*.
290. *teneris*, etc.: (tender trees having been cut into and bent over, and numerous branches having grown out laterally, and brambles and briars having been planted among them); *had planted young trees and then cut into them and bent them over*; thus they would remain bent over but would keep on growing; *numerous branches would then grow out sidewise, and by planting briars and brambles among them they had made* (that) *these hedges* (should) *furnish*, etc.; § 213.
292. *instar*: in apposition with *munimentum*. *muri*: § 57.
293. *quo . . . intrari . . . perspicere posset*: § 168; verbs impersonal; (whither it was able . . . to be entered, . . . to be seen through), *such that one could . . . penetrate it, . . . see through it*.
294. *cum—impediretur*: this clause modifies *omittendum (esse)*; in direct discourse the future indicative would be used (§ 182). *cum*

iter agminis eorum impediatur, non omittendum nobis consilium erit;
when the advance of their column (shall be) is impeded, we ought not, etc.

295. **sibi:** § 31.

CHAPTER 18.

296. **haec:** (this), *as follows.* **castris:** § 32.

297. **ab summo:** *from the top.*

299. **pari acclivitate:** *with a similar slope;* § 80. **adversus:** note that this, with **contrarius**, **infinus**, **apertus** and **silvestris** are all adjectives modifying **collis**.

300. **huic:** § 33. **passus:** § 99. **infinus apertus:** the former of these adjectives is partitive in force (§ 113), the latter predicate; (the lower part open), *open at the base.*

301. **a superiore parte:** contrasted with **infinus**; (on the higher part), *towards the top.* **ut perspicere posset:** see l. 293 and § 166.

303. **continebant:** compare the different uses of the imperfect in this chapter; § 148. **secundum:** a preposition; see vocabulary.

305. **pedum trium:** § 45. This is a clear description of a battlefield; try to imagine how it looked, and draw a plan.

CHAPTER 19.

306. **subsequebatur:** note the imperfect again; with which imperfect in Chapter 18 does this correspond? Note also the meaning of the compounds of **sequor** with the various prepositions. **omnibus copiis:** § 77.

308. **hostibus:** § 27.

309. **consuetudine sua:** § 86.

311. **duae legiones:** see l. 18.

312. **praesidio:** § 32.

315. **illi:** i.e. **hostes**.

317. **quem**—**pertinebant:** (to what limit the open places extended, stretched out), *to the edge of the woods.* **quem ad finem:** = **ad eum finem ad quem.**

318. **cedentes:** sc. **eos** (i.e. **hostes**); (*when*) *retreating.* **interim:** i.e. while this game of hide and seek was going on between the two bodies of cavalry.

319. **opere dimenso:** this had been done by the centurions who had been sent ahead; see l. 273.

320. **prima:** § 113.

321. *abditī latebant*: *were lying hidden*. *quod*: relative pronoun, subject of *convenerant*, having for its antecedent the clause *ubi—visa sunt*. *tempus*: predicate nominative; (*as*) *the moment*; § 2, note.

322. *convenerat*: see vocabulary. *ut—confirmaverant*: this clause explains why they were able to do all these things so quickly.

323. *ipsi sese confirmaverant*: *had made their plans*; § 133.

327. *ut viderentur*: § 166.

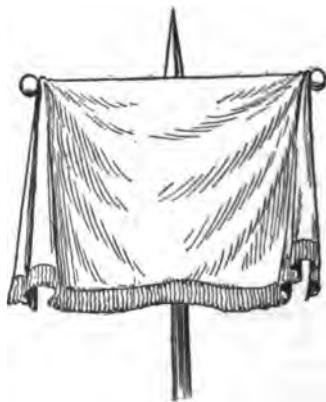
328. *in manibus nostris*: (in our hands), *within our reach*.

329. *adverso*: see vocabulary. *ad*: *toward*.

CHAPTER 20.

This passage is one of the most brilliant in Caesar. Notice the directness of statement and the rapidity of style corresponding to the action described.

331. *Caesari—agenda*: (all things were to be done by Caesar at one time), *Caesar had to do everything at once*; §§ 31 and 278.

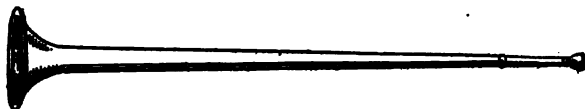


VEXILLUM.

332. *proponendum*, etc.: supply the proper form of *sum* with this and each of the following gerundives, and compare *erant agenda* for translation; these clauses explain *omnia*. *concurri oportebat*: both impersonal, § 144; (it ought to be run), *the soldiers were to rush*; *occurri* is the subject of *oportebat*.

333. *tuba*: those who did not see the *vexillum* might hear the *tuba*.

334. *qui*: the antecedent is *ei*, indefinite, the subject of *arcessendi* (*erant*). *longius*: § 116. *aggeris*: see vocabulary.



TUBA.

335. *milites cohortandi*: see note on Book I, l. 444.

336. *signum*: this means the signal to begin fighting or to charge.

337. *difficultatibus*: § 92.

338. *subsidio*: § 32.

339. *duae res*: the first of these is *scientia atque usus* taken together as a single thing, *discipline*, which is explained by the clause *quod—poterant*; the second is the clause *quod—vetuerat*, *the fact that*, etc. *superioribus*: *former*. *exercitati*: participle agreeing with *ei* (i.e. *milites*), the subject of *poterant*. *quid—oporteret*: § 243; it is the direct object of *praescribere* and the second object of *doceri* (§ 15, end). *quid fieri* taken as a whole is the subject of *oporteret*.

340. *non minus commode . . . quam*: (not less readily than), *as easily . . . as*. *ipsi sibi*: (themselves to themselves), *to each other*; § 133.

341. *singulis legionibus singulos legatos*: (the single legati from the single legions), *each commander from his particular command*.

342. *nisi munitis castris*: here we have an ablative absolute introduced by a subordinating conjunction. This happens most frequently after *nisi*, but also after conjunctions such as *tamquam*, *quasi*, *quamquam*, etc. Translate, *unless the camp was fortified*.

344. *nihil expectabant*: (awaited not at all), *did not wait a moment for*; § 13.

345. *per se*: *on their own responsibility*. *videbantur*: see vocabulary.

CHAPTER 21.

It is part of Caesar's design to show his own part in the battle, and attention is called to him at the beginning of this and the preceding chapter.

346. *necessariis rebus imperatis*: (the necessary things having been ordered), *after giving the necessary orders*.

347. *quam [in] partem*: *in whatever direction; wherever*.

348. *non longiore oratione quam uti*: with a speech not longer than (to urge them) to, etc. "Keep cool, men, and remember the honor of the legion. Stand up against that rush."—HOLMES.

350. *animo*: § 82.

352. *non*—*posset*: the enemy were (away not farther than whither a javelin could be driven), "within a javelin's cast."

354. *pugnantibus occurrit*: (he ran against fighting men), he found them (already) fighting.

355. *temporis*—*exiguitas*: (so great was the shortness of the time); what does this mean? *hostium animus*: scarcely different from *hostes*.

356. *ut*: what Latin words should be translated directly after *ut*, to give the English order? *insignia*: decorations; i.e. badges indicating rank, medals won for bravery, and perhaps colored crests or some other sign for every soldier to indicate the legion and manipule to which he belonged. These latter would correspond to the different devices used to distinguish the army corps and divisions in the Union army in the Civil War.



GALLEAN.

357. *galeas*: the helmets that were worn in battle would be too heavy and uncomfortable to be worn all the time. These, with the shields in their leather coverings (*tegimenta*) and the *insignia*, the soldier while marching carried in his pack or hung on his person, as our soldiers carry their cartridges and canteens. *scutis*: § 65.

358. *quam in partem*: see l. 347. *defuerit*: this sequence of tense is exceptional in a result clause.

359. *prima*: were the first that; § 115.

360. *ad haec*: (at these), here.

CHAPTER 22.

363. *rei—ordo*: (the reason and custom of military affairs), *the principles of military science*. The first subjects of *postulabat* are *natura*, *deiectus* and *necessitas*, which are contrasted with *ratio atque ordo*. For the agreement of *postulabat*, see § 142.

364. *cum legiones resisterent, -que prospectus impediretur*: § 172. *aliae alia in parte*: (some in another part), *some in one place, and others in another*. Such an abridged form of expression is called *brachylogy*.

365. *saepibusque*, etc.: repeat the *cum* here to keep the connection clear; and *since*, etc. *saepibus interiectis*: *by the intervening hedges*; § 264, 7.

367. *neque*: *neither*; this begins the main clause. *neque provideri (poterat)*: impersonal; the subject is the clause *quid—esset*; *nor could it be foreseen what need there would be in each part (of the field)*.

370. *fortunae eventus*: *vicissitudes of fortune; fortunes*.

CHAPTER 23.

Having described the circumstances under which the battle began, Caesar now begins to tell what actually happened,—what the *fortunae eventus varii* were. He begins with the success of his own left wing.

372. *cursu—confectos*: translate this after *compulerunt* and its modifiers and the parenthesis; (out of breath from running and weariness and exhausted with wounds), *because they were tired out with running and (so many) were wounded (by the javelins)*.

375. *conantes*: accusative, agreeing with *eos* understood; (*when they were*) *trying*. *transire*: i.e. *to recross the river*. *gladiis*: if this modified *secuti*, it would probably be before it, so we may conclude that it modifies *interfecerunt*. *impeditam*: (*while thus*) *embarrassed; by taking them at this disadvantage*.

376. *ipsi*: i.e. *legionis nonae et decimae milites*, l. 371.

377. *locum iniquum*: *an unfavorable position*; i.e. they were now fighting up hill.

378. *rursus—proelio*: *resistentes hostes* is accusative, object of *coniecerunt*, *the enemy, (who were) beginning to resist again and trying to renew the battle*.

381. *ex—proeliabantur*: *were fighting from their higher position right on the bank of the river*; i.e. they had driven the Viromandui back down the hill, but the latter were making a stand on the edge of the water and were between this and the Romans, who were still fighting down hill.

The plural (*ripis*) refers to different points on the same side of the river.

382. *at totis nudatis: and so, while the whole, etc.* At the start the eighth and eleventh legions were in front of the camp, the ninth and tenth on the left, and the twelfth and seventh on the right. By the success of those in the front and on the left, and because of their pursuit of the flying enemy, the places they had occupied were left open and the camp exposed on these two sides.

385. *confertissimo agmine: § 78.* *duce Boduognato: under the lead of; § 88.*

386. *summam: see vocabulary.* *imperii: § 47.* *ad eum locum: where they saw the two legions.*

387. *ab aperto latere circumvenire: (to come around on the exposed flank), to turn their right flank.* They had numbers enough so that those in front could divide and pass to either side of the two legions so as to attack them more advantageously, and, at the same time, those coming behind could attack them and keep them busy in front.

388. *summum castrorum locum: (the highest part of the camp's location), the top of the hill where the camp was; § 113.*

CHAPTER 24.

More than anything that has preceded, the description of this battle marks Caesar as an artist in literature. He begins with the left, the point of the easiest and most complete Roman success, then takes the less decisive victory of the centre, and at the close of Chapter 23 he hints of disaster on the right. Chapter 24 might be omitted; but like a dramatist he waits before telling the outcome of the Nervian attack, and details the movements of the cavalry, the camp-followers and the mule-drivers in such a manner as to present to the reader in the most vivid form the picture of the crushing reverse which had apparently been inflicted on the Roman arms.

389. *levis armaturae: see l. 162.*

390. *quos pulsos (esse) dixeram: either, whom I had said to have been routed, or, who, I had said, had been routed; do not mix the two.*

391. *cum reciperent: § 182; the action is progressive.*

392. *adversis, occurrebant, partem: see vocabulary.*

393. *porta: sc. castrorum.*

394. *summo: § 113.*

395. *egressi: i.e. a castris; they had followed the ninth and tenth legions.*

396. *versari*: (were turning about), *were actually*; it is a strong synonym for *esse*. *praecipites*: § 114.

398. *oriebatur*: (was rising), *began to be heard*. *alii—partem*: compare ll. 364, 365.

401. *virtutis*: § 40. *opinio*: see vocabulary.

402. *cum*: conjunction, introducing *vidissent*; § 182.

405. *dispersos dissipatosque fugere*: *were fleeing, dispersed and scattered*. As a result of this report, the Treveri lost pretty much all their respect for Caesar and gave him repeated trouble. Had such a report gone out three years later, it is probable that there would instantly have been a general uprising of Gaul.

CHAPTER 25.

For the time being, we have lost sight of Caesar. The last mention of him was in l. 354. Notice how he brings out his own part in the battle. He had started the successful charge on the left. Now, after the scene showing the desperate pass to which affairs had come without him, he reappears and assumes command in person.

409. *Caesar*, etc.: the structure of this, the longest sentence in the *Bellum Gallicum*, is as follows: *Caesar*, . . . *profectus*, *ubi* . . . *vidit* (l. 412) . . . *vidit* (l. 421), *processit* . . . -*que* . . . *iussit*; each *vidit* governs some clauses of indirect discourse; *quartae*—*posset* consists of ablatives absolute and their modifiers, giving various circumstances; *scuto—detracto* is an ablative absolute that is practically coördinate with *profectus* (l. 410). The sentence should first be mastered as it stands, then broken up into shorter sentences in translation, as suggested below. *cohortatione*: see ll. 346–348.

410. *signis collatis*: ablative absolute denoting cause (§ 246, 2); and (*that*), *because the standards were collected*, etc.

411. *confertos*: *being (therefore) huddled together*. *sibi ipsos esse impedimento*: (themselves were for a hindrance to themselves), *hindered each other*; §§ 32 and 133.

416. *multis—confecto*: (overcome by many and severe wounds), *who had received many severe wounds*. When *multi* is followed by another attributive adjective, the two are regularly connected by a conjunction, contrary to the English idiom.

418. *tardiores esse*, etc.: here begins the indirect discourse which is the object of the second *vidit* (l. 421); this verb should be translated here, repeating the *ubi* for clearness, and supplying a conjunction; (*and when*) *he saw that the rest were*, etc. *tardiores*: § 116. *non*

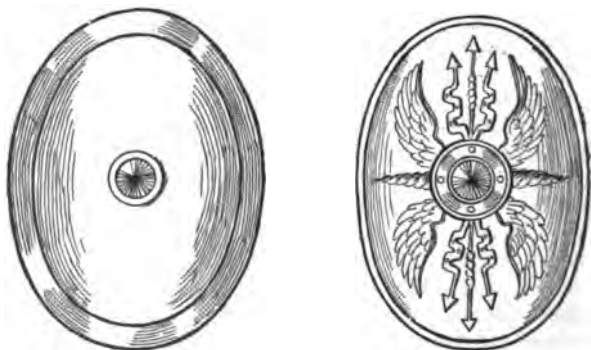
nullos: for clearness express the introductory particle *that* (§ 220) before each clause of indirect discourse; *and that some*, etc. **ab:** *at or in*; § 98.

419. deserto loco: ablative absolute, (their place having been deserted), *deserting their posts*. **proelio:** § 65. **discedere:** progressive, *were withdrawing*; so also **vitare**. **hostes neque:** = **et hostes non**; *and that the enemy did not*.

420. subeuntes intermittere: an example of what is called the *supplementary participle*, agreeing with the subject but really adding to the predicate; *cease coming*. **ab:** § 98.

421. neque: see note on **neque**, l. 419; take the negative with **ullum**. **rem esse in angusto:** (that the thing was in a narrow place), *that a crisis had come*; compare our colloquial expression, "things were in a tight place."

422. scuto detracto: (a shield having been seized), *seizing a shield*; see note on l. 409. **ab novissimis:** see l. 418.



CLYPEI.

423. [uni]: omit. See note on Book I, l. 433. **militi:** § 29.

424. centurionibusque appellatis: *and, calling*, etc. "Among them (his soldiers) there was hardly one not known to him by name or one who had not formed more or less of a personal relation to the general." —MOMMSEN.

425. cohortatus: (*and*) *encouraging*.

426. quo posset: § 160.

The sentence may now be broken up as follows. Make the first statement include what he saw when he came, i.e. as far as **vidit**, l. 412,

—"When Caesar reached the right wing, he saw that . . ." Next, state in simple sentences what is told in the following ablatives absolute,—"All the centurions were killed . . ." Then bring in the second *vidit* with its indirect discourse,—"He saw also that . . ." Finally tell what he did,—"So, seizing a shield, . . ."

The effect of this long sentence may be explained. Caesar takes in at a glance all the varying conditions of the field. With the same instantaneous decision he takes his resolution to put his own life to the hazard, the last resort of a desperate position. All the confusion of the field, all the quickness and resoluteness of Caesar's marvellous mind, are shown in the structure of this sentence, and by this single event in his life he made his reputation as one of the world's greatest commanders secure. *He did not lose his head.*

427. *cuius*: § 135. *militibus*: § 27.

428. *cum cuperet*: § 172.

429. *in extremis suis rebus*: (in his own extreme affairs), *though his own danger was extreme.*

CHAPTER 26.

431. *Caesar cum*: see note on l. 254.

433. *conversa*: see vocabulary. Just what manœuvre this phrase describes we do not know, but it appears that one line, probably the third, took a new front: to right, to left, or to the rear. Here if the third line of the twelfth legion swung around to the left, and that of the seventh legion to the right, the two legions would then form three sides of a rectangle with double line to the front where the attack was heaviest. This formation could then easily be closed in to nearly a hollow triangle if necessary. See plan, and Book I, l. 461.

435. *cum—ferrent*: (since some bore aid to others), *since they aided each other.* *aversi*: see vocabulary.

438. *impedimentis*: § 32. *proelio nuntiatio*: *learning of the battle.*

439. *cursu incitato, conspiciebantur*: *quickened their speed and began to be seen*; § 148.

441. *gererentur*: see vocabulary.

442. *subsidio*: like *impedimentis*, l. 438.

443. *qui cum*: *when they.* *qui—esset*: (in what place the thing was), *what was the condition of affairs.*

446. *reliqui*: see vocabulary. The whole phrase means that they came as fast as their legs would carry them.

CHAPTER 27.

448. *qui*: (*those*) *who*. *volneribus confecti*: (finished with wounds), *severely wounded*. *procubuissent*: § 168.

449. *scutis*: § 72. *innixi*: *leaning*; § 261. So *conspicati* below. *calones*: *sc.* et before it.

450. *inermes*: (*though*) *unarmed*.

451. *vero*: emphasizing *equites*; *while* THE CAVALRY.

452. *pugnando*: § 82.

453. *extrema spe salutis*: (their last hope of safety), *their last stand*.

455. (*eis*) *iacentibus*: modifies *insisterent* (§ 27); observe that this cannot be a form of *iacio*.

456. *his*, etc.: the result clause, *ut . . . insisterent atque . . . pugnarent*, is continued by *remitterent*; to show this clearly, repeat a part of the main statement before beginning the ablatives absolute; (*such courage, indeed, that,*) *when these*, etc.

457. *qui*: as in l. 448. *ut*: see vocabulary.

458. *pila intercepta remitterent*: (sent back intercepted javelins), *caught javelins as they flew past and threw them back*. *ut non—*

deberet: this clause expresses the result of all that has preceded. *nequiquam*: modifies *ausos esse*; translate after it.

459. *virtutis*: § 44. *homines*: the subject of *iudicari deberet* (impersonal) is *homines tantae virtutis nequiquam ausos esse*, etc. The sense is, that the Belgians were so brave that they were justified in expecting success in the execution of their daring plan. Nowhere else does Caesar pay such a tribute to the Gauls, which is at the same time an indication of the peril he had himself so narrowly escaped.

461. *ex*: *instead of*.

462. *animi magnitudo*: (the greatness of their courage), *their great courage*.

"The two legions which guarded the baggage had heard of the fight and were marching up at their utmost speed. Suddenly above the ridge they appeared, and presently the tenth, despatched by Labienus, recrossed the river, hurried up the hill-side and threw themselves upon the enemy's rear. The effect was electrical. Even the wounded leaned on their shields and plied their swords; the scattered camp-followers plucked up courage and turned upon the enemy; while the cavalry did all they could to atone for their flight.

"The Nervii in their turn were hemmed in. But in their last agony they made good their proud boast [ll. 260, 261]. Man by man, beneath the javelin and the thrust of the short sword, their front ranks fell.

Higher rose the heap of prostrate bodies; and leaping into them, the survivors snatched up the fallen javelins and flung them back, till they too fell; and all was still. So ended this wild fight, a soldier's battle, and withal the battle of a great man. Within an hour it was over, fought and wellnigh lost and won."—HOLMES.

CHAPTER 28.

463. *prope ad internecionem*: this is greatly overstated. They had plenty of men left, as events three years later proved.

464. *natu*: § 82. *quos coniectos dixeramus*: see note on l. 390.

466. *cum*: § 172. *victoribus*: § 28.

467. *impeditum (esse)*: *stood in the way of*.

468. *consensu*: § 86.

470. *sexcentis*: *sc. senatoribus*.

471. *vix*: modifies *quingentos*. *qui possent*: § 168.

473. *usus (esse)*: we would use the present infinitive. This is a cynical confession that his humane action was also partly politic.

474. *uti*: (to use), *to return to*.

475. *finitimis*: (their neighbors), *the chiefs of the neighboring tribes*.

The Aduatuci also are subdued.

CHAPTER 29.

478. *venirent*: progressive. *nuntiata*: see note on l. 438. *ex itinere*: modifies *reverterunt*; it means, *without stopping to encamp*.

480. *sua omnia*: *sc. possessions*; § 111. *egregie natura munitum*: (conspicuously fortified by nature), *naturally well fortified*.

481. *quod cum*: *while this*; § 199. *ex—partibus*: *on all sides in succession*; if one began at a certain place and followed around, he found himself facing ledges and cliffs all the way until he got nearly around.

484. *pedum*: §§ 45 and 70. *duplici altissimo muro*: = *duobus altissimis muris*; these had a space between them so that, if the enemy succeeded in getting through the first, they would be more or less between two fires.

485. *tum*: i.e. when Caesar arrived. Notice tenses. *magni ponderis*: § 44.

486. *in muro collocabant*: i.e. for ammunition.

488. *iis impedimentis depositis*: (that baggage having been put down), *had deposited that baggage . . . and*.

489. *agere ac portare*: (to drive and carry), *to take*. The *impedimenta* included not only the ordinary baggage of an army, but cattle, sheep, etc., taken along for food; also prisoners and captured spoils. The Latin word (literally, *hindrances*) is much more inclusive in its meaning than the English *baggage*. We cannot speak of *driving* baggage, so we must use one less accurate word that will combine the idea of the two employed in Latin.

490. *custodiam ex suis*: (a watch of theirs), *some of their number as a watch*, to take care of it. *praesidium*: *a guard*, to defend it.

491. *eorum*: (their), *of the rest of the two tribes*. *obitum*: see note on Book I, l. 769.

492. *annos*: § 14. *alias*: adverb. *cum bellum inferrent, illatum (bellum) defenderent*: (since they were either bringing on war and warding off war brought on), *since they were waging offensive and defensive war*.

493. *eorum omnium*: *of all those concerned*.

494. *pace facta*: in translating, make this a main clause, like *impedimentis depositis*, ll. 488, 490.

CHAPTER 30.

495. *primo*: adverb.

496. *faciebant*: § 148. The subject is *Aduatuci*.

498. *milium*: sc. *pedum* from l. 497. *circummuniti*: (having been), *being hemmed in* by Caesar. *oppido*: § 93.

499. *ubi, vineis actis*, etc.: *when, after the vineae*, etc.

500. *constitui*: progressive; *was being built*. *irridere*: § 258.

501. *a*: see *ab*, l. 122.

502. *spatio*: § 81. *instrueretur*: § 170. *quibusnam*, etc.: (*asking*) *with what*, etc.; §§ 223 and 227.

503. *praesertim homines*: *especially (being) men*. *nam*, etc.: reserve the parenthesis until the end.

504. *omnibus*: emphatic, including Belgians, Celts and Aquitanians.

505. *contemptui*: see vocabulary and § 32.

506. *sese posse confiderent*: *did they trust that they could*; § 243.

CHAPTER 31.

507. *moveri, appropinquare*: progressive; see line 500; sc. *turrim* as subject.

509. *de*: see l. 111. *qui*, etc.: the construction is: *qui, locuti, dixerunt*; (who, having spoken, said), *who spoke and said*. *ad*

hunc modum: *to this effect*; this is explained by the indirect discourse **non—possent**; **dixerunt** governs **se—permittere**.

510. **non se existimare:** the negative makes a difference in the form of translation; **existimamus**, *we think*; **non existimamus**, *we do not think*; indirect discourse of the latter, *that they did not think (that, etc.)*.

511. **qui possent:** § 172. **tanta celeritate:** § 78.

512. **se:** this, as shown by **suaque omnia**, is object accusative; strictly, another **se** is to be supplied as subject accusative, but it is regularly omitted in such cases. This phrase is the formula for "surrender at discretion," or "unconditional surrender."

513. **unum petere:** **sc. se** as subject; keep the Latin order; *one thing they sought*. **unum** is explained by the clause **ne—spoliaret** (§ 208), *that he would not*, etc. In translating, place the *that* before the **si** clause. **petere ac deprecari:** (*sought and entreated*), *most earnestly begged*. Latin frequently emphasizes one idea by employing two words of similar meaning to express it; see **clementia ac mansuetudine**, l. 514.

514. **pro sua:** *in accordance with his usual*; this force of **suus** is not uncommon. **audirent:** the direct discourse would be the imperfect indicative, *were (continually) hearing of*.

515. **esse conservandos:** § 278. **se:** i.e. **Aduatucos**; § 123.

516. **armis:** § 65. **sibi:** § 33.

517. **virtuti:** § 23. **traditis armis:** *if their arms were surrendered*; § 264, 3.

518. **possent:** § 228. It might be expected that this would have been treated as a main clause, with the verb in the infinitive. **praestare:** direct discourse, **praestat**, impersonal, *it is better* (subject, **pati**); indirect discourse, *that it was better* (subject, **pati**). **si—deducerentur:** *if they were brought to this pass*, i.e. if they must submit to somebody; § 242, 1.

519. **a:** *at the hands of*.

520. **per cruciatum interfici:** (to be killed through torture), *to be tortured to death*.

CHAPTER 32.

522. **merito eorum:** (because of their merit), *because they deserved it*; § 84. **si dedidissent:** § 242, 5.

524. **prius quam attigisset:** § 181.

525. **nisi armis traditis:** see note on l. 342.

526. **in:** *in the case of*.

527. **quam:** § 139.

529. *facere*: progressive; see l. 500.

531. *summam altitudinem*: *the greatest height*, i.e. the height where it was greatest.

534. *portis patefactis*: *they opened . . . and*, etc. *die*: § 89.
pace: § 73. *usi*: see vocabulary.

CHAPTER 33.

535. *sub vesperum*: *towards evening*. Caesar uses *sub* in a temporal sense only with *lucem*, *occasum solis*, *noctem* and *vesperum*.

536. *quam*: § 139.

537. *ante inito consilio*: (the plan having been gone into before), *according to a plan previously arranged*. *ut intellectum est*: that is, by the subsequent attack.

539. *denique*: see vocabulary. *indiligentius*: the standard of comparison is often omitted when it is self-evident; so here, supply *than usual*.

540. *partim—partim*: this is in distributive apposition with *illi*, the subject of *fecerunt* below; it may be loosely translated: *some—others*.

541. *ex cortice*: § 67. *viminibus intextis*: § 71.

542. *pellibus*: § 71.

543. *qua*: adverb.

545. *fecerunt*: the whole sentence beginning with *illi* is apparently very complicated, but, like most of Caesar's long sentences, is clear and easy if the proper relation of the clauses is observed.

547. *concursum est*: (it was run together), *the soldiers all ran*; § 148. Treat in the same way *pugnatum ab hostibus est*. *ita*: *as*. *in—salutis*: see l. 453.

548. *a viris fortibus pugnari debuit*: compare l. 547.

550. *iacerent*: (*were so situated as*) *to throw*; § 168.

551. *consisteret*: see vocabulary. *ad*: adverb.

553. *diei*: § 56.

555. *Caesar vendidit*: Caesar's constant purpose in dealing with the Gauls was, indeed, to subdue them to Rome, but to make subjection as easy as possible for them; to absorb them ultimately into the Roman state as contented people, rather than to hold them down, discontented, under an iron rule. To do this he granted them easy terms, but insisted that these be strictly kept. So when a tribe broke faith with him they were made a terrible example, for the warning and ultimate benefit of the rest.

556. *miliū*: explanatory to *numerus*; § 36. The translation should be the nominative.

II. THE EXPEDITION OF CRASSUS INTO THE AREMORICAN STATES.

CHAPTER 34.

559. *miserat*: this is the first intimation of the detachment of Crassus. It must have been after the battle with the Nervii, for all the eight legions were engaged there. Crassus seems to have been a very energetic officer, who was quite capable of independent command.

561. *Oceanum*: except for the description of the geography of Gaul in Book I, Chapter 1, we have had no reference to the ocean. Of course the Atlantic is meant, although it was understood to include also the North Sea, into which the Rhine empties; see Book IV, l. 138.

III. OCCURRENCES AT THE CLOSE OF THE YEAR.

CHAPTER 35.

564. *omni Gallia pacata*: this ablative absolute should be distinguished in translation from *his rebus gestis*. The latter is the means by which Gaul was subdued: *when all Gaul had been subdued by these operations*.

565. *opinio*: see vocabulary.

566. *incolerent*: § 203.

567. *qui pollicerentur*: § 162. *daturas, facturas*: feminine, because *se* refers to *nationibus*. The conjunction *et* is omitted between these two participles, to increase the effect. There is thus brought about a kind of rhyme, which under ordinary circumstances the Romans avoided.

569. *inita aestate*: see vocabulary and l. 537.

570. *quae civitates*: (what states), *those states which*. in Carnutes, etc.: modifies *deductis*.

572. *legionibus . . . deductis*: the location of these legions was thus such that the Gallic tribes on different sides of the river could not combine. This was characteristic of all Caesar's plans.

573. *ex litteris*: on receipt of despatches. *supplicatio*: this was a religious ceremony, a thanksgiving and a rejoicing for victory, with which the people were ordered by the senate to honor the gods when there was cause for it. And now there *was* cause for it; as Plutarch says: "The enemies from the north who had so long threatened Italy had been followed to their remote fastnesses, conquered, slaughtered and sold." Now for the first time the republic was released from the fear of Gallic invasion, the only dread the Romans had.

574. *quod*: the antecedent is the preceding clause; (*an honor*) which. *accidit nulli*: note the position of the pronoun; *had been bestowed upon no one*. This action of the senate was partly spontaneous as shown above, partly political; for no doubt Caesar's supporters made the most of the opportunity to shower honors upon him for political effect. The longest previous thanksgiving was of twelve days, in honor of Pompey after the war with Mithradates.

BOOK III.

I. WAR WITH THE ALPINE TRIBES.

Fall of 57 B.C.

CHAPTERS 1-6.

After the campaign of 57 B.C. was finished, the legions, eight in all, were sent to various parts of Gaul for wintering. The twelfth legion, under Galba, was sent to open up the road leading to Italy through the Alps by way of the pass now known as the Great St. Bernard, the shortest route between Gaul and the valley of the Po. Galba's course was up the south side of the valley of the Rhone. This valley was narrow, with the mountains increasing in height as he proceeded. His camp at Octodurus was on the river Dranse near its confluence with the Rhone, upon the site of the modern Martigny. The events narrated in these chapters took place in the fall of 57 B.C., and might properly have been included in Book II, from which they were separated because perhaps of the anti-climax which they would form to the triumphant close of the latter.

CHAPTER 1.

Certain tribes, situated among the Alps, rebel; they are subdued by Galba, one of Caesar's legati, who afterward returns into the Province.

1. *proficisceretur*: for the circumstance, see Book II, ll. 568, 569. Note that the imperfect indicative was used there and that here the same tense of the subjunctive has the corresponding progressive force.

4. *ad summas Alpes*: i.e. to the watershed between the Rhone and the Po.

5. *iter . . . patefieri volebat*: keep the Latin order; *the road . . . he wished to be opened*. This route was used by Napoleon in 1800. quo: § 71.

6. *cum*: (*but only*) *with*. *periculo*: i.e. danger of attack by the lawless mountaineers. *portoriis*: if they let the traders pass unmolested, it was because the latter paid them tolls.

7. *huic*: i.e. Galba; § 128. The direct object of *permisit* is the clause *uti—collocaret*. *si arbitraretur*: §§ 229 and 242, 5; it modifies *collocaret*. *opus*: indeclinable; see vocabulary.

9. *proeliis factis*, etc.: this is the first of five ablatives absolute; the agent of the action of the first two is Galba, of the last three the Alpine tribes; so while we might begin by saying, "Galba, having fought," etc., we cannot for the fourth say, "having sent ambassadors." Translate the first two as main verbs and the last three by a causal clause; *Galba fought . . . , and captured . . . , and then, since ambassadors were sent . . . , decided*.

17. *vacuam relictam*: *left vacant*; *vacuam* is a predicate adjective.

18. *ab his*: i.e. the Gauls. It modifies *vacuam*; § 65. *cohortibus*: dative with *attribuit*.

CHAPTER 2.

20. *dies*: nominative.

22. *certior factus est*: put the *that*, which is to introduce the English indirect discourse, immediately after this phrase. *concesserat*: § 240. Contrast with *impenderent*, l. 23, which follows the general rule (§ 228).

23. *montesque*: *and (that) the mountains*.

25. *id*, explained by *ut—caperent*. *aliquot causis*: explained by *primum quod—despiciebant*, and *tum etiam quod—existimabant*; and continued in the next sentence by *accedebat quod—dolebant et—sibi persuasum habebant*.

27. *quod*, etc.: *propter paucitatem despiciebant* is to be translated directly after the *quod*. *legionem*: *the (single) legion*. *neque eam plenissimam*: (nor this very full), *this indeed having very small numbers*. *detractis duabus cohortibus et compluribus absentibus*: § 264, 2.

31. *cum decurrerent*: *would rush down*; § 172.

33. *accedebat*: see vocabulary. *suos liberos abstractos (esse)*: the indirect discourse construction governed by *dolebant*.

34. *obsidum nomine*: § 35. *Romanos conari*: the indirect discourse construction, object of *habebant*, having *persuasum* agreeing with it as predicate participle; (they had that-the-Romans-were-trying, persuaded to themselves), *they had persuaded themselves that the Romans were trying*.

35. *possessionis*: sc. *causa*, *for the sake*; § 54.

37. *adiungere*: complementary infinitive with *conari*, like *occupare*.

CHAPTER 3.

38. *hibernorum*: on the winter quarters; § 40.

39. *de*: for.

40. *satis*, *provisum*: see vocabulary.

41. *deditione*—*acceptis*: now that they had surrendered and he had received their hostages; compare II. 9–11. *nihil*—*timendum* (*esse*): (that nothing was to be feared concerning war), that he need have no fear of war.

46. *neque subsidio veniri* (*posset*): impersonal; (and it could not be come by any one for aid), and since no aid could come; § 32.

47. *interclusis itineribus*: § 264, 2. *prope*—*salute*: (safety having been now nearly despaired of), since many now almost despaired of successful resistance.

48. *eius modi*: of this sort; to this effect; § 44.

51. *parti*: § 23. *placuit*: see vocabulary. *reservato*: to reserve . . . and.

CHAPTER 4.

54. *spatio*: sc. *temporis*. *ut vix tempus daretur*: § 165. *rebus collocandis atque administrandis*: for assigning duties and carrying out the measures. For the case, see § 32. *constituisset*: § 203.

56. *decurrere*, *conicere*: § 258. So five other infinitives below.

58. *ex loco superiore*: i.e. from the rampart.

59. *nudata*: being stripped of.

61. *hoc superari*: (were overcome in respect to this), were at a disadvantage in this respect.

62. *defessi*: (when) tired out. *integris viribus*: § 80.

63. *quarum rerum*: with *nihil*; § 47.

64. *non modo*: supply another *non*, which may be omitted when a negative (here *ne quidem*) follows and when the two expressions are used with substantives which are connected with a common predicate; contrast Book II, l. 293. *defesso* (*facultas non dabatur*) *excedendi*: to a tired (soldier) was opportunity not offered, of withdrawing, etc.

65. *saucio*: like *defesso*. *eius loci relinquendi*: of leaving the place, explained by *ubi constiterat*. *facultas dabatur*: this is expressed only once in Latin, but it would best be repeated in translating, using different words, was chance given.

CHAPTER 5.

67. horis sex: § 69. pugnaretur: § 144.
 69. languidioribusque nostris: *and, because our men were fighting without much spirit.*
 70. resque, etc.: *and matters had come to the last degree of desperation.*
 73. confectum vulneribus: see Book II, l. 417, and note.
 74. et consilii magni et virtutis: §§ 44 and 110.
 75. unam esse spem, si, etc.: (that there was one hope, if they should, etc.), *that the only hope was to make . . . and try.*
 76. extremum auxilium: *their last resort.*
 78. certiores: see vocabulary. (ut) intermitterent: § 212.
 79. tantum modo: see vocabulary under tantum.
 80. post: notice that this cannot be a preposition.

CHAPTER 6.

82. iussi sunt: sc. facere, which governs quod.
 84. sui colligendi: § 273, 1.
 85. in spem venerant: see vocabulary under venio. potius-
 dorum castrorum: § 273, 2.
 86. circumventos interficiunt: *they surround and kill.*
 87. milibus amplius XXX: doubtless an exaggeration. quem
 numerum: (which number), *the number which.* quem numerum venisse
 is the subject of constabat. It cannot be translated literally, but
 constabat must be made parenthetical; *the number which, it was ad-*
mitted, had come.
 91. armis: § 65; the Gauls threw them away in their flight. exu-
 tis: agrees with copiis.
 92. saepius: see vocabulary.
 93. alio consilio: *with one design*; § 78.
 94. aliis rebus: *other matters*; § 27. meminerat: what tense in
 translation? viderat: (but) *had seen.*

II. THE WAR WITH THE VENETI.

56 B.C.

CHAPTERS 7-16.

The seventh legion under Crassus had been stationed among the Andes near the west coast. The remaining six spent the winter in the

valley of the Liger with the purpose of preventing communication between northern and southern Gaul. Caesar spent the winter in Illyricum. The various tribes of the west coast were as yet unsubdued, and did not propose to submit tamely to the conqueror. Trusting in their natural defences and their skill in seamanship, they determined to try conclusions with Caesar. This is the campaign described in Chapters 7-16. The allies of these people on the northwest were next subdued (Chapters 17-19), while Crassus was carrying on a successful campaign in Aquitania (Chapters 20-27). The year ended with a campaign against the Morini and the Menapii in the extreme northwest. Thus all the operations of the year 56 B.C. were confined to the coast regions of the west and north.

The Aremoric tribes, following the example of the Veneti, demand the return of their hostages.

CHAPTER 7.

102. *inita hieme*: see note on Book II, l. 18.

103. *Illyricum*: Caesar made no effort to enlarge the limits of this province, since it offered no such opportunities as did Gaul. It gave him no trouble except on one unimportant occasion (see Book V, Chapter 1).

104. *regiones cognoscere*: *become acquainted with the country.*

106. *adulescens*: see vocabulary and Book I, Chapter 52. *proximus*: this means *the nearest* of any of Caesar's commanders. *mare Oceanum*: see vocabulary under *mare*, and, for the case, § 33, note.

107. *is*: § 122.

108. *praefectos tribunosque*: see Introduction.

CHAPTER 8.

112. *huius*: *the last named.*

113. *omnis—earum*: (of all the sea coast of these sections), *of all the maritime states in these sections* (Holmes). *orae maritimae* = *maritimarum civitatum*, objective genitive modifying *auctoritas*; *regionum* is possessive genitive modifying *orae*.

114. *plurimas*: *the most* (i.e. of any of these states). *quibus—consuerunt*: this is parenthetical, just an interesting fact that Caesar inserts about them, having nothing in particular to do with their prestige, except that it made them a rugged set of men, thoroughly accus-

tomed to the sea in all its moods. These characteristics gave Caesar a chance to show his ability in a new kind of warfare, and he proved equal to the task.

115. *scientia atque usu: knowledge (of) and experience (in);* for the case, see § 82. *rerum nauticarum: § 40.*

116. *in magno, etc.:* a phrase primarily denoting place, and limiting *vectigalia habent*. It also expresses cause as an attendant circumstance. Translate: (in the great violence of the vast and open sea), on a coast exposed to the full violence of the sea.

117. *paucis portibus interiectis:* (only a few harbors having been thrown among), and in view of the fact that there are only a few harbors on this part of the coast, these some distance apart. *quos ipsi tenent:* (which they themselves hold), and in their own possession.

118. *omnes habent . . . vectigales:* they hold all . . . tributary. Distinguish *vectigal*, noun, and *vectigalis*, adjective. *ab—Sili:* (by these a beginning was made of retaining Silius), these began by retaining Silius.

119. *eos:* i.e. Silius and Velanius. *se:* i.e. the Veneti; subject of *recuperaturos (esse)*.

122. *subita: sudden.* *repentina: unexpected.* See Book II, Ch. 1.

125. *eundem:* (the same), together. *fortunae: battle.*

126. *ut mallent:* in translation express the verb with *permanere* and let it be understood with *perferre*.

128. *quam:* used as a comparative conjunction with the *magis* which appears in *mallent* (= *magis vellent*).

130. *si velit:* §§ 227 and 242, 1.

131. *remittat:* § 245.

Caesar prepares a fleet to subdue them.

CHAPTER 9.

133. *quod—longius:* this clause modifies *iubet*. *longius: § 116.* *interim:* i.e. while he was on his way to the scene of action.

134. *in—Ligeri:* most of Caesar's troops had spent the winter in the valley of this river.

136. *cum primum—potuit:* (when first he was able through the time of the year), as soon as the season permitted; about the first of May.

139. *simul:* at the same time (that they heard this news). It modifies *instituunt*. *quod intellegebant:* § 170. *quantum—admisissent:* object of *intellegebant:* § 243. *in se admittere:* (ad-

mit to themselves), *commit*. *facinus*: explained by the indirect discourse *legatos—coniectos, that legati, etc.*

140. *quod nomen*: (which name), *a name which*. *ad*: among.

142. *pro*: in view of.

144. *hoc maiore spe*: their hope (being) greater for this reason. *multum*: greatly; § 13. *natura*: § 72.

147. *neque nostros exercitus posse confidebant*: and they were confident that our armies could not.

148. *diutius*: longer (than the winter).

149. *ut omnia acciderent*: though everything was happening; § 199. This force of *ut*, its only occurrence in Caesar, is clearly shown by the following *tamen*.

150. *opinionem*: see vocabulary. *tamen se plurimum navibus posse*: still (they considered) that they had a very strong navy; §§ 13 and 82.

151. *Romanos*: and that the Romans. *facultatem*: great number.

153. *aliam*: see vocabulary. *navigationem*: managing ships.

154. *concluso mari*: what sea is meant?

157. *Caesarem—gesturum*: indirect discourse, subject of *constabat*.

CHAPTER 10.

163. *multa*: many (things), *considerations*. *ad*: to (undertake).

164. *iniuriae*: in apposition with *multa*; so the following *nominatives*, and the clause *ne—arbitrarentur*. *retentorum*: § 265.

165. *obsidibus datis*: translate like *post deditionem, after giving, etc.*; § 264, 1.

166. *in primis*: see vocabulary under *prior*. *ne—arbitrarentur*: (the fear) that, etc.; § 211. *hac parte neglecta*: § 264, 3.

167. *idem*: subject of *licere*. Impersonal verbs usually have only clauses or infinitives as subjects, but they may have a neuter pronoun.

168. *cum intellegeret*: § 172.

170. *studere, odisse*: §§ 140 and 221, note.

171. *prius quam conspirarent*: § 181.

CHAPTER 11.

174. *flumini*: § 33. Contrast l. 106. *huic*: § 128.

175. *adeat*: § 212.

176. *auxilio*: to help them; § 32. *arcessiti*: sc. *esse*.

183. *qui destinendam curet*: §§ 162 and 270.

186. *cum primum posset*: § 228; sc. *classis* as subject.

187. *copiis*: § 77.

The arrangement of his troops as described in this chapter well illustrates Caesar's skill as a commander. His purpose always was to keep his barbarian foes well scattered. During all of his campaigns in Gaul he had a comparatively small army. His only means of success, therefore, against the vast hordes of the Gauls was to "divide and conquer."

Description of the towns and ships of the Veneti.

CHAPTER 12.

188. *eius modi*: (of this sort), *such*. *fere*: generally. *ut habere*: § 165. *posita*: being situated.

189. *in extremis*: on the end of; § 113. *neque pedibus*: neither (by feet), by land; correlative to *neque navibus*, l. 191.

190. *cum incitavisset*: § 182. [bis]: omit.

191. *spatio*: § 105.

192. *afflictaentur*: would be stranded; § 242, 5. The condition is here understood,—if they should attempt to approach.

193. *utraque re*: (on account of each thing), on both accounts, whether the tide was flood or ebb. *ac si*, etc.: the structure of the sentence is as follows: *ac si quando*, . . . *superati*, (*extruso—adaequatis*) . . . *coeperant*, *magno appulso* . . . *deportabant*, etc.; and if ever, conquered . . . , (*extruso—adaequatis*), they had begun . . . , bringing up a number of ships, they would put on board, etc.

195. *aggere ac molibus*: ablative of means with *extruso*. *atque*: connects *extruso mari* with his (i.e. *aggere ac molibus*) *adaequatis moenibus*: § 27.

196. *fortunis suis*: § 28.

197. *cuius rei*: (of which thing), of which, referring to the ships.

198. *deportabant*: notice translation above; § 148. *omnia*: notice the emphatic position; they could load the ship at leisure with all their effects.

202. *magnis—portibus*: because the tides were high and the harbors few and (almost none) far between.

In lines 193–196 Caesar gives us a running description of the means he used to attack the strongholds of the Veneti. This has been interpreted to mean that he built two parallel dykes or embankments from the land side toward the town. At low tide, work could be carried on; and when they were joined to the town, the water was shut out and a dry passage-way from the mainland was made. This availed nothing

for the reason that, when they reached the town, the inhabitants had sailed away.

CHAPTER 13.

204. *ad hunc modum*: in this way.

205. *carinae planiores*: *erant* may be supplied here and below, but it is not necessary, as we have the same abbreviated form of expression in Eng., *bottoms flatter*.

206. *nostrarum navium*: (those) of, etc. *quo possent*: § 160.
vada ac decessum aestus: (the shallows and the ebbing of the tide), the shallows left by the ebbing tide; § 280.

209. *totae*: (whole), wholly, entirely. *ex robore*: § 67.

210. *ex—trabibus*: (out of foot-in-thickness timbers), consisting of timbers a foot thick. *digiti pollicis crassitudine*: modifying *clavis*; (characterized by the thickness of the thumb finger), as thick as a man's thumb; § 80.

212. *pro*: instead of.

213. *pro*: as; translate after *confectae*.

214. *eius*: (i.e. *lini*), its. *eo quod . . . quod*: for the following reason, which . . . because.

215. *veri*: see vocabulary and § 58. *tantas tempestates Oceani*: (so great storms of the ocean), such severe storms as those on the ocean.

216. *tantos impetus ventorum*: (so great attacks of the winds), such violent winds. *sustineri*: sc. *velis non satis commode posse*: could not very well be met with sails.

218. *cum—classi*: between these ships and our fleet; § 28. *eius modi*: see l. 188.

219. *ut praestaret*: § 165; subject, *nostra classis*, it. *una*: only.

220. *pro*: in view of. *illis*: § 33.

221. *his*: § 23. *nostrae*: sc. *naves*. *rostro*: (with the beak), by ramming.

223. *facile telum adigebatur*: (was a weapon driven to them easily), did a weapon reach them effectively.

224. *copulis*: the ancient method of fighting at sea was to grapple and fasten ships together and then fight it out hand to hand. *accedebat*: see vocabulary; the subject is the following clause.

225. *dedissent*: see vocabulary. *et*: both; omit in translation.

227. *relictæ*: (when) left. *nihil*: § 13.

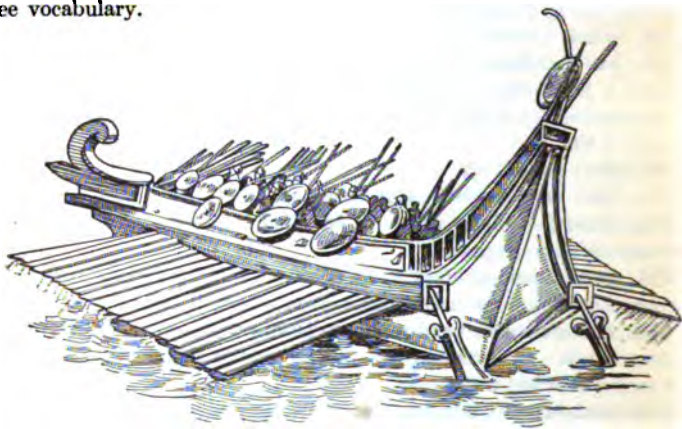
228. *navibus*: § 13 or 28. *rerum*: § 39. *casus*: occurrence. *erat extimescendus*: § 278.

The Veneti, defeated in a sea fight, surrender and are sold into slavery.

CHAPTER 14.

231. *captis oppidis*: § 264, 7. *iis*: § 26.

235. *ex portu*: Caesar's fleet had assembled at the mouth of the Liger (Loire) and sailed thence to meet the Veneti, who came out of the mouth of one of their harbors (*ex portu*). Where this harbor was is by no means certain at the present day. Napoleon claimed that the battle took place in what is now Quiberon Bay to the northwest of the mouth of the Liger. *nostris*: *sc. navibus*; § 33. *satis*: with *constabat*; see vocabulary.



WAR GALLEY.

238. *agerent*: in direct discourse, *agamus*; § 155, 2. *rostro*: § 71.

239. *noceri*: *sc. eis*, i.e. *navibus Venetorum*. *turribus excitatis*: § 264, 4.

240. *ex*: *of*. *has*: *sc. turres*.

242. *adigi*: compare l. 223. *missa*: *sc. tela*, (those) thrown.

243. *usui*: see vocabulary. *praeparata*: translate after *una res*.

244. *insertae affixaeque longuriis*: inserted in and fastened to long poles; § 27. *non absimili forma (formae) muralium falcium*: (characterized by a form not dissimilar to the form of wall hooks), much like the hooks used in pulling down walls; *forma* modifies *falces* (§ 82); (*formae*), § 33.

248. *ut eriperetur*: § 165. *cum consisteret*: § 172.

249. *Gallicis navibus*: § 28.

250. *his ereptis*: § 264, 1.

254. *paulo*: § 81. *fortius*: *braver (than usual)*.

CHAPTER 15.

257. *cum circumsteterant*: § 182. *singulas*: sc. *naves Venetorum*. *binæ ac ternæ naves (nostræ)*: the Roman ships were not necessarily more numerous, but by agreement, and through the advantage of being propelled by oars, two or three of them would close in together on one of the enemy, and thus make the danger of boarding less by doing it at several points at once. *summa vi*: see vocabulary under *vis*.

259. *quod*: *this*; subject of *feri*, which is progressive.

263. *in eam partem quo*, etc.: i.e. so as to run before the wind.

268. *cum pugnaretur*: § 172.

CHAPTER 16.

270. *Venetorum*: *with*, etc.

271. *cum . . . etiam . . . tum*: § 279, 3.

272. *gravioris ætatis*: see vocabulary under *gravis* and § 44. *consilii*: § 47.

273. *navium quod*: *what (of) ships*.

274. *fuerat*: sc. *eis* (§ 30), (had been to them), *they had had*.

275. *quo se reciperent*: (whither they might betake themselves), *a place to which they could retire*; § 156. The following clause is like it, *quem ad modum defenderent*: (after what manner they should defend), *means for defending*.

277. *in quos eo gravius vindicandum (esse)*: (that it ought to be punished more severely against these on this account), *that they ought to be punished more severely than usual for this reason*.

278. *quo diligentius conservaretur*: § 160. *reliquum*: see vocabulary.

In the latter part of Chapter 7 the cause of this war is stated. The agents of Crassus were sent to obtain supplies. These people of the coast had previously professed submission to the Romans and given hostages against breaking the truce. By retaining these agents of Crassus, they had broken their promise and Caesar resolved to take severe measures of punishment. His action seems to us unnecessarily cruel; but he was dealing with a desperate people, ready to rise in arms at the first opportunity, and his object was the conquest of Gaul. Therefore, from his point of view, no other course was feasible.

III. THE WAR WITH THE VENELLI.

56 B.C.

CHAPTERS 17-19.

Sabinus, one of Caesar's legati, overcomes the Venelli.

CHAPTER 17.

281. *dum—geruntur*: § 178.
 283. *summam imperii tenebat*: see vocabulary under *summa*.
 285. *exercitum magnasque copias*: *a well equipped army*; § 280.
 286. *his—diebus*: *within the last few days (before Sabinus arrived)*.
 287. *exercitu interfecto*: i.e. by the people. *auctores belli*:
 (promoters of the war), *responsible for the war*.
 292. *rebus*: *respects*; § 82. *limits idoneo*.
 293. *castris*: § 33. *cum consedisset*: *concessive*; § 199. *duo-*
rum milium spatio: (at a space of two miles), *two miles away*; § 103.
 295. *hostibus*: § 28.
 297. *non nihil*: see vocabulary under *nihil* and § 13.
 300. *eo absente*: *in the absence of—whom? (qui—teneret)*.
 301. *nisi aequo loco*: *unless the position was favorable*; see note on
 Book II, l. 342.
 302. *legato dimicandum (esse) non existimabat*: *translate directly*
after quod: §§ 31 and 278.

CHAPTER 18.

305. *ex iis*: (*one*) of those; § 53.
 306. *magnis praemiis pollicitationibusque*: (by great rewards and
 promises), *by promises of great rewards*; § 280.
 309. *quibus angustiis Caesar prematur*: (with what narrowness Caesar
 was pressed), *how hard Caesar was pressed*.
 310. *neque longius abesse quin*, etc.: § 214.
 312. *auxilii ferendi causa*: (for the purpose of bearing aid), *to rein-*
force him.
 314. *negotii bene gerendi*: (of carrying on the matter successfully),
of winning a victory. *ad castra iri oportere*: impersonal, (it ought
 to be gone to the camp), *they ought to attack the camp*.
 316. *superiorum dierum*: *during*, etc.; § 45. Notice the many varie-
 ties of adnominal genitive following.

317. *cui rei*—*provisum*: see l. 40, and note the dative here for *de* with the ablative there. *diligenter*: see vocabulary.

318. *spes*: *the hope (of the outcome)*. *quod*—*credunt*: in same construction as the preceding nominatives; *the fact that*, etc.

319. *credunt*: § 146.

320. *prius . . . quam sit concessum*: § 181.

323. *laeti*: § 114. *ut explorata victoria*: (as *men are*, victory having been found out), *as though they had already gained the victory*; see note on Book II, l. 342.

324. *quibus compleant*: *with which to fill*; § 165.

CHAPTER 19.

328. *minimum*: § 113. *spatii*: § 49.

330. *cupientibus*: sc. *eis*, (to them desiring it), *for which they were impatiently waiting*.

338. *equites*: nominative. *paucos*: object of *reliquerunt*.

343. *animus*: *disposition*, the emotional side of the character. *minime resistens*: (by no mean resisting), *feeble*.

344. *mens*: *intellect, resolution*.

IV. THE EXPEDITION OF CRASSUS INTO AQUITANIA.

56 B.C.

CHAPTERS 20-27.

It is stated in Chapter 11 that Crassus had been sent into Aquitania with twelve cohorts and a large number of cavalry. There seems to have been no uprising there before the arrival of Crassus, and it is likely that Caesar deemed it best to show these people of the southwest of what stuff his army was made in order that they might fear his power for all time. Having no use for his cavalry in his campaign on the coast, he sent it all, or nearly all, with Crassus, but gave him only about five thousand legionaries.

The Sotiates are conquered by Crassus.

CHAPTER 20.

347. *latitudine*: see vocabulary and § 84. *hominum*: see vocabulary. *ex*: *as*. *tertia parte*: this is inaccurate, as Aquitania, while one of the three divisions of Gaul, was much smaller than

either of the others. Perhaps Caesar thought that the Garonne had a course about due west through its entire length.

348. aestimanda: § 270, 1.

349. sibi bellum gerendum: § 278. L. Valerius, etc.: these two generals had been defeated twenty-two years before by Hirtuleius, a lieutenant of Sertorius (see l. 403). annis: § 107.

356. finitimae: agrees with civitates. his regionibus: § 33.

358. quo: § 82.

359. adorti: § 261. primum: adverb, correlative to deinde; § 115.

CHAPTER 21.

365. victoriis: § 72. This refers to ll. 350, 351.

366. autem: *while*.

367. adulescentulo duce: *under the command of a mere youth*.

368. perspicui: (*it*) *to be seen*; the subject is quid—possent. con-
fecti vulneribus: (finished with wounds), *many being wounded*; after heavy loss.

370. ex itinere: see note on Book II, l. 478.

373. cuius rei: *for in such matters*; § 58. peritissimi: i.e. of the Gauls.

375. diligentia: cause. his rebus: means. Contrast the two.

CHAPTER 22.

The structure of this sentence is as follows. Adiatunnus, . . . constus, . . . repulsus, . . . impetravit. Everything from quorum (l. 382) to recusaret is parenthetical, and should be omitted in working out the sentence until the rest is understood. cum his Adiatunnus (l. 387) is a repetition of the Adiatunnus cum DC devotis above, which is necessary on account of the long parenthesis.

379. intentis animis: *while the attention . . . was fixed*.

381. illi: i.e. the Aquitanians.

382. quorum haec est condicio ut fruuntur: *whose conditions of service are (these) that they shall enjoy*. fruuntur: § 213.

383. quorum amicitiae: *to whose friendship*; antecedent, his. de-
diderint: § 203. si: (*and that then*), *if*.

384. quid—accidat: (*if anything happens to them violently*), *if their leaders meet a violent death*, in battle or in some feud or brawl.

386. qui recusaret: § 168. eo—devovisset: (*he having been*

killed to whose friendship he had devoted himself), *after the death of his leader.*

388. clamore . . . sublato, cum: (a shout having been raised . . . , since), *since a shout was raised . . . and.*

390. repulsus; tamen impetravit: (having been driven back, he nevertheless obtained), *he was driven back; but (in spite of his violation of the agreement), he was allowed.*

391. uti—uteretur: (that he might use), *to receive*; object of impetravit; § 208.

Crassus attacks other tribes.

CHAPTER 23.

395. manu: see vocabulary.

396. paucis—erat: (within the few days within which it had been come thither by Crassus), *only a few days after Crassus had arrived.*

399. citerioris Hispaniae: § 46.

400. finitimae: agrees with quae.

Aquitaniae: § 33.

401. auctoritate: *show; éclat; display.*

403. duces vero: *as commanders, moreover.*

404. omnes annos: (all years), *constantly.* Sertorio: see vocabulary.

406. capere: *select carefully.* These men had caught the Roman tactics from Sertorius.

407. quod: *therefore; so.* animadvertit: governs the following indirect discourse.

408. non facile diduci: we say, *could not*, etc. hostem et: *that the enemy both.*

409. et relinquere: *and (at the same time) left.*

410. ob eam causam: (and that), *for this reason.*

412. cunctandum quin decertaret: § 214.

413. ad consilium: *before the council of war*; see note on Book I, l. 757.

414. pugnae: § 32.

CHAPTER 24.

415. duplici: the usual triple line would not have had front enough.

416. auxiliis—coniectis: the provincial auxiliaries were generally placed on the wings. The plan was usually to have the front of the legionaries broad enough to oppose the whole of the enemy, so that they would do all the fighting, while the enemy, seeing the wings extended

beyond them, would not try to turn the Roman flank. In the present case Crassus had not men enough for this, even with his double line, so he had to adopt the alternative. *quid caperent: (to see) what, etc.; § 243.*

417. *illi: i.e. the Gauls.*

419. *se tuto dimicaturos (esse): (that they would fight safely), that it would be safe to fight.* *tutius: contrasted with tuto; much more safe.* *esse: the subject is potiri.*

420. *obsessis, etc.: to blockade, etc. . . . and.* *sine vulnere victoria: (victory without wound), a bloodless victory.*

421. *et cogitabant: and they intended.*

422. *impeditos: (while) embarrassed.*

423. *infirmiores animo: (weaker in mind), when they would be more or less disheartened, by having to retreat.*

424. *productis copiis: § 264, 4.*

426. *sua: their, referring to hostes: § 123.*

428. *expectari—iretur: in apposition with voces; § 214.*

430. *omnibus cupientibus: (all desiring), to the delight of everybody.*

CHAPTER 25.

431. *alii multis telis coniectis: (and) others, by throwing, etc.; § 264, 7.*

433. *quibus: § 72.* *non multum confidebat: did not have much confidence; § 13.*

434. *lapidibus subministrandis, etc.: §§ 271 and 272.* *ad aggerem: the auxiliaries, not being trained like the Roman soldiers, did not attempt to scale the walls of the camp, but brought materials for a mound or causeway, by which to get at the enemy on even terms. Undoubtedly they pretended to be very busy about this, while all the time they were hoping that something would happen so that they would not have to make a direct assault.*

436. *ab hostibus pugnaretur: impersonal passive; translate personal and active.*

438. *circumitis castris: (the camp of the enemy having been gone around), who had ridden entirely around the camp.*

439. *ab decumana porta: § 98.*

CHAPTER 26.

441. *praefectos cohortatus ut excitarent: urging the prefects to arouse.*

442. *praemiis pollicitationibusque*: see l. 306.

443. *devectis*: *taking*.

444. *ab labore*: § 65.

448. *prius quam posset*: § 181.

449. *his*: *the latter*. *videri*: sc. *possent*; the subject is the same as of *convenerunt*, i.e. the Romans.

451. *quod*: the antecedent is the idea of *impugnare coeperunt*; (*a thing*) *which; as*.

456. *ex numero*: limits *parte*. *quae*: subject of *convenisse*; see l. 87.

Almost all Aquitania surrenders.

CHAPTER 27.

463. *paucae ultimae nationes*: *only a few, the most distant tribes*; (NOT, "a few of"). *tempore*: § 72.

V. CAESAR'S EXPEDITION AMONG THE MORINI AND MENAPII.

56 B.C.

CHAPTER 28.

466. *omni Gallia pacata*: *though all Gaul was subdued*; there was no more active or open hostility, but still these two tribes had not formally surrendered.

470. *longe alia ac*: see l. 153. *ratione*: see vocabulary.

473. *continentesque*, etc.: for clearness, repeat the conjunction; *and because*, etc.

476. *neque hostis*: notice number; *and not an enemy*.

479. *compluribus*: sc. *hostium*.

480. *longius*: *too far*. *secuti*: *while following*.

CHAPTER 29.

483. *ne quis*: with *impetus*; *that no*. *militibus*: ablative absolute.

485. *conversam ad*: (turned toward), *with the top of the trees toward*.

488. *extrema impedimenta*: *the rear of their baggage trains*. *ipsi*: (*and*) *they*; the pronoun marks contrast with *impedimenta*.

BOOK IV.

55 B.C.

I. WAR WITH THE GERMANS.

CHAPTERS 1-15.

By the fall of 56 B.C. almost the whole of Gaul had formally surrendered and everything seemed to point to peace. There was still a powerful war party, however, which never rested, but was constantly seeking a way to expel the Romans.

Across the Rhine the powerful German tribe of the Suebi was harassing the weaker communities, and two of the latter were finally forced to seek homes outside their own land. Four hundred and thirty thousand of them crossed the Rhine during the winter, apparently near the modern town of Cleves. In the spring they began to spread southward, and messengers from various Gallic states opened communications with them with the obvious purpose of securing a strong ally against Caesar. The latter, with his usual rapidity of movement, met them when they had no expectation of his coming, and literally annihilated them.

Just where this rout took place is uncertain, but there are strong reasons for the belief that it was not far from the junction of the Moselle with the Rhine.

The Usipetes and Tencteri, two German tribes, cross into Gaul and overpower the Menapii.

CHAPTER 1.

1. *qui*: agrees with *annus* rather than with *hieme*. The whole expression, *qui—consulibus*, is somewhat peculiar when closely analyzed, but the sense is clear enough.

2. *Pompeio, Crasso*: in the spring of 56 B.C. a famous conference between Caesar, Pompey and Crassus was held at the town of Luca, near the southern border of Caesar's province, at which it was agreed that Pompey and Crassus were to be the next consuls.

4. *Rhenum*: the Rhine formed the western boundary of Germany

down to the close of the Franco-Prussian War in 1872. quo: (whither), *into which*.

7. Sueborum gens, etc.: the following description of the manners and customs of the Germans, together with similar passages in the succeeding books, forms one of the most valuable parts of the Commentaries, being the earliest account of these matters, of any accuracy and length, that has come down to us. Whether Caesar is to be believed in his statement of the actual numbers of the Suebi is doubtful.

9. ex quibus singula milia: (from which single thousands), *from each of which a thousand*.

11. manserunt: § 149, 1. hi: i.e. reliqui.

13. agri cultura: while these Germans were practically a pastoral people, they tilled the soil to some extent. ratio atque usus: *theory and practice*.

14. privati . . . agri: property in common has always been the condition of barbarous and half-civilized peoples. We hear much, in these days, of "municipal ownership." This is but a return to primitive custom, differing only in the conditions brought about by a highly refined civilization.

15. longius anno: by this frequent change of locality, attachment to particular places was avoided and the people retained their wild character. For the case of anno, see § 69.

16. maximam partem: § 13.

18. quae res: *this sort of life*; subject of alit. genere, etc.: ablative of cause with alit.

21. immani magnitudine: § 80. corporum: we use the singular.

22. in—adduxerunt: (they have brought themselves to this custom), *they have accustomed themselves*. ut—fluminibus: in apposition with consuetudine.

23. locis frigidissimis: *though the climate is very cold*; § 264, 4. vestitus: genitive with quicquam; notice the emphatic position of the latter.

CHAPTER 2.

26. mercatoribus: § 30. magis eo . . . quam quo: § 174.

28. iumentis: ablative with utuntur.

30. pretio: § 75. importatis: (*if imported*); § 264, 3. quae . . . haec: *those which*.

32. summi—efficiunt: (they effect that they be of the greatest labor), *they make capable of the greatest labor*; § 44.

33. pedibus: see vocabulary.

34. *assuefecerunt*: § 149, 1.

38. *quamvis pauci*: *however few (they may be)*.

CHAPTER 3.

43. *a suis finibus*: *on their frontiers*. *vacare*: intransitive; hence *agros* is subject; § 257. *significari*: coördinate with *esse*; the subject is *numerus posse*; *that it is shown that a number can*.

45. *una ex parte*: see Book I, l. 32. *a*: *of*.

48. *captus*: noun. *paulo*: with *humaniores*; § 81.

49. *generis*: § 46. *ceteris*: § 69.

53. *experti . . . non potuissent*: (*having tried . . . had not been able*), *had tried . . . but had found themselves unable (to accomplish their purpose completely)*.

CHAPTER 4.

56. *in eadem causa*: *in the same situation (as the Ubii)*.

67. *reverti se*: progressive, *that they were returning*.

68. *viam*: § 12, note.

70. *qui*: *for they*.

73. *prius quam certior fieret*: § 181.

Caesar advances to meet the Germans. Their embassy.

CHAPTER 5.

78. *certior factus . . . et . . . veritus, . . . existimabat*: *learned . . . and . . . since he feared, . . . thought*.

80. *nihil his committendum*: (*that it was to be trusted these not at all*), *that they were not to be trusted at all*; §§ 13 and 23.

81. *consuetudinis*: § 46.

82. *invitos*: (*though*) *unwilling; against their will*. *cogant*: subject *Galli*; *to compel*. *quisque . . . quaque*: be sure to translate both so as to get the emphasis of the Latin.

84. *vulgus circumstat*: coördinate with *cogant*; *for the common people to surround*.

85. *quibusque*: the *-que* connects *circumstat* with *cogant*; the real subject of the latter is *vulgus*, but since this is collective and some distance away, the verb becomes plural again; translate as in l. 82.

86. *cogant*: object, *eos* (i.e. *mercatores*). *rebus*: *tales*.
 87. *summis*: *most weighty*. *quorum*—*est*: § 60.
 88. *cum serviant*: § 172.
 89. *rumoribus*: § 23. *ad voluntatem eorum*: (to their wish), *to suit them*.
ficta respondeant: see vocabulary under *tingo*.

CHAPTER 6.

91. *cognita*: *knowing*. *graviori bello*: if this affront to Caesar's position were neglected, recruits for this war would gather from Gaul and it would thus become too formidable for his comfort.

93. *ea—facta*: (that those things, which he had suspected would be, had happened), *that what he had expected would happen, had happened*; this is explained by the following clauses.

95. *Germanos*: i.e. the *Usipetes* and the *Tencteri*.

96. *postulassent*: subject *Germani*. *se*: the Gauls. *fore parata*: (would be, having been prepared), *would be prepared*. This expression takes the place of the future passive infinitive (*paratum iri*), which seldom appears outside the grammars (once in the *Bellum Gallicum*).

CHAPTER 7.

103. *delectis*: *levy*. Caesar, pretending to be ignorant of the negotiations between the Gauls and the Germans, calls upon the former to supply him with cavalry as usual, announcing his intention to wage war on the common enemy.

107. *neque priores inferre*: (were not the first of the two parties to wage war), *were not seeking a quarrel with*; § 115.

108. *tamen*: *on the other hand*. *quin contendant*: § 214.

109. *consuetudo—tradita*: compare Book I, ll. 232, 258.

110. *resistere neque deprecari*: in apposition with *consuetudo*.

111. *dicere*: *sc. se* as subject; *haec*, object, is explained by the following indirect discourse, (*se*) *venisse*, etc.

113. *attribuant vel patiantur*: § 245.

114. *quos armis possiderint*: i.e. what had belonged to the *Menapii*.

116. *reliquum . . . neminem*: *no one else*. How such statements must have startled Caesar!

CHAPTER 8.

119. *sibi cum eis*: *between him and them.*

121. *qui*: *(for those) who.*

123. *licere*: *sc. eis*; (it was permitted them), *they might.* It is unlikely that this offer was made seriously by Caesar. The Ubii had placed themselves under his protection, the only German tribe to do so, and he could hardly expect them to receive into their lands this great host. It is more than likely that this suggestion was made merely for the purpose of throwing the Germans off their guard.

126. *hoc Ubiis*: § 25. He had hostages from the Ubii (see Chapter 16), as well as ambassadors, so that he was in a position to command, if he really so desired.

CHAPTER 9.

128. *post diem tertium*: § 107.

131. *aliquot diebus ante*: § 107. Compare with the above construction.

132. *frumentandi causa*: they had eaten up all the stores of grain belonging to the Menapii in that quarter, and were in need of more.

133. *expectari, interponi*: translate in active voice; *that they were waiting for.*

Description of the Meuse and the Rhine.

CHAPTER 10.

135. *Mosa*, etc.: the Mosa (Meuse) is joined by an offshoot from the Rhine (*Vacalus*, the *Vaal*), and eighty miles from this junction the combined rivers flow into the sea. The island is formed by the Meuse, the Vaal, the Rhine and the sea.

137. *Batavi*: (belonging to the Batavi), *inhabited by the Batavi.* *neque longius inde*: *and not further than . . . from this.*

140. *longo spatio*: 850 miles.

142. *citatus fertur*: (is borne, moved rapidly), *flows swiftly.*

145. *sunt qui*: *there are (some) who.*

The Germans are conquered and flee across the Rhine.

CHAPTER 11.

147. *Caesar cum . . . legati revertuntur*: see note on Book II, l. 254.

152. *pugna prohiberet*: (keep them from a fight), *order them not to fight*.

155. *ferretur*: *offer*. *usuros*: *accept*.

156. *tridui*: § 44. *daret*: coördinate with *praemitteret*, etc.

157. *eodem illo*: adverbs; see vocabulary. It is evident that Caesar had no faith in the Germans. He believed they were trying to outwit him and gain time enough to collect their scattered forces. Ever quick to act, he had surprised them already and they did not know which way to turn.

161. *frequentissimi*: § 114. From his direction that great numbers of their chiefs should come to him, we strongly suspect that his intention all the time was to seize these leaders and thus further disconcert the German host. *convenirent*: § 245.

165. *quoad accessisset*: § 180.

CHAPTER 12.

167. *cum haberent*: § 199.

170. *nihil*: § 13.

171. *indutiis*: § 32.

174. *subfossisque equis*, etc.: *and, stabbing the horses in the belly and thus dismounting*, etc.

176. *egerunt*: sc. *eos*, with which *perterritos* agrees; *and drove them (back), so frightened*. *prius quam venissent*: subjunctive only because attracted to the mood of *desisterent*; § 181.

179. *genere*: § 67.

182. *intercluso*: § 264, 6.

183. *ipse*, etc.: *but his own horse was wounded and he himself dismounted, (yet), etc.* *quoad potuit*: § 179.

CHAPTER 13.

191. *expectare*: subject of *esse*. *vero*: emphatic; *and*.

192. *summae dementiae*: *a piece of the greatest foolishness*. *equitatus reverteretur*: Caesar saw ruin staring him in the face. For if

eight hundred Germans had routed his five thousand Gauls, what would the latter amount to when the rest of the Germans, say two thousand more, got back? His supplies and communications would be cut off, and the Gauls would probably rise in his rear.

197. *ne—praemitteret*: explains *consilio*.

199. *simulatione et perfidia usi*: apparently Caesar means to tell us that by coming to him in this way the Germans intended to employ the same treacherous tactics that the cavalry had used in attacking his forces on the previous day. Just how this could be so is not clear. It seems rather that he was seeking an excuse for his own conduct, which did not seem quite fair when he thought it over afterwards; so that he is therefore more bitter and unfair in describing their acts than in any other part of his history.

201. *natu*: see vocabulary under *magnus* and § 82. *simul ... simul*: see vocabulary.

202. *purgandi sui*: § 273, 1. *contra atque*: *contrary to what*.

204. *quid*: § 13. *fallendo*: § 267.

205. *quos sibi oblatos (esse) gavisus*: (having rejoiced that they had been offered to himself), *greatly pleased that they had put themselves in his power*.

CHAPTER 14.

209. *acie—confecto*: this is the only instance where Caesar appears to have marched any distance in the formation used for battle. The country was open; and if not using the actual formation of the *acies triplex*, it was one which could easily be deployed into it.

210. *pervenit prius quam posset*: the force of the subjunctive (§ 181) may be shown thus: *he arrived, as he intended, before, etc.*

216. *quorum, etc.*: *while their fear was being shown*.

CHAPTER 15.

225. *post—audito*: the men took post at the side of the camp that was attacked, while the women and children naturally fled to the rear. The Roman cavalry, passing around the flanks, soon overtook them, so that the German warriors heard and saw their families butchered.

229. *oppressi*: (overcome by), *yielding (to)*.

231. *ex*: *relieved of*.

232. *capitum CCCCXXX milium*: thus about a hundred thousand fighting men were killed or drowned; and doubtless nearly all the rest

of this great number were either cut down by the cavalry, were taken prisoners by the Romans or by surrounding tribes and sold as slaves, or perished from starvation, exposure or grief.

Caesar's extreme severity on this occasion caused great indignation at Rome and has been a blot upon his name ever since. He did not do things, however, on impulse and we are forced to the conclusion that he thought himself justified in this case. His great object in the conquest of Gaul was the protection of Italy. The Germans had crossed the Rhine before, and, after roaming at will over southern Gaul, had come down to the very gates of Rome itself. These barbarians must be taught to fear the power of Rome.

Again, Gaul was restless and needed only a good opportunity to make trouble for the conqueror. If these two powerful peoples should once unite, not only Caesar but Italy would be doomed. Still further, if the Gauls should behold the destruction of these invaders, they would be slow to take a chance of suffering the same fate. It was a desperate deed, but it was deliberately done; and from Caesar's standpoint, we must say that it was justifiable.

II. CAESAR'S PASSAGE INTO GERMANY.

CHAPTERS 16-19.

Wishing to show the rest of the Germans that others could cross the Rhine as well as they, Caesar builds a bridge, crosses upon it and remains in Germany eighteen days, while the Suebi retire to impenetrable fastnesses.

The foes most dreaded by all Romans were the terrible Germans. They knew their country only in the most meagre sense as bounded by the Rhine and the Danube. Thousands of these people had poured across the Rhine, and Caesar had reasons to suspect that hundreds of thousands more were ready to do the same thing. Once firmly established in Gaul, their next movement would be towards Italy. To prevent such a catastrophe was unquestionably Caesar's purpose in invading Germany. There is no reason to suppose that he ever contemplated the subjugation of that people as Gaul was to be subjugated. The moral effects of Roman skill and resourcefulness were to be propelled over the Rhine for the purpose of keeping the inhabitants of that region within their present boundaries. The purpose was achieved by

this and the subsequent expedition, and Italy was saved for centuries. It is true that the western frontier of Germany was pounded by Roman arms for generations after Caesar's time, but little impression was made, and Germany never was subdued by Roman arms.

The invasion of Britain was of a different character and undertaken solely for purposes of conquest. While Caesar seemed to have accomplished little by these invasions at the time, the effects were permanent, and Britain afterwards became a Roman province and so remained for four hundred years. His description of these two countries and their people are fragmentary and inaccurate; but they make interesting reading and are valuable as being the earliest statements made from personal observation.

CHAPTER 16.

239. *iustissima*: most important. *quod voluit*: §§ 170 and 215, 2, a.
 240. *rebus*: possessions; § 28.
 241. *cum*: (as they would) when. *et posse et audere*: both could and would.
 248. *postularent*: § 212.
 249. *Rhenum*: subject of *finire*.
 250. *se*: i.e. Caesar.
 251. *sui-imperii*: (that anything of authority be his), the right to exercise authority; *sui*, § 46; *imperii aut potestatis*, § 47.
 254. (et) *fecerant*, (et) *dederant*: predicates of *qui*. *orabant*: predicate of *Ubii*; notice tense.
 257. *modo*: notice quantity of final o. *transportaret*: § 245.
 258. *auxilium*: i.e. for the present. *reliqui temporis*: for the future; § 40. *satis*: §§ 1 and 3.

CHAPTER 17.

266. *dignitatis*: consistent with, etc.; § 46.
 267. *summae*: predicate adjective after *proponebatur*; (as being) very great.
 269. *id contendendum*: strain every nerve to accomplish it.
 271. *tigna*, etc.: logs (in pairs) each a foot and a half in thickness, sharpened slightly at the lower end, graded (in length) according to the

depth of the water he joined (by cross pieces) in such a way that they were always two feet apart. (When these [tigna bina], having been lowered . . . he had fixed . . .), when he had lowered these into the stream by means of engines and fixed them in position and driven them home by means of pile-drivers, not exactly vertical, after the manner of an ordinary pile, but inclining slightly in the direction of the current, he likewise set another pair opposite these at a distance of forty feet down the river (in such a way) that they leaned toward the flow of the current. By letting in from above beams two feet thick, (how much the joining of these piles stood apart), which was the space between the two piles of each pair, by the aid of a pair of fasteners at each end, joined to the upper end of the piles [ab extrema parte], these two pairs of piles [haec utraque] were kept at the right distance apart [distinebantur]. Since these were kept apart as well as held from spreading, such was the strength of the structure and the carefulness of the workmanship that, the [quo, § 81] greater the force with which the water drove against it, the [hoc, § 81] more firmly bound were the several parts.

Notice that this description covers one truss only. Others similarly constructed were built all the way across the river, which is about 1,200 feet wide at this point. The remainder of the description explains the means used for connecting and covering these trusses and for protecting the bridge.

Just where this bridge was located is not certainly known. The weight of evidence seems to place it between Coblenz and Andernach.

285. *haec*: i.e. the different trusses which took the place of the piers of an ordinary bridge. *materia*: either ablative of means modified by predicate adjective *iniecta*, or, with the latter, an ablative absolute denoting means (§ 264, 6).

288. *quae exciperent*: § 156.

CHAPTER 18.

294. *diebus decem quibus*: (within ten days within which), *ten days after*. This was a very rapid piece of work. There were engineers with the army who were accustomed to bridge small streams with great rapidity. This undertaking was therefore not an unusual matter except for the width and depth of the river and the consequent size of the structure. *coepta erat*: for the voice, see vocabulary.

296. *partem*: *end*.

301. *hortantibus iis*: (those urging), *upon the advice of those*.

CHAPTER 19.

310. *more suo*: § 86. *nuntios*: messengers (*to direct them*).

311. *uti demigrarent*, etc.: dependent upon the idea of announcing implied in *nuntios*.

313. *hunc—fere*: *that this place had been selected (as being) at about the centre*; § 1.

320. *et—utilitatem*: *to secure glory for himself and to be of advantage to the public interest*.

321. *prōfectum*: notice δ.

It would seem that Caesar accomplished very little by this expedition. But he had shown the Germans what he could do in the way of engineering and by this feat had increased his influence both in Germany and Gaul.

III. THE WAR WITH THE BRITONS.

CHAPTERS 20–36.

Having explored the coast of Britain, Caesar collects a fleet to make the passage.

CHAPTER 20.

326. *hostibus nostris*: dative with *subministrata*.

327. *subministrata auxilia*: there is no evidence that this was true, and Caesar himself only “understood it.” It is likely that he is merely seeking to justify his expedition.

329. *si adisset*, etc.: § 242, 5. *modo*: see l. 257.

330. *loca*: *the lie of the land*. *quae*: *for these matters*.

331. *temere adit*: (*goes rashly*), *is rash enough to go*.

332. *his ipsis*: with *notum*: § 33.

334. *vocatis—mercatoribus*: § 264, 4.

CHAPTER 21.

340. *prius quam faceret*: § 181.

342. *huic*: §§ 23 and 128.

355. *arbitrabatur*: this word becomes noteworthy when we find later that Commius joined the revolt of Vercingetorix; see Book VII, Chapter 76.

356. *magni*: § 62.

359. (*tantum*) *quantum*—*potuit*: (as much as of means could be given), *as much as opportunity allowed*; (*tantum*), adverbial accusative with *perspectis*; *quantum*, subject of *potuit*; *facultatis*, § 47. *ei*—*auderet*: *to such a man as did not dare*; § 168. This is clearly a sharp reprimand of Volusenus.



ROMAN TRANSPORTS

The Morini, from whose territory there is the shortest passage to Britain, he receives in surrender.

CHAPTER 22.

365. *superioris temporis consilio*: see Book III, Chapters 28 and 29.

366. *homines barbari*: (*being*), etc. *nostrae consuetudinis*: § 58.

367. *se*—*facturos imperasset*: direct discourse, *ea quae imperaveris faciemus*, we will do what you (shall have commanded) command; compare § 242, 5; indirect discourse, . . . *he commanded*.

368. *pollicerentur*: notice that this is coördinate with *excusarent* and translate in the same way.

371. *has—anteponendas*: (that these occupations of so little things ought to be placed before Britain), *that such unimportant matters ought to take precedence over the expedition into Britain.*

375. *quot*: (how many), *as many as.*

376. *quod—habebat*: *the warships which he had besides; navium*, § 47.

379. *tenebantur quo minus—possent*: § 161.

381. *Sabino, Cottae*: see Book II, Chapter 11.

383. *ducendum*: § 270, 2.

Caesar crosses to the island.

CHAPTER 23.

387. *tertia vigilia*: a little after midnight.

389. *cum*: *although.*

390. *ipse*: *he (without them).* *hora quarta*: about 9 A.M. The distance is about thirty miles.

393. *ita—continebatur*: (so narrowly was the sea bounded by hills), *so steeply did the cliffs rise from the sea.* This description of the coast makes it certain that he was opposite the cliffs of Dover.

396. *dum convenirent*: § 180.

399. *monuitque*, etc.: the object of *monuit* is the whole following clause; *ut* in each case means *as*, each verb that is introduced by an *ut* being attracted (§ 229) into the mood of *administrarentur*. The latter is the verb of a substantive purpose clause, whose introductory *ut* is omitted (§ 212), to avoid having the word occur twice in succession. Translate, *and advised (that) as the art of war and especially of naval warfare demands.*

400. *ut quae*: (as which), *since ships*; *quae* refers to *maritimæ res*, which easily passes into the idea of *naves*.

404. *ab eo loco*: Caesar sailed northwest to Deal.

He puts the Britons to flight. They surrender.

CHAPTER 24.

407. *quo genere*: (which kind), *the kind of soldiers which.*

408. *copiis*: § 77. *subsecuti*: seeing the fleet stand out to sea,

they guessed Caesar's purpose and marched at once to oppose his landing.

411. *militibus*: dative of agent with *desiliendum erat*: §§ 31 and 278. It is modified by *oppressis*, *who were handicapped*; § 264, 7. *ignotis locis*: *not knowing the bottom*; § 87. *impeditis manibus*: *having their hands full*; § 87. *autem*: *while*.

414. *cum illi*: *while the Britons*; § 199.

418. *pugnae*: § 54.

CHAPTER 25.

422. *inusitator*: *quite strange*. The Britons were accustomed to sailing vessels only.

425. *fundis*, *sagittis*, *tormentis*: it seems a queer combination to join two instruments for throwing (*fundis*, *tormentis*) with a class of missiles (*sagittis*, *arrows*). Translate the latter, *bows*. *tormentis*: Caesar had mounted part of his artillery on ship-board.

426. *quae res*: *a movement which*.

431. *ea res*: *his act*.

434. *praestitero*: notice the tense and translate accurately. *Whatever happens*, or some similar phrase, is implied.

438. *conspexissent*: the subject is indefinite, the men in the nearest ships. See note on Book II, l. 221.



CHAPTER 26.

AQUILIFER

442. *signa subsequi*: i.e. the standards of their several maniples. There was no orderly advance such as an army would make when on land, but each fell in as best he could behind any standard in sight. *alius*, etc.: see vocabulary and Book II, l. 364.

444. *vadis*: *the shallow places*.

446. *plures (hostes) paucos (Romanos) circumsistebant*, etc.: note the imperfect tenses for vivid descriptions.

455. *hoc unum*: refers to Caesar's inability to pursue because his cavalry had not arrived.

CHAPTER 27.

457. *simul atque receperunt*: § 176.

459. *imperasset*: *he commanded*; direct form, *imperaveris*; cf. § 242, 5.

462. *illi*: nominative plural. *cum deferret*: § 199.

463. *modo*: § 79.

466. *ignosceretur*: sc. *sibi*: § 26.

468. *bellum sine causa intulissent*: we get a glimpse here of Caesar's idea that the world belonged to Rome. Why should not these people defend their country against invasion?

469. *imprudentiae*: see note on *ignosceretur*, l. 466.

The Roman fleet being damaged by a storm, the Britons form a conspiracy.

CHAPTER 28.

475. *rebus*: *means*. *post—quam*: this cannot be construed literally, since *post* takes an object as a preposition meaning *after*, and then is followed by *quam*, *than*, as if it were an adverb meaning *later*. Translate, *on the third day after he had come*, and see note on Book I, l. 176.

479. *Britanniae*: § 27. *viderentur*: *were in sight*.

482. *ad inferiorem partem*: i.e. to the southwest; see Book V, Chapter 13.

483. *suo*: *to themselves*; § 43.

484. *ancoris iactis*: § 264, 4. *complerentur*: *began to fill*.

485. *adversa*: see vocabulary. *in altum provectae*: (being borne into the deep), *put to sea and*.

CHAPTER 29.

488. *aestus maximos*: the tides in the English channel are notably high, as much as twenty feet, while the rise off the coast of Italy is only a few inches.

490. *transportandum*: § 270, 2.

496. *id*: the antecedent is the whole idea of *magna totius—facta est*. *id quod*: (that which), *as*. See also *necesse* in vocabulary.

499. *usui*: see vocabulary and § 32.

500. *omnibus*: § 27. *constabat*: see vocabulary.

CHAPTER 30.

502. principes: subject of duxerunt:
 506. hoc: § 84.
 508. factu: § 276.
 509. rem: *the campaign*.
 510. his: i.e. this detachment of Romans.

Caesar repairs the ships.

CHAPTER 31.

516. ex eo quod: *from the fact that*.
 517. fore id quod accidit: (that that would be which happened), *that that would happen which actually did*.
 518. ad omnes casus: *for any emergency*.
 519. quae . . . naves, earum: *of those ships which*.
 521. ad eas res: *for this purpose*.
 524. reliquis ut navigari posset: (that it could be sailed by the rest), *that the rest could sail*. For condensing this with effecit, see note on Book II, l. 92.

The Britons are routed in battle and flee.

CHAPTER 32.

527. frumentatum: § 275.
 529. ventitaret: notice the *frequentative* verb.
 532. quam—ferret: *than usual*; see vocabulary under fero.
 533. id quod erat: (that which was), *the truth*; compare l. 517. This is explained by the following clauses, aliquid—initum (esse) consilii, *that some new plan*, etc.
 537. paulo longius: *some little distance*; §§ 81 and 116.
 543. dispersos: agrees with nostros understood from l. 542.
 544. incertis ordinibus: *they had bewildered the ranks and, etc.*; § 87.

CHAPTER 33.

548. perequitant: subject, essedarii. ipso: *simply*.
 549. equorum: *inspired by their horses*; § 40.
 553. illi: *the fighting men*.

556. tantum efficiunt: *they are so skilful.* usu: *as a result of,*
etc.; § 84.

557. incitatos: *when at full speed.* sustinere: *to control.* brevi:
modifies both moderari and flectere; see vocabulary.

558. per temonem, etc.: merely a circus trick.

CHAPTER 34.

561. quibus rebus: *under these circumstances.* nostris: dative
with auxilium tulit, modified by perturbatis. novitate: § 84.

564. quo facto: (which having been done), then.

565. suo: see vocabulary.

568. (ei) qui: i.e. the Britons.

569. quae continerent: § 168.

574. sui liberandi: § 273, 1. si expulissent: § 242, 5.

CHAPTER 35.

577. idem quod acciderat fore: see l. 517. Explained by the follow-
ing clause, namely, that, etc.

582. diutius: *very long.*

583. tanto spatio: § 103. cursu et viribus: *hard running*; § 280.

584. efficere: *cover.*

After receiving hostages, Caesar returns to Gaul.

CHAPTER 36.

590. propinqua die, infirmis navibus: ablatives absolute. From vari-
ous calculations concerning the moon it has been estimated that Caesar
spent about three weeks in Britain.

595. infra: *below; down*; i.e. to the southwest. See l. 482.

IV. CAESAR SUBJUGATES THE REBELLIOUS MORINI AND MENAPII. A THANKSGIVING DECREED BY THE SENATE.

CHAPTER 37.

599. primo, etc.: *at first with not such a very large,* etc.

601. celeriter, etc.: this forms the contrast to primo, etc., above.

CHAPTER 38.

613. *quo se reciperent*: compare Book III, l. 275. *quo perfugio*: *the refuge which*; translate after *siccitates*.

621. *His rebus gestis*, etc.: compare the similar ending of Book II.

622. *supplicatio*: it would appear that Caesar had accomplished comparatively little in the campaign of 55 B.C. He had, however, crossed the Rhine and the Channel, two feats never before attempted by a Roman general. The people of Rome had little knowledge of either Germany or Britain. Hence this opening up of new lands excited great interest in the minds of a conquest-loving people; and in the same manner as had been the case two years before, the popular enthusiasm was worked by the politicians for all it was worth, in the face of the opposition of the conservative party, so that unheard-of honors might again be bestowed upon the coming man.

BOOK V.

54 B.C.

I. CAESAR'S JOURNEY TO ILLYRICUM. SUPPRESSION OF THE PIRUSTAE.

CHAPTER 1.

2. *Italiam*: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul. See note on Book I, l. 168.

4. *naves aedificandas*, etc.: § 270, 2.

5. *earum*: i.e. of the *naves aedificandae*, of course. *modum*: size.

9. *minus magnos fluctus*: the choppy seas of the English Channel are notorious, but the reason can scarcely be the one assigned; rather its shape and narrowness.

10. *onera*: sc. *transportanda* from l. 11.

11. *paulo latiores*: sc. *facit*, from l. 7.

13. *quem ad rem*: *and for this purpose*. *multum adiuvat*: *was a great help*. *ea quae usui*, etc.: Spain furnished especially ropes, iron and other metals.

15. *Illyricum*: this was a part of Caesar's province of Cisalpine Gaul.

21. *omnibus rationibus*: *by all (reasonable) means*.

II. CAESAR'S SECOND EXPEDITION TO BRITAIN.

CHAPTERS 2-23.

The dissensions of the Treveri are settled.

27. *conventibus peractis*: i.e. the matters of the province had been adjusted.

30. *studio*: § 84. *in*: *in spite of*.

31. *cuius*: attracted to case of antecedent; translate as if *quod*.

32. *instructas*: i.e. the frames were in position. *neque multum*, etc.: § 214.

37. *traiectum*: noun, explained by *transmissum*, noun; see vocabulary.

38. rei: *purpose*, i.e. to carry out his orders. militum: with quod; § 47.

41. veniebant: denoting habitual action, shown by concilia, plural; § 148.

CHAPTER 3.

43. equitatu: § 71 or § 82. See also Book II, l. 400, etc.

45. supra: see Book III, l. 173. duo: this was a situation quite to Caesar's liking. "If a kingdom be divided against itself, that kingdom cannot stand."

47. alter: *the latter*, as shown by l. 51.

49. in officio futuros: *would do their duty; would remain faithful*.

51. cogere: complementary infinitive with statuit.

58. ab eo petere: *to talk with him*.

59. quoniam possent: notice mood; § 170. civitati: consulo with accusative, *to consult*; with the dative, *to consult the interests of*.

60. veritus: agrees with Indutiomarus.

61. sese, etc.: (*saying that*) he (Indutiomarus), etc.

CHAPTER 4.

68. quaeque—deterret: *and what cause detained him from his determined purpose*.

72. nominatim: *expressly*.

73. evocaverat: the subject is Caesar. consolatus (est): *he consoled him* for being deprived of his son and other relatives.

76. quod, etc.: (which he not only understood to be done by himself in accordance with his merit), *for Caesar not only considered that this was happening to him deservedly, but also thought, etc.* cum . . .

tum: § 279, 3.

77. magni: § 62.

78. suos: refers to Cingetorix.

80. qui fuisset: *while he, etc.*; § 199.

82. dolore: *grievance*; § 84.

Caesar collects his forces at Wissant; Dumnorix, again treacherous, is summoned back from flight, and while resisting arrest is killed.

CHAPTER 5.

88. invenit: contrast with cognoscit, l. 84.

89. numero: § 82. milia: in apposition with equitatus.

CHAPTER 6.

93. *de quo ante*, etc.: see Book I, Chapters 16–20.

96. *imperii*: § 58, and so *navigandi*, l. 103. *magni animi*: of a high spirit; § 44.

101. *id factum: this fact.* *suis hospitibus*: i.e. the friends of Dumnorix. *ille*: Dumnorix.

103. *quod: because (as he said)*; § 170.

104. *id: this request.*

107. *territare*: coördinate with *hortari* (sc. *coepit*); the indirect discourse that follows, to *necaret*, explains this phrase.

108. *causa*: i.e. some secret motive.

110. *hos omnes*: this alludes to the Gallic hostages whom Caesar intended to take to Britain with him.

111. *interponere*, etc.: like *trepidare*; see vocabulary.

113. *intellexisse*: direct discourse, *intellegerimus*, future perfect indicative.

CHAPTER 7.

115. *quod tantum tribuebat: because he was accustomed to pay so much respect.*

118. *progredi*: progressive; *was going.* *prospiciendum*: sc. *staturebat.*

119. *quid*: § 13.

124. *cognosceret*: coördinate with *contineret.*

130. *retrahi*: an unusual use of the infinitive.

132. *qui: since he.* *praesentis*: sc. *ipsius (Caesaris).*

134. *manu*: see vocabulary.

By contrast with his treatment of Dumnorix four years before, this incident shows what a mastery over Gaul Caesar had obtained, or, rather, thought he had obtained.

Caesar leads his army into Britain and puts to flight the natives.

CHAPTER 8.

141. *pro tempore*, etc.: see vocabulary under *tempus.*

142. *pari*: = *eodem.*

146. *delatus*: i.e. to the northeast.

147. *relictam*: far away.
 148. *secutus*: taking advantage of.
 150. *laudanda*: § 270, 1.
 157. *privatis*: belonging to officers and traders.

CHAPTER 9.

162. *cohortibus decem*: probably two from each legion.
 164. *navibus*: § 28. *in—aperto*: on a smooth and open shore.
 168. *equitatu atque essedis*: § 77.
 172. *domestici belli causa*: for use in civil war.

The fleet is wrecked by a storm and repaired on shore.

CHAPTER 10.

185. *extremi*: only the rear, i.e. of the Roman detachment.
 187. *afflicta*: dashed against one another.

CHAPTER 11.

193. *resistere*: see vocabulary. Caesar did not wait for the legions, but returned to the shore ahead of them.
 195. *sic*: namely. *amissis navibus*: § 264, 4.
 196. *reliquae refici posse viderentur*: (the rest seemed to be able to be repaired), it seemed possible to repair the rest.
 200. *res erat multae operae ac laboris*: §§ 44 and 110.
 208. *summa—administrandi*: the general control and conduct of the war.
 211. *milia passuum LXXX*: i.e. this distance north of Caesar's landing place.
 212. *huic—intercesserant*: between him and the other states, in former times, constant warfare had existed; now he was the defender of the whole nation.

Description of Britain and its inhabitants.

Caesar's object in writing these details about Britain, and in Book VI about the Germans and the Gauls, is to satisfy a very strong and en-

lightened curiosity at Rome about these strange new countries. Thus Cicero writes to his brother to tell him all about the island. Compare foreign interest in America at the time of its discovery, and our own in African explorations.

CHAPTER 12.

216. *quos—dicunt*: (whom they say it to have been handed down in memory to have been born on the island), *who, they say there is a tradition, were born on the island*; i.e. they thought that the inhabitants of the interior were indigenous or autochthonous, i.e. sprung from the soil.

220. *quibus pervenerunt*: (having sprung from which states, they came thither); *from which they have come*.

223. *aedificia Gallicis consimilia*: "according to Strabo, the Gallic houses were large, built of planks and watling, of a round form, with a high roof. They were sometimes thatched; see Chapter 43."—LONG.

226. *plumbum album*: in Cornwall, not in *mediterraneis regionibus*.

227. *ferrum*: in Sussex, quite a distance inland. Caesar got the two reversed.

230. *fas*: what is right according to divine law; *ius*, what is right according to human law. So *fas non putant* means that they had religious scruples against eating these things. *animi—causa*: (for the pleasure of the mind), *for pleasure*; § 280.

231. *sunt temperatiora*: *have a more even climate*.

CHAPTER 13.

233. *triquetra*: the statement of the shape of Britain is roughly accurate; but his distance of 500 miles is too great by over 150 miles if a straight line be taken.

235. *quo . . . appelluntur*: (whither . . . are driven), *where . . . land*; note *adpello*, &c.

238. *ad Hispaniam*: of course this is utterly wrong. *qua ex parte*: cf. *una ex parte*, Book I, l. 31.

239. *dimidio*: § 81. England is two and a half times greater than Ireland.

240. *pari spatio*: § 80. *atque*: see vocabulary under *par*.

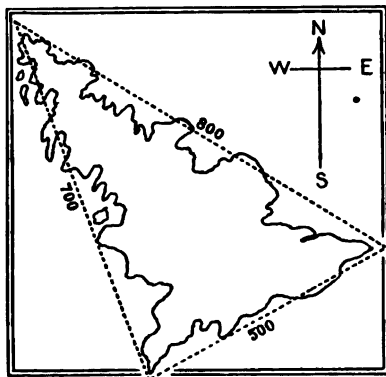
244. *noctem esse dies XXX*: here Caesar has trace of the fact that the length of the day and night grows more unequal at the solstices the

farther we recede from the equator, and his measurement (l. 246) substantiates it, but he could not generalize from it. This statement would not be true even for the northernmost islands about the coast of Britain.

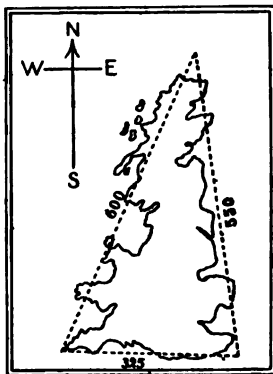
248. *DCC milium*: this distance is too great by 90 Roman miles.

250. *maxime ad Germaniam*: in general toward Germany; another error.

251. *octingentum*: this distance is too great by 90 Roman miles.



BRITAIN AS CAESAR THOUGHT IT WAS.



BRITAIN AS IT WAS.

These statements of Caesar are not intended to be regarded as anything else than summaries of the most apparently accurate reports which he could get from traders. He feels bound to tell what he can, but his words *circiter*, *ut existimatur*, etc., show that he would not vouch for the facts.

CHAPTER 14.

260. *aspectu*: § 82. *capillo promisso, corpore rasa*: § 80.

262. *uxores*: accusative. *deni duodenique*: distributives; (*ten* together and twelve together), *ten or twelve together*.

265. *quo—deducta est*: (whither each maiden was first led away), *by whom each maiden was first espoused*. *deducta* refers to the custom of conducting a bride from her father's house to that of her husband.

Caesar crosses the Thames, defeats the Britons, and subdues their leader, Cassivellaunus.

CHAPTER 15.

271. *spatio*: sc. *temporis*, and contrast with *loci spatio*, l. 276.

275. *atque his primis (cohortibus)*: *and these, too, the first cohorts*, which were composed of veterans.

277. *per medios*: for their tactics, see Book IV, Chapter 33.

CHAPTER 16.

286. *ad*: *to fight with; to cope with*.

287. *illi*: the Britons.

288. *cederent*, etc.: *would retreat*; for the subjunctive, see § 228; if the indicative were used, it would be the imperfect, to denote habitual action; § 148.

290. *dispari proelio*: (in unequal battle), *with great advantage*. [*Equestris—inferebat*]: omit. No satisfactory idea can be gotten out of the sentence.

295. *defatigatis*: § 27.

CHAPTER 17.

302. *ab . . . non absisterent*: *were close to*.

304. *subsidio*: § 72.

306. *sui colligendi*: § 273, 1.

309. *summis copiis*: *even with their strongest forces*.

CHAPTER 18.

313. *pedibus transiri potest*: i.e. *is fordable*.

319. *ea, eo*: *such*.

320. *cum—exstarent*: (though they stood out of the water with the head only); what does this mean?

321. *ut*: translate after *ierunt*.

CHAPTER 19.

328. *iis regionibus*: ablative of separation with *compellebat*.

332. *omnibus viis semitisque*: ablative of means.

333. *nostrorum equitum*: objective; *to our cavalry*.

334. *cum his*: i.e. *cum milibus circiter quattuor essedariorum*.

335. *relinquebatur*: *the result was*.

336. *discedi*: impersonal; (it to be departed), *any one to depart*.
tantum . . . quantum: (only) *as much . . . as*. (in): omit. *agris*,
 etc.: ablative of means.

337. *hostibus noceretur*: § 26.

338. *labore atque itinere*: *laborious marches*; § 280.

Surrender of the Trinovantes and several other states.

CHAPTER 20.

347. *Cassivellauni*: § 39.

348. *qui—obtineat*: § 162.

351. *obsides ad numerum*: (hostages to the number), *the required number of hostages*.

CHAPTER 21.

352. *defensis*: i.e. from *Cassivellaunus*. *militum*: sc. *nostro-
rum*: § 39.

357. *autem*: *now*.

358. *silvas impeditas*: *an impassable piece of woods*; i.e. they would select a place that was almost impenetrable anyway, fortify a part of it and call it a town.

CHAPTER 22.

381. *quid . . . vectigalis*: § 49. Not a sesterce of this tribute was ever paid, and Caesar never returned; not until 43 A.D. did a Roman again set foot on the island, when half the island was subdued, though never assimilated like Gaul into the Roman empire. But Caesar accomplished much, if not all that he wished, by his second invasion, since he showed the Gauls that neither the Rhine nor even the Ocean could stop him from an expedition in force.

Caesar's return to Gaul.

CHAPTER 23.

389. *ac sic accidit*, etc.: compared with the brilliant achievements of his first years in Gaul, Caesar was now accomplishing little. So he magnifies matters of less importance, and even mentions negative matters, such as *not* losing ships.

395. *locum caperet*: *made the port*; i.e. were able to reach Caesar again.

398. *aequinoctium*: thus Caesar spent about two months in Britain.

399. *tranquillitate*: this does not mean that there was no wind, but that the sea was smooth.

III. THE WAR WITH AMBIORIX.

CHAPTERS 24-52.

The Roman legions are distributed among more states than usual.

CHAPTER 24.

402. *Samarobrivae*: §§ 91 and 93.

413. *et cohortes quinque*: Caesar then mentions the dispositions for eight and a half legions. Just how or to what extent the number was last increased he does not tell us, but it appears that he had a levy during the summer, for in Book II, Chapter 2, he raises the number of legions to eight, and when he went to Britain in this campaign he took five legions with him and left three with Labienus. As any levy would probably have included an entire legion, we may perhaps conclude that he now had nine in all and kept five cohorts with him in Samarobriva. See note, l. 802.

From this arrangement of the army in winter quarters we may very reasonably infer that Caesar saw trouble brewing in Gaul and made the best possible arrangements to meet it.

418. *inopiae*: § 23.

422. *milibus—continebantur*: this might be supposed to mean that all except Roscius were contained within a circle of 50 miles' radius, so that no two were more than 100 miles apart. This, however, was not actually the case. But no one of these camps was more than a hundred miles from at least two others.

423. *quoad—cognovisset*: § 180. It modifies *morari*.

Tasgetius, a friend of Caesar, is killed by his enemies.

CHAPTER 25.

425. *summo loco*: § 67.

428. *singulari*: predicate; translate after *opera*. *usus*: see vocabulary.

429. *tertium—regnantem*: (him reigning now the third year), *just at this time, in the third year of his reign*.

430. *auctoribus*: *approving*; used like an adjective, as is *victor*, frequently.

431. *ad plures* (sc. *res*, *nom.*) *pertinebat*: (*the affair pertained to more*), *many were involved*.

434. *quorum*: antecedent, *nos*.

The Eburones under the lead of Ambiorix and Catuvolcus attack the camp of Sabinus and Cotta.

CHAPTER 26.

439. *diebus*, etc.: see Book III, l. 396.

441. *cum fuissent*: § 199.

442. *Sabino Cottaeque*: § 27.

450. *aliqui*: singular, instead of the more usual *aliquis*.

A conference being held, Ambiorix advises the Romans to leave. The legati disagree.

CHAPTER 27.

458. *plurimum debere*: *that he was greatly indebted.* *ei*: i.e. Caesar. *confiteri*: predicate of *sese*, and governing *plurimum debere*.

465. *non minus iuris in se*: *as much authority over him.*

469. *ut confidat*: *as to believe*; § 165.

471. *omnibus hibernis oppugnandis*: § 32. So *subsidio* below.

473. *negare*: *to say "No."*

475. *quibus*: i.e. the Gauls. *pro pietate satisfecerit*: *had done enough to prove his patriotism.*

477. *pro hospitio*: *in consideration of the ties of hospitality.*

479. *conductam*: (*had been*) *hired (and)*.

480. *ipsorum esse consilium*: *their (the Romans') best move was.* *velint-ne*: *whether they wished to do so (or not).*

485. *quod cum faciat*: (*when he was doing this*), *in doing this.* *consulere*, *referre*: progressive.

CHAPTER 28.

491. *civitatem—ausam (esse)*: subject of *erat credendum*; *that the state had dared . . . , was scarcely*, etc.

503. *quid esse levius*, etc.: § 246.

CHAPTER 29.

505. (*se*) *facturos*: *that they would act.* *clamitabat*: note tense.

508. *Caesarem profectum*: governed by *arbitrari*, whose subject is *se*, understood.

510. capturos fuisse : § 242, 4. The condition is supplied by *aliter* = *quae si ita non essent*.

511. si adesset, venturos : § 242, 2. nostri : § 43.

512. auctorem : § 2, note. rem: *the facts of the case*.

514. mortem Ariovisti: from this we may assume that Ariovistus died soon after his defeat by Caesar.

517. hoc: *of this*, explained by *sine—descendisse*; § 25. sibi: *him*, i.e. Sabinus.

519. in utramque rem: *in either event*. si esset, perventuros: § 242, 5.

521. si consentiret, esse: § 242, 1.

523. habere: § 246.

CHAPTER 30.

526. in utramque partem: *on each side*.

527. primis ordinibus: = *centurionibus primorum ordinum*. resisteretur: § 26.

530. qui terrear: § 168. gravissime ex nobis: the use of the second person, when really including the speaker, is sometimes found in English; as we might say, "I'm not the greatest coward of you."

531. si acciderit, repescant: § 193. gravis: *very serious*.

532. qui: *since they*. si liceat, sustineant: § 194.

The Romans abandon their camp; on the march they are surrounded by the Eburones and all killed.

CHAPTER 31.

536. consurgitur ex consilio: *the council rises*. comprehendunt: *sc. centuriones as subject*.

541. dat manus: ("throws up his hands"), *yields*.

543. vigiliis: *without sleep*.

544. quid: (*to see*) *what*.

546. omnia, etc.: *everything is thought of that is calculated to prevent their remaining without danger, and to increase the danger through the weariness and sleeplessness of the soldiers; i.e. it seems as though they omitted nothing that would make their destruction certain. Others render: Every reason is thought of, to show that they cannot remain without danger, and that the danger will be increased, etc.; i.e. they tried to persuade themselves in every way that this was their best course.*

549. ut, etc.: *like men who were persuaded that the idea had been suggested (consilium datum).*

CHAPTER 32.

554. a milibus, etc.: see Book II., l. 122.

559. nostris: modifying iniquissimo; § 33.

CHAPTER 33.

561. qui providisset: § 173. It gives the reason for *trepidare* only.

562. *trepidare*, etc.: § 258. *haec ipsa*: sc. *fecit*.

563. *ut*: in such a manner that. *omnia*: all his wits.

569. *imperatoris officia praestabat*: did the duty of a general.

572. *pronuntiari*: impersonal; (it to be announced), *command to be given*.

575. *militibus*: § 28.

579. *quae—que*: the *-que* connects *discederet* and *properaret* (subject *quisque*).

581. *fletu*: a sign of anger, not of weakness.

CHAPTER 34.

582. *barbaris*: § 30. *consilium*: *cunning*.

584. *illorum*: § 46. *discederet, esse*: see note on Book II, l. 175.

585. *reliquissent*: *left*; in direct discourse *reliquerint*, future perfect indicative, (shall have left), *leave*.

586. *existimarent*: § 245. [*erant—pares*]: omit.

CHAPTER 35.

596. *cum excesserat*: § 182.

602. *sin vellent*: § 242, 3.

606. *resistebant*: *continued to resist*; § 148.

608. *ipsis*: § 83. *Balventio*: § 32.

CHAPTER 36.

618. *si velit, licere*: § 242, 1.

620. *quod—pertineat*: subject of *posse*; *what pertained*. *ipsi*: §§ 23 and 26. *vero*: at any rate. *nihil*: § 13.

621. *nocitum iri*: only occurrence of this form in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

622. *ut*: translate before *si videatur*.

624. *sua*: though grammatically referring to *se* (Sabinus), it undoubtedly is intended to include Cotta.

625. *in eo*: *in maintaining this attitude*.

CHAPTER 37.

626. *quos tribunos*: = *eos tribunos quos*. *in praesentia*: *at the time*.

629. *Ambiorigem*: § 33, note.

640. *illi*: i.e. the rest of the Romans.

This was the most serious reverse Caesar suffered in Gaul. The annihilation of over 5,000 Romans at once aroused Gaul to the fact that they were not invincible, and a new hostility to the conqueror arose. We are told by the Roman historian Suetonius that, upon receipt of the news of this disaster, Caesar vowed that he would not cut his hair or beard until he had inflicted revenge upon its authors.

The winter quarters of Cicero are attacked by the Eburones, aided by the Aduatuci and the Nervii.

CHAPTER 38.

651. *sui liberandi*: § 273, 1.

654. *nihil esse negotii*: see Book II, l. 280. *oppressam legionem interfici*: (that the legion, overpowered, be killed), *in overpowering and wiping out*.

CHAPTER 39.

669. *is dies sustentatur*: (this day is sustained), *that day the attack is sustained*; cf. Book II, l. 101.

CHAPTER 40.

673. *si pertulissent*: implied indirect discourse; § 242, 5.

674. *missi*: (those sent), *the messengers*.

683. *ad*: *to meet*. *opus*: indeclinable; *necessary*.

CHAPTER 41.

697. *eos*: i.e. Cicero and his men.

698. *iis qui*, etc.: i.e. Caesar and the other *legati*. *rebus*: *situation*; § 23.

701. *per se*: see Book I, l. 827.

706. *utantur*: § 245.

707. *se*: subject of *sperare*; *sc. eos* as subject of *imperaturos esse*. *pro*: *by*.

CHAPTER 42.

709. *vallo*, etc.: the genitives indicate the height of the wall and the width of the ditch.

711. *de exercitu captivos*: *men who had been prisoners in the Roman army.*

717. XV: this is undoubtedly wrong, but just what the numeral should be we do not know.

719. *idem*: see vocabulary.

CHAPTER 43.

723. *casas*: which the soldiers had built for winter use.

742. *introire*: i.e. to come out of the tower and inside the rampart.

743. *quorum nemo*: *but not one of them.*

744. *deturbati*: sc. *hostes* as subject, and *sunt*.

CHAPTER 44.

747. *appropinquarent*: i.e. they were well along in the line of promotion; were approaching the point where they would become *centuriones primi ordinis*; § 168.

749. *alteri*: § 27. *anteferretur*: § 243. *loco*: *promotion.*

762. *Pulloni*: § 28.

764. *conanti*, etc.: sc. *ei* (§ 28); (the hand to him trying), *his hand, when he tries*, etc.

765. *laboranti*: sc. *ei* (§ 27), *comes to his aid while thus endangered.*

768. *rem gerit*: *engages.*

776. *anteferendus videretur*: *it seemed, ought to be considered superior.*

By the arrival of Caesar the siege is raised; the enemy are put to flight.

CHAPTER 45.

777. *quanto*: (by how much), *the*; § 81. *in dies*: *from day to day.*

779. *res—pervenerat*: (the thing had come to fewness of defenders), *only a few were left to continue the defence.*

780. *tanto*: (by so much), *the*; § 81; correlative with *quanto*, l. 777.

783. *nomine*: § 82. *loco honesto*: § 67. *prima*: § 113.

786. *has*: *this*, the letter.

CHAPTER 46.

790. *Caesar*: he was at Samarobriua (Amiens).

794. *cum nuntio*: i.e. as soon as possible after receipt of the order.

796. *rei publicae commodo*: *with advantage to the public interests*; this is the form of a discretionary order, such as Caesar would give only to Labienus.

798. *veniat*: § 212 or § 245.

800. *proximis hibernis*: i.e. those about Samarobriua.

CHAPTER 47.

801. *hora tertia*: assuming that Crassus started at midnight, he had made good time for a night march, for the soldiers were undoubtedly *sub sarcinis*.

802. *certior factus*: Caesar does not wait for the actual arrival of Crassus, but as soon as he was certain of his approach he starts on his relief expedition, leaving word for Crassus to take command at Samarobriua. Caesar must have had with him the legion either of Trebonius or of Plancus; see Chapter 24. We may conjecture that one of these had been encamped *near* the town, and that the half legion of recruits which he does not account for in speaking of the dispositions for the winter was *in* the town (see note, l. 413), and held it during the short interval that passed between Caesar's departure and the arrival of Crassus. Caesar thus starts with a fresh legion and replaces it by that of Crassus.

806. *relinquebat*: notice tense.

807. *non ita multum*: *not so very much*; a reprimand.

810. *similem*: (*which would seem*) *like*.

CHAPTER 48.

820. *unum auxilium*: *his only hope*.

832. *casu adhaesit*: (clung by chance), *happened to stick*.

834. (*epistulam*) *perlectam recitat*: *he reads the letter by himself and then aloud*.

CHAPTER 49.

846. *animo*: § 82.

854. *vix*, etc.: (belonging to), *containing scarcely*, etc.

856. *angustis viarum*: *by narrowing the streets of the camp*.

857. *contemptionem hostibus*: see Book II, l. 295.

CHAPTER 50.

863. *si*: (*to see*) *if*; § 243, note. *suum locum*: *position of his own choosing*.

871. *concursari*, *agi*: impersonal passive; *they should run about and act*.

CHAPTER 51.

877. *seu quis Gallus, etc.*: (*that*) if any one, whether Gaul, etc.

880. *obstructis portibus*: § 264, 4.

881. *ea: sc. viâ, that way; there.*

CHAPTER 52.

889. *neque, etc.*: take the negative with *parvulo*; he saw that if there was any lack of vigilance a great disaster might occur.

891. *institutas*: which had been erected by the Romans; § 264, 7.

893. *decimum quemque*: (each tenth man), one out of ten.

901. *quod detrimentum . . . hoc*: (*that*) this defeat which.

IV. MOVEMENTS OF THE SENONES AND THE TREVERI.

CHAPTERS 53-58.

Hearing of the slaughter of the Eburones, Indutiomarus withdraws his forces. Caesar prepares to spend the winter in Gaul.

CHAPTER 53.

907. *fama perfertur*: for the Gallic method of spreading news, see Book VII, ll. 40-47.

912. *Indutiomarus*: see Chapters 3, 4, 26 and 47 of this book.

916. *tribus*: those of Crassus and Cicero, and the one he had brought from Samarobriua (that of Trebonius or Plancus). *trinis*: the distributive, to show that *hibernis* is plural in sense.

919. *de Sabini morte*: when Sabinus was killed.

921. *quid reliqui consilii*: what further plans.

925. *quin acciperet*: § 214; it explains *solicitudine*.

926. *in his: sc. nuntiis*; among these reports.

CHAPTER 54.

934. *territando*: § 267.

945. *valuit*: see vocabulary; the subject is the following clause; *that some had been found (to be) leaders.*

946. *voluntatem commutationemque*: change of sentiment; § 280.

951. nobis: § 28. idque, etc.: *and I do not know whether (-ne) this is so much to be wondered at.*

952. cum—tum: § 279, 3. (ei) qui praeferebantur: *(those) who used to be considered superior.*

953. virtute: § 82. gentibus: § 27. tantum eius opinionis: object of deperdidisse. se—deperdidisse: indirect discourse governed by dolebant, the subject of which is (ei), antecedent of qui, l. 952.

The Treveri under the lead of Indutiomarus attack the camp of Labienus.

CHAPTER 55.

962. cum dicerent: compare §§ 171 and 172.

CHAPTER 56.

971. veniri: *that individuals and embassies were coming.*

972. facinoris: Caesar terms it a "crime" for men to attempt to gain freedom from Rome. Compare Book IV, l. 468.

975. hoc: nominative, referring to armatum concilium.

976. more: § 86. quo: (whither), *to which.*

977. armati: predicate adjective.

CHAPTER 57.

990. rei bene gerendae: *of gaining a success.*

991. cogitabat: *(but) was planning.*

996. sub: *close to.*

Indutiomarus being killed, Gaul is restored to quiet.

CHAPTER 58.

1008. magna contumelia verborum: (great insult of words), *most insulting words.*

1012. perterritis, etc.: *(that), when the enemy was, etc.*

1013. fore sic ut accidit: cf. Book IV, ll. 517 and 533.

1014. petant: § 212.

1016. spatium nactum effugere: (to escape, having found space), *find opportunity to escape.*

1018. hominis: = eius, i.e. Labienus.

1021. redeuntes equites: nominative; i.e. after killing Indutiomarus, they go after the rest. quos: *as many as.*

BOOKS VI AND VII.

CAMPAIGN OF 53 B.C.

The season of 53 B.C., which is the subject of Book VI, saw no great enterprise carried out by Caesar. The Gauls were restless, and Caesar contented himself with keeping them in order and taking vengeance upon certain sections for their temerity in attacking his troops. He also crossed the Rhine for the second time, but accomplished little on the German side of the river. On the whole, this was a season of comparative quiet in Gaul, though there were signs of the great storm which was to break in the following year.

Book VI contains also an interesting account of the manners and customs of the Gauls and Germans (Chapters 11-28).

CAMPAIGN OF 52 B.C.

In 52 B.C. occurred the last and greatest struggle for independence for Gaul, a thrilling narrative, well set forth in Book VII. Under the leadership of the greatest man of his race, Vercingetorix, the Celts rose to expel the invaders and set their country free. This young man was brave, energetic, able; but it was a hopeless struggle, and he became merely the martyr of a lost cause. The sympathy of all the world has been his for almost two thousand years, and so it will be while liberty has an advocate left.

The scene of these stirring events is in central Gaul. The people of this section had learned that Rome itself was rent with factional strife. Thinking that Caesar would be embarrassed by affairs at home, they determined to strike again for freedom. Caesar was in Italy. The legions were quartered at Agedincum, the chief town of the Senones in the north, two hundred miles from the centre of rebellion, which was in the country of the Arverni.

The first outbreak took place at Cenabum, one of the important towns of the Senones. This was attacked, and every Roman put to death. Within a day's time the news of this attack reached Gergovia, the capital of the Arverni and the home city of Vercingetorix. This was admirably located on a mountain two thousand feet above the sea. The country of the Arverni also was protected by a frontier

formed by the Cevennes Mountains, as yet blocked by snow to the depth of six feet. Consequently the Gauls never dreamed that Caesar, who had only a handful of troops, could cross this range, and Vercingetorix was a hundred miles away intent upon keeping Caesar from joining his troops. Suddenly, however, Caesar appeared in the plain, having shovelled a path over the mountains. Vercingetorix hastened home to protect his capital. But Caesar, leaving a small force, went back over the mountains, gathered some cavalry, and passed swiftly around Vercingetorix and Gergovia, and rejoined his troops at Agedincum. Thus the Gallic leader was outwitted and failed in his first design.

Vercingetorix knew full well that his vast army of undisciplined recruits would be no match for the Roman legions in a pitched battle, so he adopted the plan of burning and laying waste the whole country and thus starving the Romans. The Gauls burned their towns and farms. Twenty towns of the Bituriges were destroyed by fire in a single day. Avaricum, however, was not destroyed. This Caesar besieged and captured. Of forty thousand people within its walls only eight hundred escaped death. Gergovia, the mountain stronghold of the Arverni, was next attacked, but it could not be taken. After suffering a loss of forty-six officers and seven hundred men, the Romans gave up the attack and retired. This was the only failure ever encountered by Caesar in Gaul, when he was with the army in person.

This acknowledgment of defeat aroused tremendous enthusiasm among the Gauls. They had him beaten now, as they thought; so they were rash enough to risk a battle in open field. The result was their defeat with great loss and flight to Alesia, another mountain fortress, situated in the country of the Mandubii, on the slope of the modern Mont Auxois, where now stands the French village of Alise-Sainte-Reine. Into this town Vercingetorix passed with 80,000 men. Caesar immediately undertook the siege, and built the most elaborate works ever undertaken. The story of this attack and defence is wonderfully interesting as related in this book. The result was the final destruction of the army of Gaul and the capture of the brave young leader. Thus ended the campaign, and Gaul never more attempted to throw off the Roman power.

APPENDIX

The grammars cited are those of Gildersleeve (G.), Allen & Greenough (A.), Bennett (B.), Harkness (H.), and West (W.).

SYNTAX OF NOUNS

Agreement of Appositive and Predicate Substantive. G. 321, 211; A. 184, 185; B. 169, 168; H. 393; W. 291, 292, 290.

- 1 **RULE:** An appositive or a predicate substantive agrees in case with the word it explains; when possible, it agrees in gender and number also.

reperit ipsum esse Dumnorigem, I. 18, 3, *he finds that Dumnorigis is THE VERY ONE.* *cōniūrandi hās esse causās*, II. 1, 2, *that the causes of uniting were THESE.*

In these examples both words are accusative in Latin and nominative in English, but the rule holds equally.

- 2 An appositive is placed beside the word it explains without a connecting verb.

NOTE.—When an appositive has also a predicate force, it is often best shown in translation by inserting the word *as*.

hominēs bellicōsōs . . . finitīmōs habere, I. 10, 2, *to have warlike men (AS) NEIGHBORS.* *liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūci iūssit*, II. 5, 1, *he ordered the children to be brought to him (AS) HOSTAGES.*

- 3 A predicate substantive occurs after *sum*, and *fiō*, *become*, *videor*, *seem*, *appear*, *appellor*, *be called*, etc. See § 17.

qui Celtæ appellantur, I. 1, 1, *who are called CELTS.* So II. 4, 10.

- 4 An appositive may explain in part the word it modifies; e.g. *alius*, *alter*, *pars*. This is called *distributive apposition*.

Helvētī, . . . alīī vadis Rhodanī, I. 8, 4, *the Helvetians . . . SOME by the fords of the Rhone.*

NOMINATIVE CASE.

Subject of Verb. G. 203; A. 173, 1; B. 170; H. 387; W. 289.

- 5 **RULE :** The subject of a finite verb (i.e. one that has person and number) is in the nominative.

The subject of an infinitive is regularly in the accusative (§ 257). But the subject of the historical infinitive is in the nominative (§ 258).

VOCATIVE CASE.

Vocative of Address. G. 201, Remark 1; A. 241; B. 171; H. 402; W. 307.

- 6 **RULE :** The name of a person or thing addressed is in the vocative.

It is independent of the rest of the sentence in construction, and therefore has no real syntax (i.e. relation to another word).

dēsilite, commillitōnēs, IV. 25, 6, *jump down, FELLOWS !*

ACCUSATIVE CASE.

Accusative of Direct Object. G. 328-330; A. 237; B. 172-174; H. 404, 405; W. 308-310.

- 7 **RULE :** The direct object of a verb is in the accusative.
- 8 Many verbs of emotion and the like, which are intransitive in English, may be transitive in Latin; they then require the addition of a preposition in translating, as follows: *queror complain (of)*, *contendō, strive (for)* *labōrō, labor (for)*, *horreō, shudder (at)*, *dēspērō, despair (of)*, etc.; the last only in the ablative absolute passive (see vocabulary).
- 9 Some verbs of motion, usually intransitive, may be used transitively, especially *fugiō, flee*, and its compounds *dēfugiō* and *effugiō*, in the sense of *escape, shun* or *avoid*. See vocabulary.

Accusative with Compounda. G. 331; A. 237, *d*, 289, 2, *b*; B. 175, 2, *a*, 179; H. 406, 413; W. 311.

- 10 **RULE :** Verbs compounded with prepositions take the accusative, *when they become transitive*, as follows: all with

circum, per, praeter, trans and subter, many with ad, in and super, some with ante, con, inter, ob and sub.

Id Helveticū transibant, I. 12, 1, *THIS the Helvetians* (were going across) *were crossing*. suos circumvenire, II. 8, 4, *to surround HIS MEN*.

So praecedunt in the following example, a very unusual use. See lexicons.

reliquos Gallōs praecedunt, I. 1, 5, *they* (go before) *surpass* THE REST OF THE GAULS.

- 11 If the simple verb is transitive, the compound verb may take two accusatives, (1) one the object of the verb, (2) the other of the preposition. In the passive the object of the verb becomes the subject (1), the object of the preposition (2) remains accusative.

trēs partēs¹ cōpiarū id flūmen² trādūxerunt, I. 12, 2, *they have led* THREE FOURTHS¹ *of their troops across* THIS RIVER.² So II. 5, 4. multitudō¹ Rhēnū² trādūcitur, I. 31, 16, A GREAT NUMBER¹ *is being led across* THE RHINE.² So II. 4, 1.

With many of these compounds the preposition may be repeated, but never circum.

Accusative of Inner Object (Accusative of Result Produced).

G. 332, 333; A. 288; B. 176, 2; H. 409; W. 812, 818.

- 12 RULE: Neuter pronouns and adjectives are often used to define or modify the substantive idea that lies in the verb.

idem cōnārī, I. 3, 5, (to attempt THE SAME THING), *make the same attempt*. id eis persuādere, I. 2, 3, (to persuade them IT), *to persuade them of it, or to persuade them (to do) it*.

NOTE.—When this accusative takes the form of a noun of kindred derivation or signification with the verb, it is called the *cognate accusative*. Examples in English are,—*to dream a dream, to run a race, to see a sight or vision*.

tridui viam prōcedere, I. 38, 1, *to proceed* A three days' MARCH. So IV. 4, 5.

Accusative of Extent in Degree (Adverbial Accusative). G. 334;

A. 240, a, b; B. 176, 3; H. 416, 2; W. 816.

- 13 RULE: The accusative is used adverbially to denote extent in degree.

This accusative answers the question, *How much? To what extent?* It is an extension of the preceding use (§ 12), and is mostly confined to the neuter singular of adjectives and pronouns (often classed as adverbs), e.g. multum, *much*, plūs, *more*, plurimum, *very much, very, the*

most, paulum, a little, nihil, not at all, quid (indefinite), at all, aliquid, nōn nihil, somewhat, etc. It also includes some special expressions.

plūrimum posse, I. 3, 7, II. 4, 5, *to be the most powerful.* *māximam partem vivunt*, IV. 1, 8, *they live for the most part.*

Accusative of Extent in Time and Space (Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space). G. 335, 336 ; A. 256, 2, 257 ; B. 181, 1 ; H. 417 ; W. 324.

- 14 **RULE :** Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

This construction appears in English as one form of the *adverbial objective* (see translation of examples below). It answers the question, *How long ? How far ?* Or, with *longus, lātus* or *altus*, simply, *How ?*
rēgnum multōs annōs obtinēre, I. 3, 4, *to hold royal power many years.* *mīlia passuum CCXL patēre*, I. 2, 5, *to extend two hundred and forty miles.*

Two Accusatives, one of the Person, the other of the Thing.
 G. 339 ; A. 239, 2, c ; B. 178 ; H. 411 ; W. 318.

- 15 **RULE :** Verbs of *asking, demanding, teaching* and *concealing* may govern two accusatives, (1) one of the person, (2) the other of the thing.

With verbs of *asking* and *teaching*, the English may also have the same construction, e.g. *he asked me¹ my opinion,² he teaches me¹ Latin.²* With the verb *to demand*, the name of the person is expressed *with of*; and with *to conceal*, with *from*, e.g. *he concealed it² from me.¹*

Aeduōs¹ frūmentum² flagitāre, I. 16, 1, *he was demanding (§ 258) grain² (of) the AEDUANS.* Only example in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

In the (rare) passive of this construction, either of the accusatives may become nominative, the other remaining accusative.

NOTE.—Verbs of asking more frequently express the person by the ablative of source (§ 67).

ab eō pōstulāre, I. 34, 1, *to demand of him.*

Two Accusatives of the Same Person or Thing. G. 340 ; A. 239, 1, a ; B. 177 ; H. 410 ; W. 317.

- 16 **RULE :** Verbs of *naming, making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing* and the like may govern two accusatives of the same person or thing.

quem vergobretum appellant, I. 16, 5, *whom they call "VERGO-*

BRET." *Caesarem certiorē faciunt*, I. 11, 4, (they make CAESAR MORE CERTAIN), *they inform Caesar*.

- 7 In the passive of this construction the first accusative becomes subject nominative, the second a predicate nominative (§ 8).

(*Caesar*) *certior fiēbat*, II. 1, 1, (CAESAR was made MORE CERTAIN), *Caesar was informed*. See also example under § 8.

Two Accusatives with Compounds. See § 11.

Terminal Accusative (Place to Which, Place Whither). See § 94.

Accusative, Subject of Infinitive. See § 257.

Accusative with Prepositions. G. 416; A. 152, *a*; B. 141; H. 420; W. 242.

- 8 The accusative is used with all prepositions which do not govern the ablative. For the list of the latter and of those that govern either case, see § 90.

DATIVE CASE.

Dative of Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs. G. 345; A. 225; B. 187, 1.; H. 424; W. 326, 327.

- 19 **RULE:** The dative is used to denote the indirect object, with transitive verbs which already have a direct object expressed or understood in the active voice, or which are in the passive.

It is translated in English by the indirect object or by *to* or *for*, and may be distinguished from other uses of the dative translated by the same prepositions by inquiring if it *can* be translated by an indirect object.

ei *filiam suam dat*, I. 3, 5, *he gives HIM his daughter*, or, *he gives his daughter TO HIM*. *ea res est Helveticis enūtiata*, I. 4, 1, *this conspiracy was made known TO THE HELVETIANS*, or, *was told THE HELVETIANS*.

illis regna conciliare, I. 3, 6, *to win (FOR) THEM the power*.

- 20 Some verbs, especially *dōnō*, *present*, *circumdō*, *put around*, *surround*, and *circumiciō*, *throw around*, may take either (1) the dative of the person and (2) the accusative of the thing, or (3) the accusative of the person and (4) the ablative (of means) of the thing. See next page.

patrem 'civitate' *dōnāre*, I. 47, 4, to present HIS FATHER' WITH CITIZENSHIP; 'this might have been written, *patri* 'civitatem' *dōnāre*, to present HIS FATHER' CITIZENSHIP.' Compare VII. 11, 9. *circumiectā multitudīne hominū tōtis mōenibus*, II. 6, 2, (a multitude of men having been thrown around THE WHOLE WALLS), after stationing a large force of men all around the walls.

- 21 In Caesar *circumdō* always takes the accusative and the ablative, except in VII. 72, 3, where there is the accusative of the thing and the locative ablative.

Dative of Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs. G. 346; A. 226; B. 187, II; H. 424; W. 330.

- 22 **RULE:** The dative is used to denote the indirect object with intransitive verbs.

fortūnae cedere, VII. 89, 2, to yield TO FORTUNE.

Under this construction is included the so-called

Dative with Special Verbs. G. 346; A. 227; B. 187, II. a; H. 426, 1, 2; W. 330 f.

- 23 **RULE:** With certain verbs the Latin uses a dative which with the corresponding English verbs is translated by an objective. These are,—

"Verbs of advantage or disadvantage, yielding and resisting, pleasure and displeasure, bidding and forbidding."—GILDERSLEEVE.

"Most verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, spare."—ALLEN AND GREENOUGH.

"Verbs signifying favor, help, injure, please, displease, trust, distrust, command, obey, serve, resist, indulge, spare, pardon, envy, threaten, believe, persuade, and the like."—BENNETT.

"Verbs meaning to please or displease, command or obey, serve or resist, benefit or injure, favor or oppose, trust or distrust, and the like; and to indulge, aid, spare, pardon, believe, persuade, flatter, threaten, envy, be angry, and the like."—HARKNESS.

"Verbs meaning to favor, please, trust, assist, and their opposites: command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, pardon, spare, persuade, and the like."—WEST.

A dative put, remember, pray,
 After *envy*, spare, obey,
Persuade, believe, command ; to these
 Add *pardon*, *succor* and *displease*;
 With *vacāre*, to have leisure,
 And *placēre*, to give pleasure,
 With *nūbere*, of the woman said,
 The English of it is *to wed*.
Servire add, and add *studēre*,
Heal, *favor*, *hurt*, *resist* and *indulgēre*.—GILDERSLEEVE.

civitatī persuāsit ut exirent, I. 2, 1, *he persuaded (THE STATE) THE CITIZENS to emigrate.* *novīs imperiīs studēre*, II. 1, 3, *to desire CHANGES OF GOVERNMENT.*

- 24 The verbs in the *Bellum Gallicum* that take the dative under this rule, with the number of times the dative is used with them, are as follows: *persuādeō* (17), *studeō* (16), *noceō* (6), *parcō* (6), *resistō* (5), *ignōscō* (3), *indulgeō* (3), *placeō* (3), *pareō* (3), *cōfidō* (3), *dēspērō* (3), *diffidō* (2), *serviō* (2), *faveō* (2), *imperō* (2), *cupiō* (1), *dēnūntiō* (1), *invideō* (1), *medeor* (1), *temperō* (1), *obtemperō* (1), *repūgnō* (1); perhaps also *prōsum* (1), *cōsulō* (9), *prōspiciō* (2); and *audiens sum* (4) = *oboediō*, *obey*, and *fidem habeo* (1) = *cōfidō*; and *satis faciō* (4).

- 25 Some of these verbs may also take as a direct object an accusative of a neuter pronoun, an accusative and infinitive, or a clause. But the English, having translated the dative by a direct object, has to express the Latin accusative by some other method. See the first example under § 23 and the second under § 12.

- 26 In the passive these verbs are used impersonally, thus: *mihi persuādētur*, I. 40, 3, (it is persuaded me), *I am persuaded*. So *tibi persuādētur*, *you are persuaded*, *ei persuādētur*, etc.

Dative with Verbs compounded with Prepositions. G. 347; A. 228; B. 187, III; H. 429; W. 332.

- 27 **RULE:** The dative of indirect object is used with many (but not all) verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, *super*, and sometimes with *circum*.

This dative is due to the meaning of the compound verb and really follows the principles laid down in §§19, 22 and 23.

1. When one of these prepositions is compounded with a transitive verb, there may be both an accusative and a dative, and the construction is that of § 19; the dative is usually rendered as the object of a preposition suggested by the Latin verb.

finitimis bellum inferre, I. 2, 4, *to wage war on THEIR NEIGHBORS*.
his legatos praefecit, II. 11, 3, *he placed legati in command of THESE*.

2. When the simple verb is intransitive the construction is the same as that of § 22; if the English verb used in translation is transitive, the dative is translated by the objective (compare § 23); otherwise as the object of a preposition suggested by the Latin.

omnibus praestare, I. 2, 1, *to surpass ALL*. *Rēmis studium prōpugnandi accessit*, II. 7, 2, (a desire of fighting forth came to **THE REMI**), *a disposition to make sorties was inspired in the Remi*.

The *intransitive* verbs in the *Bellum Gallicum* that take the dative under this rule, with the number of times the dative is used with them, are as follows: *appropinquō* (11), *occurrō* (10), *succedō* (6), *subveniō* (4), *obveniō* (3), *intercedō* (2), *succurrō* (2), *accedō* (1), *adsum* (1), *insistō* (1), *obsistō* (1), *praestō* (1), *succumbō* (1).

Note.—The passive of these verbs must be used impersonally; compare § 26.

Quibus rebus occurrendum est, I. 33, 5, (it must be run against WHICH THINGS), *these conditions must be met*. *huic rei praevertendum existimavit*, VII. 33, 3, *this matter he thought should be forestalled*.

Dative of Reference. G. 345, 352; A. 235; B. 188; H. 425, 4; W. 335.

- 28 **RULE:** The dative denotes the person with reference to whom a statement is true.

This use of the dative may be tested by trying the translation "*with reference to*"; it is frequently rendered by a possessive. It does not modify the verb directly but belongs to the thought of the whole predicate.

Caesarī ad pedēs sēs prōiēcērunt, I. 31, 2, (they threw themselves, WITH REFERENCE TO CAESAR, at his feet), *they threw themselves at Caesar's feet*.

millitibus spem minuit, V. 33, 1, (WITH REFERENCE TO THE SOLDIERS, it lessened hope), *it lessened the soldiers' hope*.

Dative of Separation. G. 345, 1; A. 229; B. 188, 2, *d*; H. 427; W. 337.

- 29** This term is applied to a dative of reference which occurs with verbs of *taking away* and the like, usually with verbs compounded with *ab*, *dē* or *ex*. It is usually best translated as the object of the preposition *from*, suggested by the verb, though the Latin thought was simply *with reference to* (§ 28).

Aeduīs libertātem ēripere, I. 17, 4, *to take away liberty FROM THE AEDUANS. hostibus spēs discēssit*, II. 7, 2, *FROM THE ENEMY hope departed.*

Dative of the Possessor. G. 349; A. 231; B. 190; H. 430; W. 340.

- 30** **RULE:** The dative is used with forms of the verb *sum* to denote the person possessing the subject.

In this construction three points are to be noticed:

	<i>Person Possessing.</i>	<i>Verb.</i>	<i>Thing Possessed.</i>
Latin	mihi, dative	est	liber, nominative
English	I, nominative	have	a book, objective

nōbīs nihil est, I. 11, 5, (nothing is *TO US*), *we have nothing.* *nōbīs est in animō iter facere*, I. 7, 3, (to make a march is *TO US* in mind; *we have it in mind to march*), *we intend to march.* *potestās erat nūllī*, II. 6, 3, (the power was *TO NO ONE*, *NO ONE* had the power), *no one could.*

Some compounds of *sum*, especially *absum* and *dēsum*, also take this construction.

Dative of (Apparent) Agent. G. 354, A. 232; B. 189; H. 431; W. 339.

- 31** **RULE:** The dative is used to denote the agent with the passive periphrastic conjugation or the gerundive alone.

Since the preposition *by* is used to express agency in English, it must be employed in translating this dative. For the passive periphrastic conjugation, see § 278.

mihi expectandum est, I. 11, 6, (it must be waited *BY ME*), *I must wait.* *omnibus Gallis idem est faciendum*, I. 31, 14, *the same thing must be done BY ALL THE GAULS.* (*mihi*) *dubitandum est*, II. 2, 5, (it ought to be hesitated *BY ME*), *I ought to hesitate.*

Dative of the Object for Which (Dative of Purpose or End).

G. 356; A. 233; B. 191; H. 433; W. 341-343.

- 32 **RULE:** A dative is used to denote the object for which a thing serves, or the purpose of an action.

This may be accompanied by another dative of indirect object or of reference, and the construction is then sometimes termed the *double dative*,—*object for which* and *person to whom*.

The dative of the object for which is literally translated as the object of the preposition *for*; but the best translation when used with a form of *sum* is by a predicate noun; in most other cases after *as*.

equitatus quem auxiliō Caesarī Aedui miserant, I. 18, 10, *the cavalry which the Aeduians had sent to Caesar (FOR AID), AS AN AUXILIARY FORCE*. So II. 8, 5. *Gallis impedimentō erat*, I. 25, 3, *it was (for) A DIS-ADVANTAGE to the Gauls*. *praesidiō impedimentis erant*, II. 19, 3, *(were for a guard to the baggage), guarded the baggage*.

Dative with Adjectives. G. 359; A. 234; B. 192; H. 434; W. 333.

- 33 **RULE:** Adjectives of *likeness*, *fitness*, *friendliness*, *nearness*, and the like, with their opposites, are modified by a dative.

proximī Germānīs I. 1, 4, *nearest (to) the Germans*. So II. 3, 1. *castrīs idoneus*, I. 49, 1, II. 17, 1, *suitable for a camp*.

An adverb derived from such an adjective may also take this construction.

legiōnī feliciter, IV. 25, 3, *fortunately for the legion*.

Note.—*Propior* and *proximus*, and corresponding adverbs, *may* govern the accusative, as if prepositions.

proximī Rhēnum, I. 54, 1, *nearest the Rhine*. So III. 7, 2.

GENITIVE CASE.*I. Genitive with Nouns.*

Adnominal Genitive (Genitive with Nouns). G. 360, 1; A. 213; B. 195; H. 439; W. 347.

- 34 **RULE:** A substantive in the genitive is used to limit or describe another usually denoting a different person or thing.

The genitive with nouns is usually equivalent to the English possessive case or to the objective with *of*, but the following subdivisions of its use need to be distinguished.

Appositional Genitive. G. 361, 1; A. 214, *f*; B. 202; H. 440, 4; W. 348.

- 35 The genitive is sometimes used in the sense of an appositive after such words as *vox*, *expression*, *nōmen*, *name*, *verbum*, *word*, etc.
nōmen obsidum, III. 2, 5, *the name (of) HOSTAGES*.

Epexigetical Genitive (Explanatory Genitive, Genitive of Material). G. 361, 2; A. 214, *e*; B. 197; H. 440, 4; W. 348.

- 36 The genitive is sometimes used to explain the noun it modifies.
locus grātia, I. 18, 8, *a position OF FAVOR*. *cōpia pābuli*, II. 2, 1, *plenty OF FODDER*.

Possessive Genitive. G. 362; A. 214, 1; B. 198; H. 440, 1; W. 353.

- 37 The possessive genitive designates a person, more rarely a thing, to whom something (denoted by the modified noun) belongs. It may include the idea of origin or of fitness.

finēs Belgārum, I. 1, 5, II. 2, 6, *the territory OF THE BELGIANS*.

- 38 Possession in the first and second persons and in the third person *if reflexive* is indicated by the possessive adjectives (possessive pronouns), instead of by the genitive of a personal pronoun. But when *omnium* is added, *nostrum* and *vestrum* (genitives plural of *ego* and *tū*) are used. Distinguish these forms from *nostrī* and *vestrī*, used as objective genitives (§ 43).

prōvinciam nostram, I. 2, 3, *OUR province*. *suīs finibus*, I. 1, 4, *from THEIR OWN territory*. *in eōrum finibus*, I. 1, 4, *in THEIR (i.e. some one's else) territory*. *omnium vestrum cōsensū*, VII. 77, 4, *by the consent OF YOU all*.

Subjective and Objective Genitives. G. 363, 364; A. 213, 1, 2; B. 199, 200; H. 440, 1, 2; W. 350, 351.

- 39 The subjective genitive (§ 39) and the objective genitive (§ 40) are
 40 used *only with nouns having corresponding verbal ideas*.

When the thought of the two words is expanded into a sentence, the genitive is *subjective* if it would become the subject of an active verb in such a sentence, *objective* if it would become the object of an active verb or the subject of a passive verb, or any adverbial modifier.

The subjective may also be described as denoting the one *on whose part* the action takes place or the condition is true; the objective as denoting that *toward which* the action is directed, or *with reference to which* the condition is true.

SUBJECTIVE: *occāsus sōlis*, I. 1, 7, (the setting OF THE SUN), *sunset*; the sun sets; the setting on the part of the sun. *omnium opiniō*, II. 3, 1, *the expectation OF ALL*; all expected; expectation on the part of all. *patrum nostrōrum memoria*, II. 4, 2, *the memory (OF OUR FATHERS) of the last generation*; our fathers remembered; memory on the part of our fathers.

OBJECTIVE: *rēgnī cupiditās*, I. 2, 1, *desire (of) FOR ROYAL POWER*; royal power was desired; desire directed toward royal power. *eārum rērum memoria*, II., 4, 3, *the memory OF THESE DEEDS*; remembering these deeds.

- 41 The sense is the only guide to the relation of the two nouns, for in an isolated expression it may be impossible to tell which is meant. E.g. *amor Dei*, *the love of God*, may mean in either Latin or English, (1) *the love which God has for some one, love on the part of God* (God loves), subjective, or (2), *the love which some one has for God, love directed toward God* (God is loved), objective.

To avoid this ambiguity both languages may substitute prepositional phrases for the objective genitive, Latin *in*, *ergā*, English *for*, *toward*, *to*.

Diviciaci (subjective) *summum in populum Rōmānum studium*, I. 19, 2, *the great devotion OF DIVICIACUS TO THE ROMAN PEOPLE*. *dēspēctus in mare*, III. 14, 9, *a view OF THE SEA*. So *ergā*, V. 54, 4.

- 42 Both these genitives may be connected with the same noun. *veterēs Helvētiōrum* (subjective) *iniūriæ populī Rōmāni* (objective), I. 30, 2, (THE HELVETIANS' ancient injuries OF THE ROMAN PEOPLE), *the ancient injuries inflicted by the Helvetians upon the Roman people*.
- 43 The subjective genitive, like the possessive (§ 38), is used only of the third person, not reflexive. For the first and second persons and the third person *if reflexive*, the possessive adjectives (possessive pronouns) are used. But for the objective relation in such cases the forms *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostrī* and *vestrī* are generally used.

SUBJECTIVE: *sui mōrēs*, I. 4, 1, *THEIR customs*. *nostra memoria*, II. 4, 7, *OUR memory*. But, *scelus eōrum*, I. 14, 5, *THEIR crime*. OBJECTIVE: *sui potestās*, I. 40, 8, *a chance OF (getting at) HIM*. But *suum periculum*, IV. 28, 2, *danger TO THEMSELVES*.

Genitive of Quality (Descriptive Genitive, Genitive of Characteristic). G. 365; A. 215; B. 203; H. 440, 3; W. 354.

- 4 The genitive, *when modified by an adjective or its equivalent*, is used to denote a quality.

levis armātūrae Numidae, II. 10, 1, (Numidians OF LIGHT ARMOR), *light-armed Numidians*. *hominēs māgnae virtūtis*, II. 15, 4, *men OF GREAT BRAVERY*.

With this use compare the ablative of quality (§ 80). The use of the genitive is limited chiefly to essential qualities and is therefore used of number, measure, time and space; but often the use seems indifferent.

- 15 Under this use is included the *genitive of measure*. *trium mēnsium molita cibaria*, I. 5, 3, *THREE MONTHS' flour*; i.e. *flour enough to last three months*.

NOTE 1. The adjective may be implied in the noun.

tridnī viam, I. 38, 1, IV. 4, 5, *a THREE DAYS' march*.

NOTE 2. This genitive may be connected with the predicate.

erat altitūdō pedum trium, II. 18, 3, *the depth was (OF) THREE FEET*.

Predicate Possessive Genitive. G. 366; A. 214, c; B. 198, 3; H. 439, second part, and 3; W. 359, 360.

- 46 The possessive genitive may be used in the predicate, with a form of *sum* or a similar verb. *Sum* with this construction may often be translated *belong to*.

quid suī sit cōsiliī ostendit, I. 21, 2, *he shows* (what is OF HIS PLAN, what belongs to his plan), *what his plan includes*. *iūdicium est imperātōris*, I. 41, 3, *the decision is THE COMMANDER'S, belongs to the commander*.

Gallia est Ariovistī, I. 45, 1, *Gaul belongs to Ariovistus*.

Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole). G. 367-372; A. 216; B. 201; H. 440, 5-444; W. 355-358.

- 47 The partitive genitive denotes the whole of a class, of which the modified noun denotes a part. It is used especially as follows:

- 48 (1) With substantives of quantity, number and weight. This use is often hardly to be distinguished from the genitive of material (§ 36).

carrōrum numerus, I. 3, 1, *a number OF CARTS*. *multitūdō eōrum*, II. 11, 4, *a great number OF THEM*.

- 49 (2) With the neuter singular of many adjectives and pronouns of quantity, in the nominative and accusative. *Here the English uses no preposition.*

nihil reliquī, I. 11, 5, *nothing* (of) **LEFT**. **minus dubitātiōis**, I. 14, 1, *less* (of) **HESITATION**. **satis causae**, I. 19, 1, *sufficient* (of) **REASON**, *reason enough*. **tantum quantum locī**, II. 8, 3, (so much as of PLACE), *as much SPACE*. **nihil vinī**, II. 15, 4, (nothing of WINE), *no WINE*.

This genitive is often widely separated from its noun. E.g. **quid . . . auxiliī**, I. 31, 14; **quid . . . negotiī**, I. 34, 4.

NOTE.—Adjectives of the second declension can be used as substantives in the neuter in this construction; e.g. **reliquī** (see above). But adjectives of the third declension cannot be so used, unless (rarely) when combined with one of the second.

- 50 (3) With numerals, both general and special if used substantively; *with the latter the English uses no preposition.*

GENERAL: **multi eōrum**, V. 22, 2, *many* OF THEM. **SPECIAL**: **mīlia passuum**, I. 2, 5, II. 6, 1, (thousands OF PACES), *miles*. **hominum mīlia**, I. 26, 5, II. 28, 2, (thousands OF MEN), *thousand men*.

- 51 **Uterque** is commonly used as an adjective with nouns but as a substantive with pronouns.

uterque eōrum, VII. 32, 3, *each* OF THEM. Not so, however, II. 16, 2, and IV. 17, 6.

- 52 (4) With comparatives and superlatives, of either adjectives or adverbs.

Hōrum fortissimi, I. 1, 3, *the bravest* OF THESE. **tōtius Galliae plurimum possunt**, I. 3, 7, *they are the most powerful* (§ 13) OF ALL GAUL. **quārum interior**, VII. 72, 3, *the interior* OF WHICH.

- 53 Instead of the partitive genitive with numerals, pronouns, comparatives and superlatives, the ablative with **dē** or **ex**, or, less often, the accusative with **inter** or **apud**, may be used; especially with cardinals (except **ūnus** when denoting the first of a series) and with **quidam**. In such cases these prepositions should be translated *of*.

pauci dē nostrīs, I. 15, 2, *a few* OF OUR MEN. **proximi ex Belgīs**, II. 3, 1, *the nearest* OF THE BELGIANS.

Genitive with Prepositional Substantives. G. 373; A. 223, *e*; B. 198, I, 2, 201, 3; H. 475, 2, 446, 4, 5; W. 348, 349.

- 54 The genitive precedes **causā** and **grātiā**, *because*, *on account*, *for the sake*, *for the purpose*. Examples follow on next page.

hūlus potentiae causā, I. 18, 6, *for the sake of (increasing) THIS POWER.* **reī frūmentāriae causā**, I. 39, 1, *for the purpose of (procuring) GRAIN; for grain.* **auxiliī causā**, II. 24, 4, *(for the purpose OF AID), as an auxiliary force.*

- 5 A gerund or gerundive preceding **causā** or **grātiā** forms an expression of purpose.

suī mūnendī causā, I. 44, 6, *(for the purpose of protecting himself), to protect himself; see § 272.* **pūgnandī causā**, II. 10, 4, *(for the purpose of fighting), to fight; see § 267.*

- 6 The genitive **ēius diēi** is used with the adverbs **pridīe** and **postridīe** (old case forms; see vocabulary). In the *Bellum Gallicum*, **pridīe** is used alone four times and with the genitive once; **postridīe**, six times, always with the genitive.

pridīe ēius diēi, I. 47, 2, *the day before (THIS DAY).* **postridīe ēius diēi**, I. 23, 1, *the day after (THIS DAY); the next day.*

- 7 The genitive is used with the indeclinable noun **instar**, *likeness*.

instar mūrī, II. 17, 4, *(the likeness OF A WALL), like a wall.* Only instance in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

II. Genitive with Adjectives.

(Objective) Genitive with Adjectives. G. 374; A. 218, a; B. 204, 1; H. 450, 451, 1, 2; W. 352.

- 8 RULE: The objective genitive is used with some adjectives denoting *fulness* and *want*, *participation*, *power*, *knowledge*, and *ignorance*, *desire* and *disgust*.

"*Desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt* and their opposites."—ALLEN AND GREENOUGH. "*Desire, knowledge, familiarity, memory, participation, power, fulness* and their opposites."—BENNETT. "*Desire, knowledge, skill, recollection, and the like, with their contraries.*"—HARNESS.

bellandī cupidus, I. 2, 4, *desirous OF CARRYING ON WAR.* **cūlus reī peritissimus**, III. 21, 3, *very skilled IN SUCH MATTERS.*

This construction occurs in the *Bellum Gallicum* 21 times, as follows:—with **peritus** (3), **imperitus** (6), **cupidus** (4), **medius** (3), **insuētus** (2), **plenus** (1), **cōscius** (1), and with **similis** in the phrase **vērī simile**, III. 13, 6; elsewhere **similis** takes the dative (§ 33).

The corresponding English meanings do not always admit of as a following preposition; the proper ones in such cases are suggested in the vocabulary.

III. Genitive with Verbs.

Genitive with Verbs of Memory. G. 376; A. 219; B. 206, H. 454; W. 364.

- 59 **RULE:** Verbs of *reminding, remembering and forgetting* govern the genitive.

This genitive is translated by the objective in English.

reminiscere veteris incommodi, I. 13, 4, *remember THE FORMER DEFEAT*. So with *obliscor*, I. 14, 3 and VII. 34, 1. Only instances in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

Genitive with Verbs of Emotion (Genitive with Impersonals).

G. 377; A. 221; B. 209; H. 457; W. 368.

- 60 **RULE:** *Misereor* and the impersonals *miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet*, take ' the accusative of the person and ' the genitive of the thing.

cōsilia, quōrum ' eōs ' paenitet, IV. 5, 3, *plans, OF WHICH ' (it repents THEM ')* THEY *repent*. Only instance in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

Genitive with Verbs of Judicial Action. G. 378; A. 220; B. 208; H. 456; W. 367.

- 61 **RULE:** Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning and acquitting* govern the genitive of the charge.

inīquitātis condemnāri, VII. 19, 5, *to be condemned FOR MISCONDUCT*. *prōditiōnis insimulātus*, VII. 20, 1, *accused OF TREASON*. Only instances in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

Genitive with Verbs of Buying, Selling and Rating (Genitive of Price or Value). G. 379; A. 252, a; B. 203, 3, 4; H. 448; W. 361-363.

- 62 **RULE:** With verbs of *buying, selling and rating* the genitive is usually employed to express indefinite price.

tantī tua apud mē grātia est, I. 20, 5, *your favor with me (is worth so much, is OF SO GREAT ACCOUNT), is so great*. *cūius auctōritās māgnī habebātur*, IV. 21, 7, *whose influence was considered (OF GREAT WEIGHT), great*. Only instances in the *Bellum Gallicum* besides the two under the following rule.

Genitive with Interest and Rēfert. G. 381, 382; A. 222; B. 212, 2; H. 458, 3; W. 369.

- 3 **RULE:** Interest and rēfert, *it concerns*, take ¹ a genitive of the person, rarely of the thing, concerned.

The degree ² of concern is expressed by an adverb, an adverbial accusative, or a genitive of value.

The thing ³ about which there is concern is expressed by the subject, which may be a neuter pronoun, an infinitive with subject accusative, or an indirect question.

docet quantō opere ¹ rei pūblicae ¹ intersit manūs ¹ hostium distīnērī, ² II. 5, 2, *he shows (HOW GREATLY ² it concerns), how important it is to THE REPUBLIC, ¹ that THE FORCES ³ of the enemy BE DIVIDED. ³* This is the only example of (1) in the Bellum Gallicum. magnī ¹ interest, with accusative and infinitive, V. 4, 3, VI. 1, 3, *it GREATLY concerns, it is OF GREAT IMPORTANCE.* neque interest, ipsōsne ¹ interficiāmus an impedimentīs exuāmus, ² VII. 14, 8, *and (it does not concern us), it makes no difference, WHETHER ³ WE KILL THEM OUTRIGHT, OR ³ STRIP THEM OF THEIR BAGGAGE.* These are the only instances of interest in the Bellum Gallicum; rēfert does not occur.

Genitive with Verbs of Plenty and Want. See § 65, note.

Genitive with Potior. See § 73, note.

ABLATIVE CASE.

- 64 The ablative case unites in its different uses the functions of three cases that were originally distinct in form and meaning,—the true ablative (*ab, ferō*), denoting separation, the instrumental and the locative.

Ablative of Separation. G. 390; A. 243; B. 214; H. 461–466; W. 374–377.

- 65 **RULE:** Separation is expressed by the ablative sometimes with, sometimes without, the prepositions *ab, dē* or *ex*.

The preposition is regularly omitted with verbs and adjectives of *freeing, excluding, depriving, lacking, abstaining* and *removing*, but is expressed if the substantive denotes a person.

Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna dividit, I. 1, 2, *the Garonne separates the Gauls FROM THE AQUITANIANS.* suis finibus eos prohibent, I. 1, 4, *they keep them (forth FROM) out of THEIR OWN TERRITORY.*

tūta ab hostibus, II. 5, *safe FROM THE ENEMY*. . . ab his castris oppidum aberat, II. 6, 1, *FROM THIS CAMP a town was distant*.

NOTE. Instead of the ablative, the genitive may be used with certain verbs of *plenty and want*. The Bellum Gallicum shows but one example.

auxilii egere, VI. 11, 4, (to be destitute OF AID), *to lack aid*.

- 66 The words with which the ablative of separation is used without a preposition can be learned only by practice. The following list contains all the verbs that are *ever* used without a preposition in the Bellum Gallicum. The first number in parenthesis indicates the number of times it is used *with* a preposition, the second the number of times it is used *without* a preposition.

Verbs and adjectives of *freeing*, etc. (§ 65): abstineō (1, ā mulieribus; 1, proeliō), careō (0; 2), dēpellō (0; 3), dēspoliō (0; 1), expoliō (0; 1), exuō (0; 1), interclūdō (6, not collective or personal; 2, ab exercitū, ā praesidiō et impedimentis), interdicō (0; 3), levō (0; 1), liberō (0; 3), nūdō (0; 2), spoliō (0; 3), supersedeō (0; 1).

Other verbs: absum (25; 1, tōtō bellō), cādō (0; 1, locō), dēcidō (0; 1, equō), dēiciō (0; 6), dēsiō (0; 8), edūcō * (18, including castris; 2, castris), ēgredior * (13; 5), ēruptionem faciō (1, ex oppidō; 4, portis, including idea of means), excādō * (6; 10), expellō (2, ex civitate, ex silvis; 6), labor (0; 1, spē), praecipitō (0; 1, mūrō), prohibeō, in sense of *keep away* (2; 14), prohibeō in other senses (5; 0).

Ablative of Place from Which (Place Whence). See § 91.

Ablative of Origin (Source). G. 395, 396; A. 244; B. 215; H. 467, 469, 470; W. 378.

- 67 **RULE:** Origin or source is expressed by the ablative, generally with **ab** or **ex**.

Besides the ordinary forms of source, this use includes *parentage* and *material*. Parentage is expressed without a preposition except in the case of remote ancestors, when **ab** is used, and in the case of personal pronouns, when **ex** is used. Material is expressed with **dē** or **ex**.

SOURCE: **ab aliquō quaerere**, cf. I. 18, 2, II. 4, 1, *to inquire (FROM) of ANY ONE*. **ex sōlō quaerere**, I. 18, 2, *to inquire OF (him) ALONE*.

Rhēnus oritur **ex Lepontiis**, IV. 10, 3, *the Rhine rises (FROM) among THE LEPONTIIS*. MATERIAL: **nāvēs factae ex robore**, III. 13, 3, *ships made (out) OF OAK*. PARENTAGE: **amplissimō genere**

* Takes and omits preposition, sometimes with the same noun, without apparent difference in meaning.

nātus, IV. 12, 4, (born) OF MOST DISTINGUISHED FAMILY. **orti**
ab Germanis, II. 4, 1, (SPRUNG FROM THE GERMANS), of German de-
scent.

Ablative of Agent. G. 401, second part; A. 246; B. 216; H. 468;
 W. 379.

- 68** **RULE:** Agency is regularly expressed by the ablative with **ab**, except in connection with the gerundive.

This ablative answers the question, *By whom?* It is the name of a person and is used with the passive voice.

qui ā senātū amicus appellātus erat, I. 3, 4, *who had been called friend*
BY THE SENATE. **quod ab nōn nullis Gallis sollicitārentur**, II. 1, 3,
because they were stirred up BY SOME (OF THE) GAULS.

For the dative of the agent see § 31.

The person through whom an action takes place is expressed by the accusative with **per**.

Ablative after Comparatives. G. 398; A. 247; B. 217; H. 471;
 W. 380.

- 69** When a comparison between two substantives is expressed in full, the comparative word is usually followed by **quam**, *than*, with the second substantive in the same case as the first. This construction may sometimes be condensed, however, in Latin, as follows:

RULE: The ablative may be used after comparatives, instead of **quam** with the nominative or accusative.

This ablative is translated by *than* with the case of the first substantive.

nōn amplius quīnīs mīlibus passuum, I. 15, 5, *not more THAN FIVE MILES (a day).* So II. 7, 3, 4.

- 70** After **plūs**, **minus**, **amplius** and **longius**, **quam** may be omitted without changing the construction to the ablative. In such cases *than* must be supplied in translation.

spatium quod nōn amplius pedum sēscentōrum, I. 38, 5, *a distance which is not more (than) (OF) SIX HUNDRED FEET (§ 45).* **flūmen nōn amplius mīlia passuum X abest**, II. 16, 1, *the river is not more (than) ten MILES away (§ 99).*

Ablative of Means or Instrument. G. 401; A. 248, c; B. 218; H. 466; W. 386.

- 71 **RULE:** Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *By what means?* It is translated with the prepositions *by* or *with*, when the sense of these is *by means of*. It is almost always the name of a *thing*; if of a person, it is one considered as a "tool."

flumine continetur, I. 1, 5, *it is bounded BY THE RIVER.* *legione militibusque murum perducit*, I. 8, 1, *WITH THE LEGION AND THE SOLDIERS he constructs a wall.* *litteris certior fiebat*, II. 1, 1, *he was informed BY THE DISPATCHES.*

- 72 This ablative is sometimes translated otherwise than as above; for example, when some other idea that is denoted by the ablative is combined with it, or when the English thought is different from the Latin.

proeliis contendere, I. 1, 4, *to contend IN BATTLES.* *dolo niti*, I. 13, 6, *to rely ON TREACHERY.* *flumine subvehere*, I. 16, 3, *to bring up (by) THE RIVER.* *viribus confidere*, I. 53, 2, *to rely ON ONE'S STRENGTH.* *victoriis freti*, III. 21, 1, *relying ON THEIR VICTORIES.* *peditatu contentus*, VII. 64, 2, *content WITH INFANTRY.*

Ablative with Deponenta. G. 407; A. 249; B. 218, 1; H. 477. I; W. 387.

- 73 **RULE:** The ablative of means is used with *utor*, *use*, *fruor*, *enjoy*, *fungor*, *perform*, *potior*, *obtain (control of)*, *vescor*, *eat*, and their compounds.

This ablative is translated by the objective in English.

imperio potiri, I. 2, 2, *to obtain CONTROL.* *eodem iure et iisdem legibus uti*, II. 3, 5, *(to use THE SAME RIGHT AND THE SAME LAWS), to have the same constitution and the same laws.*

NOTE. Instead of the ablative, the genitive is once used with *potior* in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

totius Galliae potiri, I. 3, 8, *to obtain control OF ALL GAUL.*

Ablative with *opus* and *usus*. G. 406; A. 243, e; B. 218. 2; H. 477, III.; W. 389.

- 74 **RULE:** The ablative of means is used with *opus* (indeclinable), *need*, and *usus*, *need*, to denote the thing needed.

si quid (acc.) **opus** (nom.) **factō erit**, I. 42, 5, (if there shall be need at all, § 13), *if there is any need OF ACTION.* **si quō opus erit**, II. 8, 5, (if there shall be need OF ANYTHING), *if there is any need.* Only examples in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

Ablative of Price. G. 404; A. 252; B. 225; H. 478; W. 395.

- 5 **RULE:** Price is expressed by the ablative when **pretiō** or a similar word is used, or when the amount is definite.

parvō pretiō, I. 18, 3, AT A SMALL PRICE. So IV. 2, 2. **levi mōmentō**, VII. 39, 3, OF SLIGHT CONSEQUENCE. **quantō detrimentō victōria cōstet**, VII. 19, 4, WITH HOW GREAT LOSS *victory would be obtained, how great a loss the victory would cost.* Only examples in the *Bellum Gallicum*. Compare the genitive of price, § 62.

Ablative of Attendance (Accompaniment). G. 392; A. 248, a, b; B. 220; H. 473; W. 390.

- 76 **RULE:** Attendance or accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with **cum**.

This ablative answers the question, *With whom? In company with what?*

cum omnibus cōpiis exire, I. 2, 1, *to set out WITH ALL THEIR POSSESSIONS.* **Sabinum cum sex cohortibus reliquit**, II. 5, 6, *he left Sabinus WITH SIX COHORTS.*

- 77 **cum** may be omitted in military descriptions when the noun is modified by an adjective that is not a numeral.

omnibus cōpiis contendere, II. 7, 3, *to hasten WITH ALL THEIR TROOPS.*

Ablative of Manner (including Attendant Circumstance). G. 399; A. 248; B. 220; H. 473, 3; W. 390, 391.

- 78 **RULE:** Manner is expressed by the ablative with **cum**, which may be omitted when the noun is modified by an adjective or its equivalent.

This ablative answers the question, *How? Under what circumstances?* **māgnō cum periculō erit**, I. 10, 2, *it will be (WITH GREAT DANGER), very dangerous.* **multis cum lacrimis obsecrare**, I. 20, 1, *to beseech WITH MANY TEARS.*

māgnō impetū oppugnare, II. 6, 1, *to*

attack WITH GREAT VIGOR.

māgnō cum strepitū egredi, II. 11, 1,

to set out WITH GREAT NOISE.

- 79 A few words, many of which have practically become adverbs, are used without a preposition: e.g. *iniūriā*, (with injustice), *unjustly*, *wrongfully*; *silentiō*, (in silence), *silently*; *meritiō*, (by merit), *deservedly*; *commodō*, (with advantage), *advantageously*.

Ablative of Quality (Characteristic). G. 400; A. 251; B. 224; H. 473, 2; W. 394.

- 80 **RULE:** A quality or characteristic is expressed by the ablative modified by an adjective or its equivalent.

This ablative always modifies a substantive, and may be tested by the translation "characterized by," which in actual rendering should be replaced by *of*.

Allobrogēs bonō animō nōn vidēbantur, I. 6, 3, *the Allobroges did not seem* (characterized by a good feeling), *of friendly disposition, well disposed*.

Iccius summā nōbilitāte, II. 6, 4, *Iccius, (a man) (characterized by), OF THE GREATEST PROMINENCE*.

With this construction compare the descriptive genitive, § 44.

Ablative of Measure (Degree) of Difference. G. 403; A. 250; B. 223; H. 479; W. 393.

- 81 **RULE:** The amount (degree) of difference between two objects or actions is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *How much?* It appears before comparatives and words implying a comparison, and in expressions of distance.

In translation it takes the construction of the English adverbial objective; hence *there is no preposition in the English rendering*.

nihilō minus, I. 5, 1, (less BY NOTHING, NONE the less), *nevertheless*.

multō facilius, I. 6, 2, (easier BY MUCH), MUCH easier. *paucis*

ante diēbus, I. 18, 10, (before BY A FEW DAYS), A FEW DAYS *before*.

ā (adverb) *mīlibus passuum duōbus*, II. 7, 3, TWO MILES *away*.

paulō longius, II. 20, 1, (too far BY A LITTLE), A LITTLE *too far*.

Ablative of Specification. G. 397; A. 253; B. 226; H. 480; W. 396.

- 82 **RULE:** Specification is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *In respect to what? In what respect?* It is translated as the object of *in*, or, less frequently, of *by*. It modifies verbs, adjectives and, more rarely, nouns.

virtūte praecedunt, I. 1, 4, *they excel* IN (respect to) COURAGE. *op-pida numerō duodecim*, II. 4, 7, *towns twelve* IN (respect to) NUMBER. *nōmine Bibrax*, II. 6, 1, *Bibrax* BY NAME.

- 83 Under this use of the ablative is generally considered to belong that with *dignus*, *worthy* (of), VII. 25, 1. and *indignus*, *unworthy* (of), V. 35, 5, VII. 17, 3. ALLEN and GREENOUGH, however, class this under the ablative of cause.

Ablative of Cause. G. 408; A. 245; B. 219; H. 475; W. 384, 385.

- 84 **RULE:** Cause is expressed by the ablative generally without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *Why? On what account? For what reason?* It is translated *because of*, *on account of*, *for*, *from*, etc., according to the English word with which it is connected.

grātiā plurimum poterat, I. 9, 3, *he was very influential* ON ACCOUNT OF HIS POPULARITY. *virtūte cōgniti*, I. 28, 5, *noted* FOR THEIR VALOR. *mōbilitāte animi novis imperiis studēbant*, II. 1, 3, ON ACCOUNT OF THEIR FICKLENESS (of mind) *they desired changes of government*.

- 85 Instead of the simple ablative prepositions are often used; especially *dē* or *ex* with the ablative, or *ob* (see vocabulary) and *propter* with the accusative.

quā dē causā, I. 1, 4, *FOR THIS REASON*. *ex cōsuētūdine*, I. 52, 4, *ACCORDING TO THEIR CUSTOM*.

Ablative of Accordance.

- 86 An ablative translated *in accordance with* is classed by GILDER-SLEEVE and ALLEN and GREENOUGH as specification, by BENNETT and WEST as manner, by HARKNESS as cause.

mōribus suis, I. 4, 1, *according to their customs*. So II. 13, 3.

Ablative Absolute. G. 409, 410; A. 255; B. 227; H. 489; W. 397-399.

- 87 **RULE:** A noun and a participle or their equivalents are

used in the ablative to add an attendant circumstance to a sentence.

This construction corresponds to the independent *nominative* with participle in English, hence no preposition is used to translate the Latin case. On account of the rarity of this construction in good English, however, the literal translation should rarely be retained, but should be changed to an active participial construction, a phrase or a clause.

While connected logically or in thought with the rest of the sentence, it has no grammatical connection; hence the name *absolute*.

Ūgnō occupātō, I. 3, 8, (the control of the government having been seized), *having seized control of the government; after seizing control of the government.*

initā aestāte, II. 2, 1; see vocabulary under *inēō*. See also § 364.

- 88 Instead of a noun and a participle there may be (a) two nouns, (b) a noun and an adjective, when the lacking participle of the verb *sum* is understood.

Messālā, Pīsōne cōsulibus, I. 2, 1, (Messala and Piso *being* consuls), *in the consulship of Messala and Piso.* **sē invitō**; see vocabulary.

Ablative of Place Where (Place in Which). See § 91.

Ablative of Time. G. 393, 394; A. 256; B. 230, 231; H. 486-488; W. 406, 407.

- 89 **RULE:** The time when or within which an action occurs is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *When?* It is translated with the preposition *at* or *on* if it is "*time when*," with the preposition *within* if it is distinctly "*time within which*."

eō tempore, I. 3, 5, *AT THAT TIME.* **eō diē**, II. 6, 2, (ON) *THAT DAY.* **patrum nostrōrum memoriā**, I. 12, 5, *WITHIN THE MEMORY* (of our fathers), *of the last generation.* So II. 4, 7. See also § 105.

Ablative with Prepositions. G. 417; A. 152, b; B. 142; H. 490; W. 243, 245.

- 90 The following prepositions, used in the *Bellum Gallicum*, govern the ablative only: **ā** (ab, abs), **dē**, **ē** (ex), **prae** (twice), **prō**, **sine**.

In and **sub** govern either accusative or ablative. See vocabulary.

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE.

Place Where (Place in Which or at Which). G. 385-389, 411;
A. 254, 258, *c-f*; B. 228, 232; H. 482-485; W. 401-403.

- 91 **RULE:** Place where is expressed by the locative case when it exists (see § 93), otherwise by the ablative with *in*.

domi, I. 18, 5, *AT HOME*. *in eorum finibus*, I. 1, 4, *IN THEIR TERRITORY*. *in Galliā*, II. 1, 1, *IN GAUL*.

- 92 Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition, and it is frequently omitted in expressions containing forms of *locus*, *pars*, or *tōtus*, and when some other idea is combined with that of place.

nōn nullis locis, I. 6, 2, *IN SOME PLACES*. So II. 33, 4. *tōtis castris*, I. 39, 5, *THROUGHOUT THE CAMP*. *castris sē ac palū-dibus tenuerat*, I. 40, 8, *he had kept himself IN CAMP (and) AMONG THE MARSHES*. *proeliō Nervicō*, III. 5, 2, *IN THE BATTLE WITH THE NERVII*.

- 93 **LOCATIVE.**—Forms of the locative case are confined to the names of towns and small islands in the singular of the first and second declensions, where it is like the genitive; to a very few in the singular of the third declension, where it is like the dative; and to the following forms of common nouns,—*domi*, *at home*, *rūri*, *in the country*, *humī*, *on the ground*, *militiæ* and *belli*, *in war*.

The locative occurs as follows in the *Bellum Gallicum*: *domi*, I. 18, 5, 20, 2, 28, 3, IV. 1, 5, 6, VII. 4, 8, 39, 1; names of towns, V. 24, 1, VI. 44, 3, VII. 3, 3, 10, 4, 14, 1 (three times), 31, 4, 32, 1, 47, 5, 55, 5, 57, 1, 77, 1, 90, 7, 8.

Terminal Accusative (Place Whither, Place to Which). G. 337;
A. 258, 2; B. 182; H. 418, 419; W. 325.

- 94 **RULE:** Place whither or to which is usually expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*.

pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis, I. 1, 6, *they extend TO THE LOWER PART of the river*. *in interiorem Galliam dēducere*, II. 2, 1, *to lead (them) INTO THE INTERIOR OF GAUL* (§ 113).

- 95 Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition; also *domum*, *domos*, when meaning *home*, and *rūs*, *into the country*. But *ad* may be used with the name of a town to denote motion to its vicinity.

domum reditiō, I. 5, 7, *a return HOME*. *domum pervenire*, II. 11, 1, *to get HOME*. *Bibracte ire*, I. 23, 1, *to go TO BIBRACTE*. *ad Genāvam pervenit*, I. 7, 1, *he arrives IN THE VICINITY OF GENEVA*.

Place Whence (Place from Which). G. 390, 391; A. 258; B. 229; H. 491, I. 2, II. 2; W. 404.

- 96 **RULE:** Place whence or from which is usually expressed by the ablative with *ab*, *dē* or *ex*.

dē suis finibus exire, I. 2, 1, *to go out FROM THEIR TERRITORY*. *ex castris ēducere*, II. 8, 5, *to lead out FROM CAMP*.

- 97 Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition; also *domo*, *from home*, and *rūre*, *from the country*. But *ab* may be used with the name of a town to denote motion from its vicinity.

domo efferre, I. 5, 3, *to take FROM HOME*. So IV. 7, 3. *Metiosēdō fugere*, VII. 58, 6, *to flee FROM METIOSEDUM*. *ab Ocelō*, I. 11, 5, *FROM THE VICINITY OF OCELUM*.

- 98 **THE POINT OF VIEW** is expressed by the ablative with *ab* or *ex*; English use, *at* or *on*.

unā ex parte, I. 2, 3, *ON ONE SIDE*. *ab utrōque latere*, II. 8, 3, *ON EACH SIDE*.

- 99 **DISTANCE CONSIDERED AS EXTENT OF SPACE** is expressed by the accusative without a preposition (§ 14).

- 100 **THE WAY BY WHICH** is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. This is generally considered as a subdivision of the ablative of means (§ 71).

- 101 **LOCATION AMONG TRIBES** is expressed by the ablative with *in* or by the accusative with *inter* or *apud*.

- 102 **LOCATION NEAR A PLACE** is expressed by the accusative with *ad*, *near*, *at*.

- 103 **DISTANCE CONSIDERED AS AN INTERVAL BETWEEN TWO PLACES** is expressed by the ablative of degree of difference (§ 81).

EXPRESSIONS OF TIME.

- 04 **TIME WHEN (TIME AT WHICH)** is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (§ 89).
- 05 **TIME WITHIN WHICH** is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (§ 89), or, for clearness, with the preposition *in* (e.g. *in cōsulatū suō*, I. 35, 2).
- 06 **TIME DURING WHICH (TIME HOW LONG)** is expressed by the accusative without a preposition (§ 14). See also note to Book I., line 476.
- 07 **THE INTERVAL OF TIME** before or after an event is generally expressed by *ante* or *post* as prepositions with the accusative, or by *ante* or *post* as adverbs, modified by an ablative of degree of difference (§ 81). E.g. *post trēs annōs*, *after three years*, or *tribus annis post*, *three years after*.

Roman Dates. G. Appendix; A. 259, e, 376; B. 371; H. 754, 755; W. 718-754.

- 08 The Romans counted backward from three points in the month, Calends (*Kalendae*), Nones (*Nōnae*), and Ides (*Idūs*), to which the names of the months are added as adjectives: *Kalendae Iānuāriæ*, *Nōnae Februariæ*, *Idūs Martiæ*. The Calends are the first day, the Nones the fifth, the Ides the thirteenth. In March, May, July and October the Nones and Ides are two days later. Or thus:

In March, July, October, May,
The Ides are on the fifteenth day,
The Nones the seventh; but all besides
Have two days less for Nones and Ides.

In counting backward the Romans used for "the day before" *pridīe* with the accusative. E.g. *pridīe Kalendās Iānuāriās*, Dec. 31.

The longer intervals are expressed by *ante diem tertium, quārtum, etc.*, before the accusative, so that *ante diem tertiam Kal. Iān.* means "two days before the Calends of January;" *ante diem quārtum*, or *a.d. iv.*, or *iv. Kal. Iān.*, "three days before," and so on. (See note on Book I. line 176.) These expressions are idiomatic; the nouns cannot be parsed separately, and the whole may be treated as an indeclinable noun.

TO TURN ROMAN DATES INTO ENGLISH.—For Nones and Ides, add one to the date on which these fall, and subtract the given number;

for Kalends, add two to the number of days in the preceding month, and subtract the given number.

a. d. v. Kal. Apr. (*ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlis*), I. 6, 4, (31 + 2 — 5), *March 28*.

SYNTAX AND USES OF ADJECTIVES.

Agreement of Adjectives. G. 289, 286; A. 186, 187; B. 234, 235; H. 394, 395; W. 293–295.

109 **RULE:** An adjective, a participle (verbal adjective) or an adjective pronoun (pronominal adjective) agrees with the substantive it modifies in gender, number and case.

110 The common attributive modifier of two or more substantives usually agrees with the nearest, rarely with the most important.

vir et cōsiliū māgnū et virtūtis, III. 5, 2, a *man of* (both) **GREAT wisdom and courage**. So V. 11, 5.

Substantive Use of Adjectives. G. 204, Notes 1–4; A. 188, 189; B. 236–238; H. 494, 495; W. 409–411.

111 Any gender of an adjective may be used alone as a substantive, the ending or the context showing the appropriate sense.

nōbilissimus, adjective, I. 2, 1, **THE MOST PROMINENT**. *nōbilissimōs civitātis*, I. 7, 3, **THE MOST PROMINENT (men) of the state**. *sua omnia*, II. 3, 2, **ALL THEIR (possessions)**.

112 A certain adjective may have been used most frequently with a particular noun, which comes to be regularly omitted. The gender remains that of the noun with which it was combined.

hiberna (sc. *castra*), I. 10, 3, III. 2, 1, (**WINTER camp**), **WINTER quarters**. *hominēs ferī*, I. 31, 5, II. 15, 5, **FIERCE men**; but *fera* (sc. *bestia*, *beast*), VI. 25, 5, 28, 2, **WILD beast**.

Partitive Use of Adjectives. G. 291, 1, Remark 2; A. 193; B. 241, 1; H. 497, 4; W. 416.

113 The following adjectives in the *Bellum Gallicum*, being superlatives, or implying order or sequence, sometimes designate a *part* of a following substantive,—*primus*, *extrēmus*, *summus*, *medius*, *infimus* (*Imus*), *reliquus*. See vocabulary. Examples follow.

summus mōns, I. 22, 1, *THE HIGHEST PART OF the hill, THE TOP OF the hill.* **ad extrēmās fossās**, II. 8, 4, *at THE ENDS OF the ditches.*

Predicate or Adverbial Use of Adjectives. A. 191; B. 239; H. 497, 1; W. 412.

- 114 Certain adjectives are best rendered adverbially when they modify the subject;—in the *Bellum Gallicum*, **annuus**, **laetus**, **invitus**, **frequēns**, **tristis**, **praecepta**. See vocabulary.

qui creātur annuus, I. 16, 5, *who is chosen ANNUALLY.* **praecipitēs fugae sese mandābant**, II. 24, 2, *they took to flight PRECIPITATELY.*

Adjective Contrasted with Adverb. A. 191; B. 241, 2; H. 497, 3, W. 417.

- 115 **Primus** and some similar adjectives must be carefully distinguished from the corresponding adverbs.

prīmus prōgressus est, (he, **FIRST**, advanced), *he was the first to advance*; others, it is implied, advanced afterward. So II. 19, 5. **prīmum prōgressus est**, *he FIRST advanced*; afterward, it is implied, he did something else. So I. 25, 1, II. 10, 4. **prīmō celeriter prōgressus est**, *AT FIRST he advanced quickly*, but presently, it is implied, he slackened his pace. So I. 31, 5, II. 8, 1.

Translation of the Comparative of Adjectives and Adverbs.
G. 297; A. 93, a; B. 240, 1; H. 298; W. 414, 2.

- 116 The Latin comparative is translated not only by the English comparative. but by *too*, *rather*, *somewhat*, or *quite*, with the positive.

Translation of the Superlative of Adjectives and Adverbs.
G. 302, 303; A. 93, b; B. 240, 2, 3; H. 498; W. 414, 3, 4.

- 117 The Latin superlative may be translated not only by the English superlative but by *very* with the positive. It may be strengthened by *vel* (compare VII. 37, 6, where **principēs** = **prīmī**), or by *quam* with a form of *possum* expressed or understood (see *quam* in vocabulary).

SYNTAX AND USES OF PRONOUNS.

- 118 All Latin pronouns may be divided into two classes as regards their syntax: substantive pronouns and adjective pronouns (pronominal adjectives).

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUN: *erant itinera duo quibus exire possent, there were two routes BY WHICH they could emigrate.*

ADJECTIVE PRONOUN: *erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus exire possent, I. 6, 1, there were two routes BY WHICH ROUTES they could emigrate.*

- 119 The syntax of an adjective pronoun (pronominal adjective) is the same as of any adjective,—it agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number and case (§ 109).

Agreement of a Substantive Pronoun.

- 120 **RULE:** Any substantive pronoun agrees with its antecedent in person, number, and gender. Its case is determined by its use in the clause in which it stands.

NOTE.—The distinction is not always made clear in English grammars. Thus *my* or *mine* is sometimes considered the possessive case of the personal pronoun, *I*, sometimes a possessive adjective. Contrast, "*this box came*" (where *this* is a demonstrative adjective), with "*this came*" (where *this* is a demonstrative pronoun).

- 121 **Table of Personal and Possessive Pronouns.**

First Person.			Second Person.	
	Ordinary.	Reflexive.	Ordinary.	Reflexive.
Personal	ego, <i>I</i>	_____	tū, (thou), <i>you</i>	_____
	mei, <i>my</i>	mei, <i>of myself</i>	tui, <i>your</i>	tui, <i>of yourself</i>
	mihi, <i>to me</i>	mihi, <i>to myself</i>	tibi, <i>to you</i>	tibi, <i>to yourself</i>
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
Possessive	{ Sing. meus, <i>a, um, my</i>		tuus, <i>a, um, (thy), your</i>	
	{ Plu. noster, <i>tra, trum, our</i>		vester, <i>tra, trum, you</i>	

Third Person.		
	Ordinary.	Reflexive.
Personal	is, <i>he, ea, she, id, it</i>	_____
	ēius, <i>his, her, its</i>	sui, <i>of himself, of herself, of itself</i>
	ei, <i>to him, to her, to it</i>	sibi, <i>to himself, to herself, to itself</i>
	etc.	etc.
Possessive	{ Sing. ēius, <i>his, her, its</i>	suus, <i>a, um, his, her, its (own)</i>
	{ Plu. eōrum, <i>eārum, their</i>	suus, <i>a, um, their (own)</i>

Nominative of the Personal Pronouns Omitted. G. 304, 1; A. 194, a; B. 242, 1; H. 500; W. 419.

- 122 The personal pronoun is regularly omitted when it would be the subject of a finite verb, being expressed only for emphasis or for contrast.

is coniurationem fecit, I. 2, 2, **HE** made a conspiracy. Compare also ego, IV. 25, 3.

For the use of the possessive pronouns for the genitive of the personal pronouns see §§ 38 and 43.

Direct and Indirect Reflexives. G. 309; A. 196; B. 244, I, II; H. 502-504; W. 421, 422.

123 The reflexive personal and possessive pronouns may refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand (direct reflexive); but often, especially in indirect discourse, they refer to the subject of the main clause (indirect reflexive); sometimes to another particularly emphatic word.

124 Since the possessive pronouns (except the substitute possessive genitives, *ei*, *eorum*, *eārum*) are adjectives (see §§ 118 and 121), they take their gender, number and case from the word they modify, not from their antecedent. Therefore it is necessary to find the antecedent of a form of *suus*, *a*, *um*, in order to translate it correctly.

Casticus regnum in suā civitate occupat, I. 3, 4, *Casticus seizes the royal power in HIS state*.

125 For illustration of the contrast between the two possessives of the third person (§ 121), note the following sentence.

Helvētīī aut suīs (i.e. *Helvētīōrum*) *finibus eōs* (i.e. *Germānōs*) *prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum* (i.e. *Germānōrum*) *finibus bellum gerunt*, I. 1, 4, *the Helvetians either keep them (the Germans) out of THEIR OWN territory or carry on war themselves in THEIR (the Germans') territory*.

126 Sometimes two reflexives stand in the same clause of indirect discourse, one referring to the subject of the main verb, the other to the subject of the infinitive. English has the same ambiguity.

Ariovistus respondit . . . nēminem sēcūm sine suā perniciē contendisse, I. 36, 6, *Ariovistus answered . . . that no one had fought WITH HIM without HIS OWN destruction, i.e. without being destroyed*. Here *sēcūm* refers to Ariovistus, and *suā* to *nēminem*.

Demonstrative Pronouns. G. 305-308; A. 195; B. 246-249; H. 505-509; W. 426-428.

127 The three especial demonstrative pronouns are (1) *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*, *this* (of mine, or near me), called the demonstrative of the *first* person; (2) *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, *that* (of yours, or near you), called the demonstrative of the *second* person, and (3) *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, *that* (of his, or near him), called the demonstrative of the *third* person.

When only two objects are contrasted, *hic* and *ille* are generally used; in such cases *hic* usually means *the nearer*, if referring to real position, *the latter*, if referring to that which is nearer in thought; and *ille*, *the more remote*, *the former*.

Iste has often a contemptuous, sneering force, as in VII. 77, 5, its only occurrence in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

- 128 These pronouns, like the English demonstratives (see § 120, note), may be used either as adjectives or as substantives. When used substantively, *especially when referring to persons*, they are generally best translated by personal pronouns.

huic (i.e. *Galbae*) *permisit*, III., 1, 3, *he permitted HIM*. It is very bad English ever to say, "He permitted this one," or "He permitted this man."

- 129 *is*, when used *adjectively*, is demonstrative and means either *this* or *that* (*these* or *those*), according to the sense. When used simply as the antecedent of the relative pronoun, it is to be translated *that* (*those*).

PERSONAL PRONOUN: *eī filiam dat*, I. 3, 5, *he gives HIM his daughter*.

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE: *ad eās rēs cōficiendās*, I. 3, 3, *for completing THESE preparations*. *eō tempore*, I. 3, 5, *at THAT time*.

ANTECEDENT OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN: *id quod*, I. 5, 1, *THAT which*.

- 130 *ipse* is the intensive or emphatic pronoun, like the English *himself*, etc., when the latter is *not reflexive* (see § 121); it emphasizes the word with which it is joined. When it is nominative its translation is shown by the person of the verb.

ipsī bellum gerunt, I. 1, 4, *they THEMSELVES carry on war*. *ipsī bellum gerimus*, *we OURSELVES carry on war*.

- 131 When *ipse* is used to strengthen a noun not the name of a person it may be translated in various ways.

in *ipsis ripis*, II. 23, 3, *RIGHT on the bank(s)*. *hōc ipsō tempore* VI. 37, 1, *at this VERY time*; *JUST at this time*.

- 132 The genitive case of *ipse* is often used, for contrast or emphasis, instead of forms of the possessive reflexive pronoun, *suus*, *a*, *um*, and is then translated *his own*, *their own*, etc.

ipsōrum linguā, I. 1, 1, *in THEIR OWN language*. Here *suā* might have been used, but contrast with the following *nostrā* is desired. So I. 21, 1.

- 133 *Ipse* is often used in the nominative to intensify a reflexive pronoun. In such cases it may often be omitted in translation; it sometimes gives the reciprocal force (*each other*). See the examples.

ipse sibi mortem cōscivit, I. 4, 4, (he **HIMSELF** decreed death to himself), *he committed suicide*. *sibi ipsī sunt impedimentō*, II. 25, 1, (they **THEMSELVES** are for a hindrance to themselves), *they hinder each other*.

Relative Pronouns. G. 614-619; A. 198-201; B. 250, 251; H. 510; W. 229-304

134 **RULE:** A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number. Its case is determined by the structure of the clause in which it stands. See § 120.

135 Note the use of the relative *adjective* in Latin, much more common than in English.

quae civitās, I. 10, 1, (**WHICH** state), *a state which*. See also the first example under § 118.

136 The Latin often uses a relative pronoun at the beginning of a new sentence. This should never be translated literally, but generally by a demonstrative (regularly so if it is used adjectively), sometimes by a personal pronoun.

quārum, I. 1, 1, **OF THESE**. *quā dē causā*, I. 1, 4, *for THIS reason*. *quī*, I. 15, 2, **THEY**. *quī cum*, II. 13, 2, *when THEY*.

For the compound relatives, *quisquis*, *quicumque*, see vocabulary.

Interrogative Pronouns. G. 467, Remark 2, 106; A. 210, e, 104; B. 90; H. 511; W. 148.

137 In both English and Latin the relative and interrogative words are almost the same if not identical in form. Compare the following sentences:

<i>Interrogative.</i>	<i>Relative.</i>
Who came? What boy came? Which boy came?	The boy who came.
What happened? What event happened? Which event happened?	The event which happened.
I know who came. I know what boy came. I know which boy came.	I know the boy who came.

138 For the interrogative pronouns used in the *Bellum Gallicum*, *quis*, *quī*, *quisnam*, and *uter*, see vocabulary. The last is used adjectively, I. 12, 1, and substantively, V. 44, 14, VI. 19, 2.

Indefinite Pronouns. G. 313-319; A. 202; B. 252; H. 512-515; W. 430-435.

- 139 Forms of *quis* and *qui* are usually indefinite (meaning *any, any one*) after *si, nisi, nē* and *num*.

See vocabulary for the uses of the other indefinite pronouns used in the *Bellum Gallicum*,—*aliquis, aliqui, quidam, quispiam, quisquam, quivis, quisque*.

- 140 *Quisque* following a superlative is to be noted, as an idiom.
nobilissimi cūlusque liberi, I. 31, 12, (the children OF EACH most prominent man), *the children of all the most prominent men*. So I. 45, 3.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

Agreement of Verb. G. 211, 285-287; A. 204-206; B. 254, 255; H. 388-392; W. 296-298.

- 141 **RULE:** A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

- 142 The common predicate of two or more subjects is put in the plural unless the two are considered together as a unit.

Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit, I. 1, 2, *the Marne-and-Seine divides*. Here the principal river and its tributary are considered as one, like the "Missouri to the sea."

- 143 Substantives of multitude often take the predicate in the plural.
cum tanta multitūdō cōmicerent, II. 6, 3, *when such a great number (WERE) was throwing*. Similarly *exirent* (sc. *civitas*), I. 2, 1.

Impersonal Verbs. G. 208, 528, 2; A. 146; B. 138; H. 302, 611; W. 233, 442, 4.

- 144 Besides the impersonal verbs common to both Latin and English pertaining to the state of the weather (*it rains*, etc.), which do not occur in the *Bellum Gallicum*, and those which are active and take a neuter pronoun, an infinitive or a clause as the subject (*oportet, licet, interest* (§ 63), etc., there are the following impersonal uses of *passive* verbs.

1. Verbs that take an indirect object in the active voice. See §§ 26 and 27, note.

2. Verbs that take no object in the active voice. These are used impersonally, especially in the compound tenses. The literal translation should not be retained.

pūgnātum est, I. 26, 1, (it was fought), *they fought; the battle raged*.
sustentātum est, II. 6, 1, (it was sustained), *the attack was sustained*.

Tenses of the Indicative. G. 222-245; A. 276-281; B. 257-264; H. 526-540; W. 445-460.

- 145 **SPECIFIC PRESENT.** The present tense is used of (a) *that which is now going on* or of (b) *that which is undefined or habitual* in the present.

(a) *quò proficiscimur*, VII. 38, 2, *where ARE WE GOING?* (b) *turpissimam servitùtem deditiōnis nōmine appellant*, VII. 77, 3, *THEY TERM the basest slavery a surrender.*

- 146 **UNIVERSAL PRESENT.** The present tense is used of statements *that apply to all time.*

omnēs hominēs naturā libertātī student, III. 10, 3, *all men naturally DESIRE liberty.*

- 147 **HISTORICAL PRESENT.** The present tense is used far more frequently than in English *as a lively representation of the past*, or in an *annalistic* sense.

profectiōnem cōfirmant, I. 3, 2, *THEY DECREE (decreed) their departure.*

- 148 **IMPERFECT TENSE.** The imperfect indicative primarily denotes an action as continued in the past, or a past condition of affairs. It is then accurately translated by the English past progressive. But if the idea of continuance is not strong, or if the voice is passive, the simple past should be used.

hiemābant, I. 10, 3, *were passing the winter.* So *populābantur*, I. 11, 1; *expectābant*, II. 9, 1. Contrast the following: *arbitrābantur*, I. 2, 5, *they thought.* *patēbant*, I. 2, 5, *extended.* *magnō dolōre afficiēbantur*, I. 2, 4, (they were being affected with great grief), *they were greatly grieved.*

The imperfect also denotes (1) attempted, (2) repeated, (3) accustomed or habitual action in the past.

(1) *prohibēbant*, V. 9, 6, *they tried to prevent.* (2) *cōniciēbant*, I. 26, 3, *they kept throwing.* (3) *versābantur*, I. 48, 6, *they would engage.* *servī cremābantur*, VI. 19, 4, *slaves used to be burned.*

- 149 **PERFECT TENSE.** The Latin perfect has two distinct uses. It is equivalent either to (1) the English past, or to (2) the English present perfect (e.g. *dēmōstrāvimus*, II. 1, 1, *we have shown*).

Tenses of the Subjunctive. G. 277; A. 283-287; B. 266-269; H. 541-550; W. 461-472.

- 150 *The tenses of the subjunctive do not express absolute time. (Over.)*

In independent clauses (§§ 154 and 155) the tenses of the subjunctive generally have especial uses.

In dependent clauses the present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive express incomplete action, the perfect and pluperfect completed action. Further than this, the choice of tense is usually determined by the law of *sequence of tenses*.

- 151 **SEQUENCE OF TENSES.** If the tense of the principal verb is *present*, *future* or *future perfect* (the so-called *principal tenses*), it is followed by the *present* subjunctive to denote incomplete action, by the *perfect* subjunctive to denote completed action; if the tense of the principal verb is *imperfect*, *perfect* or *pluperfect* (the so-called *historical tenses*), it is followed by the *imperfect* subjunctive to denote incomplete action, by the *pluperfect* subjunctive to denote completed action.

- 152 This rule is subject to several modifications. (1) The historical present (§ 147) may be considered according to its form as present or according to its sense as past; in the *Bellum Gallicum* it is considered a principal tense about three times out of every four. (2) The present perfect (§ 149, 2) may be felt as giving the past starting point and so be considered as historical, or as giving the present completion and so be considered as principal.

PRINCIPAL TENSES.

Pr. (Pure or Hist.),	cōgnōscō,	<i>I am finding out,</i>	{ <i>quid faciās,</i> <i>what you are doing;</i> <i>quid fēceris,</i> <i>what you have done,</i> <i>what you have been doing (what you did),</i> <i>what you were doing (before).</i>
Fut.,	cōgnōscam,	<i>I shall (try to) find out,</i>	
Pure Pf.,	cōgnōvī,	<i>I have found out (I know),</i>	
Future Pf.,	cōgnōverō,	<i>I shall have found out (shall know),</i>	

HISTORICAL TENSES.

Hist. Pr.,	cōgnōscō,	<i>I am (was) finding out,</i>	{ <i>quid facerēs,</i> <i>what you were doing;</i> <i>quid fēcissēs,</i> <i>what you had done,</i> <i>what you had been doing,</i> <i>what you were doing (before).</i>
Impf.,	cōgnōscēbam,	<i>I was finding out,</i>	
Hist. Pf.,	cōgnōvī,	<i>I found out,</i>	
Plupf.,	cōgnōveram,	<i>I had found out (I knew),</i>	

It will be noticed from the above examples that the English has the same rule. Compare also "He comes that he may see," with "He came that he might see."

NOTE.—Exceptions to all these rules of sequence are common, especially in indirect discourse, being sometimes required by the sense, sometimes by clearness, and being often used for vividness.

- 13 FUTURE TIME IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. Since the subjunctive tenses do not represent absolute time, but only complete or incomplete action relative to the time of the principal verb, it follows that *any tense of the subjunctive may refer to the future*, when the action of the principal verb looks to the future. For especial clearness in this respect the active periphrastic conjugation is used (§ 277).

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES.

Subjunctive as an Imperative (Hortatory Subjunctive). G. 263, 1; A. 266; B. 274; H. 559, 1; W. 482.

- 54 RULE: The present subjunctive, first person plural, is used to express an exhortation. The negative is *nō*.
persequāmur eōrum mortem, VII. 38, 8, LET US AVENGE *their* death. So *interficiāmus*, following, and *respiciāmus*, VII. 77, 7.

- 55 NOTE.—The following uses of the subjunctive appear in the *Bellum Gallicum* only in the changed form made necessary by indirect discourse.

1. **Subjunctive as an Imperative (Jussive Subjunctive).** G. 263, 3; A. 266; B. 275; H. 559, 2; W. 482.

RULE: The present subjunctive is used to express a command in the third person, more rarely in the second. The negative is *nō*.

cum volet, congrediātur I. 36, 7, LET HIM COME ON *when he* (shall wish) *wishes*.

2. **Deliberative Subjunctive.** G. 265; A. 268; B. 277; H. 559, 4; W. 493.

RULE: The subjunctive is used in questions implying doubt or indignation. The negative is *nōn*.

Cūr quisquam iūdicet, I. 40, 2, *why* SHOULD ANY ONE JUDGE ?

MOODS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

Pure Final Sentences (Subjunctive of Purpose). G. 545; A. 317; B. 282; H. 564; W. 506-508, 517, 518.

- 156 **RULE:** The subjunctive is used to express purpose or design with *ut* (*utī*), *nē*, *quō*, *quō minus*, forms of the relative pronoun, and relative adverbs.
- 157 *ut*, the normal introductory word in this construction, means *in order that*, or simply *that*. When either of these conjunctions is used in English, the subjunctive is translated by *may* or *might*. See § 152, end, and § 164.
- sēmentēs facere, ut cōpia frūmentī suppeteret*, I. 3, 1, (to make plantings), *to plant corn*, IN ORDER THAT A SUPPLY OF grain MIGHT BE AVAILABLE. *duās legiōnēs in castris reliquit ut subsidio dūci possent*, II. 8, 5, *he left the two legions in camp* (IN ORDER THAT THEY MIGHT BE ABLE to be led for aid) *to act as reserves* (§ 164).
- 158 *nē* is the negative of *ut*; it means *in order that . . . not*, or simply *that . . . not*. The verb is translated as with *ut* (§ 157).
- Id nē accidat, mihi praecavendum est*, I. 38, 2, *I must be on my guard* THAT THIS MAY NOT HAPPEN. *ibi tormenta collocavit nē hostēs suōs circumvenire possent*, II. 8, 4, *he placed his artillery there*, THAT THE ENEMY MIGHT NOT BE ABLE to surround his troops.
- 159 When the sentence involves the idea of fearing that a thing *will* happen, though the purpose is that it shall *not* happen, *nē* is translated *lest*, and the subjunctive, usually, by *shall* or *should*.
- nōluit eum locum vacāre, nē Germānī trānsirent*, I. 28, 4, *he did not wish this region to be unoccupied*, LEST THE GERMANS SHOULD CROSS.
- 160 *quō* is really an ablative of means (or degree of difference) and is generally used when there is a comparative in the purpose clause. *quō*, *by which*, = *ut eō*, *that thereby*, or simply *that*.
- castella commūnit, quō facilius prohibere posset*, I. 8, 2, *he constructed forts* THAT (THEREBY) HE MIGHT BE ABLE *more easily* to prevent them (from crossing). So II. 17, 4.
- 161 *quō minus* is used after verbs of *hindering*, *refusing*, *preventing*, and the like. See § 210.
- 162 The relative pronoun is used chiefly when its antecedent is the object of an active or the subject of a passive or intransitive verb. The equiva-

lent translation is by the periphrastic use of the infinitive with forms of *to be*, or by *shall* or *should*.

légatōs mittunt quī dīcerent, I. 7, 3, *they sent ambassadors (who WERE TO ASK) to ask*. So *quī dēdūceret*, II. 2, 1.

- 13 A form of the relative pronoun in such clauses is equivalent to *ut* with the corresponding form of *is*.

diem dicunt quā (= ut eā) diē conveniant, I. 6, 4, *they appoint a day ON WHICH (day) THEY SHALL ASSEMBLE*; i.e. they appoint a day that on this day they may assemble.

- 14 Since after many English verbs purpose is regularly expressed by the infinitive, this often forms the best translation for Latin purpose clauses. But this is impossible when the subject of the subjunctive is an expressed noun. See examples, §§ 157–163.

For substantive clauses of purpose, see §§ 208–212.

Consecutive Sentences (Subjunctive of Result). G. 552; A. 319; B. 284; H. 570; W. 519, 527, 528.

- 15 **RULE:** The subjunctive is used to denote result with *ut* (*utī*), *ut nōn* and *quīn*.

ut means *that* or *so that*; the subjunctive is usually translated by the English indicative. *ut nōn* is the negative of *ut*.

tanti tua grātia est utī condōnem, I. 20, 5, *your favor is so great (§ 62) THAT I PARDON*. (*collis*) *silvestris ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspici posset*, II. 18, 2, *a hill wooded (SO THAT IT COULD NOT easily be seen into), so thickly that one could not easily see anything among the trees*.

- 16 **Purpose or Result?** Negative result clauses cannot be mistaken for purpose clauses, since *nē*, the introductory word for a negative purpose clause, is not used in expressions of result. Compare the rules.

Clauses of result frequently follow such words as *tantus*, *so great*, *talīs*, *such*, *ita*, *so*, *eius modī*, *hūius modī*, *of such sort*, etc. A sentence containing one of these words is incomplete without a result clause following, so that the presence of such a word indicates this construction.

- 17 If there is no such word as those mentioned above (§ 166), the matter is entirely a question of *meaning*,—was there any *intention* or *will* on the part of the subject of the main clause? If so, the subordinate clause denotes *purpose*; if not, it denotes *result*.

mōns impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent, I. 6, 1, a mountain rose sharply near by, SO THAT A VERY FEW (men) COULD check (them). Here, of course, the mountain did not have any *intentions*; hence the clause is one of result.

For substantive clauses of result see §§ 213 and 214.

Subjunctive of Characteristic. G. 631; A. 320; B. 283; H. 591; W. 587.

- 168 **RULE:** The subjunctive with **quī** or any relative word may be used to characterize an antecedent, especially when it is general, indefinite or unexpressed.

This subjunctive usually needs an expansion in accurate translation if its force is to be clearly shown. This may be done by supplying words to show its limitations.

obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent, popōcit, I. 27, 3, he demanded (of the Helvetians) hostages, their arms, and the slaves THAT HAD DESERTED to them, or what slaves had deserted to them. If the indicative had been used, the sense would have been different,—*he demanded the slaves, a class which had all escaped to them.* **domi nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, I. 28, 3, there was nothing at home (BY WHICH THEY COULD SUSTAIN a famine, i.e. such that by it they could endure a famine), to live on.** **duo itinera quibus itineribus exire possent, I. 6, 1, two routes (BY WHICH ROUTES THEY COULD go out), (such that) by them they could emigrate.** **sōli sunt quī prohibuerint, II. 4, 2, they are the only ones THAT PREVENTED.**

- 169 A subjunctive introduced by **quī** follows **dignus, indignus** and **idoneus**. This use is generally referred to the above construction, but by Bennett, to § 156. Caesar shows but one example, VII. 31, 2.

Causal Clauses.

Causal Clauses with quod, quia, quoniam and quandō. G. 539, 542; A. 321; B. 286, 1; H. 588; W. 543, 544.

- 170 **RULE:** Causal clauses introduced by **quod, because, quia, quoniam** and **quandō, since**, take the indicative when the reason is stated as a fact, the subjunctive when it is given doubtfully or upon the authority of another person.

The force of the subjunctive can be given in English only by adding parenthetically, "as we said," or a similar phrase.

INDICATIVE: *fortissimi sunt Belgae propterea quod longissime absunt*, I. 1, 3, *the bravest are the Belgians (on this account) BECAUSE THEY ARE farthest AWAY.* [*sollicitabantur*], *quod regna vulgo occupabantur*, II. 1, 4, *they were stirred up BECAUSE THE POWER (in individual states) WAS GENERALLY SEIZED.*

SUBJUNCTIVE: *quod sit destitutus queritur*, I. 16, 6, *he complains BECAUSE (AS HE SAYS) HE HAS BEEN DESERTED; he complains that he has been deserted.* *Ubi orabant ut sibi auxilium ferret quod graviter ab Suebis premerentur*, IV. 16, 5, *the Ubi were asking him to aid them BECAUSE, AS THEY SAID, THEY WERE HARD PRESSED by the Suebi.*

- 71 Verbs of *thinking* and *saying* are occasionally put in the subjunctive when the sense is the same as that which would be given by the subjunctive of the verb they govern, only less clearly expressed.

Bellovac suum numerum non contulerunt, quod se suo nomine bellum gesturos esse dicerent, VII. 75, 5, *the Bellovac did not furnish the complement (of men), (BECAUSE THEY SAID THAT) because, as they said, they were going to wage war on their own account.* Similarly, *quod viderentur*, II. 11, 5, *because they thought that they were.*

Causal Clauses with *cum*. G. 586: A. 326: B. 286, 2: H. 598: W. 542.

- 72 **RULE:** Causal clauses introduced by *cum*, *since*, take the subjunctive.

This subjunctive is translated by the indicative in English.

his cum persuadere non possent, legatos mittunt, I. 9, 2, *SINCE THEY COULD not persuade them, they send ambassadors.* So II. 11, 1.

Causal Clauses with *qui*. G. 633; A. 320, e; H. 592; W. 586, 5.

- 73 **RULE:** Causal clauses introduced by *qui* take the subjunctive.

The relative is here equivalent to *cum*, causal (§ 172), and the corresponding form of *is*.

magnam Caesar iniuriam facit qui vectigalia mihi deteriora faciat, I. 36, 4, *Caesar is doing me great injury, SINCE HE IS MAKING my revenues less.* So V. 33, 1, 2, VI. 31, 5.

- 174 A peculiar use of *quod*, *because*, for *eod quod*, *for this reason, because*, occurs once in the phrase *magis eod . . . quam quod*.

mercatoribus est aditus magis eo ut (ea) quae bello ceperint, (eos) quibus vendant, habeant, quam quod... desiderent, IV. 2, 1, the traders are allowed access to them MORE FOR THIS REASON, that they may have men to whom they may sell what they have captured in war, THAN BECAUSE they desire...

Temporal Clauses.

- 175 The action of a temporal clause may be in one of three relations to the action of the principal verb:—it may be antecedent (conjunction, *after*) contemporaneous (conjunction, *while, as long as*), subsequent (conjunction, *before*).

Temporal Clauses with *postquam*, etc. G. 561–567; A. 324; B. 287; H. 602; W. 530–532.

- 176 **RULE:** Temporal clauses introduced by *postquam*, *posteaquam*, *after*, *ut*, *ubi*, *when*, *simul ac* (*atque*), *as soon as*, take the indicative, usually the perfect.

The historical present is used with *ubi* II. 9, 2, and the pluperfect IV. 26, 2. The English translation is frequently past perfect.

Ubi certiores facti sunt, legatos mittunt, I. 7, 3. WHEN THEY WERE INFORMED, they sent ambassadors. *postquam... cognovit, exercitum traducere maturavit*, II. 5, 4, AFTER HE HAD LEARNED (this), he hastened to lead his army across.

Temporal Clauses with *dum*, *dōnec* and *quoad*. G. 568–573; A. 328; B. 293; H. 603, 604; W. 533.

- 177 The English word *while* has two distinct meanings,—(1) *as long as*, and (2) *at some time during the time that*. Compare the following sentences:—(1) *he waited while* (i.e. *as long as*) *his friend was talking*; (2) *he arrived while* (i. e. *at some time during the time that*) *his friend was talking*.

- 178 **RULE:** Temporal clauses with *dum* in the sense of *while* (= *at some time during the time that*), take the (historical) present indicative.

dum ea conquiruntur, e castris egressi sunt, I. 27, 4. WHILE THESE WERE BEING SOUGHT FOR, they set out from camp. So III. 17, 1.

- 179 **RULE:** Temporal clauses with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, and

quam diu, in the sense of *while* (= *as long as*), take the indicative.

quoad potuit, *restitit*, IV. 12, 5, *he resisted AS LONG AS HE COULD*. So V. 17, 3, and **dum**, VII. 82, 1.

- 180 **RULE**: Temporal clauses with **dum**, **dōnec** and **quoad** in the sense of *until* take the indicative of an actual fact, the subjunctive when design or suspense is involved (*or* to represent an act as expected or anticipated).

Compare the construction with **antequam** and **priusquam**, § 181. The subjunctive is idiomatically translated by *can* or *could*.

SUBJUNCTIVE: **ut spatium intercōdere posset, dum milites convenirent, respondit**, I. 7, 6, *in order that time might (be able to) intervene, UNTIL THE SOLDIERS COULD ASSEMBLE, he answered*. So IV. 13, 2, 23, 4, VII. 23, 4; and I. 11, 6, where the direct discourse would be the same. **Quoad**, IV. 11, 6, V. 24, 8.

The indicative under this construction does not occur in the *Bellum Gallicum*. An example is: **Epaminōndas ferrum in corpore retinuit quoad renūtiātum est vicisse Boeōtiōs, Nepos**, xv. 9, 3, *Epaminondas retained the iron in his body UNTIL WORD WAS BROUGHT BACK that the Boeotians had conquered*.

Temporal Clauses with *antequam* and *priusquam*. G. 574–577; A. 327; B. 292; H. 605; W. 534.

- 181 **RULE**: Temporal clauses with **antequam** and **priusquam** take the indicative of an actual fact, the subjunctive when design or suspense is involved (*or* to represent an act as expected or anticipated).

Compare the construction with **dum**, § 180. The subjunctive is sometimes idiomatically translated by *can* or *could*. The words are often separated,—**ante quam, prius quam, sooner than** = *before, until*. **antequam** does not occur in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

INDICATIVE: **nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad Rhēnum pervēnerunt**, I. 53, 1, *and they did not stop fleeing (SOONER THAN) UNTIL THEY REACHED the Rhine*. So VII. 25, 4, 47, 3.

SUBJUNCTIVE: **prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum vocārī iubet**, I. 19, 3, (SOONER THAN) BEFORE HE ATTEMPTED (*to do*) anything, *he ordered Diviciacus to be summoned*. **prius quam hostēs sē ex**

terrore reciperent, in finēs Suessionum exercitum dūxit, II. 12, 1, BEFORE THE ENEMY COULD RECOVER *from their fright*, he led his army into the territory of the Suessiones. The indicative would mean "before the enemy recovered," and would imply that they did recover afterward. The subjunctive indicates that they did *not* recover.

Temporal Clauses with cum. G. 578-588; A. 325; B. 288-290; H. 600-601; W. 535-539.

- 182 **RULE:** Temporal clauses with *cum* take the indicative of any tense when they define the *date* at which the action of the leading verb took place, takes place or will take place; the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive to define the *circumstances* under which the action of the leading verb took place.

Either mood is translated by the indicative.

INDICATIVE: *contendunt cum suis finibus prohibent*, I. 1, 4, *they fight* WHEN THEY ARE KEEPING THEM OUT of their own territory. *his cum fūnēs comprehēnsi adductique sunt, praerumpēbantur*, III. 14, 6, WHEN THE ROPES HAD BEEN CAUGHT by these (hooks) AND DRAWN TAUT, *they were snapped off short*.

SUBJUNCTIVE: *cum civitās iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, Orgetorix mortuus est*, I. 4, 3, WHEN THE STATE WAS TRYING to assert its lawful power by force of arms, *Orgetorix died*.

- 183 **Cum INVERSE.** When the two actions are independent, *cum* is sometimes used with the one which seems to be logically the principal clause, just as in English.

iam nōn longius bidui viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs cōgnōscunt, VI. 7, 2, *they were now not more than two days' march away*, WHEN THEY LEARNED that the two legions had come.

Conditional Sentences.

Conditional Sentences with *sī, nisi, sīn*. G. 589-597; A. 304-311; B. 301-306; H. 572-583; W. 551-562.

- 184 Conditional sentences with *sī, nisi, sīn*, may be divided into *three* classes as regards *time*,—present, past, and future; and into *two* classes as regards *form*,—whether the condition is regarded as a *fact*, or not. A condition is thus fully described by two terms.

- 15 When a condition is regarded as a *fact*, it may be called a "logical" condition; or, in the present and past a "simple" or "assumed" condition, and in the future a "more vivid" or "probable" condition.
- 16 When a condition is regarded not as a fact but as an assumption, it may be called in the present and past an "unreal" or "contrary to fact" condition; and in the future an "ideal," "less vivid," or "possible" condition.
- 17 In both English and Latin, a condition that is regarded as a fact is put in the indicative, in whatever tense is required. A condition that is regarded as an assumption is put in the potential or subjunctive in English, the subjunctive in Latin.

38 TABLE OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

		REGARDED AS A FACT Called "LOGICAL," "SIMPLE," or "ASSUMED"	REGARDED AS AN ASSUMPTION Called "UNREAL" or "CON- TRARY TO FACT"
Time of Condition	Mood	<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
		Tense of the Indicative	Tense of the Subjunctive
<i>Present</i>		Present, sometimes (Present) Perfect	Imperfect
<i>Past</i>		Imperfect or Perfect, sometimes Pluperfect	Pluperfect
<i>Future</i>		Future or Future Perfect	Called "IDEAL," "POSSIBLE," or "LESS VIVID"
			Present or Perfect

Type Conditional Sentence in All Its Ordinary Forms.

- 189 PRESENT LOGICAL (SIMPLE OR ASSUMED). Present indicative.
Si iter facit, bene est.
If he marches (or is marching), it is well.
- 190 PRESENT UNREAL (CONTRARY TO FACT). Imperfect subjunctive.
Si iter faceret, bene esset.
If he were marching, it would be well.
 This form implies that he is NOT marching.

- 191 PAST LOGICAL (SIMPLE OR ASSUMED). Any past tense of the indicative.

Si iter faciēbat, bene erat.

If he was marching, it was well.

Si iter fēcit, bene fuit.

If he marched, it was well.

- 192 PAST UNREAL (CONTRARY TO FACT). Pluperfect subjunctive.

Si iter fēcisset, bene fuisset.

If he had marched, it would have been well.

This form implies that he *did* NOT march.

NOTE.—The indicative is the regular construction in the conclusion, with verbs which signify *possibility* or *power*, *obligation* or *necessity*.

si [populus Rōmānus] alicūius iniūriæ sibi cōsciū fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavere, I. 14, 2, *if the Roman people had been conscious (to themselves) of any injury, IT WOULD NOT HAVE BEEN DIFFICULT (for them) to be on their guard.*

- 193 FUTURE LOGICAL (PROBABLE OR MORE VIVID). Future indicative, sometimes the future perfect (usually in the condition).

Si iter faciet (fēcerit), bene erit.

If he marches [for shall march (shall have marched)] it will be well.

In this form the English is peculiar in using the present tense to refer to the future.

- 194 FUTURE IDEAL (POSSIBLE OR LESS VIVID). Present subjunctive, sometimes the perfect (usually in the condition).

Si iter faciat (fēcerit), bene sit.

If he should march, it would be well.

This form implies that the speaker considers the condition only as *possible*.

- 195 MIXED CONDITIONS. The above are the ordinary types of conditional sentences. But a conditional sentence may be "mixed," that is, it may have a condition of one form and a conclusion of another; in this case the two parts must be described separately. Especially, the condition and conclusion may be in different *tenses*, or the condition may be compound, containing two clauses, one of one tense and the other of another tense. E.g. "If he *was* there yesterday and *is* coming home to-day, we *shall* be glad." "If he *had been* here yesterday and *were* going away to-day, it *would* be different."

Conditional Clauses of Comparison. G. 602; A. 312; B. 307; H. 584; W. 566-568.

- 6 **RULE:** Conditional clauses of comparison introduced by *ac si, ut si, quasi, quam si, tamquam (si), velut si*, etc., *as if, than if*, take the subjunctive.

The uses of tenses is under the law of sequence.

absentis Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si adsit, horrent, I. 32, 4, *they shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus (though) absent*, AS IF HE WERE PRESENT. So VII. 38, 7.

- 7 Such sentences regularly involve the ellipsis of a verb form for the conclusion. Thus above, *as (THEY WOULD SHUDDER) if he were present*.

Concessive Clauses.

Concessive (Adversative) Clauses with *etsi*, etc. G. 604; A. 313. c; B. 309, 2; H. 585; W. 572.

- 8 **RULE:** Concessive clauses introduced by *etsi, etiamsi*, etc., take the same construction as conditional clauses with *si* (§§ 189-194).

nam etsi . . . vidēbat, tamen putābat, I. 46, 3, *for ALTHOUGH HE SAW . . . , yet he thought*.

The subjunctive under this construction does not occur in the *Bellum Gallicum* in direct discourse.

Concessive (Adversative) Clauses with *cum, ut*, etc. G. 606-608, 587, 634; A. 313, 320, e; B. 309; H. 586, II., 569, II.; W. 571, 586, 7.

- 9 **RULE:** Concessive clauses introduced by *cum, ut, nē, licet*, or the relative pronoun, take the subjunctive.

The subjunctive is translated by the indicative in English.

cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit, I. 26, 2, *THOUGH THE BATTLE CONTINUED from one o'clock until evening, nobody could see one of the enemy in retreat*.

Cicerō, quī . . . milites in castris continuisset, quinque cohortes mittit, VI. 36, 1, (*Cicero who*), *THOUGH Cicero had kept the soldiers in camp, he sent out five cohorts*.

ut is concessive, III. 9, 6.

Relative Clauses.

Relative Sentences. G. 624-637; A. 316-328, 342; B. 311, 312; H. 589-593; W. 580-589.

200 A relative clause is most often introduced by the relative pronoun, *qui*; also by relative adjectives, *quantus* (antecedent, *tantus*), *qualis* (antecedent, *talis*), *quot* (antecedent, *tot*), etc.; and by relative adverbs, *ubi*, *where*, *when* (antecedent, *ibi*), *unde*, *whence*, *from which* (antecedent, *inde*), *quō*, *whither*, *where* (antecedent, *eō*), etc.

201 Relative clauses taken as a class have no especial rules of construction; the relative may take the place of almost any conjunction, coördinate or subordinate, together with its corresponding demonstrative form.

202 **INDICATIVE MOOD.** When a relative clause simply describes the antecedent of the relative, or states an additional fact, the indicative mood is used.

[*Helvētī*] *proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum bellum gerunt*, I. 1. 4, *the Helvetians are nearest to the Germans, WHO LIVE across the Rhine, WITH WHOM THEY CARRY ON war*. Here *qui*—*incolunt* simply describes the Germans, and *quibuscum*—*gerunt* merely gives an additional fact about the Helvetians.

203 **SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION.** Relative sentences which depend on infinitives and subjunctives and form an integral part of the thought (i.e. a part which could not well be omitted if the sense is to be preserved), are put in the subjunctive.

cum . . . eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum expectare iussisset, paruerunt, I. 27, 2, *when he had ordered them to await his arrival at that point WHERE THEY then WERE, they obeyed*. So *quae gerantur*, II. 2, 3.

For the subjunctive in relative clauses see the rules for the various kinds of subordinate clauses and examples of the use of the relative pronoun given under them, as follows:

Subjunctive of Purpose, §§ 156-164.

Subjunctive of Characteristic, §§ 168, 169.

Causal Clauses, § 173.

Concessive Clauses, § 199.

Kinds of Subordinate Clauses.

14 Subordinate clauses may be divided into three kinds as regards their use in sentences,—(1) *attributive* (used like an adjective), (2) *adverbial* (used like an adverb) and (3) *substantive* (used like a noun).

15 **ATTRIBUTIVE CLAUSES.** Relative clauses which explain the antecedent of the relative word are attributive. See §§ 168 and 202, and examples.

16 **ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.** The following kinds of clauses may be adverbial, and all the examples given are such:—purpose (§§ 156–164), result (§§ 165–167), causal (§§ 170–173), temporal (§§ 175–183), conditional (§§ 184–197), and concessive (§§ 198, 199), including the equivalent relative clauses (§ 203, end).

17 **SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.** Various adverbial clauses have developed into substantive clauses. Thus in the sentence, *suis ut idem faciant imperat*, V. 37, 1, the clause is not thought of as answering the question, *For what purpose?* but as defining *what order was given*. It becomes practically the internal object of *imperat*,—*he orders his men to do the same*.

Substantive clauses are therefore described according to the adverbial clauses from which they are developed or according to the introductory word.

Complementary Final Sentences (Substantive Clauses of Purpose).

G. 546–550; A. 331; B. 295; H. 564; W. 510–516.

208 Verbs of *will* and *desire*, including those of *warning* and *beseeking*, of *urging* and *demanding*, of *resolving* and *endeavoring*, are followed by *ut* or *nē* with the subjunctive.

civitāti persuāsīt ut exīrent, I. 2, 1, *he persuaded (the state) the citizens to EMIGRATE*. See § 164. *obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius statueret*, I. 20, 1, *he began to beseech (him) NOT TO TAKE any very severe measures*.

209 Verbs of *hindering*, including verbs and phrases signifying to *prevent*, *forbid*, *refuse* and *beware*, are often followed by *nē* with the subjunctive if they are not negatived.

nē causam dīceret, sē eripuit, I. 4, 1, *he saved himself FROM PLEADING his case; he escaped PLEADING his case*. *multitudinem dēterrent nē frumentum cōferant*, I. 17, 2, *they prevent the people FROM BRINGING grain*. So I. 31, 16.

- 210 Verbs of *hindering* and *refusing* may be followed by *quō minus* (= *ut eō minus, that thereby the less*). See §§ 160 and 161.

recūsare quō minus essent, I. 31, 7, *to refuse TO BE*. *nāvēs ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venire possent*, IV. 22, 4, *the ships were prevented by the wind (FROM BEING ABLE to come to the same port) from reaching the same port*. So VII. 49, 2. Only instances in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

- 211 After verbs of *fearing*, *ut* means *that . . . not*, and *nē* means *that*.
rem frumentariam timēmus ut supportari posset, I. 39, 6, (we fear the grain supply, *THAT IT CAN NOT* be furnished), *we are afraid THAT a supply of grain can NOT be furnished*. Only instance of *ut* in this construction in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

nē offenderet verēbatur, I. 19, 3, *he was afraid THAT HE WOULD HURT*. So. II. 1, 2.

- 212 *ut* is sometimes omitted in object clauses, especially after verbs of *wishing, necessity* and *permission*.

rogat finem orandi faciat, I. 20, 5, *he asks (him) (TO MAKE an end of his entreating), to end his entreaties*.

Substantive Clauses of Result. G. 553, 557; A. 332; B. 297; H. 571; W. 521-526.

- 213 Substantive clauses of result include chiefly those used (1) after verbs of *effecting* and *accomplishing*, (2) as subjects of impersonal verbs signifying *to happen, to follow, etc.*, (3) to explain a noun or pronoun.

(1) *nōli committere ut hīc locus . . . nōmen capiat*, I. 14, 7, (be unwilling to allow *THAT THIS PLACE TAKE a name*), *do not allow this place to get a name (in history)*. *fēcerunt ut cōsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur*, II. 11, 2, (they made *THAT THEIR DEPARTURE SHOULD SEEM* similar to a flight), *they made their departure seem like a flight*.

(2) *fiēbat ut vagārentur*, I. 2, 4, *it happened THAT THEY WANDERED*. *erit ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audeant*, II. 17, 3, *it will (be) happen THAT THE REST WILL NOT DARE to stand against (us)*.

(3) *id . . . ut flūmen trānsīrent*, I. 13, 2, *this . . . NAMELY, CROSS the river*. *iūs est belli ut qui vicērunt eis quōs vicērunt imperent*, I. 36, 1, *it is a law of war THAT (those who have conquered) the conquerors GIVE COMMANDS TO (those whom they have conquered) the conquered*.

Substantive Clauses with *quīn*. G. 555, 556; A. 332, g; B. 298; H. 594, ii, 595, 596; W. 573–579.

- 14 Substantive clauses with *quīn* are used after sentences and phrases of *doubting, hindering*, and the like when they are *negatived* or *questioned*. The general translation of *quīn* is *but that* (taken together as a subordinate conjunction), often shortened to *that*; but *quīn* and its verb are often condensed into an entirely different idiom.

nōn est dubium quīn Helvētīī plūrimū possint, I. 3, 6, *there is no doubt (BUT) THAT THE HELVETIANS ARE the most POWERFUL*. Similarly I. 4, 4, 17, 4, 31, 15, VII. 38, 8, 66, 6. *nōn dubitāre quīn proficiscātur*, II. 2, 5, *not to hesitate (BUT THAT HE SHOULD SET OUT) to set out*.

nōn cunctāre quīn pūgnā dēcertet, III. 23, 7, *not to delay (BUT THAT HE SHOULD FIGHT IT OUT in close conflict) fighting a pitched battle*. Similarly V. 55, 1, and VII. 36, 4. *expectārī nōn oportet quīn eātur*, III. 24, 5, (it ought not to be awaited BUT THAT IT SHOULD BE GONE), *he ought not to defer going*.

neque longius abest quīn . . ., III. 18, 5, (and it is not further off BUT THAT), *and not later than . . .* *neque multum abest ab eō quīn paucis diēbus dēdūci possint*, V. 2, 2, (and it is not very far from this stage, THAT THEY CAN be launched within a few days), *and they will, in a few days, be nearly ready for launching*. Similarly VII. 11, 8. *sine sollicitūdine quīn acciperet*, V. 53, 5, *without anxiety (THAT HE WOULD RECEIVE), lest he should receive*.

nōn sibi temperābunt quīn exeant, I. 33, 4, (they will not restrain themselves BUT THAT THEY SHOULD GO OUT), *they will not refrain from passing out*. Similarly I. 47, 2, II. 3, 5. *nōn recūsāre quīn contendat*, IV. 7, 3, *not to refuse TO FIGHT*.

neque aliter sentiunt quīn . . ., VII. 44, 4, (and they do not think otherwise THAN THAT), *and they certainly think that . . .*

These are the only instances of *quīn* in the *Bellum Gallicum* except in the conjunctive phrase *quīn etiam* (see vocabulary).

Substantive Clauses with *quod*. G. 524, 525; A. 333; B. 299; H. 588, 3, 4; W. 549.

- 215 Causal clauses with *quod* (§ 170) shade into substantive clauses. As a conjunction *quod* has four principal meanings, (1) *because*, (2) *that* or *the fact that*, (3) *in regard to the fact that*, (4) *so far as*.

1. When *quod* means *because*, the clause may be,—(a) adverbial (see § 170), or (b) substantive, in apposition with some such word as *propterea*, *eō*, *hōc*, *on this account*; this usage shades into (2).

(a) *Caesar quod...memoriā tenēbat, concēdendum nōn putābat*, I. 7, 4, *Caesar, BECAUSE HE REMEMBERED..., did not think that (it) their request ought to be granted.* (b) *eō minus dubitationis mihi datur quod...memoriā teneō*, I. 14, 1, (less of hesitation is given to me), *I can hesitate less (in this matter) FOR THIS REASON, BECAUSE I REMEMBER.*

2. When *quod* means (a) *that* or (b) *the fact that*, it is a substantive clause, used either as subject, object, or appositive.

(a) *num recentium iniuriarum memoriam dēponere possum, quod...vexāstis?* I. 14, 3, (can I lay aside the memory of your recent wrongdoing, *THAT YOU HAVE HARASSED*), *can I forget your recent wrongdoing, in plundering...?* (b) *accēdēbat quod...dolēbant*, III. 2, 5, (there approached *THE FACT THAT THEY GRIEVED*), *an additional fact was that they grieved...*

3. When *quod* means *in regard to the fact that*, as *for the fact that*, it introduces a substantive clause that has also an adverbial force with reference to the whole sentence.

quod multitudinem Germanōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id mei mūniendī causā faciō, I. 44, 6, *IN REGARD TO THE FACT THAT I AM BRINGING a host of Germans into Gaul, I am doing it for the purpose of protecting myself.*

4. Similar to the above is *quod*, *so far as*.

quod commodō rei publicae facere poterit, Aeduōs dēfendet, I. 35, 4, *SO FAR AS HE SHALL BE ABLE to do (so) with advantage to the public interests, he shall defend the Aeduans.* Only instance in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

- 216 CLAUSES OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. The accusative and infinitive of indirect discourse (§ 228) and indirect questions (§ 245) are also subordinate clauses.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN ENGLISH.

- 217 DEFINITION OF DIRECT DISCOURSE. Direct discourse (Latin, *ōrātiō rēcta*) is the quotation of words in the exact form in which they were spoken. E.g. *He said, "I AM GOING."*
- 218 DEFINITION OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. Indirect discourse (Latin, *ōrātiō obliqua*) is the quotation of words with adaptations in grammatical construction, in person, or in tense to the standpoint of the person who quotes. E.g. *He said THAT HE WAS GOING.*
- 219 INTRODUCTORY VERB. Indirect discourse occurs after verbs of

saying, hearing, believing, thinking and the like. Such a verb is said to introduce or govern the indirect discourse and is called the introductory verb.

- 20 **INTRODUCTORY PARTICLE.** Indirect discourse is further introduced by the subordinate conjunction *that*, expressed or understood, which is called the introductory particle.

- 21 **CHANGE OF TENSE.** When indirect discourse occurs after an introductory verb that is in any *past* tense, all the verb forms that were in the present tense in the direct discourse, both main verbs and auxiliaries, change to the corresponding past tense.

Direct Discourse.

My son **WRITES** daily.

My son **IS** writing.

My son **MAY** write.

My son **CAN** write.

My son **HAS** written.

My son **WILL** write.

My son **SHALL** write.

He said that

Indirect Discourse.

his son **WROTE** daily.

his son **WAS** writing.

his son **MIGHT** write.

his son **COULD** write.

his son **HAD** written.

his son **WOULD** write.

his son **SHOULD** write.

Observe that number and voice do not change; a change in the former would alter the *sense* of the original statement, a change in the latter would alter its *form*.

NOTE.—An exception to this change of tense occurs when the verb of the direct discourse is a universal present (§ 146).

DIRECT: *All men naturally DESIRE liberty.* **INDIRECT:** *he knew that all men naturally DESIRE liberty.* Compare B. G., III. 10, 3.

- 222 **CHANGE OF PRONOUNS.** In passing from direct to indirect discourse changes of pronouns often occur. These changes depend entirely upon the relation of the person quoting to the one who is addressed. Thus, A says to B, "I will help you."

If A quotes this to B, it becomes,—				I	said that I	would help you.
" A	"	C,	"	I	"	I " him.
" B	"	A,	"	You	"	you " me.
" B	"	C,	"	He	"	he " me.
" C	"	D,	"	He	"	he " him.

- 223 **INDIRECT QUESTIONS.** When an interrogative sentence is quoted, it often has an introductory verb different from those that introduce declarative sentences; especially verbs and phrases signifying *to ask, to*

doubt, to be a question, etc., though such a verb as *to know* may introduce either a declarative or interrogative clause.

The rule for changing a question to the indirect form divides into two parts.

- 224 1. If an interrogative sentence contains an interrogative word (a pronoun, an adjective or an adverb), it is put into the indirect form in the same manner as a declarative sentence. E.g. "Who is going?" I know who is going. He **ASKED** who was going.
- 225 2. If an interrogative sentence is one that can be answered by "Yes" or "No" and has the inverted order (i.e. verb or auxiliary before the subject), the declarative is restored in the indirect form, and *whether* or *if* is added after the introductory verb as an introductory particle. E.g. "Are you ready?" I doubt if you are ready. I do not know *whether* he is ready. I could not see *whether* he was ready.
- 226 **INDIRECT FORM OF IMPERATIVES.** An imperative is changed to indirect discourse by the use of (1) the auxiliary *should*, or (2) the infinitive. E.g. "Shut the door." (1) He said you should shut the door. (2) (He said to shut the door.) He told you to shut the door.

Other English colloquial forms, such as the auxiliary *might*, or *for* with the infinitive, should be avoided.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN LATIN.

Indirect Discourse (Ōrātiō Obliqua). G. 648-663; A. 335-341; B. 313-323; H. 641-653; W. 597-619.

- 227 The definition of indirect discourse is the same for Latin as for English. The construction, however, is far more widely extended and *the introductory verb is very often merely implied*. E.g. He persuaded the citizens to emigrate; [saying] that it was very easy.
- 228 **RULE:** Declarative principal clauses of direct discourse, on becoming indirect, change the indicative (or subjunctive) with subject nominative to infinitive with subject accusative. Interrogative and imperative principal clauses and all subordinate clauses become subjunctive.
- 229 **SUBJUNCTIVE IN IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE.** Under the construction of subordinate clauses of indirect discourse are included many

subjunctives which depend on an infinitive or another subjunctive, where the idea of indirect discourse is merely implied.

- 230 TENSE OF THE INFINITIVE.** A present indicative of direct discourse becomes present infinitive in indirect; an imperfect, perfect or pluperfect indicative becomes perfect infinitive; and a future or future perfect indicative becomes future infinitive.

The tense of the introductory verb has nothing to do with the tense of the infinitive.

- 231 TENSE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.** The tense of the subjunctive is determined by the general law of the sequence of tenses (§ 151). If either the introductory verb or the infinitive is a past tense, the subjunctives are regularly imperfect or pluperfect. But the law of sequence is frequently suspended for vividness.

NOTE.—An imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive of the direct discourse, as in unreal (contrary to fact) conditions, is always retained in the indirect.

- 232 CHANGES IN PERSON** depend upon the same principles as in English (§ 222).

- 233** As in English (§ 221) **VOICE and NUMBER do not change.**

- 234 TRANSLATION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.** The subjunctive is usually translated by the indicative (the tense being according to the English rules), unless in the direct discourse it would be a use of the subjunctive that requires some special auxiliary in translation (e.g. a purpose clause, see § 156).

- 235 TRANSLATION OF THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.** English sometimes employs the accusative and infinitive like the Latin, in such expressions as, "I thought the man to be honest," "I understood him to say it"; but the use of this construction is limited. It is *not* English to say, "He declares himself to be about to win"; and such expressions should be changed to the regular construction of English indirect discourse, viz. a subordinate clause introduced by *that*, with subject nominative and a finite mood.

- 236 CHANGE FROM INDIRECT TO DIRECT DISCOURSE.** For a complete understanding of a sentence of indirect discourse it must be changed to the direct form in Latin, this translated to the direct in English, and the last changed to the English indirect, when it becomes a translation of the given Latin. See next page.

Latin Indirect: *dixit perfacile esse*, I. 2, 2, cf. I. 3, 6, 7, etc.

Latin Direct: *dixit "perfacile est."*

English Direct: *He said, "It is very easy."*

English Indirect: *He said that it was very easy.* This is the translation of the first.

- 237 RULES FOR CHANGING PRINCIPAL CLAUSES. 1. *Subject accusative changes to nominative of the same number.* If it is a pronoun, there may be a change of person. For this no rule can be given because it depends upon circumstances (see § 222); but forms of the reflexive pronouns and adjectives usually become first person.

2. Present infinitive changes to present indicative of same voice.

Perfect	"	"	"	{ imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect }	"	"	"	"
Future	"	"	"	{ future or future perfect }	"	"	"	"

The person and number is determined by the subject, already found by Rule 1.

3. Pronouns (other than the subject) require change in *person only*.

(Orgetorix) *cōfirmat sē suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum (esse)*, I. 3, 7.

1. The subject accusative is *sē*, which refers to the subject of *cōfirmat*, namely, *Orgetorix*. Since *Orgetorix* is speaking of himself, in his own words he must have used the first person. For the same reason the number of *sē* is singular. Hence according to the rule, the direct discourse of *sē* is first person, singular, nominative, *ego*.

2. *conciliātūrum (esse)* is future, active. It therefore changes to future, indicative, active, and agrees with *ego*; hence *conciliābō*.

Since the person and number are shown by the personal ending, *ego* may be omitted (§ 122).

3. Like *sē*, the possessive adjectives *suis* and *suō* refer to the subject, and for the same reason would become first person; their construction is in no way affected and they change to the corresponding forms of *meus*, namely, *meis* and *meō*.

illis refers to *Dumnorix* and *Casticus*, to whom this promise was made. Hence this changes to the corresponding form of the second personal pronoun, namely *vōbis*.

The sentence in direct discourse thus reads, *meis cōpiis meōque exercitū vōbis rēgna conciliābō*.

English Direct: I WILL win the power (in your states) for YOU with MY forces and MY army.

English Indirect: *Orgelotrix* { declares } that HE { WILL } win the power (in their states) for THEM with HIS forces and HIS army.

Notice that it is not necessary to translate a Latin sentence before finding the Latin direct discourse, but only that the relations of any persons mentioned shall be understood.

Notice also that after changing the English direct to indirect, the pronouns are a translation of those in the Latin indirect; so that, as far as concerns getting a translation of Latin indirect discourse, there is nothing that requires attention except the accusative and infinitive.

- 238** The following type sentences should be kept thoroughly in mind. They cover all cases that occur in the *Bellum Gallicum* (if the historical present is translated by the past), except such as are mentioned especially in the notes. If these are used, it will not be necessary to go through the process of changing to direct discourse in order to get the translation.

Dixit sē	{ appellāre, appellāri, appellāvissē, appellātum esse, appellātūrum esse, appellātum iri,	he said that he	{ called (was calling). was called. had called. had been called. would call. would be called.
----------	--	-----------------	--

- 239** CHANGE OF SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TO DIRECT DISCOURSE. The mood of a subordinate clause of direct discourse depends upon its construction under the various rules that have been given (§§ 156-215). Therefore in changing from indirect to direct discourse, the mood of a subordinate clause may or may not change.

If the indicative is to be used in the direct discourse, the tense may be prescribed (e.g. in clauses with *dum*) or may depend upon the sense (e.g. in clauses with *quod*).

If the subjunctive is to be retained (e.g. in a purpose clause), the tense may or may not change, under the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 151).

perfacile esse probat propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset, I. 3, 6.

Here *quod* introduces a reason which was certainly assigned by

Orgetorix as a fact. Hence the indicative in direct discourse; tense, present periphrastic or future (§ 153).

perfacile est, propterea quod ipse meae civitatis imperium obtenturus sum (obtinēbō), it is very easy, because I AM GOING TO HAVE (shall have) control of MY state MYSELF. Indirect: *He proved that it WAS very easy, because HE WAS GOING TO HAVE (WOULD HAVE) control of HIS state HIMSELF.*

(dicit) nōn esse dubium quin plurimum Helvētī possent, I. 3, 7.

Clauses introduced by *quin* always take the subjunctive (§ 214), hence the mood of the direct discourse is the same. As it stands, *possent* is imperfect because it depends upon an historical present (*probat*, I. 3, 6), which may take the sequence of an historical tense (§ 152). In the direct discourse the subjunctive will depend upon *est*, and hence will change to the present.

nōn est dubium, quin plurimum Helvētī possint, there is no doubt that the Helvetians ARE the most powerful. Indirect: [*He said*] *that there WAS no doubt that the Helvetians WERE the most powerful.*

- 240 INDICATIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES. The indicative is sometimes used in subordinate clauses of indirect discourse, (1) when the clause is inserted by the writer by way of explanation and does not form a part of the quotation (e.g. II. 4, 10), (2) to show that the writer himself considers the matter as a fact (e.g. I. 40, 5).

- 241 CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, while following the same general rules as other complex sentences, present peculiarities of sequence, periphrastic forms, etc., so that all the regular forms of condition are presented for reference.

- 242 When reference is made to this article, see what tense, mood and auxiliary is used in translating the type sentence, and use the same in translating the desired passage.

1. PRESENT LOGICAL (SIMPLE OR ASSUMED). See § 189.

Si iter facit, bene est.

If he marches (or is marching), it is well.

Dicit si iter faciat, bene esse.

He says that if he marches (or is marching), it is well.

Dixit si iter faceret, bene esse.

He said that if he marched (or was marching), it was well.

2. PRESENT UNREAL (CONTRARY TO FACT). See § 190.

Si iter faceret, bene esset.

If he were marching, it would be well.

Dicit si iter faceret, bene futurum esse.

He says that if he were marching, it would be well.

Dixit si iter faceret, bene futurum esse.

He said that if he were marching, it would be well.

3. PAST LOGICAL (SIMPLE OR ASSUMED). See § 191.

Si iter faciēbat, bene erat.

If he was marching, it was well.

Si iter fēcit, bene fuit.

If he marched, it was well.

(For either) **Dicit si iter faceret, bene fuisse.**

He says that if he marched (or was marching), it was well.

Dixit si iter faceret, bene fuisse.

He said that if he marched (or was marching), it was well.

4. PAST UNREAL (CONTRARY TO FACT). See § 192.

Si iter fēcisset, bene fuisset.

If he had marched, it would have been well.

Dicit si iter fēcisset, bene futurum fuisse.

He says that if he had marched, it would have been well.

Dixit si iter fēcisset, bene futurum fuisse.

He said that if he had marched, it would have been well.

NOTE.—A sentence of this type, the conclusion of which is passive, requires a periphrastic form in indirect discourse.

Si iter fēcisset, victus esset.

If he had marched, he would have been conquered.

Dicit } si iter fēcisset, futurum fuisse ut vinceretur.

Dixit } that if he had marched, (it would have been that he
He says } would be conquered), he would have been conquered.

5. FUTURE LOGICAL (PROBABLE OR MORE VIVID). See § 193.

Si iter faciet (fācerit), bene erit.

If he marches [for shall march (shall have marched)], it will be well.

Dicit si iter faciat (fācerit, subjunctive), bene futurum esse.

He says that if he marches, it will be well.

Dixit si iter faceret (fēcisset), bene futurum esse.

He said that if he marched, it would be well.

6. FUTURE IDEAL (POSSIBLE OR LESS VIVID). See § 194.

Si iter faciat (föcerit), bene sit.

If he should march, it would be well.

Dicit si iter faciat, bene futurum esse.

He says that if he should march, it would be well.

Dixit si iter faceret, bene futurum esse.

He said that if he should march, it would be well.

- 243 **INDIRECT QUESTIONS.** It has been said (§ 228) that interrogative principal clauses of direct discourse on becoming indirect discourse (indirect questions) take the subjunctive.

Such clauses present no difficulties in translation since the English has the same construction, including the rules for the sequence of tenses. See §§ 152 and 223. This use of the subjunctive in Latin is easily recognized from the fact that there is always an interrogative word in the clause.

To change to the direct form follow the principles of the changes for declarative sentences. Thus:

oculis in utram partem [Arar] fluat iudicari non potest, I. 12, 1.
DIRECT: *in utram partem Arar fluit?* *In what direction DOES the Saône FLOW?* **INDIRECT:** *It cannot be judged by the eye (s) in what direction it FLOWS.*

NOTE.—*Si* is sometimes used in the sense of *to see if*, introducing an indirect question after verbs of trial. E.g. *si perrumpere possent, cönati*, I. 8, 4; see note. So II. 9, 1.

- 244 Indirect questions usually have different introductory verbs in Latin as in English (§ 223). But when a long speech in Latin is quoted in indirect form, neither Latin nor English takes the pains to insert a different introductory verb before an interrogative clause.

[dixit] Ariovistum populi Römāni amicitiam appetisse; cūr quisquam iudicāret...? I. 40, 2, he said that Ariovistus had sought the friendship of the Roman people; why should any one judge...? [he asked why any one should judge...] So I. 40, 4, 43, 8, 44, 8, etc.

- 245 **IMPERATIVES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.** It has been said (§ 228) that imperatives of direct discourse on becoming indirect take the subjunctive. The tense is according to the rules of sequence. For the different methods of translation see § 226.

respondit...si quid vellent, reverterentur, I. 7, 6. **DIRECT:** *si quid vultis, revertimini*, *if you want an answer, RETURN.* **INDIRECT:** *He answered...that if they wanted an answer, THEY SHOULD (MIGHT)*

RETURN; or, *he answered . . . if they wanted answer, (FOR THEM) TO RETURN.* So I. 13, 4.

nē . . . suae virtutis tribueret, I. 13, 5. DIRECT: *nōli . . . tuae virtutis tribuere*, (BE UNWILLING TO ATTRIBUTE), DO NOT ATTRIBUTE (*it*) TO YOUR OWN *valor*. INDIRECT: HE SHOULD NOT ATTRIBUTE *it* TO HIS OWN *valor*; or, (FOR HIM) NOT TO ATTRIBUTE *it* TO HIS OWN *valor*.

- 246 RHETORICAL QUESTIONS. When a question is asked merely for effect, it is usually equivalent to a strong declarative statement. Such questions, like a declarative sentence, take the accusative and infinitive in indirect discourse.

num memoriam depōnere posse, I. 14, 3, COULD *he* (lay aside the memory) *forget*? So V. 28, 6.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

First or Present Imperative. G. 268, 270, and Remark 2; A. 269; B. 281; H. 560; W. 473, 474, 495, 496.

- 247 The use of the present imperative in Latin is the same as in English. The imperative occurs seven times in the *Bellum Gallicum*, IV. 25, 3 (see § 6), V. 30, 1, VII. 38, 3, 50, 4, 6, 77, 9 (see note), 16. The other imperative does not occur in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

- 248 A negative imperative sentence or prohibition is most frequently expressed by *nōli* (sometimes *cavē*) with the infinitive, sometimes by *nē* with the imperative, or perfect subjunctive.

nōlite hōs vestrō auxiliō expoliāre, VII. 77, 9, (BE UNWILLING TO DEPRIVE), DO NOT DEPRIVE *them* of *your aid*. Only instance in the *Bellum Gallicum* of a prohibition in direct discourse.

INFINITIVE.

- 249 The Latin infinitive has two uses, (1) as a substantive, (2) as a representative of the indicative.

The Infinitive as a Substantive. G. 280; A. 270, 271; B. 326–328; H. 606–612; W. 622–626.

- 250 As a substantive the infinitive has two tenses, present and perfect.

- 251 The present is the common form of the infinitive used as a substantive; it has to do with continued action. The perfect infinitive used as a sub-

stantive, having to do with completed action, does not occur in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

- 252 The infinitive as a substantive is used only as the subject and object of verbs. For the oblique cases and for the objective after a preposition, the gerund is used (§ 267).
- 253 As subject the infinitive is used chiefly with forms of *sum* and impersonal verbs.
praestat perferre, I. 17, 3, *it is better TO ENDURE*.
- 254 As an object (complementary infinitive) it is used to complete the meaning of verbs meaning to *wish, decide, fear*, etc., which take the same construction in English.
cōstituērunt comparāre, I. 3, 1, *they determined TO PREPARE*.
- 255 An accusative and a complementary infinitive may both be used as the objects of verbs meaning to *bid* and *forbid, to permit*, etc.
eōs ire pati, I. 6, 3, *to allow THEM TO GO*. So II. 5, 1.

The Infinitive as the Representative of the Indicative. G. 281; A. 272; B. 329–331; H. 613–619; W. 628–635.

- 256 As the representative of the indicative, the infinitive has three tenses, —present, perfect and future.
- 257 The infinitive with subject accusative may be used as a substantive clause (i.e. as subject or object) like the infinitive alone. See §§ 253 and 254.
poenam sequi oportēbat, I. 4, 1, (*PUNISHMENT-TO-FOLLOW* was fitting), *it was the law for the punishment to follow*; or, *that the penalty . . . be inflicted*.
quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, I. 1, 5, (*GAULS-TO-CONSTITUTE-which*, has been said), *which it has been said that the Gauls constitute*.
optimum est quemque reverti, II. 10, 4, *it is best (for) EACH ONE TO RETURN*, or, *THAT EACH ONE RETURN*.

This construction is essentially that of indirect discourse. The first and third examples show instances which are *informal* indirect discourse, and show the development of the construction from that of § 255.

Historical Infinitive. G. 647; A. 275; B. 335; H. 610; W. 631.

- 258 The infinitive with subject nominative is sometimes used instead of the imperfect indicative for vividness in historical narration.
Caesar flāgitāre, I. 16, 1, *Caesar WAS DEMANDING*. So I. 16, 4, 32, 3; II. 30, 3; III. 4, 1, 2, 3; V. 33, 1.

Participles may also denote merely an attendant circumstance. E.g. "*Entering the water, he waded out.*" This merely notes two acts,—he entered the water, he waded out. Latin often employs a participle in this way where English requires two coördinate verbs.

Uses of Latin Participles. G. 664–668; A. 290–292; B. 336–337; H. 636–640; W. 645–652.

- 264 Latin participles or participial phrases may express,—1, *time*, 2, *cause*, 3, *condition*, 4, *concession*, 5, *attendant circumstance*, 6, *means*, 7, the thought of a *relative clause*.

1. *patrum nostrorum memoriā, omni Galliā vexatā*, II. 4, 2, (in the memory of our fathers, ALL GAUL HAVING BEEN OVERRUN), *within the memory of the last generation*, WHEN ALL GAUL WAS IN CONFUSION. 2. *timore perterriti Rōmāni discēdunt*, I. 23, 3, *the Romans are withdrawing* (HAVING BEEN TERRIFIED by fear), BECAUSE THEY ARE AFRAID. 3. *datā facultate nōn temperābunt*, I. 7, 5, (AN OPPORTUNITY HAVING BEEN GIVEN), IF OPPORTUNITY IS GIVEN, *they will not refrain*. 4. *hāc rē cōgnitā exercitum castris continuit*, II. 11, 2, (THIS THING HAVING BEEN ASCERTAINED), THOUGH HE FOUND THIS OUT, *he kept the army in camp*. In the same sentence the participle *veritus* denotes cause. 5. *persuādent finitimis, uti... ūsī... oppidis... exūstīs... proficiantur*, I. 5, 4; see note, Book I., l. 88. 6. *ē locō superiōre pīlis missis phalangem perfrēgerunt*, I. 25, 2, (SPEARS HAVING BEEN THROWN), BY THROWING THEIR SPEARS *from the higher position, they broke the line*. 7. *frātri interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferēbat*, IV. 12, 5, (he was bearing aid to his brother, CUT OFF by the enemy), *he was trying to help his brother WHO HAD BEEN CUT OFF (from retreat) by the enemy*.

- 265 The perfect passive participle modifying a substantive is sometimes translated by a verbal noun with an object.

iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, III. 10, 2, (the wrong of RETAINED Roman knights), *the crime of retaining Roman knights*.

- 266 *Habeō* with a direct object modified by a perfect passive participle is often used in a sense that is practically equivalent to the pluperfect tense of the latter verb. Strictly, however, it denotes more than the pluperfect, laying emphasis on the *maintenance of the result*.

portōria... redēpta habet, I. 18, 3, (HE HAS the import duties BOUGHT UP), *he has bought up the import duties, (and still holds them)*. *omnia explōrāta habēmus*, II. 4, 4, (WE HAVE all things FOUND OUT), *we have found out everything*.

Besides the above examples this construction occurs as follows,—
I. 9, 3 (see note), 15, 1, 44, 12; III. 2, 5; VI. 13, 6, 20, 1; VII. 29, 6, 54, 2.

For uses of the future passive participle (the gerundive) see §§ 269, 270, and 278.

THE GERUND.

The gerund is the verbal noun in the oblique cases. The infinitive is used in the nominative and as the object of verbs (not of prepositions).

Uses of the Gerund. G. 426–433; A. 295–301; B. 338; H. 625–631; W. 637–639.

- 267 The gerund is the verbal noun in the oblique cases. The infinitive is used as the nominative and the accusative after verbs (the gerund after prepositions).

The uses of the gerund in the *Bellum Gallicum* are as follows:

GENITIVE: Objective, explanatory, with adjectives (I. 2, 4; V. 6, 3), with *causâ* and *gratiâ*. See examples under §§ 56 and 58.

DATIVE: Of purpose or end (III. 4, 1; V. 27, 5).

ACCUSATIVE: Only after *ad*. E.g. *ad proficiscendum*, I. 3, 1, (to setting out), *for leaving home*.

ABLATIVE: Of means (IV. 13, 5; V. 54, 1; VII. 71, 4), and after *dē* and *in*.

- 268 The gerund *may* take an object in the case which the verb regularly governs, accusative, dative (with special verbs), genitive (with verbs of *remembering*, etc.), but for this use the gerundive construction is generally substituted, regularly so after prepositions.

THE GERUNDIVE.

- 269 The gerundive has two uses,—(a) as the future passive participle, (b) as a substitute for the gerund.

Gerundive as a Participle. G. 251, 2, note; A. 294; B. 337, 7; H. 621–622; W. 638, 643, 644.

- 270 As the future passive participle the gerundive implies *necessity*, *obligation*, or the idea of *deserving*. In these senses it is used in the *Bellum Gallicum* as follows:

1. As a predicate adjective.

nōn ferendus, I. 33, 5, (not to be borne), *unendurable*. Similarly

conferendum, comparandam, I. 31, 11, (to be compared,) *comparable*; laudanda, V. 8, 4, (to be praised), *praiseworthy*. *māximē admirandum*, VI. 42, 3 (most to be wondered at), *most remarkable*.

2. As a predicate accusative after *cūrō*, *provide for*, *cause*, *dō*, *give*, *trādō*, *hand over*, and similar verbs.

pontem faciendum cūravit, I. 13, 1, *he caused a bridge to be built*.

Sabinum mittit, qui eam manum distinendam curet, III. 11, 4, *he sent Sabinus (who was to cause this force to be kept separate), to see that that force was kept separate*. *exercitum Sabinō in Menapiōs dūcendum dedit*, IV. 22, 5, *he gave the army to Sabinus to be led among the Menapii*.

See also § 278.

Gerundive for Gerund. G. 427; A. 296; B. 339; H. 623; W. 640.

271 When the gerund might be used but would have an object, the gerundive construction is often substituted, regularly so after a preposition. Also III. 25, 1, in the ablative of means; see example below.

272 The gerundive construction consists in putting the substantive in the case which the gerund would have had, and making the gerundive agree with it, as a verbal adjective, in gender, number, and case.

GERUND: *ad effeminandum animōs*, I. 1, 3, *to weakening the minds*. Here the construction is identical in both languages: *effeminandum* is the object of *ad*, and *animōs* is the object of *effeminandum*, just as *weakening* is the object of *to*, and *minds* is the object of *weakening*.

GERUNDIVE: *ad animōs effeminandōs*. Here *animōs* is the object of *ad*, and *effeminandōs* agrees with it in gender, number, and case. English has no such verb form as the gerundive, and cannot translate any differently from above,—(to weakening the minds), *to weaken the character*.

GERUNDIVE: *lapidibus telisque subministrandīs*, III. 25, 1. GERUND: *lapidēs telaque subministrandō*, BY FURNISHING STONES AND SPEARS. So *caespitibus comportandīs* following. What would be the form of these two words if the gerund were used?

273 1. With *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostrī*, and *vestrī*, the gerundive is employed with the same ending, regardless of gender or number, since these forms were originally neuter singular.

sui colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt, III. 6, 1, *they leave the enemy a chance (OF COLLECTING THEMSELVES), OF COLLECTING*

THEIR WITS. Here *sui*, referring to *hostibus*, is plural, and strict agreement would require *colligendórum*.

2. The gerundive construction would naturally be confined to transitive verbs, but the deponent verbs which govern the ablative (§ 73) regularly admit it.

spēs potiundī oppidī, II. 7, 2, *hope of capturing the town*. So III. 7, 6.

SUPINES.

274 The supines are the accusative and ablative of a fourth declension verbal noun.

Accusative Supine (Supine in *-um*, Former Supine). G. 435; A. 302; B. 340, 1; H. 632-634; W. 654.

275 **RULE:** The accusative supine is used chiefly after verbs of motion to express purpose (design). It may take an object. It is translated by the infinitive.

legátos mittunt rogātū auxilium, I. 11, 2, *they send envoys to ask help*.

This construction occurs 22 times in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

Ablative Supine (Supine in *-ū*, Latter Supine). G. 436; A. 303; B. 240, 2; H. 635; W. 655.

276 **RULE:** The ablative supine is used with adjectives as an ablative of specification. It never takes an object.

It is translated by the infinitive, if retained in English at all.

perfacile factū, I. 3, 6, *very easy (to do)*. So IV. 30, 2, VII. 64, 2, *horribiliórēs aspectū*, V. 14, 2, *more terrible in appearance*. Only instances in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

Active (First) Periphrastic Conjugation. G. 247; A. 113, b; B. 115; H. 236; W. 188.

277 The active periphrastic conjugation is the combination of the future active participle with forms of *sum*.

The participle is translated separately in its usual way (§ 261), and the form of *sum* according to its tense, mood, use, etc.

quod portātūrī || erant, I. 5, 3, *what THEY WERE || GOING TO CARRY*.
ubi bellum gestūrī || essent, III. 9, 6, *where THEY WERE || GOING TO WAGE war*. See also example under § 239.

Passive (Second) Periphrastic Conjugation. G. 251; A. 113, *d*;
 B. 115; H. 237; W. 188.

- 278 The passive periphrastic conjugation is the combination of the future passive participle (the gerundive) with forms of *sum*.

From the adjective use of the future passive participle (§ 270) there is developed the idea of *obligation* or *necessity*, which is expressed in various ways in English.

agendum est, *it has to be done, it must be done, it ought to be done*.

agendum erat, *it had to be done*.

agendum erit, *it will have to be done*.

For examples in the *Bellum Gallicum* see §§ 31 and 215.

Note that this construction does not correspond to that of § 277 in the ordinary relations of active and passive. Obligation in the active voice is expressed with *dēbeō* or *oportet*. But intransitive verbs may be used impersonally in this construction.

The agent under this construction is expressed by the dative (§ 31).

USES OF *Cum*.

- 279 1. Preposition with ablative, *with*.

2. Subordinate conjunction, *when, since, although*.

If it introduces an indicative, it certainly means *when*. If the clause is followed by *tamen, nevertheless*, it certainly means *although*.

In other cases the meaning can only be determined by the connection, and there is often a combination of the ideas of time and cause, or of time and concession.

3. Practically a correlative conjunction, *cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also, both . . . and*, II. 4, 7, V. 4, 3, etc. Note *cum . . . etiam . . . tum, not only . . . and . . . but also*, III. 16, 2.

HENDIADYS.

- 280 Hendiadys (ἐν δια δυνειν) is a figure of syntax whereby two nouns connected by a conjunction are used for one with an adjective or a genitive.

exempla cruciātūsque, I. 31, 12, (examples and cruelties), *sorts of cruelty*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS.

The following list contains the principal parts of all the different simple verbs in the *Bellum Gallicum* except those in -ō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum and -or, -ārī, -ātus sum, in the order of their first occurrence in simple or compound form.

If any compound that occurs in this work varies in *form* from the simple verb, an example is given; if any compound that occurs in this work differs from the simple verb in the *accent of some one of its principal parts*, it is marked with an asterisk (*); if it does *not* differ in accent in the *principal parts*, but *does* in *other forms*, it is marked with a dagger (†).

BOOK I.

- CH. 1. *sum, esse, fui, (futūrus), *be*.
 dividō, dividere, dīvisī, dīvisum, *divide*.
 *colō, colere, colui, cultum, *cultivate*.
 *ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, *bear*.
 †teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentum, *hold*.
 per-tineō, tinēre, tinui tentum, *extend; pertain*.
 gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, *carry*.
 cēdō, cēdere, cēssi, cēssum, *go (from); yield*.
 tendō, tendere, tetendi, tēnsūm or tentum, *stretch*.
 con-tendō, tendere, tendi, tentum, *hasten; fight*.
 os-tendō, tendere, tendi, tēnsūm (tentum), *show*.
 in-tendō, tendere, tendi, tentum (tēnsūm), *direct upon*.
 †habeō, habēre, habui, habitum, *have*.
 pro-hibeō, hibēre, hibuī, hibitum, *keep out; prevent*.
 dēbeō (for de-hibeō), dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitum, *owe, ought*.
 So prae-beō (for prae-hibeō), *furnish*.
 dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum, *say*.
 †capiō, capere, cēpi, captum, *take*.
 in-cipiō, cipere, cēpi, ceptum, *begin*.
 tangō, tangere, tetigi, tāctum, *touch*.
 at(ad)-tingō, tingere, tigi, tāctum, *touch upon*.
 vergō, vergere, —, —, *incline, lie*.
 orior, oriri (ori), ortus sum (oritūrus), *rise*.

CH. 2. dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, lead.

† faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, do, make. PASSIVE: fiō, fieri, factus sum, be done, be made, happen, become. So compounds with words other than prepositions; others like

dē-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum, fail; passive regular.

suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, advise.

* eō, ire, ivi (ii), itum, go.

* stō, stāre, steti, stātum, stand (intransitive).

prae-stō, stāre, stiti, —, stand before; but distō and exstō have no perfect.

potior, potiri, potitus sum, become master (of).

possum, posse, potui, —, be able; can.

CH. 3. pateō, patēre, patui, —, lie open, extend.

statuō, statuere, statui, statūtum, stand (transitive).

cōn-stituō, stituere, stitui, stitūtum, determine; station.

† moveō, movēre, movi, mōtum, move.

proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, set out.

* emō, emere, ēmi, ēmptum, take, buy. So co-emō; other compounds like

ad-imō, imere, ēmi, ēmptum, take away; except dēmō [for de-emō], prēmō [for pro-emō], sūmō [for sub-emō], like

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, (under)take.

* petō, petere, petivi (ii), petitum, seek.

* legō, legere, lēgi, lēctum, pick; read.

dē-ligō, ligere, lēgi, lēctum, choose. So all compounds, except

dī-ligō, ligere, lēxi, lēctum, loze;

intel-legō (ligō), legere (ligere), lēxi, lēctum, understand;

neg-legō, legere, lēxi, lēctum, neglect.

dō, dare, dedi, datum, give. So compounds with dissyllabic prepositions; others like

ab-dō, dere, didi, ditum, hide.

CH. 4. * agō, agere, ēgi, āctum, drive, put through.

ad-igō, igere, ēgi, āctum, drive to. cōgō contracts in present system.

* sequor, sequi, secutus sum, follow.

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, —, it is proper.

* rapiō, rapere, rapui, raptum, seize.

ē-ripiō, ripere, ripui, reptum, snatch away.

- mior, mori (moriri), mortuus sum (moritūrus), *die*.
 sciscō, sciscere, scivi (ii), scitum, *resolve*.
- CH. 5. in-cendō, cendere, cendi, cēsum, *set fire to*.
 ūrō, ūrere, ūssi, ūstum, *burn*. So com-(b)ūrō.
 tollō, tollere, sus-tuli, sub-lātum, *raise; take away*.
 molō, molere, molui, molitum, *grind*.
 iubeō, iubēre, iūssi, iūssum, *order*.
 ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, (*serve one's self*), *use*.
- CH. 6. pendeō, pendēre, pependi, —, *hang* (intransitive).
 im-pediō, pedire, pedivi (ii), peditum, (*get one's foot in*),
impede.
 * fluō, fluere, fluxi, (fluxus), *flow*.
 † videō, vidēre, vidi, visum, *see*.
 * patior, pati, passus sum, *suffer, allow*.
 per-petior, peti, pessus sum, *endure*.
 † veniō, venire, vēni, ventum, *come*.
- CH. 7. * scindō, scindere, scidi, scissum, *cut*.
 mittō, mittere, misi, missum, *send, let go*.
 licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), *it is permitted; may*.
 caedō, cadere, cecidi, caesum, *cause to fall, cut, kill*.
 oc-cidō, cidere, cidi, cīsum, *kill*.
 pellō, pellere, pepuli, pulsum, *drive*.
 ex-pellō, pellere, puli, pulsum, *drive out*. But re-pellō
 has perfect re-ppuli, for re-pepuli.
 spondeō, spondēre, spopondi, spōnsum, *promise*.
 re-spondeō, spondēre, spondi, spōnsum, *answer*.
 volō, velle, volui, —, *wish, be willing*.
 vertō, vertere, verti, versum, *turn*. So the compounds, except
 re-vertor, verti, verti, versum, *turn back* (deponent in
 present system).
- CH. 8. pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum, *place*.
 mūniō, mūnīre, mūnivi (ii), mūnitum, *fortify*.
 † iacio, iacere, iēcī, iactum, *throw*.
 dē-iciō (pronounced as if spelled dē-jiciō), icere, iēcī,
 iectum, *throw down*.
 iungō, iungere, iūnxi, iūnctum, *join*.
 rumpō, rumpere, rūpi, ruptum, *break*.
 * sistō, sistere, (stīti), stātum, *cause to stand; in comp., stand*.
 dē-sistō, sistere, stīti, stitum, *leave off*. So all com-
 pounds, except ad-, in-, circum-, which have no
 supine; the last has perfect circum-steti.

- CH. 9. *linquō, linquere, liqui, lictum, leave.*
studeō, studēre, studui, —, be eager.
stringō, stringere, strinxi, strictum, draw tight.
- CH. 10. *scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, write.*
- CH. 11. *dē-fendō, fendere, fendi, fēsum, defend.*
mereō, merēre, merui, meritum, or deponent, deserve.
- CH. 12. * *gradior, gradi, gressus sum, step.*
ag-gredior, gredi, gressus sum, approach.
solvō, solvere, solvi, solūtum, loose.
ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum, avenge.
- CH. 13. *re-miniscor, minisci, —, call to mind.*
tribuō, tribuere, tribui, tribūtum, allot.
dē-spiciō, spicere, spexi, spectrum, look.
discō, discere, didici, (discitūrus), learn.
nitor, niti, nissus (nixus) sum, rest, rely.
- CH. 14. * *cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsum, fall.* .
in-cidō, cidere, cidi, cāsum, happen. So most com-
 pounds; but *ac-*, *con-*, and *dē-cidō* omit the supine:
 and *re-cidō* sometimes has perfect *reccidi*.
caveō, cavēre, cavi, cautum, be on one's guard (for).
timeō, timēre, timui, —, be afraid.
ob-liviscor, livisci, litus sum, forget.
suēscō, suēscere, suēvi, suētum, become accustomed.
doleō, dolēre, dolui, —, feel pain.
polliceor, polliceri, pollicitus sum, promise.
- CH. 15. *laccessō, laccessere, laccessivi, laccessitum, provoke.*
coepti, coepisse, coeptus, began, have begun.
- CH. 16. * *vehō, vehere, vexi, vectum, convey.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —, be unwilling.
mētior, mētiri, mēnsus sum, measure.
queror, queri, questus sum, complain.
- CH. 17. *taceō, tacēre, tacui, tacitum, be silent.*
valeō, valēre, valui, —, be strong.
terreō, terrēre, terrui, territum, frighten.
arceō, arcēre, arcui, (arctus, artus), shut up.
co-erceō, ercēre, ercui, erciturum, restrain.
- CH. 18. *sentiō, sentire, sensi, sēsum, perceive.*
quaerō, quaerere, quaesivi (ii), quaesitum, ask.
con-quirō, quīrere, quisivi (ii), quisitum, seek for.
re-periō, perire, pperi, pertum, find.
liceor, liceri, licitus sum, bid.

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*.
 augeō, augēre, auxi, auctum, *increase*.
 largior, largiri, largitus sum, *give generously*.
 alō, alere, alui, alitum, (altum), *nourish*.
 nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi, nūptum, *veil one's self, marry* (of the
 bride).

faveō, favēre, fāvi, fautum, *favor*.
 cupiō, cupere, cupivi (ii), cupitum, *desire*.
 odi, odisse, ōsus, *hate*.

minuō, minuire, minui, minūtum, *lessen*.

CH. 19. (g)nōscō, (g)nōscere, (g)nōvi, (g)nōtum, *know*. So I-gnōscō,
pardon; other compounds like

cō-gnōscō, gnōscere, gnōvi, gnitum, *ascertain*.

vereor, verēri, veritus sum, *fear*.

CH. 20. plectō, plectere, (plexi), plexum, *plait*.

com-plector, plecti, plexus sum, *embrace*.

sciō, scire, scivi (ii), scitum, *know*.

crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētum, *increase*.

flēō, flēre, flēvi, flētum, *weep*.

prehendō, prehendere, prēndi, prēnsum, sometimes
 shortened to

prēndō, prēndere, prēndi, prēnsum, *grasp*.

† moneō, monēre, monui, monitum, *warn*.

* loquor, loqui, locūtus sum, *speak*.

CH. 21. sidō, sidere, sidi, —, *sit down*.

cōn-sidō, sidere, sēdi, sessum, *settle*.

scandō, scandere, scandi, scānsum, *climb*.

ā(ad)-scandō, scendere, scēdi, scēnsum, *climb to*.

CH. 22. com-periō, perire, perī, pertum, *find out*.

currō, currere, cucurri, cursum, *run*.

ac-currō, currere, cucurri or curri, cursum, *run toward*.

So all compounds, except suc-currō, which always
 drops the reduplication.

* struō, struere, struxi, strūctum, *build*.

CH. 23. claudō, claudere, clausi, clausum, *close*.

inter-clūdō, clūdere, clūsi, clūsum, *shut off*.

fidō, fidere, fisis sum, *trust*.

CH. 24. * pleō, plēre, plēvi, plētum, *fill*.

farcio, farcire, farsī, fartum, *stuff*. So ef-farcio, or ef-fercio,
 like

cōn-fercio, fercire, ferasi, fertum, *crowd together*.

- CH. 25. *frangō, frangere, frēgi, frāctum, break.*
per-fringō, fringere, frēgi, frāctum, break through.
figō, figere, fixi, fixum, pierce.
flectō, flectere, flexi, flexum, bend.
vellō, vellere, velli, vulsum, wrench.
fatiscō, fatiscere, —, —, crack open.
dē-fetiscor, fetisci, fessus sum, become tired.
ā-periō, perire, perui, pertum, open.
vincō, vincere, vici, victum, conquer.
- CH. 26. * *iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum, help.*
- CH. 27. *pareō, parēre, parui, —, obey.*
fugiō, fugere, fūgi, fugitum, flee.
pōscō, pōscere, popōsci, —, demand.
- CH. 30. *sanciō, sancire, sānxi, sanctum, ordain.*
- CH. 31. *arcessō, arcessere, arcessivi (ii), arcessitum, summon.*
ex-perior, periri, pertus sum, try.
- CH. 32. *tueor, tuēri, tuitus (tūtus) sum, look at.*
 † *maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsu(m), remain.*
- CH. 33. * *premō, premere, pressi, pressum, press.*
ex-primō, primere, pressi, pressum, press out.
horreō, horrēre, horruī, —, shudder at.
- CH. 34. *placeō, placēre, placui, placitum, please.*
sedeō, sedēre, sēdi, sessum, sit. So compounds with dis-
syllabic prepositions; but
pos-sideō, sidēre, sēdi, sessum, sit as master of, poss-
sess.
- * *trahō, trahere, trāxi, trāctum, draw.*
- CH. 35. *cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsui, cēnsu(m) (cēnsitus), think, decree.*
pendō, pendere, pependi, pēnsu(m), hang (transitive).
- CH. 38. *cingō, cingere, cinxi, cinctum, encircle.*
- CH. 39. *figō, fingere, finxi, fictum, shape.*
audiō, audire, audivi (ii), auditum, hear.
- CH. 40. *spargō, spargere, sparsi, sparsu(m), scatter.*
dī-spargō, spergere, spersi, spersu(m), scatter abroad.
in-dulgeō, dulgēre, dulsi, dulsum, indulge.
- CH. 41. *nāscor, nāci, nātus sum (nāscitūrus), be born.*
 * *spuō, spuere, spui, spūtum, spew.*
- CH. 43. † *doceō, docēre, docui, doctum, teach.*
- CH. 45. * *serō, serere, serui, sertum, join.*
- CH. 47. *ad-olēscō, olēscere, olēvi, ultum, grow up.*
- CH. 51. *pandō, pandere, pandi, passu(m) (pānsu(m)), spread.*

- CH. 52. *salio, salire, salui (salii), saltum, jump.*
În-saliô, silire, silui, —, leap upon.
- CH. 53. *nanciscor, nancisci, nactus (nactus) sum, get.*
vincio, vincere, vixi, vinctum, bind.
côn-sulô, sulere, sului, sultum, consult.

BOOK II.

- CH. 1. *veterascô, veterascere, veteravi, —, become established.*
- CH. 5. *figô, figere, fixi, flictum, strike.*
- CH. 6. * *ruô, ruere, rui, rutum (ruiturus), rush down.*
- CH. 10. *fallô, fallere, fefelli, falsum, deceive.*
- CH. 15. *languescô, languescere, languui, —, grow weak.*
- CH. 19. *regô, regere, rēxi, rēctum, rule.*
por-rigô, rigere, rēxi, rēctum, extend.
pergô (for per-rigô), pergere, per-rēxi, per-rēctum, go on. So
surgô (for sub-rigô), rise.
lateô, latere, latui, —, lie hidden.
- CH. 20. *vetô, vetare, vetui, vetitum, forbid.*
- CH. 21. *in-duô, duere, dui, dūtum, put on, don. So ex-uô, III. 6.*
trūdô, trūdere, trūsi, trūsum, thrust.
- CH. 25. *urgeô (urgueô), urgere, ursi, —, press.*
- CH. 27. *-cumbô, -cumbere, cubui, cubitum, topple.*
dēleô, dēlere, dēlēvi, dēlētum, blot out, destroy.
iaceô, iacere, iacui, —, lie prostrate.
- CH. 29. *acuô, acuere, acui, acūtum, sharpen.*
- CH. 30. † *rideô, ridere, risi, risum, laugh.*
- CH. 33. *crēdô, crēdere, crēdidi, crēditum, believe, trust. Compare dō.*
texô, texere, texui, textum, weave.
- CH. 35. *cernô, cernere, crēvi, crētum, separate.*

BOOK III.

- CH. 6. *fundô, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, pour.*
ex-uô, uere, ui, ūtum, put off, doff. Compare in-duô, II. 21.
memini, meminisse, —, remember.
- CH. 8. *mālô, malle, mālui, —, prefer.*
- CH. 10. *partior, partiri, partitus sum, divide.*

- CH. 13. *noceō, nocēre, nocui, nocitum, injure.*
saeviō, saevire, saevivi (ii), saevitum, rage.
timēscō, timēscere, timui, —, begin to fear.
- CH. 17. *carpō, carpere, carpei, carptum, pluck.*
- CH. 19. *vādō, vādere, vāsi, vāsum, go.*
- CH. 22. *voeō, vovēre, vōvi, vōtum, vow.*
fruor, frui, fructus sum, enjoy.

BOOK IV.

- CH. 1. *vivō, vivere, vixi, victum, live.*
lavō, lavāre (lavere), laui, lautum, lōtum, lavātum, wash.
- CH. 2. *mollēscō, mollēscere, —, —, become soft.*
- CH. 5. *paeniteō, paenitēre, paenitui, —, repent; usually impers.*
serviō, servire, servivi (ii), servitum, be a slave.
- CH. 6. *mulceō, mulcēre, mulsi, mulsum, soothe.*
- CH. 12. *fodiō, fodere, fōdi, fossum, dig.*
- CH. 13. *gaudeō, gaudēre, gavisus sum, rejoice.*
- CH. 16. *finiō, finire, finivi (ii), finitum, limit.*
- CH. 17. *sternō, sternere, strāvi, strātum, strew.*
- CH. 25. *inquam, 3d pers. inquit, irreg., I say.*
- CH. 32. * *metō, metere, messui, messum, mow.*
latēscō, latēscere, latui, —, hide.
dē-litēscō, litēscere, litui, —, hide away.

BOOK V.

- CH. 3. * *labor, labi, lapsus sum, slip.*
- CH. 4. *ardēscō, ardēscere, arsi, arsum, begin to burn.*
- CH. 14. * *serō, serere, sēvi, satum, sew.*
vestiō, vestire, vestivi (ii), vestitum, clothe.
rādō, rādere, rāsi, rāsum, scrape.
- CH. 18. * *tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctum, cover.*
- CH. 24. *medeor, medēri, —, heal.*
quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvi, quiētum, rest.
- CH. 27. *fateor, fatēri, fassus sum, confess.*
con-fiteor, fitēri, fessus sum, confess.
- CH. 29. *ardeō, ardēre, arsi, arsum, be on fire.*
stinguō, stinguere, stinxi, stinctum, quench, put out.
- CH. 30. *sapiō, sapere, sapivi (-sapui), —, have a flavor; perceive.*
- CH. 36. *parcō, parcere, peperci (parsi), parsurus, spare.*

- CH. 39. *apīscor, apīscī, aptus sum, reach after.*
ad-ipīscor, ipīscī, ērtus sum, get.
- CH. 42. *hauriō, haurire, hausī, haustum (hausūrus), drain.*
- CH. 43. *ferveō, fervēre, fervī, —, or*
fervō, fervere, ferbui, —, seethe.
pariō, parere, peperī, partum (paritūrus), bring forth, get.
torreō, torrēre, torruī, tōstum, parch.
- CH. 44. *quatiō, quātere, quassi, quassum, shake.*
per-cutiō, cutere, cussi, cussum, thrust through.
- CH. 48. *haerēscō, haerēscere, haesi, haesum, cling.*
- CH. 50. *laciō, lacere, —, —, entice.*
ē-liciō, licere, licui, licitum, lure out; but
al-liciō, licere, lexi, lectum, allure.
- CH. 51. *temnō, temnere, —, —, despise.*
con-temnō, temnere, tem(p)si, tem(p)tum, despise.

BOOK VI.

- CH. 1. *sarciō, sarcire, sarsi, sartum, patch.*
- CH. 4. *cūstōdiō, cūstōdire, cūstōdivī (īl), cūstōditum, guard.*
- CH. 9. *laedō, laedere, laesi, laesum, harm.*
- CH. 11. *egeō, egēre, egui, —, lack.*
- CH. 13. *ex-cellō, cellere, -cellui, (celsus), surpass.*
- CH. 15. *soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed.*
- CH. 21. * *luō, luere, lui, lūtum (luitūrus), wash.*
- CH. 27. *plicō, plicāre, plicāvi or plicui, plicātum or plicitum, fold.*
- CH. 29. *mātūrēscō, mātūrēscere, mātūruī, —, begin to ripen.*
- CH. 36. *valēscō, valēscere, valui, valitum, get well.*
- CH. 38. *careō, carēre, carui, —, be without.*
im-mineō, minēre, —, —, overhang.

BOOK VII.

- CH. 4. * *secō, secāre, secui, sectum, cut.*
- CH. 11. * *cubō, cubāre, cubui, cubitum, sleep out.*
- CH. 21. * *crepō, crepāre, crepui, crepitum, rattle.*
- CH. 25. *fungor, fungi, functus sum, discharge.*
- CH. 42. *pudet, pudēre, puduit or puditum est, it shames.*
- CH. 46. *molliō, mollire, molliui (īl), mollitum, soften.*

- CH. 47. *canō, canere, cecini, (cantum), sing.*
 CH. 49. *metuō, metuere, metui, —, fear.*
 CH. 50. *(pangō, pangere), pepigi or panxi, pactum, agree.*
 CH. 54. *torqueō, torquēre, torsi, tortum, twist.*
 CH. 62. *miscēō, miscēre, miscui, mixtum or mistum, mix.*
 CH. 73. *stabiliō, stabilire, stabilivi (ii), stabilitum, make steady.*
 CH. 77. *saepiō, saepire, saepi, saeptum, hedge.*

IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

The following substantives require notice as having irregular, extra, or lacking forms. See vocabulary or grammars.

Book I. 1. *bellum, sol.* 2. *lacus, locus, milia.* 3. *fidēs, filia.* 4. *arma.* 5. *domus, nihil, spēs.* 6. *vis.* 9. *angustiae.* 10. *hiberna.* 11. *iberi.* 12. *deus.* 18. *nēmō.* 20. *ops, vulgus.* 22. *aciēs.* 24. *phalanx.* 26. *vesper.* 29. *senex.* 34. *opus.* 43. *planities.* 50. *fās, meridiēs.*

Book II. 17. *instar.*

Book III. 8. *portus.*

Book IV. 12. *indūtia.* 32. *essedum.*

Book V. 35. *femur.*

Book VI. 13. *druides.* 14. *militia.* 26. *bōs.* 28. *epulum(a).*

Book VII. 8. *nix.*

GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.

GENERAL RULES.

Masculine. Names of male beings, rivers, winds, months and mountains.

Feminine. Names of female beings, countries, towns, plants and trees.

Neuter. Indeclinable Nouns.

SPECIAL RULES—SUBORDINATE TO THE ABOVE.

Declensions I. and V., *feminine.*

Declensions II. and IV., *masculine or neuter*, according to ending.

Declension III. *Masculine:* those ending in *ō* (except *dō, gō*, and *iō*), or, *ōs, er, es.* *Feminine:* those ending in *dō, gō* and *iō, ās, ēs, is, ūs, x,* and *s* following a consonant. *Neuter:* all others.

EXCEPTIONS.

Book I. 1. *Garumna* (*m.* or *f.*), *Mātrona* (*f.*), *finis* (*m.*), *mōns* (*m.*), *sōl* (*m.*). 2. *locus* (*m.* and *n.* plural). 3. *iter* (*n.*). 4. *diēs* (*m.*, sometimes *f.*, see vocabulary), *ignis* (*m.*), *iūs* (*n.*). 5. *domus* (*f.*), *mēnsis* (*m.*). 6. *pōns* (*m.*). 7. *Īdūs* (*f.*). 8. *pēs* (*m.*). 10. *Alpēs* (*f.*). 12. *linter* (*f.*). 20. *vulgus* (*n.*, accusative rarely *m.*). 22. *collis* (*m.*). 25. *manus* (*f.*). 38. *Vesontiō* (*m.*). 40. *ōrdō* (*m.*). 46. *lapis* (*m.*). 50. *meridiēs* (*m.*).

Book II. 17. *arbor* (*f.*), *sentis* (*m.*). 27. *cadaver* (*n.*). 33. *cortex* (*m.* and *f.*).

Book III. 13. *fūnis* (*m.*), *pollex* (*m.*). 20. *Narbō* (*m.*).

Book IV. 9. *Mosa* (*f.*). 10. *piscis* (*m.*). 15. *cōnfluēns* (*m.*). 31. *aes* (*n.*). 32. *pulvis* (*m.*). 37. *orbis* (*m.*).

Book V. 12. *lepus* (*m.*). 14. *carō* (*f.*). 35. *ōs* (*n.*).

Book VI. 19. *dōs* (*f.*), *cor* (*n.*). 27. *crūs* (*n.*). 34. *stirps* (*f.*, sometimes *m.* in poetry). 36. *seges* (*f.*).

Book VII. 20. *sanguis* (*m.*). 25. *scorpiō* (*m.*). 73. *scrobis* (*m.* and *f.*). 81. *harpagō* (*m.*).

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

The following adjectives require notice on account of irregular comparison.

Book I. 1. *extrēmus*, *inferior*, *minor*, *proximus*. 2. *dives*, *māgnus*. 3. *multus*. 6. *bonus*, *difficilis*, *facilis*. 7. *ulterior*. 9. *novus*. 10. *citerior*, *primus*, *superior*. 13. *vetus*. 15. *posterus*. 18. *celer*, *parvus*. 29. *senex*. 31. *pēior*. 32. *miser*. 36. *dēterior*. 44. *liber*.

Book II. 1. *creber*. 2. *interior*. 8. *idōneus*. 17. *tener*.

Book III. 19. *alacer*.

Book IV. 3. *humilis*.

Book V. 40. *aeger*. 45. *asper*.

Book VI. 19. *māgnificus*.

Book VII. 1. *iunior*. 15. *pulcher*.

ADVERBS.

The following list of adverbs of the *Bellum Gallicum* is intended to contain all that are capable of comparison.

Book I. 1. *minimē*, *saepe*. 2. *facile*. 6. *nūper*. 13. *aegrē*, *magis*. 14. *graviter*, *insolenter*. 15. *audācter*. 16. *diū*. 18. *liberius*, *largiter*.

22. prope. 26. acriter. 27. suppliciter. 31. superbē. mātūrrimē.
37. vehementer. 40. adroganter, malē, temerē. 44. libenter. 45.
potius.

Book II. 1. molestē. 2. cōstanter. 5. diligenter, liberāliter. 11.
fortiter.

Book III. 10. mōbiliter. 18. bene.

Book IV. 25. fēliciter. 26. firmiter.

Book V. 6. obstinātē. 29. serō. 33. incommodā. 49. cautē.

Book VI. 8. placidē. 21. prōmiscuē. 22. accūratius. 28. studiōsē.

Book VII. 6. rēctē. 22. scienter. 43. mitissimē. 45. tumultu-
ōsius. 51. intolerantius. 60. industriē. 70. parcē. 77. patienter.

VOCABULARY

ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	ablative	infin.	infinitive
abs.	absolute	insep.	inseparable
acc.	accusative	interrog.	interrogative
adj.	adjective	intrans.	intransitive
adv.	adverb	lit.	literally
Bel. Gal.	Bellum Gallicum	loc.	locative
card.	cardinal	m., masc.	masculine
cf.	compare	n., neut.	neuter
comp.	composition	nom.	nominative
compar.	comparative	num.	numeral
conj.	conjunction	obj.	object, objective
coörd.	coördinate	opp.	opposite
dat.	dative	ord.	ordinal
decl.	declension	orig.	originally
dem.	demonstrative	p.	page
dep.	deponent	partic.	participle
dim.	diminutive	pass.	passive
dir.	direct	perf.	perfect
dis.	discourse	pl.	plural
e.g.	for example	plup.	pluperfect
Eng.	English	prep.	preposition
espec.	especially	pres.	present
etc.	and so forth	pron.	pronoun
f., fem.	feminine	reflex.	reflexive
ff.	and following	rel.	relative
fig.	figurative	sc.	supply
1st conj.	first conjugation	sing.	singular
fut.	future	spec.	specification
gen.	genitive	subord.	subordinate
i.e.	that is	subj.	subject, subjective
imperf.	imperfect	subjunct.	subjunctive
imper.	imperative	subst.	substantive
impers.	impersonal	super.	superlative
indic.	indicative	trans.	transitive
indecl.	indeclinable	voc.	vocative
indef.	indefinite	w.	with

VOCABULARY

NOTE.—The literal meaning of a word is given first in each case, but if not used in Caesar it is placed in Roman type in parentheses; other meanings are given approximately in the order of their development. Where chapter references are given for any meaning, it is to be understood that these references cover all instances of its use.

A

A., abbreviation for **Aulus**, a Roman *praenomen*.

a. d., abbreviation for *ante diem*.

ā, ab, abs [**ab** (most primitive form) before vowels and some consonants, especially **l, n, r, s**; **ā** before consonants; **abs** mostly before **t** and **q**, especially with **tō**], prep. w. abl., *away from, from*; in expressions of distance, e.g. **ā milibus passuum**, **ab spatiō**, *away, off, distant*; w. verbs of seeking, requesting, *of*; expressing agency w. passives, *by*; w. verbs of happening, suffering, *at the hands of*. With different point of view in English, w. **cornū**, **latere**, **āgmine**, **parte**, etc., *on, in, at*; with names of tribes, *on the side of*, e.g. I. 1, 3.

In composition its forces are the same, but have different effects, depending upon the meaning of the word with which it is joined.

ā-, form of **ad** in comp. before **s**, the quantity being lengthened to compensate for loss of consonant.

ab-dō, dere, didi, ditum [**dō, dare**], (put away); *conceal*; w. reflex. pron. or in pass., *hide* (in w. acc., *in, among*). Perf. part. as adj., *secluded*, VI. 34, 2.

ab-dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, *lead away, carry off*.

ab-eō, ire, (ivi) ii, itum, *go away; disappear*, VI. 43, 4.

ab-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **ab-jiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum** [**iaciō**], *throw away, throw down; throw, hurl*, V. 48, 5.

abiēs, abietis, f., *fir-tree*.

ab-iungō, ere, iūnxī, iūctum, (disjoin); *detach*.

abs-, form of **ā, ab**, before **t, q**, and occasionally some other consonants.

abs-cidō, cidere, cidi, cisum [**caedō**], *cut away, cut off*, III. 14, 7; *cut down*, VII. 73, 2.

absōns, pres. part. of **absum**.

ab-similis, e, *unlike*.

ab-sistō, sistere, stiti, —, (stand away from); *advance from*.

abs-tineō, tinēre, tinui, tentum [**teneō**], (hold away from); intrans.,

- refrain*, I. 22, 3; trans., *restrain*, VII. 47, 2.
- abs-trahō**, *trahere*, *trāxi*, *trāctum*, *drag away, carry off*.
- ab-sum**, *esse*, *ā-fui* (*ā-futūrus*), *be away from, absent, distant; be lacking*, I. 4, 4; fig., *be far from aiding*, I. 36, 5. Pres. part., *absēns*, *absentia*, *absent*; *sē* (etc.) *absente, in his absence*.
- ab-undō**, 1st conj. [*unda*, *a wave*], (*overflow, abound*); *be strong, well supplied*.
- āc**, form of *atque* before some consonants.
- ao-**, form of *ad* in comp. before *c*.
- ao-cēdō**, *cēdere*, *cēssi*, *cēssum*, *go to or toward, approach; be added*, I. 19, 1, IV. 22, 4, VII. 46, 2; *come*, II. 7, 2; impers. *accēdēbat quod*, *an additional fact (reason) was that*.
- ao-celerō**, 1st conj. [*celer*, *swift*], *hasten toward* (anyone).
- acceptus**, *a, um*, part. of *accipio*.
- ao-cidō**, *cidere*, *cidi*, — [*cadō*], (*fall to*); *fall*, III. 14, 4, 25, 1; 3d pers., (*befall*), *happen* (in good, bad, or neutral sense).
- ao-cidō**, *cidere*, *cidi*, *cisum* [*caedō*], *cut into*.
- ao-cipio**, *cipere*, *cēpi*, *ceptum* [*cipio*], (*take to one's self*); *take command of*, VII. 38, 1; *accept, receive*; of anything unpleasant, *suffer*; of a fact or person, *hear, hear of*; *find*, VII. 54, 3.
- ao-clivis**, *e* [*clivus*, *slope*], *sloping upward, rising*.
- ao-clivitas**, *tātis*, f. [*acclivis*], *upward slope, ascent, rise*.
- Accō**, *ōnis*, m., *a leader of the Seno-*
- nes, hostile to Caesar, put to death by him*: VI. 4, 1, etc.
- accommodātus**, *a, um*, part. of *accommodō*.
- ao-commodō**, 1st conj. [*commodus*, *convenient*], *fit, adapt; adjust, put on*, II. 21, 5.
- ao-cūrātō**, adv. [*accūrātus*, part. of *ao-cūrō*, *care for*], *carefully*; compar., *too elaborately*, VI. 22, 3.
- ao-currō**, *currere*, *cucurri* or *curri*, *cursum*, *run to or toward; ride up*, I. 22, 1.
- ao-cūsō**, 1st conj. [*causa*], (*call to account*); *blame, reproach, accuse*.
- ao-erbō**, adv. [*acerbus*], *bitterly*.
- ao-erbius ferre**, *find too hard to endure*.
- ao-erbitās**, *tātis*, f. [*acerbus*], (*bitterness*); *privations, suffering*.
- ao-erbus**, *a, um* [*aoer*, *sharp, sour*], (*bitter—primarily to the taste*; hence, fig., *to the mind*), *painful, hard*.
- ao-ervus**, *i, m.* [*aoer*, *sharp*], *pile, heap*.
- aoiēs**, *ēi*, f., plu. only nom. and acc. [*aoer*, *sharp*], (*point, edge*); *piercing glance*, I. 39, 1; *line of battle*; *pitched battle*, VII. 1, 8, 29, 2, 64, 2.
- ao-quirō**, *quirere*, *quisivi* or *quisi*, *quisitum* [*quaerō*], (*seek in addition*); *aliquid acquirere*, *gain any further success*.
- ao-riter**, adv., compar. *ao-rius*, super. *ao-errimē* [*aoer*, *sharp*], *sharply; fiercely, vigorously, hotly*.
- ao-tuārius**, *a, um* [*agō*], (*capable of being driven*); *swift-sailing, driven by both sails and oars*.
- ao-ū**, *ac-ūere*, *acui*, *acūtum* [*aoer*,

sharp], *sharpen*. Perf. part. as adj., *sharpened, pointed, sharp*.

acūtus, a, um, part. of **acuō**.

ad, prep. w. acc.; of motion or direction, *to, toward*, (in hostile sense) *against*; of situation, *in the vicinity of, near, at*; with numerals, *to the number of, nearly, about*; of limit, *up to, until, till*; of design, *for the purpose of, for*, I. 51, 1, chiefly w. gerundive; of scope, *for*. Similarly in comp., but cf. remark on **ab**.

adāctus, a, um, part. of **adigō**.

ad-aequō, 1st conj., *make equal to*, III. 12, 3; (become equal to), *equal*; w. **cursum**, *keep up with, keep abreast*.

ad-amō, 1st conj. [**amō**, *love*], *conceive a desire for, covet*.

ad-dō, *dare, didi*, **dītum** [**dō**, *dare*], (give to); *add, add to*; *put on*, VII. 41, 4.

ad-dūcō, *dūcere, dūxi*, **ductum**, (lead to); *bring (to, on, up, along)*; *prevail upon, induce*, I. 31, 8; in pass., w. abl. of cause, *influence, induce*, I. 9, 3; 11, 1, etc.; *pull taut*, III. 14, 6.

ad-ēemptus, a, um, part. of **adimō**.

ad-eō, *ire, (ivi) ii, itum*, *go to, approach, visit*; *attack*; *get at*, II. 7, 3; intrans., *advance*.

ad-eō, adv. [**eō**, adv., *thither*], (to this point, to such a degree); when followed by result clause, *so*; *so much, so very much*.

adeptus, a, um, part. of **adipiscor**.

ad-equitō, 1st conj. [**equus**, *horse*], *ride up to*.

ad-haereō, *haerēre, haesi*, **haesum**, or, better—

ad-haerēscō, *haerēscere, haesi*, **haesum**, *cling to, stick in*.

ad-hibeō, *hibēre, hibuī*, **hibitum**

[**habeō**], (have at hand); *have present*, I. 20, 6; *call in, summon, admit*; *employ, use*, III. 20, 1; *consult*, VII. 83, 1; *include*, IV. 13, 4.

ad-hortor, 1st conj., *urge (to), exhort, encourage*. (**aē ipai**, *each other*, VI. 37, 10.)

ad-hūc, adv., *hitherto, as yet*.

ad-iacēō, *iacēre, iacul*, —, *lie near, border upon, be adjacent*.

Adiatunnus, I, m., a chief of the Sotiates, III. 22.

ad-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **adjiciō**), *icere, ieci*, **iectum** [**iaciō**], (throw to); *hurl*; *add to*, VII. 72, 4; *throw up, construct*, V. 9, 7; *be near*, III. 1, 5.

ad-igō, *igere, egi*, **actum** [**agō**], (drive to anything); *drive up*, VII. 17, 3; *move up*, V. 43, 6; *drive down*, IV. 17, 4; w. **tēlum**, *hurl, cast*; *force (ad, to take)*, VII. 67, 1.

ad-imō, *imere, ēmi*, **emptum** [**emō**], (take to one's self); hence, from another, *take away*.

ad-ipiscor, *ipisci*, **eptus sum** [**api-soor**, *reach after, attain*], *achieve, gain, secure*.

aditus, ūs, m. [**adeō**], *approach, access*; w. **sermōnis**, *occasion (for)*, V. 41, 1; *intercourse (ad, with)*, VII. 66, 7.

ad-iūdicō, 1st conj. [**iūdex**, *iūdis*, *judge*], *adjudge, award*.

ad-iungō, *iungere, iunxi*, **iunctum** (join to); *attach (to), ally (with)*; *annex*, III. 2, 5.

adiutor, ōris, m. [**adiuvō**], *helper, assistant, supporter*.

ad-iuvō, *iuvāre, iuvi*, **iūtum**, *help, aid, be of assistance or advantage*.

ad-mātūrō, āre, —, —, (ripen);
hasten, precipitate.

ad-minister, trī, m., servant, assist-
ant, agent, minister.

ad-ministrō, 1st conj. [minister, ser-
vant], execute, carry out; manage,
conduct; control (one's own ship),
IV. 29, 2.

ad-mīror, 1st conj., be astonished at,
wonder at, V. 52, 2; wonder; ad-
mirer, VII. 52, 3; gerundive, (to be
wondered at), surprising.

ad-mittō, mittere, misi, missum,
(let go toward); of a crime, commit;
permit, IV. 25, 5; equō admissō,
on the gallop, at full speed.

ad-modum, adv. [prep. phrase, con-
densed], (to a degree); exceedingly,
very, very much.

ad-moneō, monēre, monui, moni-
tum, advise, warn, admonish.

ad-olēscō, olēscere, olēvi, ultum,
grow up, attain manhood. Pres.
part. as noun, written adulē-
scēns.

ad-orior, oriri, ortus sum, (rise
against); attack, assault.

ad-sum, esse, af-ful, —, be near,
be present, be at hand.

Aduatuca, ae, f., a stronghold of the
Eburones, probably between the
Meuse and the Rhine, exact location
uncertain, VI. 32, 3, etc.

Aduatuci, ōrum, m. plu., a Belgic
tribe south of the Eburones, about
the upper part of the Meuse, II. 4,
9, etc.

adulēscēns, entis, c. [pres. part. of
adolēscō, with weakened vowel],
(one growing up); young man or
woman; w. Crassus, Brūtus, the
younger, junior.

adulēscēntia, ae, f. [adulēscēns],
youth, youthfulness.

adulēscēntulus, i, m. [dim. of adu-
lēscēns], very young man, mere boy.

adventus, ūs, m. [ad-veniō, come
to], coming, approach, arrival.

adversārius, a, um [adversus],
standing opposite. Masc. as subst.,
opponent.

adversus, a, um, part. of advertō.

ad-versus, prep. w. acc., (opposite
to); against, IV. 14, 2.

ad-vertō, vertere, verti, versum,
turn to; animum advertere (turn
the attention to), notice, I. 24, 1;
cf. animadvertō, which probably
represents the actual pronunciation,
however written. adversus, a, um,
(turned to); facing, opposite, II. 8,
3, 18, 2, III. 14, 2; adverse, un-
successful, I. 18, 10, 40, 8; adv.
rēs, reverses, disasters, VII. 30, 3;
in adv. ōs, squarely in the face, V.
35, 8; w. hostibus, face to face, II.
24, 1; w. colle, flumine, up; adv.
nocte, the darkness being against
them, IV. 28, 3.

ad-vocō, 1st conj., call to, summon.

ad-volō, 1st conj., (fly to); hasten to,
against, rush upon.

aedificium, i, n. [aedificō], building,
dwelling.

aedificō, 1st conj. [aedis, dwelling,
faciō, make], (erect a dwelling);
build, trans., III. 9, 1, V. 1, 1; in-
trans., VI. 22, 3.

Aeduus, a, um, Aeduan, of the
Aedui. Masc. as subst., an (the)
Aeduan, plu. the Aedui, one of the
most powerful Gallic tribes, friendly
to Caesar until the seventh year of
the war, I. 3, 5, etc.

aeger, **aegra**, **aegrum**, compar. **aegrior**, super. **aegerrimus**, *ill, sick*; masc. plu. as subst., *the ill, the sick*.

aegrō, compar. **aegrius**, super. **aegerrimō** [**aeger**], (*illy*); *barely, hardly, with difficulty*.

Aemilius, I, m., *Lucius Aemilius*, a decurion of the Gallic cavalry, I. 23, 2.

aequāliter [**aequālis**, *equal*], (*equally*), *evenly, uniformly*.

aequinoctium, I, n. [**aequus**, *equal*; **nox**, *night*], *equinox*.

aequitās, **tātis**, f. [**aequus**], (*evenness*); *fairness*; **animi aequitās**, *contentment*, VI. 22, 4.

aequō, 1st conj. [**aequus**], *make equal, equalize*.

aequus, a, um, (*even*); *level*, VII. 44, 3; *fair*, IV. 16, 4, VI. 12, 6, VII. 29, 7; *equal*, I. 43, 1, VII. 48, 4; *favorable, advantageous*; **aequō animō**, *with equanimity, resolutely*, V. 52, 6, VII. 64, 3; *without anxiety*, V. 49, 6; **aequō Mārte**, *on even terms*.

aerārius, a, um [**aes**], (*relating to copper*), *copper*; fem. as subst. (sc. **sectūra**), *copper mine*.

aes, **aeris**, n. *copper*; *bronze*, an alloy of copper and tin; because used for coins, *money*; **aes aliōnum**, (*money belonging to another*), *debt*.

aestās, **tātis**, f., *summer*.

aestimātiō, **ōnis**, f. [**aestimō**], *estimate, valuation, appraisal*.

aestimō, 1st conj. [**aes**], (*put a money value on*), *estimate, esteem, value; consider, regard*, VII. 14, 10.

aestivus, a, um [**aestus**, but connected in meaning w. **aestās**], (*of summer*); *summer*.

aestuārius, a, um [**aestus**], *relating to the tide*. Neut. as subst. (*a place reached by the tide*); (*salt*) *marsh, creek, inlet, near the ocean*.

aestus, **ūs**, m., (*a seething*); *heat*, VI. 22, 3, 30, 3; *tide*; **māximus aestus**, *spring tide*.

aetās, **tātis**, f. [*for aevitās, from aevum, (life-)time*], *age, time of life; old age; aetāte cōfectus, burdened with years; puerilis aetās, boyhood*. (**gravior, advanced**, III. 12, 1.)

aeternus, a, um [*for aeviternus, from aevum, (life-)time*], *everlasting, perpetual, eternal*.

af-, form of **ad** in comp. before **f**.

af-ferō, **ferre**, **at-tuli**, **al-lātum**, *bring (to), bring forward, cite; cause, produce; contribute*, I. 43, 8.

af-ficiō, **ficere**, **fēci**, **fectum** [**faciō**], (*do to*); *affect; fill*, I. 2, 4, VII. 40, 1; *visit*, I. 27, 4; *treat*, I. 35, 2; *subject*, V. 56, 2; *afflict*, VI. 16, 2; *confront*, VII. 17, 3; *cause (to)*, V. 48, 9, *inflict (upon)*, VII. 16, 3; pass. w. abl., *experience*, VII. 6, 2, *receive*, VII. 37, 4.

af-figō, **figere**, **fixi**, **fixum**, *attach to, fasten to*.

af-fingō, **ingere**, **finxi**, **fiotum**, (*shape to*); *add to falsely*; w. **rūmōribus**, *invent additions*, VII. 1, 2.

af-finitās, **tātis**, f. [**af-finis**, *neighboring*], *relationship by marriage; in-law*, II. 4, 4.

af-firmātiō, **ōnis**, f. [**firmātus**, part. of **firmō**, *make firm*], *assurance*.

af-fixus, a, um, part. of **affigō**.

af-flictō, 1st conj. [*intensive of*

affligō, *dash repeatedly, toss*, IV. 29, 2; pass. *be pounded*, III. 12, 1.
af-fligō, *fligere, fligi, flotum* (dash against); *throw down*, VI. 27, 2; *bear down*, VI. 27, 5; pass., of ships, *suffer, be shattered, be damaged*.
af-fore, fut. infin. of *adsum* (= *affuturus esse*).
Āfricus, a, um, *African, of Africa*. Masc. as subst. (sc. *ventus*), *south-west wind*, i.e. from Africa to Italy.
Agōdincum, l, n., the chief town of the Senones, now *Sens*, on the Yonne river, tributary of the Seine on the south, VI. 44, 3.
ager, agri, m. *cultivated land*, IV. 4, 2; *soil, field* (opposed to woods), *country* (opposed to city), *territory*; **agri cultūra**, (cultivation of the soil), *agriculture, farming*.
ag-, form of *ad* in comp. before *g*.
ag-ger, aggeris, m. [*gerō, bring*], (what is brought to a place); *mound, rampart, dike*, or any structure of earth used in the field operations of an army; especially the Roman *agger* (see Introduction); *material* for such mounds, including timber, II. 20, 1; **cotidianus agger**, *the daily addition to the agger*.
ag-gredior, gredi, gressus sum [*gradior, step*], (go toward, approach; cf. Eng. "go for"), *attack*.
ag-gregō, 1st conj. [*grex, flock*], (flock to); w. reflex., *join, attach*.
agitō, 1st conj. [intensive of *agō*], *agitate, discuss earnestly*.
āgmen, minis, n. [*agō*], *army on the march, marching column*; **novissimum** or **extrēmum āgmen**, *rear, rear guard*; **primum āgmen**, *van,*

vanguard; **cōnfertō āgmine**, *in close order*. (*cōnstatō, halt*.)

agō, agere, ēgi, āctum, (put in motion); w. *praedam*, *drive, lead*, VI. 43, 2; w. *turrēs, vineās, tōstūdīnēs*, *bring up*; w. *impedimenta*, *take along*, II. 29, 4; w. *cuniculum*, *construct, sink*, III. 21, 3; *drive, pursue closely*, IV. 12, 2, V. 17, 3; w. *sublicān*, *drive in, down*, IV. 17, 9; *treat, discuss, confer*; *carry on, do*; *work*, VII. 17, 2; impers. pass. infin., *the work to be done*, V. 50, 5; **grātias agere** (give thanks), *thank*; w. *conventūs*, *hold*.

al-, form of *ad* in comp. before *l*.

alacer, cris, cre, *lively, brisk*; *eager*.
alaoritās, tātis, f. [*alacer*], *liveliness, briskness*; *eagerness*.

ālārius, a, um [*āla, wing*], *relating or belonging to the wing* (of a bird or an army); hence of allies, stationed on the wings of the Roman armies, *allied, of the allies*; masc. plu. as subst. (sc. *militēs*), *allies*.

albus, a, um, *white*; **plumbum album**, (white lead), *tin*.

alocēs, is, f., *elk*.

Alisia, ae, f., chief city of the Mandubii, north of the territory of the Aedui, now Alise-Sainte-Reine, VII. 68, 1, etc.

aliās, adv. [orig. acc. plu. of *alius*], *at another time*; **aliās—aliās**, *at one time—at another*.

aliēnō, 1st conj. [*aliēnus*], (make another's); *estrangle, alienate*, VII. 10, 2; **aliēnātā mente**, *as if they had lost their reason*, VI. 41, 3.

aliēnus, a, um [*alius*], (belonging to another, another's); **aes** (another's

money), *debt*; w. *locus, tempus, unfavourable, unsuitable; out of place*, VI. 11, 1. Masc. as subst., *stranger*, super. *utter stranger*, VI. 31, 4.

aliō, adv. [old dat. of *alius*], *to another place, elsewhere*.

aliquam-diū, adv. [acc. sing. fem. of *aliqui*, sc. *partem*], (somewhat long), *for some time, some time*.

aliquandō, adv. [*alius*; *quandō*, *at some time*], (at some time or other, some time); *at length*.

aliquantus, a, um [*alius*; *quantus, how great*], (of some size); *some, considerable*; neut. w. partitive gen. *itineris*, *some distance*, V. 10, 2; abl. of degree of difference, *somewhat*, III. 13, 1.

aliqui, qua, quod, indef. adj. pron., *some, any*.

aliquis, qua, quid, indef. pron., *some one, something; any one, anything*; neut. w. partitive gen. translated as adj., e.g. w. *oñsalii*, *any discretion*, III. 16, 2, and so IV. 32, 2, VII. 12, 6; adv. acc., *somewhat*, I. 40, 5.

aliquot, indeclinable adj. [*alius, quot*], *some, several*.

aliter, adv. [*alius*], *otherwise, differently, else*; *aliter āc, otherwise than*. *aliter sē habēbat āc* (had itself otherwise than), *was different from what*, II. 19, 1.

alius, a, ud, gen. *alius*, dat. *alīi*, *other, another, different*. *alius—alius, one—another*, plu. *some—others*; *alia rēs, anything else*, I. 26, 6; *alia ratiō, any other way*, I. 42, 4; *longē alius, very different*; *alius āc, atque, different from, from what, than*. In condensed expression (brachylogy), *alius aliā*

causā illātā, one assigning one reason and another another, I. 39, 3; similarly, II. 22, 1, 24, 3, III. 6, 4, etc.; *each other*, II. 26, 2, V. 16, 4.

allātus, a, um, part. of *afferō*.

al-līcīō, līcere, lēxi or *līcui, lectum* [*laciō, entice*], *entice, allure, induce*.

Allobrogēs, um, m. plu., Greek acc. *as*, I. 14, 3, VII. 64, 7, a Gallic tribe in the northeastern part of the Province between the Rhone and the Alps, I. 6, 2, etc.

alō, alere, alui, alitum or *altum*, *nourish, strengthen, increase; support; keep*, V. 12, 6; w. *oontrō-versiam*, *continue*.

Alpēs, ium, f., *the Alps*, applied to all the mountains between Italy, Gaul and Germany.

alter, altera, alterum, gen. *alterius* or *alterius*, dat. *alteri* [same stem as *alius*], *the other (of two); the second; a second person, another*, I. 36, 1; *alter—alter (the) one—the other*, plu. *(the) one party—the other party, the others*.

alternus, a, um [*alter*], *alternate, in turn*.

altitūdō, inis, f. [*altus*], *height, elevation; depth; thickness*, III. 13, 4.

altus, a, um [part. of *alō, nourish*], (nourished, grown great); *high, deep*. Neut. as subst., sc. *mare*, and cf. Eng., *the deep, the open sea; in altō, in deep water*.

alūta, ae, f. [*alūmen, alum*, used in tanning (?)], (fine, soft) *leather*.

ambactus, i, m. [Celtic], *vassal*.

Ambarrī, ōrum, m. plu. [*ambi, around*], a tribe connected with the Aedui, living southeast of them, on both sides of the Saône (Arar), I. 11, 4.

Ambiāni, *ōrum*, m. plu., a tribe in Belgic Gaul, south of the Morini, on the coast, II. 4, 9.

Ambibarii, *ōrum*, m. plu., one of the Aremoric tribes on the south bank of the Liger (Loire), VII. 75, 4.

Ambiliati, *ōrum*, m. plu., one of the Aremoric tribes, upon the coast of northwestern Gaul, III. 9, 10.

Ambiorix, *igis*, m., a leader of the Eburones, responsible for the Roman disaster at Aduatuca, V. 26, 1, etc.

Ambivareti, *ōrum*, m. plu., a tribe of whose location nothing is known beyond the fact that they were clients of the Aedui; VII. 75, 2, 90, 6.

Ambivariti, *ōrum*, m. plu., a tribe somewhere upon the left bank of the Meuse, toward the lower part of its course, IV. 9, 3.

ambo, *ae, o*, adj. in dual no. (declined like *duo*), *both*.

āmentia, *ae, f.* [adj. *āmōns*, *out of one's senses*, from *ā*, *away from*, *mōns*, *mind*], *folly, senselessness*.

āmentum, *i, n.*, *thong, strap*, attached to a javelin.

am-frāctūs, *ūs, m.* [*am* (for *ambi*), *around*, *frangō*, *break*], *bend* (in a road).

amicitia, *ae, f.* [*amicus*], *friendship*, personal or political; *alliance*.

amicus, *a, um*, [*amō*, *love*], *friendly*. Masc. as subst., *friend*.

ā-mittō, *mittere*, *misī, missum*, (let go away), *lose*. Neut. plu. of perf. part. as subst., (things lost), *lost property, losses*, VII. 15, 2.

amor, *ōris*, m. [*amō*, *love*], *love, affection*.

amplē, adv. [*amplus*], *widely, largely, generously*. Compar. *more*, not nec-

essarily followed by the abl., though *quam* is regularly omitted; *further; any more*, I. 35, 3, 43, 9, V. 27, 9, 55, 2, VI. 42, 2.

amplificō, 1st conj. [*amplus, faciō*], (make large), *enlarge, increase, extend*.

amplitūdō, *inis, f.* [*amplus*], (size, breadth); *cornuum*, *spread*, VI. 28, 5; *importance, weight, influence*.

amplus, *a, um*, *large, great*, III. 8, 1, IV. 3, 3, V. 19, 1, 50, 2; *splendid*, VI. 28, 6; of social position, *noble, distinguished*; **amplius**, neut. of compar. as subst., *more*, not necessarily followed by the abl., though *quam* is regularly omitted.

an, conj. introducing an alternative, in the second part of a disjunctive question, the first part being sometimes omitted, *or*; **utrum** — **an**, **ne** — **an**, *whether* — *or*. When the first part is omitted **an** is not translatable, except as the sentence is made interrogative, I. 47, 6, VII. 38, 8, 77, 10.

Anartēs, *lum*, m. plu., a people in Transylvania, on the Tibiscus (Theiss) river, marking the eastern terminus of the Hercynian forest, VI. 25, 2.

Ancalītēs, *um*, m. plu., a British tribe, V. 21, 1.

anceps, *cipitis*, adj. [*ambi*, *about*, on either side, *caput*, *head*] (two-headed), *double*, I. 26, 1; VII. 76, 6; *doubtful*.

ancora, *ae, f.* [*ἀγκυρα*], *anchor*. (in, at; *tollere*, *weigh*.)

Andebrogius, *i, m.*, a man of high rank among the Remi, II. 3, 1.

Andēs, *ium*, or **Andi**, *ōrum*, m. plu.,

a tribe in western Gaul on the north bank of the Loire, about Angers, II. 35, 3. etc.

angulus, *l*, *m.*, *angle*, *corner*.

angustō [**angustus**], (narrowly), *closely*; *scantily*, V. 24, 1.

angustiae, *ārum*, *f. plu.* [**angustus**], (narrowness), *defile*, *narrow pass*; **angustiae viārum**, *narrowing the streets*, V. 49, 7; *difficulty*, *difficulties*, I. 39, 6, 40, 10, III. 18, 4, VII. 11, 8.

angustus, *a*, *um*, [**angō**, *squeeze*], (narrow); *small*, *contracted*, I. 2, 5, IV. 30, 1, VII. 70, 3; *in angustō*, *in a tight place*, *in a critical condition*; *difficult*; **angustiōre fāstigiō**, *with slightly converging sides*, VII. 73, 5.

anima, *ae*, *f.*, *breath* (of life); *soul*.

anim-ad-vertō, *vertere*, *verti*, **versum** [**animum**], *turn the mind to*; *notice*, *observe*; *identify*, VII. 50, 2; *in eum animadvertere*, *attend to him*, *punish him*.

animal, *ālis*, *n.* [**anima**], (living creature), *animal*.

animus, *l*, *m.*, *soul*, *mind*, *spirit*, *feelings*; *courage*; *character*; *sympathy*, I. 20, 4; *consciousness*, VI. 38, 4; *amusement*, *entertainment*, V. 12, 6, VII. 77, 10.

annōtinus, *a*, *um* [**annus**], *of last year*, *last year's*, *built the year before*.

annus, *l*, *m.*, *year*.

annuus, *a*, *um* [**annus**], *of a year*, *yearly*, *annual*; translated by *adv.*, *annually*, I. 16, 1.

anser, *eris*, *m.*, *goose*.

ante, (1) *adv.*, *before*, of space or time, *formerly*, *previously*; of quotations, *above*. (2) *prep. w. acc.*, *be-*

fore, of time or place; **ante diem**, *a. d.*, in dates, *on such a day before*, the adverbial and prepositional uses being confounded.

anteā, *adv.* [**ante**, *eā*, old acc. of *is*], *hitherto*; *before*, *some time ago*, *formerly*.

ante-cōdō, *cōdere*, *cōssi*, *cōssum*, *go before*, *go ahead of*, *precede*; *surpass*, *exceed*, *excel*; *anticipate*, *get the start of*, VII. 35, 6; 54, 1.

ante-cursor, *ōris*, *m.* [**curro**, *run*], (one who runs before, fore-runner); *courier*, V. 47, 1.

ante-ferō, *ferre*, *tuli*, *lātum*, (bear before), *prefer*.

antemna, *ae*, *f.*, *sail-yard*.

ante-pōnō, *pōnere*, *posui*, *positum*, *place before*, *allow to take precedence over*.

ante-vertō, *vertere*, *verti*, **versum**, (turn in front), *take precedence (over)*.

antiquitus, *adv.* [**antiquus**], *in former times*, *long ago*, *anciently*.

antiquus, *a*, *um* [**ante**], *ancient*, *old*; *former*, I. 18, 8.

Antistius, *l*, *m.*, *Caius Antistius Reginus*, a *legatus* of Caesar, VI. 1, 1.

Antōnius, *l*, *m.*, in Bel. Gal., *Marcus Antonius*, *Mark Antony*, a *legatus* under Caesar in seventh and eighth years of the war. Afterward famous as a member of the second triumvirate, rival of Augustus and paramour of Cleopatra, VII. 81, 6.

Ap., abbreviation for **Appius**.

aperiō, *aperire*, *aperui*, **apertum**, *open*, VII. 22, 5. Perf. part. as *adj.*, (opened), *open*, *exposed*, *unprotected*.

apertō, *adv.* [**apertus**], *openly*.

apertus, *a*, *um*, part. of **aperiō**.

Apollō, *inis*, *m.*, the Greek and

Roman god, identified by Caesar with one of the Gallic divinities, VI. 17, 2.

ap-, form of **ad** in comp. before **p**.

ap-parō, 1st conj., *prepare, get ready, construct*.

ap-pellō, *pellere, puli, pulsum*, (drive to); of ships, *bring up*, III. 12, 3; pass., *land*, V. 13, 1, VII. 60, 4.

ap-pellō, 1st conj. [secondary form of above], *address, call upon*, II. 25, 2, V. 33, 2, 36, 2, 52, 4, etc.; *call*.

ap-petō, *petere, petivī* or *petiī*, *petitum*, *seek after, seek; approach*, VII. 4, 1, 82, 2.

Appius, 1, m., a Roman *praenomen*.

ap-plicō, *plicāre, plicāvi* or *plicui*, *plicātum* or *plicitum* [*plicō*, *fold*], *apply; w. reflex., lean against*, VI. 27, 3.

ap-portō, 1st conj., *carry to, convey*.

ap-probō, 1st conj., *approve*.

ap-propinquō, 1st conj., *draw near to, approach; be close at hand*, VII. 77, 11.

appulsus, a, um, part. of **appellō**, *ere*.

Apr., abbreviation for **Aprilis**.

Aprilis, e [*aperiō*, *open*], of *April*, *April*. Masc. as subst. (sc. *mēnsis*), the month *April*.

aptus, a, um [*apiscor*, *reach*], *fitted, adapted*.

apud, prep. w. acc., of places, *near, at*; of persons, *at the house or camp of, with, among, in the judgment of*.

aqua, ae, f., *water; vis aquae, current; mēnsūra ex aquā* (measure by water) *water-clock, clepsydra*, an instrument for measuring time, somewhat like an hour glass.

aquātīō, ōnis, f. [*aquor*, *bring water, from aqua*], *bringing or getting water*.

aquila, ae, f., *eagle*, the emblem upon standards of the Roman legions.

Aquilēia, ae, f., a Roman city at the head of the Adriatic, I. 10, 3.

aquilifer, ferī, m. [*aquila, ferō*], (one who bears the eagle), *standard-bearer of a legion*.

Aquitānia, ae, f. [*Aquitānus*], one of Caesar's three divisions of Gaul, see I. 1, 7.

Aquitānus, a, um, of *Aquitania*, *Aquitanian*. Masc. as subst., *an Aquitanian, one of the Aquitani*, plu. *the Aquitani*.

ar-, form of **ad** in comp. before **r**.

Arar, **Araris**, m., acc. *im*, the river *Arar*, now the *Saône*, tributary of the Rhone, I. 12, 1.

arbiter, trī, m., (witness); *judge, referee, arbitrator*.

arbitrium, 1, n. [*arbiter*], *discretion, judgment*.

arbitror, 1st conj. [*arbiter*], (judge); *think, consider*.

arbor (poetic *arbōs*), oris, f., *tree*.

arcessō, *arcessere, arcessivī, arcessitum* [causative of *accēdō*, *approach* (?)] (cause to come), *summon, invite; meroōde arcessere*, (invite by pay), *hire*, I. 31, 4.

ardeō, *ardēre, ārāl, ārum*, *burn*, lit. or fig.

Arduenna, ae, f., the *Ardenne*s, the great forest of Gaul, extending from the Rhine through the country of the Treveri to the frontiers of the Remi, V. 3, 4.

arduus, a, um, *steep*; fig., *difficult*, VII. 47, 3.

Arecomici, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of the Volcae in the Roman province, south of the Helvii and the Cevennes mountains, about Nîmes, VII. 7, 4, 64, 6.

Aremoricus, a, um [Celtic, *by the sea*], *Aremoric*, *Aremoric*, name applied by the Gauls to some tribes on or near the northwestern coast between the Loire and Seine, V. 53, 6, VII. 75, 4.

argentum, l, n., *silver*; in the sense also of *silverware*, VII. 47, 5.

argilla, ae, f. [ἀργίλλος], *clay*.

āridus, a, um [āreō, *be dry*], *dry*.

Neut. as subst., *dry land*, *beach*.

ariēs, etis, m., (ram); fig., in Bel. Gal., *battering ram*; *buttress*, IV. 17, 9.

Arlovistus, l, m., a German king, a Suebian, who had subjected a great part of Gaul when Caesar began his operations, I. 31, II, etc.

Aristius, l, m., a military tribune, VII. 42, 5, 43, 1.

arma, ōrum, n. plu., *implements*, III. 14, 2; especially, *implements of war*, *arms*; *ab armis discōdere* (depart from arms), *lay down arms*; *in armis*, often *under arms*; *in armis esse*, *take the field*, IV. 1, 5.

armāmenta, ōrum, n. plu. [armō], (means of equipping); *equipment*, *tackle*.

armātūra, ae [armō], *armor*; in Bel. Gal. only in phrase *levis armātūrae*, (of light armor), *light-armed*.

armō, 1st conj. [arma], *equip*, *arm*; **armātī**, ōrum, masc. plu. of perf. part. as subst., *armed men*.

Arpinēsius, l, m., a Roman knight, V. 27, I, 28, 1.

ar-rīpiō, *ripere*, *ripui*, *reptum* [rapiō], *snatch for*, *seize*.

arroganter, adv. [arrogāns, part. of ar-rōgō, *assume*], *haughtily*, *arrogantly*.

arrogantia, ae, f. [arrogāns, part. of ar-rōgō, *assume*], *haughtiness*, *arrogance*.

ars, artis, f., *skill*; *art*; plu. *the arts*.

artē, adv. [artus], *closely*, *tightly*.

articulus, l, m. [diminutive of artus, ūs, *joint*] (a little joint), *joint*.

artificium, l, n. [artifex, *skilled workman*, from ars, *faciō*], *skilful contrivance*; *accomplishment*, VI. 17, 2.

artus, a, um [part. of arceō, *confine*], (close), *dense*, *thick*.

Avernus, a, um, *of the Averni*, *Avernian*. Masc. as subst., *one of the Averni*, *an Avernian*, plu. *the Averni*, *the Avernians*, a tribe of south-central Gaul about the head waters of the Allier (Elaver) river, I. 45, 2.

arx, arcis, f. [arceō, *confine*], *stronghold*; *fortress*, *citadel*.

as-, form of *ad* in comp. before *a*.

ā(ad)-scendō, *scendere*, *scendi*, *scēnsus* [scandō], (climb to), *ascend*, *climb*, *scale*.

ā(ad)-scēnsus, ūs, m. [āscendō], *ascent*, *approach*.

ā(ad)-scīsoō, *sciscere*, *scīvi*, *scītum* [solō, *know*], (ordain to); *accept*, *admit*.

ā(ad)-spectus, ūs, m. [-spiciō, *look*], (a looking at); *appearance*, *sight*.

asper, *aspera*, *asperum*, compar.

- asperior**, super. **asperrimus**, *rough, fierce, desperate.*
- as-siduus** [**sedeō**, *sit*], *continuous, incessant; long-continued*, VI. 22, 3.
- as-sistō**, *sistere*, **stīti**, —, *take position near; assistere in cōnspectū*, *appear* (with), VI. 18, 3.
- as-suē-faciō**, *facere*, **fēci**, **factum** [**suē**, stem of **suēscō**, *become accustomed, faciō*, *make*], (make to become accustomed to); *train.*
- as-suēscō**, *suēscere*, **suēvi**, **suētum**, *become accustomed to; assuēscere ad hominē*, *be tamed.*
- at-**, form of **ad** in comp. before **t**.
- at**, adversative conj., *but*; after a conditional clause, *at least.*
- atque**, **āc** [**ad**, **que**], conj., usually emphasizing what follows, *and, and even, and especially*; after terms implying comparison, as **pār**, **Idem**, *equal to, the same as; similis ratiō atque ipse fēcerit*, *a method like that which he had used; simul atque*, *as soon as; aliter āc*, *otherwise than; alius—atque, āc*, *other than, different from what.*
- Atrebās**, **ātis**, m., *one of the Atrebates, an Atrebatian*, plu. *the Atrebates*, a tribe toward the northwestern part of Belgic Gaul, II. 4, 9.
- Ātrius**, **I**, m., *Quintus Atrius*, an officer in Caesar's army, mentioned in second expedition to Britain, V. 9, 1.
- at-texō**, *texere*, **texui**, **textum** (*weave on*); *construct upon, attach.*
- at-tingō**, *tingere*, **tigi**, **tactum** [**tangō**], *touch upon, touch; border upon.*
- at-tribuō**, *tribuere*, **tribui**, **tribūtum**, *assign.*
- at-tuli**, perf. of **afferō**.
- auctor**, **ōris**, m. [**augeō**], (promoter); *leader, originator; aliquō auctōre*, *at the suggestion of any one*, V. 26, 3, 28, 6; *as authority*, V. 29, 3.
- auctōritās**, **tātis**, f. [**auctor**], *influence, standing, prestige.*
- auctus**, **a**, **um**, part. of **augeō**.
- audācia**, **ae**, f. [**audāx**, *daring*, from **audeō**], *daring; effrontery, insolence.*
- audācter**, adv. [**audāx**, *daring*, from **audeō**], *boldly, daringly.*
- audeō**, **ēre**, **ausus sum**, *dare, venture; dare to do, attempt*, VI. 13, 1.
- audiō**, *audire*, **audivi**, **auditum**, *hear, hear of, listen to; give audience to*, IV. 13, 1; **diotō audiēns** (*hearing to the word of command*), *obedient; diotō audiēns esse* (*be obedient*), *obey.*
- auditiō**, **ōnis**, f. [**audiō**], (*a hearing*); *rumor, report.*
- augeō**, **ēre**, **auxi**, **auctum**, *increase, raise, strengthen.*
- Aulercus**, **I**, m., *one of the Aulerci, an Aulercian*, VII. 57, 2; plu. *the Aulerci*, a people of central Gaul, divided into four tribes: **Aulerci Brannovices**, VII. 76, 2; **Aulerci Cenomani**, VII. 76, 3; **Aulerci Ebu-rovices**, II. 34, III. 17, 3, 29, 3, VII. 4, 6; **Diablintes**, III. 9, 10.
- Aulus**, **I**, m., a Roman *praenomen*.
- aureus**, **a**, **um** [**aurum**, *gold*], (*golden*), *gold.*
- auriga**, **ae**, m., *charioteer, driver.*
- auris**, **is**, f. [**connected w. audiō** (?)], *ear.*
- Aurunculēius**, **I**, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a *legatus* of Caesar, killed in the disaster at *Aduatuca*, II. 11, 3, IV. 38, 3, V. 24, 5 ff.

Ausci, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in the eastern part of Aquitania, III. 27, 1.
ausus, a, um, part of *audeō*.
aut, conj., or; *aut—aut*, either—or.
autem, conj., adversative, however; copulative, moreover; now.
autumnus, i, m. [*augeō*], (the season of increase), *autumn*, fall.
auxiliāris, e [*auxilium*], *auxiliary*, belonging to the auxiliaries; masc. as subst. (sc. *militēs*), *auxiliary troops*, *auxiliaries*.
auxilior, 1st conj. [*auxilium*], *render aid*, *support*.
auxilium, i, n. [*augeō*], *aid*, *assistance*, *support*, *relief*; dat. of obj. for which, as a reinforcement; *alicui aux. ferre*, to aid anyone; *extrēmum aux.*, last resource, III. 5, 2. Plu. *auxiliary forces*, *auxiliaries*, as opposed to the regular legionary forces.
Avaricēnsis, e [*Avaricum*], of or relating to *Avaricum*; w. *praemia*, bestowed at *Avaricum*.
Avaricum, i, n., a town of the Bituriges, now Bourges, on the Avera (Yèvre), a tributary of the Loire; besieged by Caesar in the seventh year of the war, and the inhabitants slain, VII. 13, 3.
avāritia, ae, f. [*avārus*], *grasping*, *avarice*, *greed*.
ā-vehō, *vehere*, *vexi*, *vectum*, carry away, off.
ā-vertō, *vertere*, *verti*, *versum*, turn away, aside; alienate, I. 20, 4.
āversum hostem, one of the enemy in retreat, I. 26, 2; *āversā*, being turned away (from some of the enemy), i.e. since there were some of the enemy whom they were not facing, II. 26, 2.

avis, is, f., *bird*.

avus, i, m., *grandfather*.

Axona, ae, m., a river in the country of the Belgae, now the *Aisne*.

B

Bācōnia, is, f., a forest of Germany between the Suebi and the Cherusci, VI. 10, 5.

Baculus, i, m., *Publius Sextius Baculus*, an especially brave centurion, II. 25, 1, III. 5, 2, VI. 38, 1.

Baleāris, e, *Balearic*, pertaining to the Balearic islands, off the eastern coast of Spain, now *Majorca* and *Minorca*, II. 7, 1.

baltus, i, m., *belt*, from which the sword was suspended.

Balventius, i, m., *Titus Balventius*, a first centurion, V. 35, 6.

barbarus, a, um [*βάρβαρος*], *rude*, *uncivilised*, *uncultured*, i.e. not Greek or Roman; masc. as subst., contemptuously applied to various tribes, *native*, *barbarian*.

Basilus, i, m., *Lucius Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers, afterward a conspirator against him, VI. 29, 4, 30, 1, VII. 90, 5.

Batāvi, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe dwelling between the lower Rhine and the Meuse, IV. 10, 1.

Belgae, ārum, m. plu., collective name for the inhabitants of the northern of Caesar's three divisions of Gaul, between the Marne and Seine and the Rhine.

Belgium, i, n., the country of the Belgae, *Belgic Gaul*, V. 12, 2, 25, 4.

bellicōsus, a, um [*bellum*], *warlike*.

bellicus, a, um [bellum], *relating to war*; **bellica laus**, *glory in war*.

bellō, 1st conj. [bellum], (make war), *fight*.

Bellovacī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in the northwestern part of Belgic Gaul, II. 4, 5.

bellum, l, n. loc., **belli** [old form **duellum**, from duo], *war*.

bene, adv., compar. **melius**, super. **optimē** [bonus, melior, optimus], (well, better, best), *successfully*.

beneficiūm, l, n. [bene, faciō], *kindness, service*; **beneficiō obstringere**, (bind by service), *put under obligations*, I. 9, 3; **tantō beneficiō afficere**, *treat* (with so great kindness), *so kindly*, I. 35, 2; **beneficiō sortium**, (by the kindness of the lots), *thanks to fortune*.

benevolentia, ae, f. [bene; volēs, part. of volō], (well-wishing); *loyalty*, V. 25, 2; *favor*, VII. 43, 4.

Bibracte, is, n., loc. abl. e or l, capital of the Aedui, situated upon Mont Beuvray, in the central part of their territory, I. 23, 1.

Bibrax, bractis, f., a town of the Remi, near a hill now called *Vieux Laon*, II. 6, 1.

Bibroci, ōrum, m. plu., a British tribe, V. 21, 1.

biduus, a, um [bis, diēs], (of the space of two days), *two days'*. Neut. as subst., sc. **tempus**, (two days' time), *two days*.

biennium, l, n. [bis, annus], (the space of two years), *two years*.

Bigerriōnēs, ōnum, m. plu., a tribe in southern Aquitania, III. 27, 1.

bini, ae, a, distrib. adj., plu. [bis],

(two by two); *two each, two at a time, in pairs*.

bipedālia, e [bis, pēs], *of two feet, two foot; two feet thick*, IV. 17, 6.

bipertitō, adv. [adj. **bipartitus**, from bis, pars], *in two parts, in two divisions*.

bis, adv. [old form **duis**, from duo], *twice*.

Biturigēs, um, m. plu., a tribe of central Gaul, I. 18, 6.

Boduognātus, l, m. a leader of the Nervii, II. 23, 4.

Bōli, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe associated in the migration of the Helvetii, afterward received by the Aedui and located in the western part of their territory, probably between the Loire and Elaver rivers, I. 5, 4.

bonitās, tātis, f. [bonus], *goodness; fertility*, I. 28, 4. (**agrōrum**, of the soil.)

bonus, a, um, compar. **melior**, super. **optimus**, *good, better, best*; **bonō animō**, descriptive abl., (of good mind), *well disposed*. Neut. as subst., *good; advantage*, I. 40, 6; plu., *goods, property*.

bōs, **bovis**, c., gen. plu. **boum**, dat. **būbus**, **bōbus**, [bovis], *ox*, as generic name, VI. 26, 1; esp., *bull, ox, cow*, the domestic animals; plu. *cattle*, VI. 28, 5.

brācohium, l, n. [βραχίον], *forearm, arm*.

Brannoviōēs, um, m. plu. a division of the Auleri, probably south of the Aedui, toward the sources of the Loire, VII. 75, 2.

Brātuspantium, l, n., a stronghold of the Bellovacī, possibly near Breteuil, II. 13, 2.

brevis, e, *short*, of space or time ;
abl. **brevi**, sc. **tempore**, in a *short*
space, sharply, IV. 33, 3.

brevitās, tātis, f. [**brevis**], *shortness*,
brevity ; *small stature*, II. 30, 4.

breviter, adv. [**brevis**], *briefly*, in
few words.

Britanni, ōrum, m. plu., *Britons*.

Britannia, ae, f. [**Britanni**], *Britain*.

Britannicus, a, um [**Britanni**], *Brit-*
ish ; w. **bellum**, with the *Britons*,
V. 4, 1.

brūma, ae, f. [for **brevima**, old
super. of **brevis**, sc. **dīēs**], (the
shortest day), the *winter solstice*.
(*sub*, toward, at the time of.)

Brūtus, i, m., *Decimus Junius Bru-*
tus, a *legatus* of Caesar in both the
Gallic and the Civil War, afterward
a conspirator against him, III. 11, 5.

C

C, as numeral = 100 ; but not origi-
nally because it was the first letter of
centum.

C, abbreviation for **Gāius**, a Roman
praenomen.

Caillōnum, i, n., a city of the Aedui
on the Saône, now Chalon, VII.
42, 5, 90, 7.

Cabūrus, i, m., *Gaius Valerius*
Caburus, a distinguished Gaul, a
staunch friend of the Romans, I.
47, 4, VII. 65, 2.

cacūmen, minis, n., *top*, *summit* ;
small end, VII. 73, 2.

cadāver, veris, n. [**cadō**], *corpse*,
(*dead*) *body*.

cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsum, *fall*
(in Bel. Gal. in sense of *be killed*).

Cadūrci, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of

southern Gaul, south of the Avernī,
of whom they were dependents, VII.
6, 1, etc.

caedēs, is, f. [**caedō**], *slaughter*.

caedō, cadere, cecidi, caesum
[causative of **cadō**], (cause to fall,
in any way), *strike down*, *cut down*,
kill ; of trees, *fell*, III. 29, 1.

caelestis, e [**caelum**, *sky*, *heavens*],
heavenly, of the *heavens*.

Caemani, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of
Belgae (often called *Paemani*),
probably between the Meuse and
Ourthe rivers, II. 4, 10.

caerimōnia, ae, f., *religious cere-*
mony. (**gravis**, solemn.)

Caerōsi, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of
Belgae, northwest of the Moselle in
its lower course, II. 4, 10.

caeruleus, a, um [for **caeluleus**,
from **caelum**, *sky*, *heavens*], *deep*
blue, *dark blue*.

Caesar, aris, m., (1) *Gaius Julius*
Caesar, the great statesman and
general, author of the *Commentaries*. (2) *Lucius Julius Caesar*, a
distant relative of Gaius, consul
B.C. 64, VII. 65, 1.

caespes, itis, m. [**caedō**], *sod*, *turf*.
calamitās, tātis, f., *disaster*, *defeat*.

Caleti, ōrum, and **Caletēs**, um, m.
plu., one of the Aremoric tribes,
on the northwest coast, north of the
Seine, II. 4, 9, VII. 75, 4.

callidus, a, um [**callum**, *thick skin*,
callous], *experienced*, *shrewd*.

calō, ōnis, m., *camp follower* ; any
non-combatant moving with an
army, including personal servants,
drivers, sutlers, etc.

campester, tris, tre [**campus**], *re-*
lating to a level field ; w. **mūni-**

tiōnēs, in the plain; *loca camp.*, level places, plains.

campus, I, m., level field, plain.

Camulogenus, I, m., a chief of the Aulerici, commander-in-chief against Labienus in the seventh year of the war, VII. 57, 3, etc.

Caninius, I, m., a *legatus* of Caesar, in latter part of the Gallic and in the Civil War, VII. 83, 3, 90, 6.

canō, *canere*, *cecini*, —, (make a melodious sound); *sing*, *play* on a musical instrument; *receptui canere*, give the signal for retreat, sound the retreat, VII. 47, 1.

Cantabri, *ōrum*, m. plu., a warlike tribe in the north of Spain, III. 26, 6.

Cantium, I, n., *Kent*, the southeastern part of Britain, V. 13, 1, etc.

capillus, I, m. [*caput*], hair of the head. (*prōmissus*, long; *passus*, dishevelled.)

capio, *capere*, *cōpi*, *captum*, take; occupy, seize; of ships, make, reach; *cōnailium capere*, take counsel or decide upon a plan; w. *nōmen*, derive; take in, deceive, I. 40, 9, VII. 31, 2; charm, VI. 22, 3; convict, VII. 43, 3. *Capiō* and its object may often be translated by a single word, suggested by the latter; e.g. *initium capere* (take a beginning), begin; so with *quīctem*, *conlectūram*, *fugam*.

capra, ae, f. [*caper*, he-goat], (she-goat); goat.

captivus, a, um [*capio*], captive; masc. also as subst., prisoner.

captus, ūs, m. [*capio*], (a seizing, grasp, mental capacity), standard.

caput, *capitis*, n., head; life;

capitis poena, capital punishment; of a river, mouth; person, individual (cf. Eng. "head" of cattle), I. 29, 2, II. 33, 7, IV, 15, 3.

Carcasō, *ōnis*, f., a town of the Volcae Tectosages, III. 20, 2.

careō, *carēre*, *carui*, *caritum*, be without, go without.

carina, ae, f., keel.

Carnutēs, um, m. plu., a tribe of central Gaul between the Seine and the Loire, II. 36, 3, etc.

carō, *carnis*, f., flesh, meat.

carpō, *carpere*, *carpai*, *carptum* (pluck; pick a flaw), criticise.

carrus, I, m., cart; mentioned only as used by the Gauls.

Carvilius, I, m., one of the chieftains of Kent, V. 22, 1.

casa, ae, f., hut.

cāseus, I, m., cheese.

Cassi, *ōrum*, m. plu., a British tribe. *Cassianus*, a, um [*Cassius*], relating to Cassius; w. *bellum*, with Cassius.

cassis, *idis*, f., metal helmet.

Cassius, I, m., *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, consul 107 B.C.; defeated and killed by the Helvetians near Lake Geneva, I. 7, 4, 12, 5, 12, 7.

Cassivellaunus, I, m., the most resolute and able of the British chiefs, V. 11, 8, etc.

castellum, I, n. [diminutive of *castrum*], fort, redoubt.

Casticus, I, m., a powerful chief of the Sequani, I. 3, 4.

castrum, I, n., fortress. Plu., a camp, always fortified; with distrib. adj., day's march; in *castris*, in camp life, in war, I. 39, 5. (*pōnō*, pitch; *moveō*, break.)

cāsus, ūs, m. [*cadō*], (a falling, hap-

pening); *chance, fortune, good or bad; accident, disaster; emergency; cāstū, often accidentally; cāstū dēvenire, happen to come, II. 21, 6; cf. V. 48, 8, VI. 37, 1.*

Catamantāloedis, is, m., the most powerful Sequanian of the generation before Caesar's arrival, I. 3, 4.

catēna, ae, f., *chain.*

Caturigēs, um, m. plu., a tribe in the Graian Alps in the valley of the upper Durance, I. 10, 4.

Catuvolous, I, m., a chief of the Eburones, confederate of Ambiorix, V. 24, 4.

causa, ae, f., *cause, reason; case at law, I. 4, 1, 2; condition, situation, IV. 4, 1, VI. 32, 1. Abl. after a gen., for the sake, for the purpose, on account; w. verbal it denotes purpose, e.g. suū mūniendi causā, to defend himself, I. 44, 6.*

cautē, adv. [cautus, part. of caveō], *cautiously.*

cautēs, is, f., *sharp ledge, reef.*

Cavarillus, I, m., an Aeduan prominent in the seventh year of the war, VII. 67, 7.

Cavarinus, I, m., a chief of the Senones, assisted by Caesar, V. 54, 2, VI. 5, 2.

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, be on one's guard, I. 14, 2: give security (dē, for).

Cebenna, ae, f., *the Cevennes, a range of mountains in south central Gaul, boundary of the Roman province, VII. 8, 2, etc.*

cōdō, cōdere, cōssi, cōssum, (go, go from); retreat, retire; locō cōdere, leave one's post; yield, w. dat., VII. 89, 2. Pres. part., as

subst., those retreating, the retreating (soldiers, enemy).

celer, celeris, celere, compar. celerior, super. celerrimus, swift, quick, sudden.

celeritās, tātis, f. [celer], *swiftness, rapidity, speed. (ad, in the way of, II. 26, 5.)*

celeriter, adv. [celer], *speedily, rapidly, promptly, quickly.*

cēlō, 1st conj., *hide, conceal.*

Celtae, ārum, m. plu., *Celts; in Bel. Gal., the native name for the people living in central Gaul, as distinguished from the Belgae and the Aquitani, I. 1, 1.*

Celtillus, I, m., a powerful chief of the Averni, father of Vercingetorix, VII. 4, 1.

Cēnabēnsis, e [Cēnabum], *relating to Cenabum. Masc. plu. as subst., inhabitants of Cenabum.*

Cēnabum, I, n., chief city of the Carnutes, upon the site of Orléans, VII. 3, 1 ff.

Cēnimagni, ōrum, m. plu., a British tribe, V. 21, 1.

Cēnomanī, ōrum, m. plu., a division of the Auleri, in western Gaul, west of the Carnutes, VII. 75, 3.

cēnsēō, cēnsēre, cēnsui, cēnsuum, (estimate); judge, hold, be of opinion; of the Roman senate, decree; favor, VII. 77, 2.

cēnsus, ūs, m. [cēnsēō], *estimate, enumeration, census.*

centum, indeclin. card. adj., *a hundred.*

centuriō, ōnis, m. [centum], *centurion, orig. the commander of a hundred men; a subordinate officer in the Roman legion. See Introduction.*

cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētum, (separate); *distinguish, make out clearly, perceive.*

certāmen, minis, n. [certō, *contend*], *contest, fight, battle.*

certē, adv. [certus], *certainly, surely; at least, at all events.*

certus, a, um [form of part. of cernō], *certain, sure, undoubted*; w. *diēs, locus, appointed, fixed*; w. *subaldia, regular*; *aliquem certiōrem facere, inform anyone*; *direct*, III. 5, 3.

cervus, l, m., deer, stag; in military language, "antlers," trunks of trees with branches lopped off and pointed, embedded in the ground and turned toward the enemy: *chevaux-de-frise.*

cēterus, a, um (sing. rare), *the other, the rest of*; *cēterae rēs, the other things that he might need*, II. 3, 3. Elsewhere, masc. plu. as subst., *the others.*

Ceutronēs, um, m. plu., (1) a tribe in the Graian Alps, about the headwaters of the Isère, I. 10, 4. (2) a tribe of the Belgae, clients of the Nervii, V. 39, 1.

Chērusci, ōrum, m. plu., a German tribe, north of the Hercynian forest, VI. 10, 5.

chōrus, l, m., the northwest (wind).

cibārius, a, um [cibus], *relating to food*. Neut. plu. as subst., *provisions*; *molita cibāria, (ground food-stuff), flour.*

cibus, l, m., food.

Cicerō, ōnis, m., Quintus Tullius Cicero, younger brother of the orator, a legatus of Caesar, V. 24, 2, etc.

Climberius, l, m., a leader of the Suebi, I. 37, 3.

Climbri, ōrum, m. plu., a Germanic people that overran Gaul in the second century B.C., and gave Rome great uneasiness until defeated by Marius in the north of Italy, 103 B.C.; I. 33, 4, 40, 5, VII. 77, 12, 77, 14.

Cingetorix, Igis, m., (1) a chief of the Treveri, rival and brother-in-law of Indutiomarus, V. 3, 2, etc.; (2) A British chief in Kent, V. 22, 1.

cingō, cingere, cinxi, cinctum, *surround*; in hostile sense, *invest*; w. *mūrum, man*, VI. 35, 9; VII. 72, 2.

cippus, l, m., stake. Retain the Latin word in VII. 73, 4, as a technical term.

cirolinus, l, m. [κίρκινος], *pair of compasses.*

circiter, adv. and prep. w. acc. [circa, *circle*], *about.*

circuitus, ūs, m. [circumēō], (a going around); *circumference*; *detour, circuit*; in *cirovitā, by a circuitous route*, I. 21, 1.

circum, prep. w. acc. [acc. of *circus, circle*], *around, about*; in the neighborhood of.

circum-cidō, cidere, cidi, cisum [caedō], (cut around), *cut out*. Perf. part. w. *collis, steep, inaccessible.*

circum-clūdō, clūdere, clūsi, olūsum [claudō], *encircle.*

circum-dō, dare, dedi, datum, put around, I. 38, 6, VII. 72, 4; *surround.*

circum-dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, *lead around, draw around.*

circum-eō, ire, (ivi) ii, itum, *pass*

around; make the rounds of, inspect, V. 2, 2; *outflank*, VII. 67, 6.

circum-fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour around*, pass., VI. 34, 8; trans. *surround*, VII. 74, 1; impers. pass., VII. 28, 2; pass. as reflexive (Greek middle), *pour themselves around, pour around*, VI. 37, 4.

circum-iciō [pronounced as if spelled **circumjiciō**], **icere, iēcī, lectum [iaciō]**, *throw around*, as military term, II. 6, 2.

circum-mittō, mittere, misi, missum, *send around*.

circum-mūnīō, mūnīre, mūnīvi or mūnī, mūnītum, (fortify around), *completely invest*.

circum-plector, plecti, plexus sum [plectō], (weave around) *embrace, include*.

circum-sisto, sistere, steti, —, *take a stand around; surround, crowd about, rally around*.

circum-spiciō, spicere, spexī, spectrum, *look around at; animō circumspicere, consider carefully*, VI. 5, 3; *look around for*.

circum-vallō, 1st conj. [vallum], *build a wall around, invest, blockade*.

circum-vehō, vehere, vexī, vectum, *carry around; pass. as dep., (be carried around), ride around*, VII. 45, 2.

circum-veniō, venire, vēnī, ventum, *come around, surround; outflank; like Eng. "get around," outwit*, I. 46, 3.

cis, prep. w. acc., *on this side of, this side*.

Cis-alpinus, a, um [Alpēs], *Cisalpine, on this side the Alps, i.e. toward Rome, south of the Alps*.

Cis-rhēnānus, a, um [Rhēnus], (*living*) *on this side the Rhine, i.e. toward Rome, south of the Rhine*.

Cita, ae, m., Gaius Fufius Cita, a Roman knight, VII. 3, 1.

citātus, a, um, part. of **citō**.

citerior, us, compar. adj., super. **citimus** [pos. **citer** (rare), from **cis, citrā**], *nearer, hither; w. prōvincia, Gallia, Cisalpine*.

citō, adv., compar. **citius**, super. **citissimō** [old form **citō**, abl. of **citus**, part. of **ciō**, *cause to move*], *quickly*.

citō, 1st conj. [intensive of **ciō**, *cause to move*], *urge on, hurry*. Perf. part., *headlong, swiftly*.

citrā, prep. w. acc. [case form of **citer**, see **citerior**], *on this side of, this side*.

citrō, adv. [dat. of **citer**, see **citerior**], *to this side, hither; ūltrō citrōque, back and forth*, I. 42, 4.

civis, is, c., citizen.

civitas, tātis, f. [civis], denoting condition, *citizenship*, I. 47, 4; collective, *all the citizens of a state, state*.

clam, adv. [**cēlō**, *conceal*], *secretly*.

olāmitō, 1st conj. [intensive of **olāmō**, *cry out*], *shout, keep shouting*.

olāmor, ōris, m. [olāmō, cry out], *outcry, shout, shouting*.

clandestinus, a, um [olam], *secret, clandestine*.

clārus, a, um, (clear), *loud, distinct*.

clāssis, is, f., *fleet*.

Claudius, i, m., Appius Claudius Pulcher, consul 54 B.C., V. 1, 1.

claudō, claudere, clausi, clausum, *close, shut; āgmen claudere, close*

the line of march, bring up the rear.

clāvus, *i*, *m.*, *nail, spike.*

clēmētia, *ae*, *f.* [**clēmēns**, *mild*], *mildness, mercy, clemency.*

cliēns, *entis*, *c.* [pres. part. of **clueō**, *hear*, with changed spelling], *dependent, retainer, client* (as used of a class in Rome); of tribes, *vassals.*

clientēla, *ae*, *f.* [**cliēns**], denoting condition, *dependency*; collective, *dependents, clients*, VII. 32, 5.

clivus, *i*, *m.*, *slope.*

Clōdīus, *i*, *m.*, *Publius Clodius Pulcher*, a turbulent demagogue at Rome, enemy of Cicero, killed in a political brawl in January, 52 B.C., VII. 1, 1.

Cn., abbreviation for **Gnaeus**, a Roman *praenōmen*.

co-, form of **cum** [**com**] in comp. before vowels and *h*.

cō-, form of **cum** [**com**] in comp. before *gn*.

co-acervō, 1st conj. [**acervus**, *pile*], *pile together, heap up.*

coāctus, *a*, *um*, part. of **cōgō**.

coāctus, *ūs*, *m.* [**cōgō**], *compulsion.*

co-āgmentō, 1st conj. [**co-āgmen-tum**, *joint*, from **cōgō**], *fasten together.*

co-artō, 1st conj. [**artus**, *narrow*], *crowd together.*

Cocosātēs, *um*, *m. plu.*, an Aquitanian tribe, upon the Atlantic coast, probably dependents of the Tarbelli, III. 27, 1.

co-emō, *emere*, *ēmi*, *ēemptum*, *buy up, purchase.*

co-eō, *ire*, (*ivi*) *ii*, *itum*, *come together, meet.*

coepi, *coepisse*, (*coepturus*), *defec-*

tive verb, lacking present system (which is supplied by **incipiō**), *have begun or began*; *w.* complementary infin. in pass. voice, **coeptus sum**, *esse*, is used as deponent, I. 47, 1, II. 6, 2, etc.

co-arceō, *erocēre*, *ercoi*, *ercitum* [**arceō**, *enclose*], (*confine*) *restrain.*

cōgitō, 1st conj. [for **co-agitō**], (*revolve, discuss*), *consider.*

cō-gnātiō, *ōnis*, *f.* [(*gnāscor*), *abstract, relationship by birth* (*māgna*, *wide*) VII. 32, 4; collective, *clan*, VI. 22, 2.

cō-gnōscō, *gnōscere*, *gnōvi*, *gnitum*, (*become acquainted with*), *learn, find out, ascertain*; *examine, reconnoitre*; **cōgnōvi**, as pres. perf., *I have become acquainted with*; hence, *I know*, pluperf. *knew*. Part., **cōgnitus**, *a*, *um*, as adj., *known, noted*, I. 28, 5.

cōgō, *cōgere*, **co-ēgi**, **co-āctum** [for **co-agō**], (*drive together*), *bring together, gather*; *w.* infin. or direct obj., *force, compel*; perf. part. **co-āctus**, *under compulsion*, I. 17, 6.

cohōra, *hortis*, *f.*, *cohort*, a tenth of a legion.

cohortātiō, *ōnis*, *f.* [**cohortor**], (*exhortation*), *address before a battle,*

appeal (to).

co-hortor, 1st conj., *exhort, encourage, address before a battle.*

col-, form of **cum** [**com**] in comp. before *l*.

collātus, *a*, *um*, part. of **cōnferō**.

col-laudo, 1st conj. [**laus**, *praise*], *praise highly.*

col-ligō, 1st conj., *fasten together*, I. 26, 3.

col-ligō, *ligere*, *lēgi*, *lēctum* [**legō**,

gather], *gather, collect; acquire; sē colligere, recover one's self, collect one's wits.*

collis, is, m., hill.

col-locō, 1st conj. [locus], place; settle; give in marriage, I. 18, 6, 7.

colloquium, i, n. [colloquor], conversation, conference, interview.

col-loquor, loqui, locutus sum, talk with, hold a conference; inter sē colloqui, confer together, IV. 30, 1.

colō, colere, colui, cultum, cultivate; worship.

colōnia, ae, f. [colōnus, colonist, from colō], colony.

color, ōris, m., color.

com-, regular form of cum in comp. com-būrō, būrere, būsaī, būstum [related to ūrō, burn], burn up.

comes, itis, c. [com, eō], companion.

comitium, i, n. [com, eō], place of assembly; plu., the Roman people in assembly for election; hence, any election, VII. 67, 7.

comitor, 1st conj. [comes], accompany.

commeātus, ūs, m. [commeō], a going back and forth, voyage, V. 23, 2, 4; provisions, supplies.

com-memorō, 1st conj. [memor, mindful], mention, relate.

com-mendō, 1st conj. [mandō], commit, intrust.

(commentārius, i, m. [com-mentor, think over], orig., note-book, memorandum; sketch. Not in text of Bel. Gal., but applied to its single books by the grammarians.)

com-meō, 1st conj., go back and forth, resort; commeāre ad, visit.

com-minus, adv. [manus], hand to hand, at close quarters.

commissūra, ae, f. [committō], joint, junction, angle, corner.

com-mittō, mittere, misi, missum, (send together), join, mālōs, VII. 22, 5; join, engage in, proelium; intrust; do, I. 14, 2, V. 35, 5; commit, VII. 4, 10; permit, I. 13, 7, 46, 3, VII. 47, 7.

Commīus, i, m., a chief of the Atrebrates, first mentioned IV. 21, 6; loyal to Caesar until the seventh year of the war, VII. 75, 5, etc.

commodē, adv. [commodus], conveniently, easily, effectively.

com-modus, a, um [modus], (having measure with what is desired), convenient, advantageous. Neut. as subst., advantage, interest; comfort.

com-mōne-faciō, facere, fēcī, factum [moneō, warn], (give a warning about), impress upon.

com-moror, 1st conj., delay.

com-moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, (move strongly), influence, I. 20, 3; alarm, startle.

commūniō, 1st conj. [commūnis], (make common), share; propose, (cum, to); unite, VI. 19, 1.

com-mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī or mūnī, mūnītum, (fortify completely), fortify strongly, construct.

com-mūnis, e [related to mūnus, task], (having tasks together), common, general; w. lēgātīō, joint.

commūtātīō, ōnis, f. [commūtō], change.

com-mūtō, 1st conj., change; w. abl., exchange for, VI. 22, 3.

com-parō, 1st conj. [com-par, like], (liken), compare, I. 31, 11, VI. 24, 6. For all other passages see comparō, p. 22.

com-parō, 1st conj., *provide, procure, prepare*. For I. 31, 11, VI.

24, 6, see **comparō**, p. 21.

com-pellō, *pellere, pull, pulsum*, (drive together), *gather*, V. 19; i, VII. 71, 7; *drive in confusion*.

com-pendium, *l*, n. [**pendō**, *pay*], *gain, profit*.

com-periō, *perire, peri, pertum* [cf. **ex-perior**], *find out, ascertain, learn*.

com-plector, *plecti, plexus sum* [**plectō**, *plait*], *embrace*.

com-pleō, *plēre, plēvi, plētum*, *fill completely; cover*.

com-plūrēs, *a* or *ia*, gen. *plūrium* [*plūs*], *several, quite a number of*. Often as subst.

com-portō, 1st conj., *bring together, gather, convey*.

com-prehendō, *prehendere, prehendi, prehensum* [**prehendō**, *lay hold of*], *grasp with the hand, take hurriedly*; w. *fūnēs, ignem*, *catch; catch, arrest, take*.

com-probō, 1st conj., *approve of, "smile upon"*.

con-, form of *cum* (**oom**) in comp. before most of the consonants.

cōnātum, *l*, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **cōnor**, in pass. sense], (a thing attempted), *attempt*.

cōnātus, *ūs*, m. [**cōnor**], (an attempting), *attempt*.

con-cēdō, *cēdere, cēssi, cēssum*, *yield*, IV. 7, 5, VII. 15, 6; *grant, permit*.

concoāsua, *ūs*, m. [**concoēdō**], *permission*.

con-cidō, *cidere, cidi*, — [**cado**], *fall* (in a heap).

con-cidō, *cidere, cidi, cisum*

[**caedō**], *cut down, kill; cut off*, III. 9, 4.

con-ciliō, 1st conj. [**concilium**], *win over; gain*, I. 3, 7, VII. 55, 4.

con-cilium, *l*, n., *assembly, council*. **conciō**, 1st conj., *arouse, stir up*.

con-clāmō, 1st conj., *cry out, shout*.

con-clūdō, *clūdere, clūsi, clūsum*

[**claudō**], *shut up, enclose; mare*

conclūsum, *landlocked sea*.

Conconnetodumnus, *l*, m., a chief of the Carnutes, VII. 3, 1.

con-crepō, *crepāre, crepul, crepitum*, *rattle, clash; armis* (abl. of means), translated as if obj.

con-currō, *currere, curri* or *cuocurri, cursum*, *run together, hurry, rally; gather*.

con-cursō, *cursāre*, —, — [intensive of **concurrō**], *run to and fro, run about*.

concursum, *ūs*, m. [**concurrō**], *a running together, rushing about, confusion; charge, onset*, I. 8, 4, VI. 8, 6, VII. 62, 3; w. *nāvium*, *collision*.

con-demnō, 1st conj. [**damnō**, *condemn*], *condemn*.

con-diciō, *ōnia*, f. [**diciō**], (a saying together), *agreement, terms, condition, state*.

con-dōnō, 1st conj. [**dōnum**, *gift*]. *forgive, pardon*; dat., *out of regard for*, I. 20, 5, 6.

Condrūsī, *drum*, m. plu., a tribe of Belgae upon the eastern bank of the Meuse, II. 4, 10, etc.

con-dūcō, *dūcere, dūxi, ductum*, *bring together, gather* (of persons); *hire*, II. 1, 4, V. 27, 8.

cōnfectus, *a, um*, part. of **cōnficiō**.

cōn-ferciō, *fercire, ferasi, fortum*

- [*farcidō*, *stuff*], *crowd together*.
 Perf. part. as adj., *crowded, compact, in close array*.
- cōn-ferō*, *ferre*, *con-tulī*, *col-lātum*, *bring together, collect* (of things), *convey*; *compare*, I. 31, 11; *attribute*, I. 40, 10; *postpone*, I. 40, 14; *nō cōnferre*, *betake one's self, retire*, I. 26, 1.
- cōn-fertus*, *a, um*, part. of *cōnferō*.
- cōn-festim* [cf. *fēstinus*, *hasty*], *promptly, immediately*.
- cōn-ficiō*, *ficere*, *fēcī*, *fectum* [*faciō*], (do completely), *complete, accomplish, finish*; *exhaust, wear out, overcome*; *complete the number of, furnish*, II. 4, 5; *make out, execute*, I. 29, 1.
- cōn-fidō*, *fidere*, *fisus sum* (trust firmly), *w. ind. dis. or dat., trust*; *w. abl. rely (on)*.
- cōn-figō*, *figere*, *fixī*, *fixum*, *fasten (together)*.
- cōn-finis*, *e*, adj. [*finis*], *adjoining, adjacent*.
- cōnfinium*, *ī*, n. [*cōnfinis*], *territory, neighborhood*.
- cōnfirmātiō*, *ōnis*, f. [*cōnfirmō*], *assurance*.
- cōn-firmō*, 1st conj., *strengthen, establish*; *assure, reassure*; *w. acc. and infin., declare, pledge one's self*; *espec. w. fūre fūrandō*.
- cōn-fisus*, *a, um*, part. of *cōnfidō*.
- cōn-fiteor*, *fitēri*, *fessus sum* [*fateor*, *acknowledge*], *confess, admit*.
- cōn-fixus*, *a, um*, part. of *cōnfigō*.
- cōn-flagrō*, 1st conj., (blaze together), *be in flames*.
- cōn-flictō*, 1st conj. [intensive of *cōn-fligō*], (strike against), *assail, harass*.
- cōn-fligō*, *figere*, *fixī*, *fluctum*, (strike together), *fight, contend*.
- cōn-fluō*, *fluere*, *fluxī*, (*fluxus*), *flow together*; *flock together, assemble*.
 Pres. part. as subst., (place where two rivers unite), *confluence*.
- cōn-fugiō*, *fugere*, *fūgī*, (*fugitūrus*), *seek refuge (by flight)*.
- cōn-fundō*, *fundere*, *fūdī*, *fūsum*, *assemble, unite*.
- con-gredior*, *gredi*, *gressus sum* [*gradior*, *step*], *meet*, IV. 11, 1; *unite with*, VI. 5, 5; *meet in battle, contend with, fight with*.
- congressus*, *a, um*, part. of *con-gredior*.
- congressus*, *ūs*, m. [*congregior*], *meeting, engagement*.
- cōn-icō* (pronounced as if spelled *cōn-iciō*), *icere*, *con-icēī*, *con-iectum* [*iaciō*], *throw, hurl*; *w. in fugam, put (to)*; *place or put hurriedly*; *w. aggerem, raise*.
- coniectūra*, *ae*, f. [*cōn-icō*], (a putting "two and two" together), *conjecture*; *coniectūram capere, to conjecture, infer, judge*.
- coniūctim*, adv. [*coniungō*], *jointly, in common*.
- con-iungō*, *iungere*, *iūnxī*, *iūnc-tum*, *join, unite, trans.*; *w. reflex., join, unite, intrans.*
- coniūnx*, *coniugis*, c. [*coniungō*], *spouse*; (husband), *wife*.
- coniūrātiō*, *ōnis*, f. [*coniūrō*], (a swearing together), *conspiracy*. (*faciō*, *form*.)
- con-iūrō*, 1st conj., (swear together), *conspire*; *band together, unite*, II. 1, 1, 2, 3, 2; *take the military oath*, VII. 1, 1.
- cōnor*, 1st conj., *try, attempt*; *idem*

cōnārī, *make the same attempt*; **quicquam cōnārī**, *try to do anything*. Neut. of perf. part. in pass. sense, (a thing attempted), *attempt*.
cōn-quiēscō, **quiēscere**, **quiēvi**, **quiētum** [**quiēs**], *rest*; *take a nap*.
cōn-quirō, **quirere**, **quisivi** or **quisi**, **quisitum** [**quaerō**], *seek for, look up, collect*.

cōn-sanguineus, **a, um** [**sanguis**], (of the same blood), *kindred*. Masc. as subst., *kindred, kinsman*.

cōn-scendō, **scendere**, **scendi**, **scēsum** [**scandō**, *climb*], *climb, mount*; (in) **nāvēs cōnscendere**, *go on board, board, embark*.

cōn-scientia, **ae, f.** [**sciēns**, part. of **sciō**, *know*], *consciousness*.

cōn-sciōscō, **sciōscere**, **sciōvi**, **sciūtum** [**sciōscō**, *approve*, inceptive (inchoative) of **sciō**, *know*], *adjudge, admit*; **sibi mortem cōnsciscere**, *commit suicide*.

cōn-scius, **a, um** [**sciō**, *know*], (knowing in common with some one), *conscious, aware*. An accompanying dat. of reflex. pron., dependent upon **cōn-**, is not translated.

cōn-scribō, **scribere**, **scripsi**, **scriptum**, *write (out)*, V. 48, 4; *enlist, enroll*.

cōn-seorō, 1st conj. [**sacer**, *sacred*], *consecrate*.

cōn-sector, 1st conj. [intensive of **cōnsequor**], *overtake*.

cōnsecūtus, **a, um**, part. of **cōnsequor**.

cōnsēnsiō, **ōnis**, **f.** [**cōnsentio**, *agree*], *agreement, unanimous resolve*.

cōnsēnsus, **ūs**, **m.** [**cōnsentio**, *agree*], *agreement, consent*.

cōn-sentiō, **sentire**, **sēnai**, **sēnsus**, (feel the same), *agree*; *be in agreement, join, unite*.

cōn-sequor, **sequi**, **secūtus sum**, (follow and come up with), *overtake*; *less exactly, follow*; **w.** *impers. obj., gain, attain*.

cōn-servō, 1st conj. [*not connected with servus*], *preserve (carefully), save, spare*; **iūa**, *observe*.

Cōnsidius, **i, m.**, **Publius Considius**, an officer in Caesar's army, I. 21, 4, 22, 1, 4.

cōn-sidō, **sidere**, **sēdi** (**sidi**), **sessum** [**sidō**, from **sedeō**, *sit*], (*sit down*), *settle*; *take position, halt, encamp*; *sit, hold a session*, VI. 13, 10.

cōn-silium, **i, n.** [*cf.* **cōnsulō**, *deliberate*], *deliberation*, VII. 38, 7; *deliberative assembly, council*; *regularly, counsel, plan of action, design*; *advice*; *discretion, prudence*, III. 5, 2, 16, 2, IV. 21, 7; *strategy*, I. 40, 8.

cōn-similis, **e**, *quite like, very similar*.

cōn-sistō, **sistere**, **stiti**, —, *take one's stand, take position*; *make a stand*; *come to a halt, stop*; *settle, take up residence*, VII. 3, 1, 42, 5; *in, depend upon*, II. 33, 4, III. 14, 7, VII. 86, 3; *consist of*, VI. 22, 1; *be spent in*, VI. 21, 3.

cōn-sōbrīnus, **i, m.** [*cf.* **soror**, *sister*], (son of a mother's sister), *cousin*.

cōn-sōlor, 1st conj., *speak kindly to, comfort, console*.

cōnspectus, **ūs**, **m.** [**cōnspicō**], *view, sight*.

cōn-spiciō, **spicere**, **spexi**, **spec-tum**, (look at attentively), *observe, catch sight of, see*.

cōn-spīcor, 1st conj. [secondary form of above], *catch sight of, see.*

cōn-spīrō, 1st conj., (breathe together), *combine*; against an enemy, *conspire.*

cōnstanter, adv. [cōnstāna, part. of cōnstō, *stand together*], *consistently*, II. 2, 4; *steadily*, III. 25, 1.

cōnstantia, ae, f. [cōnstāna, part. of cōnstō, *stand together*], *steadfastness, firmness.*

cōn-sternō, sternere, strāvi, strātum, *strew over, cover.*

cōn-sternō, 1st conj. [secondary form of above], (bewilder), *dismay, alarm.*

cōn-stipō, 1st conj., *pack together*; w. reflex., *be packed.*

cōn-stitūō, stituere, stitul, stitūtum [statuō, *cause to stand, causative of stō, stand*], w. obj., *place, station, halt*; of ships, *moor, anchor*; *establish, appoint, fix*; w. infin. or ut, *determine, decide.* dē controversiis cōnstituere, *settle disputes*, VI. 13, 5.

cōn-stō, stāre, stitī, (stātūrus), *stand the same, remain the same*, VII. 35, 3; w. abl. of price, *cost*, VII. 19, 4; *depend (on)*, VII. 21, 3, 84, 4; elsewhere impers., *it is admitted, it is evident.*

cōn-suēscō, suēscere, suēvi, suētum, *become accustomed*; hence perf., *have become accustomed* = *be accustomed*, plup. *was accustomed*, etc. Often best translated adverbially, e.g. cōcōdere cōnsuēsse, *usually grant*, I. 14, 5, etc.

cōnsuētūdō, inis, f. [cōnsuēscō], *custom, habit*; *mode of life.*

cōnsul, cōnsulīa, m. [cf. cōnsulō],

consul, one of the two chief executive officers at Rome, elected yearly. cōnsulātus, ūs, m. [cōnsul], *consulship, consulate.*

cōn-sulō, sulere, suluī, sultum, *consult, deliberate*; w. dat., *look out (for), consult the interests (of).*

cōn-sultō, 1st conj. [intensive of cōnsulō], *deliberate repeatedly or with unusual gravity.*

cōnsultō, adv. [perf. part. of cōn-sulō, in impers. abl. abs.], (it having been deliberated upon), *deliberately, by agreement, purposely.*

cōnsultum, ī, n. [perf. part. of cōnsulō, used as subst.], (a thing deliberated upon), *decree.*

cōn-sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūptum, (take together), *use up, consume, spend.*

cōn-surgō, surgere, surrēxi, surrēctum, *rise together*; cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō, *the council rises, is adjourned.*

cōn-tabulō, 1st conj. [tabula, *board*], *build of boards, erect*, V. 40, 6; mūrūm turribus contabulāre, *strengthen the wall with towers made of boards*, VII. 22, 3.

cōn-tāgiō, ōnis, f. [tangō, *touch*], *contact, association.*

cōn-tāminō, 1st conj. [for tāgminō, from tag, stem of tangō], (touch with bad effect, cf. Eng. contagion), *defile, pollute, contaminate.*

cōn-tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctum, *cover up, cover.*

cōn-temnō, temnere, tempai, tempum, *despise*; sic contemnere, *hold in such contempt*, V. 51, 4.

contemptiō, ōnis, f. [contemnō], *contempt.*

contemptus, ūs, m. [**contemnō**], *contempt*; **contemptui esse**, *be an object of contempt, be held in contempt*.

con-tendō, **tendere**, **tendi**, **tentum**, (strain hard), *hasten*; *struggle, strive, strive for*; w. acc. and infin., *insist*.

contentiō, ōnis, f. [**contendō**], (effort), *struggle, contest*.

contentus, a, um, part. of **contineō** (VII. 64, 2) or of **contendō**.

con-texō, **texere**, **texui**, **textum**, (weave together), *plait*, VI. 16, 4; *join*, IV. 17, 8; *bind together*, VII. 23, 4.

continenter, adv. [**continēns**, part. of **contineō**], *continuously, without interruption*.

continentia, ae, f. [**continēns**, part. of **contineō**, w. sē understood], *self-control*.

con-tineō, **tinēre**, **tinui**, **tentum** [**teneō**], *hold together*, VII. 23, 3; *contain*, V. 24, 7; *occupy*, I. 38, 5; pass., *consist*, VII. 2, 2; *surround, bound*; *restrain*; *keep, keep hold of*. Pres. part. as adj., *incessant, continuous, unbroken*; as subst., sc. **terra**, *continent, mainland*.

con-tingō, **tingere**, **tigī**, **tactum** [**tangō**], *touch, extend to*; impers., *happen, fall to the lot (of)*, I. 43, 4.

continuātiō, ōnis, f. [verb **continuo**, *continue*, from **continuus**], *succession, continuation*.

continuo, adv. [abl. of **continuus**, sc. **tempore**], *immediately, at once*.

continuus, a, um [**contineō**], *continuous, successive, in succession*.

cōntiō, ōnis, f. [for **conventiō**,

from **conveniō**, *come together*], *general meeting, assembly*; *speech at such an assembly, harangue*, VII. 53, 1.

contrā, (1) adv., *opposite, against* one; **contrā atque**, *contrary to what, otherwise than*, IV. 13, 5. (2) prep. w. acc., *over against, opposite*; *against*.

con-trahō, **trahere**, **trāxi**, **trāctum**, (draw together), *contract, reduce* (a camp); *concentrate* (an army or fleet).

contrārius, a, um [**contrā**], *opposite, facing*; **ex contrāriō**, *on the contrary*.

contrōversia, ae, f. [**contrōversus**, *opposite*, from **contrō** (like **contrā**) and **vertō**, *turn*], *controversy, dispute, quarrel*.

contumēlia, ae, f., *disgrace, insult*; *buffeting, violence*, III. 13, 3.

con-valēscō, **valēscere**, **valui**, — [inceptive (inchoative) of **convaleō**, from **valeō**, *be strong*], (begin to be strong), *get well, regain health*.

con-vallia, is, f. [**vallia**, *valley*], *valley enclosed on all sides; ravine, defile*.

con-vehō, **vehere**, **vexi**, **vectum**, *draw together, gather, collect*.

con-veniō, **venire**, **vēni**, **ventum**, *come together, assemble*; of individuals, *come; meet*, I. 27, 2; *be agreed upon*, I. 36, 5, II. 19, 6; impers., *be fitting, be necessary*, VII. 85, 2.

conventus, ūs, m. [**conveniō**], *meeting, assembly*, I. 18, 2, V. 48, 9; *court*.

conversus, a, um, part. of **convertō**.

con-vertō, **vertere**, **verti**, **versum**, *turn around* (trans.); pass. or w.

reflex., *turn* (intrans.); *change*, I. 41, 1; *conversa signa inferre*, (bear on the turned standards), *change front and advance*.

Convictolitavis, *is*, acc. *im*, a prominent Aeduan, VII. 32, 4, ff. **convictus**, *a*, *um*, part. of **convincō**.

con-vincō, *vincere*, *vici*, *victum*, (conquer completely), *prove clearly*; **avaritiam convictam**, *be convicted of avarice*, I. 40, 12.

con-voō, 1st conj., *call together*, *summon*, *call out* (of troops).

co-orior, *oriri*, *ortus sum*, *arise*, *rise*, *spring up*, *break out*, often used metaphorically.

cōpia, *ae*, *f*. [for *co-opia*, from *ops*, *help*], *plenty*, *supply*, *abundance*; plu. *forces*, *troops*; *wealth*, *supplies*, I. 31, 5, II. 10, 4, IV. 4, 7, VI. 15, 2.

cōpiōsus, *a*, *um* [cōpia], (full of supplies), *wealthy*, *prosperous*.

cōpula, *ae*, *f*. [for *co-apula*, from stem of *apiscor*, *reach*, cf. *aptus*], (anything that joins two objects), *grappling iron*, III. 13, 8.

cor-, form of *cum* (*com*) in comp. before *r*.

cor, *cordis*, *n*., *heart*; **cordi esse**, *be dear*.

cōram, *adv*. [con; *ōs*, *face*], (face to face), *in person*; **cōram cernere**, *perspicere*, *see with one's own eyes*.

Coriosolitēs, *um*, *m*. plu., acc. *as*, a tribe on the northwest coast of Gaul, II. 34.

corium, *i*, *n*., *hide*, *skin*.

cornū, *ūs*, *n*., *horn*; *wing* of an army.

corōna, *ae*, *f*. [κορὼν], (wreath), *crown*; *circle*, *unbroken line*, *cor-*

don, VII. 72, 2; **sub corōnā vēndere**, *sell into slavery*, because prisoners of war exposed for sale were crowned like sacrificial victims.

corpus, *corporis*, *n*., *body*, *person*; *dead body*, *corpse*.

cor-rumpō, *rumpere*, *rūpi*, *ruptum*, (break up), *destroy*, *ruin*.

cortex, *corticis*, *m*. and *f*., *bark* of trees.

cotidiānus, *a*, *um* [cotidiē], *daily*; *regular*, *usual*, I. 19, 3.

cotidiē, *adv*. [quot, *each*; *diē*, abl. of *diēs*], *daily*.

Cotta, *ae*, *m*., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a *legatus* of Caesar, first mentioned II. 11, 3; killed in the disaster at Aduatu, V. 24-37.

Cotuatius, *i*, *m*., a leader of the Carnutes, VII. 3, 1.

Cotus, *i*, *m*., an Aeduan of high rank, VII. 32, 4 ff.

crassitūdō, *inis*, *f*. [crassus], *thick*, *thickness*.

Crassus, *i*, *m*., (1) *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, who with Caesar and Pompey formed the first triumvirate; killed by the Parthians B.C. 53: I. 21, 4, IV. 1, 1. (2) *Publius Licinius Crassus* (often called *adulescēns*, junior), younger son of above, *legatus* of Caesar, I. 52, 7, etc. (3) *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, elder son, *quaestor* in Caesar's army, V. 46, 1, etc.

crātēs, *is*, *f*., sing. rare, *wicker-work*; *fascine*.

crēber, *crēbra*, *crēbrum*, compar. *crēbrior*, super. *crēberrimus*, *frequent*, *numerous*, *thick*.

crēbrō, *adv*. [abl. of *crēber*], *frequently*, *at short intervals*.

crē-dō, dere, didi, ditum [old stem meaning *faith*, and **dō, dare**], (give credit), *trust, intrust*, VI. 31, 3; *believe*.

cremō, 1st conj., burn (of persons); **igni cremāre**, (burn with fire), *burn to death, burn at the stake*.

creō, 1st conj., (produce), elect, choose.

crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētum, (grow); *become powerful*, I. 20, 2; *become swollen, rise*, VII. 55, 10.

Crēs, Crētis, m., acc. plu. as, a Cretan.

Ortognātus, l, m., an Arvernian of high rank, VII. 77, 2, 78, 1.

cruciātus, ūs, m. [cruciō, torture, from crux, cross], torture.

crūdēlītās, tātis, f. [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelly, barbarity.

crūdēlītēr, adv. [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelly, with cruelty.

crūs, crūris, m., leg (strictly, below the knee).

oubīle, is, n. [oubō, lie down], resting place, bed.

culmen, minia, n., summit, top.

culpa, ae, f., fault; blame, IV. 27, 4.

cultūra, ae, f. [colō, cultivate], cultivation. agri cultūra, agri-culture.

cultus, ūs, m. [colō, cultivate], manner, habit of life, VI. 24, 4; *civilization*.

cum, prep. w. abl., with, in the sense of *in company* or *association with*; used with abl. of accompaniment (attendance) and manner; see grammatical appendix. Enclitic with the personal pronouns, and often with **quis** and **qui**.

In comp. its regular form is **com-**,

which appears as **co-** before vowels and **h, col-** or **con-** before **l**, **cor-** or **oon-** before **r**, and **con-** before other consonants. It has the force of *with* or *together*, or in very many cases is simply intensive, like Eng. "burn up," "burn down," "join together," etc.

cum, subord. conj., when (w. indic., or, in imperf. and pluperf., either indic. or subjunct.); *since* (w. subjunct.); *although* (w. subjunct.); often with a combination of these meanings. **cum—tum**, (while—especially), *not only—but also, both—and*, II. 4, 7, III. 16, 2, etc. **cum primum**, (when first), *as soon as*, III. 9, 2, 11, 5, etc.

cunotātīō, ōnis, f. [cunctor], delay, hesitation.

cunctor, 1st conj., delay, hesitate.

cūnotus, a, um [for oon-iūctus, from coniungō, join], sing., entire, all together; plu. all.

cuneātim, adv. [cuneātus, part. of cuneō, wedge, from cuneus], in wedge-shaped formation.

cuneus, l, m., wedge; a wedge-shaped formation, or column of troops, VI. 40, 2.

cunīculus, l, m. [Spanish], rabbit; hence, underground passage, mine. (agō, open, III. 21, 3.)

cupidē, adv. [cupīdus], eagerly, earnestly.

cupidītās, tātis, f. [cupīdus], desire, eagerness.

cupīdus, a, um [cupīō], desirous, eager (for), fond, w. gen.

cupīō, cupere, cupīvi or cupīi, cupītum, desire, be eager (for); be zealous, wish well, I. 18, 8; w. dat.

cūr, adv. [old form **quōr** = **quol rei**, for *what reason*], *why, wherefore*, interrog. and rel.

cūra, ae, f. [cf. **caveō**, *be on one's guard*], *care, concern*. **mihi ea res est cūrae**, (this thing is for a care to me), *I am attending to this*; cf. I. 33, 1, I. 40, 11.

cūrō, 1st conj. [**cūra**], *take care*; w. gerundive, *cause* (something to be done), *have* (something done); e.g. **pontem faciendum cūrāre**, *cause a bridge to be built, have a bridge built*, I. 13, 1; so I. 19, 1, III. 11, 4, etc.

currus, ūs, m. [**currō**, *run*], *chariot, car*.

curvus, ūs, m. [**currō**, *run*], *running; speed*; of ships, *course*.

cūstōdia, ae, f. [**cūstōs**], (a guarding), *guard, watch, sentinel*.

cūstōdiō, **cūstōdire**, **cūstōdivi** or **cūstōdii**, **cūstōditum** [**cūstōs**], *guard*.

cūstōs, **cūstōdis**, c., *guard, watch, sentinel, picket, observer*.

D

D, as numeral = 500.

D, abbreviation for *Decimus*, a Roman *praenomen*.

d., abbreviation for *diem*, in *ante diem*.

Daci, ōrum, m. plu., *the Dacians*, a people of Thrace, north of the Carpathian mountains, VI. 25, 2.

damnō, 1st conj. [**damnum**], *find guilty, condemn*. Masc. of perf. part. as subst., (one condemned), *convict, criminal*.

damnum, I, n., (harm), *loss*.

Dānuvius, I, m., *the Danube*, VI. 25, 2.

dē, prep. w. abl., (down) *from*; *concerning, on account of*; in expressions of place from which and separation, *down from, from, out of*; instead of partitive gen. and abl. of material, *of*; w. **causā**, **causis**, *on account of, for*; **dē cōnsiliō**, *by or upon the advice*, VII. 5, 3; of other relations, *concerning, about, for*. **dē tertiā vigiliā**, *during the third watch*, I. 12, 2; **dē imprōvisō**, *unexpectedly, suddenly*.

In comp. the forces are the same, but sometimes, from the meaning of the word with which it is joined, it becomes either intensive or negative. **dēbeō**, **dēbere**, **dēbul**, **dēbitum** [for **de-hibeō**, from **habeō**], (have off from one's possessions), *owe*, VI. 33, 4; *ought* (originally the past of *owe*); **sūspiciārī dēbere**, *cannot help suspecting, have good reason to suspect*, I. 44, 10, cf. V. 27, 2.

dē-cēdō, **cēdere**, **cēssi**, **cēssum**, (go down from), *withdraw*; sc. **vītā**, (depart from life), *die*, VI. 19, 3.

decem, abbreviation **X**, indeclin. card. adj., *ten*.

dēceptus, a, um, part. of **decipiō**.

dē-cernō, **cernere**, **crēvi**, **crētum**, (separate, distinguish from), *decide*; *decide upon, decree*.

dē-certō, 1st conj., *fight a decisive battle*, "*fight it out*."

dēcēssus, ūs, m. [**dēcēdō**], *departure, withdrawal*; w. **aestūs**, *ebb*, III. 13, 1.

Decētia, ae, f., a town of the Aedui, VII. 33, 2.

dē-cidō, cidere, cidi, — [cadō],
fall (from).

decimus, a, um [decem], ord. adj.,
tenth, quisquo decimus, (each
tenth man), one in ten, V. 52, 2.

Decimus, I, m. a Roman *praenomen*.

dē-cipio, cipere, cēpi, ceptum
[capio], (take down from one's
security), *deceive.*

dē-clārō, 1st conj. [clārus, clear],
(set down clearly), *declare.*

dē-clivis, e [clivus, slope], *sloping*
(downward).

dēclivitās, tātis, f. [dēclivis], *down-*
ward slope, declivity. ad dēclivi-
tātem, downward.

dēcorētum, I, n. [neut. of perf. part.
of *dēcernō*], (a thing decreed), *de-*
cree, decision, command, order.
(*stāre, abide.*)

decumānus, a, um [decimus, tenth],
of a tenth; dec. porta, the rear
gate of a camp, near which the tenth
cohort of a single legion would be
stationed.

decuriō, ōnis, m. [decem, ten], *de-*
curion, a cavalry officer in charge
of a small squad (originally ten
men).

dē-currō, currere, cucurri or curri,
cursum, run down, hasten.

dē-decus, decoris, m. [decus,
honor, from decet, it becomes],
disgrace, dishonor.

dēditicius, a, um [dēditus, part. of
dēdō], having surrendered. Masc.
as subst., (one who has surrendered),
captive, prisoner.

dēditō, ōnis, f. [dēdō], *surrender.*
in dēditōne accipere, recipere,
accept the surrender of anyone; in
dēditōnem venire, surrender.

dēditus, a, um, part. of dēdō.

dē-dō, dere, didi, ditum [dō, dare],
give up, hand over, surrender,
trans.; w. reflex., give up, surren-
der, intrans.; devote, III. 22, 2,
VI. 16, 1.

dē-dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum,
lead down; lead away, lead off,
withdraw; of ships, launch; when
used figuratively, bring; (lead
home), marry, V. 14, 5; lead
astray, VII. 37, 6.

dēfatigātiō, ōnis, f. [dēfatigō],
weariness, fatigue.

dē-fatigō, 1st conj., *tire out, ex-*
haust, fatigue.

dēfectiō, ōnis, f. [dēficiō, fail],
(a failing), *revolt, defection.*

dē-fendō, fendere, fendi, fensum,
(strike down), *ward off, repel, I. 44,*
6, II. 29, 5, VI. 23, 4; defend,
protect.

dēfēnsiō, ōnis, f. [dēfendō], *defence,*
protection.

dēfēnsor, ōris, m. [dēfendō], (de-
fender), *protection, IV. 17, 10;*
speciēs dēfēnsōrum praebere,
make a show of defence, VI. 38, 5.

dē-ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, (bring
down to a destination), *carry;*
report a matter; pass., of ships,
drift, come to land; of troops,
wander, come; give, bestow (upon),
II. 4, 7, V. 6, 2, VI. 2, 1, VII.
4, 7.

dēfessus, a, um, part. of dēfeticor.

dē-feticor, fetisci, fessus sum
[fatiscō (or), *gape, faint*], *become ex-*
hausted. Perf. part. as adj., worn
out, exhausted.

dē-ficiō, ficere, feci, fectum [faciō],
(make down from anything), *trans.,*

fail; intrans., *fail, give out; revolt*, II. 14, 3, III. 17, 2, VII. 10, 1; *dēficere* ab, *forsake, desert*, V. 3, 3, VII. 39, 3; *animō* (abl. of spec.) *dēficere*, *lose heart, be down-hearted*, VII. 30, 1.

dē-figō, figere, fixi, fixum, *fix or plant firmly; drive down*.

dē-finiō, finire, finivi, finitum [*finis, limit*], *define, fix*.

dē-fore, fut. infin. of *dēsum*, = *dēfutūrus esse*.

dē-fōrmis, e [*fōrma*], *ill-formed; misshapen, scrawny*, IV. 2, 2; *unsightly*, VII. 23, 5.

dē-fugiō, fugere, fugi, —, *flee from, avoid, shun*.

dē-iciō (pronounced as if spelled *dējiciō*), *icere, icoli, ictum* [*iaciō*], *throw down; overthrow, destroy*, IV. 17, 10; *drive from a position; fig., w. abl. of separation, (throw down from), disappoint (in)*, I. 8, 4, V. 48, 1, VII. 63, 8; *in inferiōrem locum dēiectus*, *slipping in a hollow*, V. 44, 12.

dēiectus, a, um, part. of *dēiciō*.

dē-iectus, ūs, m. [*dēiciō*], (a throwing down); *slope*.

deinceps, adv. [cf. *deinde, capiō*], (taking next), *one after the other, in succession*.

de-inde, adv. [*inde, thence, then*], *thereupon, then; in the next place, secondly, further, next*.

dēlātus, a, um, part. of *dēferō*.

dē-lectō, 1st conj. [intensive of *dē-liciō*, *entice from one's way*], *delight; pass., w. abl. of cause, be delighted (with), take pleasure (in)*, IV. 2, 2.

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvi, dēlētum,

destroy; wipe out, blot out, II. 27, 2.

dē-liberō, 1st conj. [cf. *libra, balance*], (weigh mentally); *consider, deliberate*.

dē-librō, 1st conj. [*liber, bark*], *strip the bark from, peel*.

dēlictum, i, n. [neut. of perf. part of *dēlinquō*, *leave undone, do wrong*], (a thing left undone or wrongly done), *offence, fault*.

dē-ligō, 1st conj., (bind down), *tie; ad ancorās dēligātae*, (*lying*) *at anchor*.

dē-ligō, ligere, lēgi, lēctum [*legō*], *pick out, choose, select*.

dē-litēscō, litēscere, litui, — [*latēscō*, inceptive (inchoative) of *lateō, lie hidden*], *hide away, conceal one's self*.

dēmentia, ae, f. [*dēmēna, foolish, from dē, mēna*], *foolishness, folly*.

dēmessus, a, um, part. of *dēmetō*.

dē-metō, metere, messui, messum, *mow down, reap, cut*.

dē-migrō, 1st conj., *move away, move one's goods, move*.

dē-minuō, minuere, minui, minūtum [*minus, less*], *lessen, take away from, diminish; quicquam dē voluptāte dēminuere*, *diminish one's delight at all*, I. 53, 6; cf. VII. 33, 2, 43, 4.

dē-mittō, mittere, misi, missum, *let down*, VII. 47, 6; *put down, plant*, VII. 73, 3, 6; *w. reflex., get into; sē animō dēmittere*, *be disheartened*, VII. 29, 1; *capite dēmīssō*, *with bowed head*, I. 32, 2; *locā dēmīssa*, *depressed regions, lowlands*.

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsi, dēemptum [*dē, emō*], *take down*.

dē-mōnstrō, 1st conj., *point out, mention, show; explain*, V. 1, 2, 38, 2.

dē-moror, 1st. conj., *delay* (from anything), *retard*.

dē-mptus, a, um, part. of **dēmō**.

dēmum, adv., *at length*.

dē-negō, 1st conj., (utterly deny), *absolutely refuse*.

dēnī, ae, a, distrib. adj. [**decem**], (ten by ten), *ten each*, I. 43, 3; *ten together*, V. 14, 3.

dēnique, adv., *finally; at least*, II. 33, 2.

dēnsus, a, um, *dense, thick; crowded*.

dē-nūntiō, 1st conj. [**nūntius**, *message, messenger*], *announce openly, declare plainly, threaten; order*, VI. 10, 1.

dē-pellō, *pellere, puli, pulsum*, *drive away, drive off; avert*, VI. 17, 2.

dē-perdō, *perdere, perdidī, perditum* [**per-dō**, *destroy*], *lose; forfeit*, V. 54, 5.

dē-pereō, *perire, (perivī) peritū, peritum* [**per-eō**, *perish*], *perish; be lost*.

dē-pōnō, *pōnere, posui, positum*, (put down), *lay down, lay aside; memoriam dēpōnere, forget; place for safety*, IV. 19, 2, VII. 63, 3; *leave*, II. 29, 4, VI. 41, 1.

dē-populor, 1st conj. [*not* connected w. **populus**], *ravage, lay waste*.

dē-portō, 1st. conj., *carry off*.

dē-pōscō, *pōscere, popōsci*, —, (ask for earnestly); *demand, call for urgently*.

dēprecātor, ōris, m. [**dēprecor**], *advocate, intercessor, mediator*.

dē-precor, 1st conj. [**prex**, *precis, prayer, entreaty*], (pray to have averted), *pray to be delivered from, ask pardon*, VI. 4, 2; *ask quarter of*, IV. 7, 3.

dē-prehendō, *prehendere, prehendi, prehensum*, *seize; surprise*.

dē-prehēnsus, a, um, part. of **dēprehendō**.

dē-pūgnō, 1st conj. [**pūgna**, *fight*], *fight decisively, fight it out*.

dēpulsus, a, um, part. of **dēpellō**.

dērēctō, adv. [**dērēctus**, perf. part. of **dērigō**, *lay straight*], *in a straight line; dērēctō ad perpendiculam, exactly vertically, perpendicularly*.

dērēctus, a, um, part. of **dērigō**.

dē-rigō, *rigere, rēxi, rēctum* [**regō**], *lay straight; arrange*, VII. 27, 1; *form*, VI. 8, 5. Perf. part. as adj., *straight; perpendicular*, VII. 72, 1. (*magis, more nearly*, VI. 26, 1.)

dē-rivō, 1st. conj. [**rivus**, *brook*], of water, *draw down, divert*.

dē-rogo, 1st conj. [**rogō**, in legal signification, *propose a law*], (repeal part of a law or restrict a bill), *withdraw, diminish*.

dē-scendō, *scendere, scendi, scēsum* [**scandō**], (climb down), *descend, come down*, VII. 63, 2; *resort to*.

dē-secō, *secāre, secui, sectum*, *cut off*.

dē-serō, *serere, serui, sertum*, (disjoin), *abandon, desert*. Perf. part. as adj., *deserted, solitary*, V. 53, 4.

dēsertor, ōris, m. [**dēsērō**], *deserter, coward*.

dēsertus, a, um, part. of **dēsērō**.

dē-sīderō, 1st conj. [cf. **oñ-sīderō**],
desire, want; hence, *miss, lose*.

dēsīdia, ae, f. [**dēsea**, *idle*, from **dē**
and **sīdēō**, *sit*], *idleness, laziness*.

dē-sīgnō, 1st conj. [**signum**, *mark*],
(mark down), *designate, mean*.

dē-siliō, **siliire**, **silui**, **sultum** [**saliō**],
jump down, leap down; *dismount*.

dē-sistō, **sistere**, **stīti**, —, (stop
from doing something), *stop*, VII. 4,
3; w. infin., *stop* (doing something),
cease (to do something); w. abl.,
desist (from), *give up, cease*.

dēspectus, a, um, part. of **dēspiciō**.

dēspectus, ūs, m. [**dēspiciō**, *look
down upon*], *view from a higher
position*; *in mare, of the sea*, III.
14, 9.

dēspērātiō, **ōnis**, f. [**dēspērō**],
despair, desperation, hopelessness.

dē-spērō, 1st conj. [**spēs**, *hope*],
intrans., *give up hope, despair* (**dē**,
or abl. of cause, *of*); trans., *despair
of*; so in abl. abs., e.g. **salūte
dēspērātā**, *despairing of safety*, etc.
Perf. part. as adj., *desperate*, VII.
3, 1.

dē-spiciō, **spicere**, **spexi**, **spectum**,
look down upon, despise.

dē-spoliō, 1st conj. [**spolia**, *spoils*],
despoil, deprive.

dēstinō, 1st conj., *attach, hold*; *de-
tail*, VII. 72, 2.

dē-stituō, **stituere**, **stitui**, **stitūtum**
[**statuō**], (set apart from one's self),
abandon, desert, leave in the lurch.

dēstrictus, a, um, part. of **dēstringō**.

dē-stringō, **stringere**, **strinxi**,
strictum, *draw from, draw*.

dē-sum, **de-esse**, **dē-fui**, (**dē-futū-
rus**), (be away from), *be lacking, be
wanting*.

dē-super, adv., *from above*.

dēterior, us, compar. adj., super.
dēterrīmus, a, um [**dē**], *lower,
poorer*; **vectigālia dēteriōra fa-
cere**, *make the revenues lower,
lessen the revenues*, I. 36, 4.

dē-terreō, **terrēre**, **terrui**, **terri-
tum**, (frighten from), *deter, prevent;
repress*, V. 7, 1.

dē-tēstor, 1st conj. [**tēstis**, *witness*],
(call the gods to witness down upon,
against one), *curse*.

dē-tineō, **tinēre**, **tinui**, **tentum**
[**teneō**], (hold from), *hold back, de-
tain*.

dētrāctus, a, um, part. of **dētrahō**.

dē-trahō, **trahere**, **trāxi**, **trāctum**,
(draw from), *withdraw, remove,
take*. (**dē**, or dat. of separation,
from.)

dē-trectō, 1st conj. [for **dē-trāctō**,
intensive of **dētrahō**], *withdraw
from constantly, avoid*.

dētrimentōsus, a, um [**dētrimen-
tum**], *detrimental, dangerous, bad
policy*.

dētrimentum, i, n. [**dē-terō**, *rub
off, wear away, lose*], *loss, injury,
defeat; disadvantage, source of in-
jury*, I. 44, 5.

dētuli, perf. of **dēferō**.

dē-turbō, 1st conj. [**turba**, *crowd*],
(crowd off), *drive off, dislodge*.

dē-ūro, **ūrere**, **ūssi**, **ūstum**, *burn
down*.

deus, i, voc. **deus**; plu., nom. voc.
dei, **dīi**, **dī**, gen. **deōrum**, **deum**,
dat. abl. **deis**, **dīis**, **dīs**, acc. **deōs**,
m., *god*.

dē-vehō, **vehere**, **vexi**, **vectum**,
*convey to a destination, transport;
bring (equus, on horseback)*, I. 43, 2.

dē-veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, come (down); w. **ad**, come to, reach.

dēvēxus, a, um [dēvehō], sloping; neut. plu. as subst., sc. **loca**, (sloping places), *slopes*.

dē-vincō, vincere, vici, victum, conquer thoroughly; *subdue*, completely.

dē-vocō, 1st conj. [vōx, vōcis, voice], (call down), *bring*.

dēvōtus, a, um, part. of **dēvoveō**.

dē-voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtum, vow; *devote*, III. 22, 3; *consecrate* VI. 17, 3. Masc. of perf. part. as subst., (one who has devoted himself to another), *devoted follower*.

dexter, dextera, dexterum, or in Bel. Gal. always **dexter, dextra, dextrum**, compar. **dexterior**, super. **dextimus**, *right*, opp. of left. Fem. as subst., sc. **manus**, *right hand*.

Diāblintēs, um, m. plu., a division of the Auleri, in western Gaul, near, but not on, the coast, III. 9, 10.

dictiō, ōnis, f., no plu. in use [cf. **dicō**], *sway, control* (cf. Eng. "say").

dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum, say, state, mention; *speak*; w. **diem**, appoint; w. **iūs**, administer, VI. 23, 5; **causam dicere**, *plead one's case*, I. 4, 1, 2.

dicō, 1st conj. [secondary form of above], (dedicate), *devote*; w. reflex., attach, VI. 12, 7; **in servitūtem sē dicāre**, *surrender*, VI. 13, 2. Neut. of perf. part. as subst., *word, order*.

dictiō, ōnis, f. [**dicō**], *speaking*; **causae dictiō**, *pleading a case*.

dictum, i, n. [neut. of perf. part. of

dicō, used as subst.], (thing said), *word, order*.

dī-, form of **dis-**, in comp. before some consonants.

dī-dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, (lead apart), *divide, distribute*.

diēs, diēi, m., but sometimes fem. in sing., when referring to a definite date, *day; time*, I. 7, 6; **in diēs**, *day by day, daily*; **ad diem**, *on (a certain) day, promptly*, cf. Eng. "on time"; **multō diē**, *late in the day*, and so **multā nocte**; **diem ex diē**, *from day to day*, I. 16, 4.

dif-, form of **dis-** in comp. before **f**. **dif-ferō, ferre, dis-tuli, dt-lātum**, (bear apart), *differ, be different*; *defer, postpone*, VII. 11, 5; *spread*, V. 43, 2.

dif-ficilis, e, compar. **difficilior**, super. **difficillimus** [**facilis, easy**], *difficult, hard*; w. **iter**, *hard to pass over*.

difficultās, tātis, f. [**difficilis**], *difficulty, trouble*.

difficulter, adv., compar. **difficilius**, super. **difficillimē** [**difficilis**], *with difficulty*, compar. *with greater difficulty*.

dif-fidō, fidere, fides sum, *distrust, doubt*, w. dat., or ind. **dis**.

diffusus, a, um, part. of **diffidō**.

dif-fluō, fluere, fluxi, (fluxus), (flow apart), *divide*.

dif-fundō, fundere, fūdi, fūsum, (pour apart), *spread out*; pass. like Eng. intrans. use.

digitus, i, m., *finger*; as sometimes in Eng., *a finger's breadth, finger*, VII. 73, 6; **digitus pollex**, *thumb*, III. 13, 4.

dignitās, tātis, f. [**dignus**], *worth*,

rank, position, reputation; self-respect, VI. 8, 1.

dignus, a, um, *worthy*; w. abl., translated *of*.

dī-lūdīcō, 1st conj. [*iūdex, judge*], *judge between, decide*.

dilōctus, a, um, part. of **diligō**.

dilōctus, ūs, m. [**diligō**], (a choosing), *levy*.

diligenter, adv. [**diligēns**, pres. part. of **diligō**], *carefully, with care*; **parum dil.**, *with too little care, rather carelessly*, III. 18, 6.

diligentia, ae, f. [**diligēns**, pres. part. of **diligō**], *care, accuracy; activity, diligence*.

dī-ligō, **ligere**, **lēxi**, **lēctum** [**legō**], *choose out, love, cherish*.

dīmēnsus, a, um, part. of **dīmētor**.

dī-mētor, **mētiri**, **mēnsus** sum, *measure off, stake off; cut or select (ad, according to), adapt*, IV. 17, 3.

dīmīcātiō, ōnis, f. [**dīmīcō**], *contest, struggle*.

dī-mīcō, 1st conj., (flash apart, of swords), *fight, struggle, contend*.

dī-mīdius, a, um [**medius, middle**], (divided in the middle), *half*; so **dīm. pars**, *half*; neut. as subst., *half*; **dīmīdiō minor**, (smaller by half), *half as large*, V. 13, 2.

dī-mittō, **mittere**, **misi**, **missum**, *send in all directions, send out; send away*; w. **concilium**, *adjourn*; *lose; abandon*.

dir-, form of **dis-** in comp. before a vowel.

dir-īmō, **imere**, **ēmi**, **ēemptum** [**emō**], (take apart), *break up*.

dī-ripiō, **ripere**, **ripui**, **reptum**, (seize and tear apart), *plunder, sack, pillage*.

dis-, inseparable prep., *apart, asunder*; hence sometimes having negative or intensive force, according to signification of word with which it is joined. It becomes **dir-** before vowels, **dif-** before *f*, and **dī-** before most other consonants.

Dis, **Ditis**, m., *Dis*, god of the lower world; *Pluto*.

dis-cōdō, **cōdere**, **cōssi**, **cōssum**, (go apart), *go away, depart*; **dis-cōdere ab**, *leave*; **ab armis dis-cōdere**, *abandon hostilities*, V. 41, 8; **hostibus** (dat. of reference) **spēs discōssit**, *hope left the enemy*, II. 7, 2.

disceptātor, ōris, m. [**disceptō**, *decide*, from **dis**, **capiō**], *arbitrator, judge, umpire*.

dis-cernō, **cernere**, **crēvi**, **crētum**, *separate from one another, distinguish*.

discēssus, ūs, m. [**discōdō**], *departure, withdrawal; desertion*, VII. 54, 2.

disciplina, ae, f. [for **discipulina**, from **discipulus, pupil**, from **disco**], (instruction), *training, discipline; system of doctrine*.

dis-clūdō, **clūdere**, **clūsi**, **clūsum** [**claudō**], (shut apart), *hold apart, separate*.

discō, **discere**, **didici**, —, *learn; be taught*, I. 13, 6.

discrimen, **minis**, n. [**discernō**, *separate*], *crisis, critical point, danger*.

dis-cutiō, **cutere**, **cussi**, **cussum** [**quatiō**], (shake apart), *remove, clear away, of snow*.

dis-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **disiciō**), **icere**, **iēcī**, **iectum** [**iaciō**], (throw in all directions), *break, rout*,

I. 25, 2; *throw into disorder*, III. 20, 4.
dis-pār, gen. *disparis*, adj. [pār], *unequal*, V. 16, 2; *inferior*, VII. 39, 1.
dis-parō, 1st conj., (prepare apart), *separate, divide*.
dis-spergō, *spergere*, *sperai*, *sper-sum* [spargō], *scatter in all directions, disperse*.
dispersus, a, um, part. of *dispergō*.
dis-pōnō, *pōnere*, *posui*, *positum*, (place apart), *place at intervals*; occasionally in V.-VII., *place in position, dispose*.
disputātiō, *ōnis*, f. [disputō], *discussion, dispute*.
dis-putō, 1st conj., (think differently), *discuss, argue*.
dis-sēnsiō, *ōnis*, f. [dissentiō], *disagreement, dissension*.
dis-sentiō, *sentire*, *sēnsi*, *sēnsus*, *think or feel differently, disagree (with), dissent (from)*.
dis-serō, *serere*, *sēvi*, *situm*, (sow broadcast), *plant, put down at intervals*.
dis-simulō, 1st conj. [similis, like], (make unlike), *disguise, conceal*.
dis-sipō, 1st conj., (throw in all directions), *scatter, disperse*.
dis-suādēō, *suādēre*, *suāsi*, *suāsum*, (persuade differently), *dis-suade, advise against, oppose*.
dis-tineō, *tinēre*, *tinui*, *tentum* [teneō], *keep apart, separate; delay, prevent*, VII. 37, 3.
dis-stō, *stāre*, —, —, (stand apart), *be apart, be separated*.
dis-trahō, *trahere*, *trāxi*, *trāctum*, (draw apart), *pry apart*.
dis-tribuō, *tribuere*, *tribui*, *tribū-*

tum, distribute among, to; divide, assign, IV. 22, 3, 4. V. 24, 6.
ditissimus, a, um, super. of *dives*.
diū, *diūtius*, *diūtissimē*, adv., *long, for a long time; quam diū, as long as*, I. 17, 6.
diurnus, a, um [diēs], *during the day, by day*.
diūtinus, a, um [diū], *long, long-continued*.
diūturnitās, *tātis*, f. [diūturnus], *length, long duration*.
diūturnus, a, um [diū], *long, long-continued*.
diversus, a, um part. of *dīvertō*.
dī-vertō, *vertere*, *verti*, *versum*, *turn aside or apart, separate*. Perf. part. as adj., *different; stretching away, remote*, VI. 25, 3; *facing in the opposite direction*, VII. 74, 1.
dives, gen. *divitis*; or *dīs*, gen. *ditis*; compar. *divitior* or *ditior*, super. *divitissimus* or *ditissimus*, *rich*.
Diviciānus, I, m., (1) the most influential of the Aedui during Caesar's campaign in Gaul, I. 3, 5, etc. (2) A chief of the Suesiones, II. 4, 7.
Diviciō, *ōnis*, m., leader of the Helvetii in their campaign against Cassius, B.C. 107, and chief of their embassy to Caesar after the destruction of the Tigurini, I. 13, 2, 14, 7.
dividō, *dividere*, *divisi*, *divisum* [dis, videō], *divide, separate*.
divinus, a, um, *divine; rēs divinae, religious matters, public worship*.
dō, *dare*, *dedi*, *datum*, *give, grant, present; afford, allow*, I. 14, 1, 38, 4, VII. 85, 6; *inter sē dare, ex-*

change; in *fugam dare*, *put to flight*; *operam dare*, *take pains*; *as ventō dare*, *square away before the wind*, III. 13, 9. In comp. *dō* often = *put*.

doceō, *docēre*, *docui*, *doctum*, (teach), *explain*, *show*, *inform*, *point out*.

documentum, *l*, n. [*doceō*], (means of showing), *proof*, *evidence*.

doleō, *dolēre*, *dolui*, —, *suffer*, I. 14, 5; *grieve*, *be pained*.

dolor, *ōris*, m. [*doleō*], *grief*, *pain*, *distress*; *dolōre affici*, (be affected with grief), *be distressed*, I. 2, 4. (*capiō*, *feel*, I. 20, 2.)

dolus, *l*, m. *device*; *cunning*, *deceit*.

domesticus, *a*, um [*domus*, *house*], (of the house), *native*, *domestic*; *local*, II. 10, 4; *w. bellum*, *civil*.

domicilium, *l*, n. [*domus*, *house*], *dwelling-place*, *dwelling*, *residence*, *house*.

dominor, 1st conj. [*dominus*], *be master*, *rule*.

dominus, *l*, m. [*domus*, *house*], *master*, VI. 13, 3; *lord*.

Domitius, *l*, m., *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul 54 B.C., V. 1, 1.

domus, gen. *domūs*, dat. *domui*, acc. *domum*, abl. *domō*, loc. *domi* (*domui*); plu. nom. *domūs*, gen. *domōrum*, dat. abl. *domibus*, acc. *domōs*, *domūs*, f., *house*, *home*; *domō exire*, (go out from home), *emigrate*.

Domnotaurus, *l*, m., a leader of the Helvii, VII. 65, 2.

dōnō, 1st conj. [*dōnum*], *present*.

dōnum, *l*, n. [*dō*], *gift*, *present*.

dorsum, *l*, n. (sometimes *dorsus*, *l*, m.), *back*; *ridge* (of a hill).

dōs, *dōtis*, f. [*dō*], *dowry*, *marriage gift* from the bride's family.

druides, um, m. plu., *druids*, the priests of the Gauls and Britons.

Dūbia, *is*, m., a river of Gaul, tributary to the Arar (Saône), now the *Doubs*, I. 38, 4.

dubitātio, *ōnis*, f. [*dubitō*], *doubt*, *hesitation*.

dubitō, 1st. conj. [*dubius*], *hesitate*; when followed by *quā*, *doubt*, except II. 2, 5; when followed by *dē*, *doubt*, *entertain doubts*, and so I. 41, 3.

dubius, *a*, um [*duo*, *two*], *doubtful*, *uncertain*; *nōn est dubium quā*, (it is not doubtful but that), *there is no doubt (but) that*, I. 3, 7; neut. as subst., *doubt*; in *dubium dēvocāre*, (bring into doubt), *risk*, VI. 7, 6.

ducenti, *ae*, *a*, card. adj. [*duo*, *centum*], *two hundred*.

dūcō, *dūcere*, *dūxi*, *ductum*, *lead*; of carts, *move*, *take*, I. 6, 1; of earthworks, *construct*; *put off*, *delay*, I. 16, 4, 5, VII. 11, 4; *prolong*, I. 38, 4; *consider*, I. 3, 2, IV. 30, 2, etc.; in *mātrimōnium dūcere*, *marry*.

ductus, *ūs*, m. [*dūcō*], *lead*, *leadership*.

dum, subord. conj., *while*, *as long as*; *until*. See Appendix.

Dumnorix, *igis*, m., a turbulent Aeduan, I. 3, 5, etc.; close of his career described, V. 6, 7.

duo, *ae*, *o*, gen. *ōrum*, *ārum*, *ōrum*, dat. and abl. *ōbus*, *ābus*, *ōbus*, acc. *ōs* or *o*, *ās*, *o*, card. adj., *two*.

duo-decim, indeclin. card. adj. [*decem*], *twelve*.

duo-decimus, *a*, um, ord. adj. [*duo-decim*], *twelfth*.

duo-dēni, ae, a, distrib. adj. [**duo-decim**], (twelve by twelve), *twelve each; twelve together*, V. 14, 4.

duo-dē-septuāgintā, indeclin. card. adj., (two down from seventy), *sixty-eight*; for *LXVIII.*, I. 29, 3.

duo-dē-trigintā, indeclin. card. adj., (two down from thirty), *twenty-eight*; for *XXVIII.*, V. 2, 2.

duo-dē-viginti, indeclin. card. adj., (two down from twenty), *eighteen*.

duplex, plicis, adj. [**duo**; **plicō**, *fold*], (two-fold), *double*.

uplicō, 1st conj. [**duplex**], *double*.

dūritia, ae, f. [**dūrus**], (hardness), *hardship*.

dūrō, 1st conj. [**dūrus**], *harden, toughen, make hardy*.

Dūrocortorum, i, n., a town of the Remi, now Reims, VI. 44, 1.

dūrus, a, um, *hard; difficult*; **tempus anni**, *inclement season*, VII. 8, 2.

Dūrus, i, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus*, a tribune of the soldiers, V. 15, 5.

dux, ducis, c. [**dūcō**, *lead*], *leader, commander; guide*, I. 21, 2, II. 7, 1.

E

ē, form of **ex**, before the consonants b, d, g, i consonant, f, l, m, n, r, v, but not in all cases.

eā, adv. [abl. of **is**, sc. **parte** or **viā**], *on that side, there*.

Eburōnēs, um, m. plu., tribe of Belgae, dwelling chiefly between the Rhine and the Meuse, II. 4, 10, etc.

Eburovicōēs, um, m. plu., a division of the Auleri, in the northwestern part of Gaul, south of the Seine near its mouth, III. 17, 3, VII. 75, 3.

ē-discō, *discere, didici*, —, *learn by heart, commit to memory*.

ēditus, a, um, part. of **ēdō**.

ē-dō, *dere, didi*, *ditum* [**dō**, *dare*], (put forth), *inflict, indulge in*, I. 31, 12. Perf. part. as adj., *elevated, rising, high*.

ē-dōceō, *docēre, docui, doctum*, (explain out), *explain, show exactly*.

ē-dūcō, *dūcere, dūxi, ductum*, *lead out*; without obj., *move*, VII. 10, 1; w. *gladium*, *draw*.

ef, form of **ex** in comp. before f.

ef-fēminō, 1st conj. [**fēmina**, *woman*], (make womanish), *weaken, enervate, enfeeble*.

ef-ferciō, *fercire*, —, **fertum** [**far-ciō**], (stuff out), *fill compactly*.

ef-ferō, *ferre, ex-tuli, ē-lātum*, *bear out, carry away, take; disclose, relate, spread abroad; lift up*, lit. VII. 47, 7; fig. *elate* (cf. Eng. "carried away"), V. 47, 4, VII. 47, 3.

ef-ficiō, *ficere, fēci, fectum* [**faciō**], (make out, complete), *effect; cover*, IV. 35, 3; *render*, I. 38, 6, III. 24, 5, V. 33, 5; *produce; construct, complete; furnish*, VII. 4, 8; followed by **ut**, *bring about, effect*, a construction usually to be condensed in translation with the following verb.

ef-fodiō, *fodere, fōdi, fossum*, *dig out, gouge out*.

effossus, a, um, part. of **effodiō**.

ef-fugiō, *fugere, fūgi, fugitum*, *flee from, escape*.

egeō, *egēre, egui*, —, *need, be in want*; w. gen., *lack*, VI. 11, 4; Pres. part. as subst. in plu., *the destitute, the needy*.

egestās, tātis, f. [egeō], *poverty, destitution.*

ego, mei, mihi (mī), mē, mē; nōs, nostrī (objective) or **nostrum** (partitive), **nōbīs, nōs, nōbīs**, pers. pron., first person, *I*, etc.

ego-met, nōs-met, etc., emphatic forms of **ego, nōs**, etc., VII. 38, 7.

ē-gredior, gredi, gressus sum [gradior, *step*], *go out*; w. **ex** or **abl.** alone, *leave*; of ships, *land, disembark.*

ēgregiō, adv. [ēgregius], *excellently, remarkably well.*

ē-gregius, a, um [grex, *flock*], (out of the common), *conspicuous, marked.*

ēgressus, a, um, part. of **ēgredior**.

ēgressus, ūs, m. [ēgredior, *land*], *landing.*

ē-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **ējioiō**), **icere, ieci, lectum**, *throw out, cast, fling*; often w. reflexive, *rush*; *banish, expel*, IV. 7, 3, VII. 4, 4; *drive*, V. 10, 2.

ē-lābor, lābi, lāpsus sum, (slip out), *escape.*

ēlātus, a, um, part. of **ēfferō**.

Elaver, veris, n., a tributary of the Liger (Loire), now the *Allier*, VII. 34, 2, etc.

ēlēctus, a, um, part. of **ēligō**.

elephantus, l, m. [ēlephas], *elephant.*

Eleuteti, ōrum, m., a tribe whose name and location are both doubtful, clients of the Avernī, so probably near them, VII. 75, 2.

ē-liciō, licere, licui, — [laciō], *entice out, entice, draw out.*

ē-ligō, ligere, lēgi, lēctum [legō], *pick out, choose, select.*

Elusātēs, ium, m. plu., a tribe of central Aquitania, III. 27, 1.

ē-migrō, āre, āvi, —, *move out, emigrate.*

ē-mineō, minēre, minui, —, (rise out of), *project.*

ē-minus, adv. [manus, *hand*], *at a distance, from some distance away.* Opposite of **com-minus**.

ē-mittō, mittere, misi, missum, *send out; throw, hurl; drop, cast away*; **manū ēmittere**, *let go of*, I. 25, 4.

ēmō, emere, ēmi, ēemptum, (take); *buy.*

ē-nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum, (be born from), *grow out.*

enim, coōrd. conj., *for*; **neque enim**, implying an ellipsis, *and* (this is true) *for—not*, in which the *and* is best omitted in translation.

ē-nūntiō, 1st conj. [nūntius, *messenger, message*], (tell out), *disclose; reveal.*

eo, ire, ivi or il, itum, go; march; start, V. 31, 3.

eo, adv. [old dat. of **is**], (to that point), *thither; there* (in the inexact Eng. use); often better translated by a prepositional phrase, e.g. *on them*, I. 42, 5.

ēōdem, adv. [old dat. of **idem**], *to the same point or place*; **ēōdem illō** (adv.) **pertinēre**, (hold along to that same place), *be along that same line, be of that same nature*, I. 14, 4; *be for that same end*, IV. 11, 4.

ēhippiātus, a, um [ēhippium], *using saddle-cloths.*

ēhippium, l, n. [ἐπὶ, *upon*, ἵππος, *horse*], (something upon a horse), *saddle-cloth.*

epistula, ae, f. [ἐπιστολή], *letter, despatch.*

Eporēdorix, **igis**, m., (1) the leader of the Aedui in their war with the Sequani before Caesar came to Gaul, VII. 67, 7; (2) a younger Aeduan chief, VII. 38, 2, etc.

epulae, **ārum**, f. plu., *banquet, feast*.

eques, **equitis**, m. [**equus**], *horseman, rider, cavalryman*; plu., *horsemen, cavalry*; as member of a social class, *knight*; at Rome, one of the moneyed class, next to the aristocracy; among the Aedui, one of the class that corresponded to this.

equester, **tris**, **tre** [**eques**], (pertaining to a horseman), *of cavalry, cavalry*.

equitātus, **ūs**, m. [**eques**], *cavalry*.

equus, **ī**, m., *horse*.

Eratothenēs, **is**, m., a well-known Greek writer of the third century B.C., librarian of the great library at Alexandria; he wrote upon geography, mathematics, history, grammar, poetry, and philosophy; VI. 24, 2.

ēreētus, **a**, **um**, part. of **ērigō**.

ēreptus, **a**, **um**, part. of **ēripiō**.

ergā, prep. w. acc., *toward*.

ergō, adv., *therefore, then* (inferential).

ē-rigō, **rigere**, **rēxi**, **rēctum** [**regō**], *raise out of*; w. reflex., *rise*, VI.

27, 2. Perf. part. as adj., *straight, high*; *straight and high*, III. 13, 2.

ē-ripiō, **ripere**, **ripui**, **reptum** [**rapīō**], (snatch out), *take away; save*, w. reflex., (free one's self), *escape*.

errō, 1st conj., *wander*; fig. *be mistaken, err*, V. 41, 5, VII. 29, 3.

ē-rumpō, **rumpere**, **rūpi**, **ruptum**,

break out, burst forth, make a sortie.

ēruptiō, **ōnis**, f. [**ērumpō**], (a breaking out), *sortie, sally; invasion, raid*, VII. 7, 2.

essedārius, **ī**, m. [**essedum**], (one who fights from a chariot), *man in a chariot, chariot-fighter*.

essedum, **ī**, n., *war-chariot of the Britons*.

Esuvii, **ōrum**, m. plu., a tribe in western Gaul, probably divided into cantons, two of which were on the coast, II. 34.

et, coörd. conj., *and*; **et—et**, *both—and*.

etiam, adv. [**et**, **iam**, *already*], *also, even*; **nōn solum—sed etiam**, *not only—but also*. **quā etiam**, *further also, in fact*.

et si, subord. conj., (even if), *although*.

ē-vādō, **vādere**, **vāsi**, **vāsum**, (go out), *escape*.

ē-vellō, **vellere**, **velli**, **vulsum**, *pull out*.

ē-veniō, **venire**, **vēni**, **ventum**, *come out, turn out, result*.

ēventus, **ūs**, m. [**ēveniō**], *outcome, result*; *fate*, IV. 31, 1; *vicissitude*, VI. 42, 1.

ē-vocō, 1st conj. [**vōx**, **vōcis**, *voice*], *call out, summon, invite*; *challenge*, V. 58, 2. Masc. of perf. part. as subst., (one especially summoned or reënlisted), *veteran*, VII. 65, 5, and see III. 20, 2.

ē-volō, 1st conj., *fly out* (fig.), *rush out*.

ex, **ē**, prep. w. abl., *out from, out of*, less exactly, *from*; in partitive expressions, *of*; *in accordance with, as a result of, in consequence of*,

by reason of. In comp., *out, from*, sometimes intensive (cf. Eng. "out and out") or negative from the relation of its meaning to that of the word with which it is joined. It becomes *ex* before *f*, and *ē* before *b*, *d*, *g*, *i* consonant, *l*, *m*, *n*, and *v*.

exāctus, *a, um*, part. of **exigō**.

ex-agitō, 1st conj. [intensive of **agō**], (keep driving out of one place after another), *harass*.

exāminō, 1st conj. [**exāmen**, *tongue of a balance*], *weigh*.

ex-animō, 1st conj. [**animus** or **anima**], when from **animus**, *deprive of life, kill*; perf. part. *dead*; when from **anima**, *deprive of breath, render breathless*; perf. part. *breathless, out of breath*, II. 23, I, III. 19, I.

ex-ārdēscō, **ārdēscere**, **ārsl**, **ārsūm** [**ārdeō**], *begin to blaze out*; fig. *become excited, enraged, be incensed*.

ex-audiō, **audire**, **audīvi** or **audīi**, **auditum**, *hear from a distance, overhear*.

ex-cēdō, **cēdere**, **cēssi**, **cēssum**, *go out of, withdraw; advance from*, V. 35, I.

ex-cellō, **cellere**, **cellui**, **celsum**, (rise out of), *excel, surpass*. Perf. part. as adj., *high; long*, VI. 26, I.

ex-ceptō, 1st conj. [intensive of **ex-cipio**], *take, catch hold of*.

ex-cidō, **cidere**, **cidi**, **cisum** [**caedō**], (cut out), *cut down, break down*.

ex-cipio, **cipere**, **cēpi**, **ceptum** [**capiō**], (take one after another), *relieve; pick up*, III. 5, 3; *receive*, VII. 28, 6; *meet*, I. 52, 4, III.

13, I, IV. 17, 9; *catch*, VI. 28, 4, 35, 6, VII. 20, 9.

ex-citō, 1st conj. [intensive of **ciō**, *cause to move*], *arouse out of anything, excite, stir up*; of fire, *feed*; of towers, *raise, erect*.

ex-clūdō, **clūdere**, **clūsi**, **clūsum** [**claudō**], (shut out), *cut off; prevent*.

ex-cōgitō, 1st conj. [intensive of **cōgō**], *think out, think of*.

ex-cruciō, 1st conj. [**crux**, *cross*], *torture*.

excubitor, **ōris**, *m.* [**excubō**], *sentinel, picket, doing duty at night*.

ex-cubō, **cubāre**, **cubui**, **cubitum**, *lie out of doors, lie under arms*; of a commander, *watch*.

ex-culcō, **culcāre**, **āvī**, —, [**calx**, *calcis, heel*], (tread out), *pack down*.

excursiō, **ōnis**, *f.* [**ex-currō**, *run out*], (a running out), *sortie, sally*.

excūsātiō, **ōnis**, *f.* [**excūsō**], *excuse, apology*.

ex-cūsō, 1st conj. [**causa**], (reason out), *excuse, apologise*.

exemplum, *I, n.*, [**ex-imo**, from **emō**, *take*], (something taken out, a sample); *example, precedent; sort, kind*, I. 31, 12.

ex-eō, **ire**, (**ivī**) **ii**, **itum**, *go out, set out*; **exire dē** or **ex**, *leave*.

ex-erceō, **erēcere**, **eroui**, **ercitum** [**arceō**], (keep out of anything, keep busy), *exercise, train*.

exercitātiō, **ōnis**, *f.* [**exercitō**], *training, practice, exercise*.

exercitō, 1st conj. [intensive of **exerceō**], *train thoroughly*.

exercitus, **ūs**, *m.* [**exerceō**], (a training), *trained, disciplined, or regular army*.

ex-hauriō, haurire, hausī, haustum, (drain out), *remove, take out*.

ex-igō, igere, ēgī, āctum [agō], (drive out), *end, finish*.

exiguē, adv. [exiguus], *barely, hardly*.

exiguitās, tātis, f. [exiguus], (smallness); w. temporis, *shortness, lack*; w. castrorum, *pellium, small size*; w. cōpiarum, *small numbers. (tanta, such.)*

exiguus, a, um [exigō, limit], *limited, small, slender*.

eximius, a, um [eximō, take out], *exceptional, high*.

existimātiō, ōnis, f. [existimō], *opinion, judgment*.

ex-istimō, 1st conj. [aestimō, estimate, judge], *think, consider, suppose*.

exitus, ūs, m. [exeō, go out], (a going out), *exit, escape*, VII. 44, 4; *passage, outlet*, VII. 28, 3; *outcome, result*; *close, conclusion*, IV. 8, 1.

ex-pediō, pedire, pedivī or pedī, pedītum [pēs, pedis, foot], (get one's foot out, disentangle), *get ready, provide*; of troops, *station in readiness for assault*. Perf. part. as adj., *free, easy*; compar. *less occupied*, I. 52, 7; *light-armed, without baggage*; as subst., *unencumbered traveller*, VI. 25, 1.

expeditiō, ōnis, f. [expediō], *raid, rapid march, expedition*.

expeditus, a, um, part. of expediō.

ex-pellō, pellere, pulli, pulsum, *drive out, expel, banish*; *remove*, V. 48, 10.

ex-perior, periri, pertus sum, *try*; *wait for*, III. 3, 4; *fortūnam, experience, endure*.

ex-plō, 1st conj. [pius, dutiful], (fill out one's duty), *atone for, wipe out*.

ex-pleō, plēre, plēvi, plētum, *fill out, fill up, fill*; *make good*, VII. 31, 4; *reach*, VII. 23, 4.

explōrātor, ōris, m. [explōrō], *scout*.

ex-plōrō, 1st conj., (cause to flow out), *find out*; *explore, reconnoitre*. Perf. part. as adj., *assured, certain*; **prō explōrātō habēre**, *consider as certain*, VI. 5, 3.

ex-pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum, *set forth, tell*; *disembark*; *array, draw up*, IV. 23, 2.

ex-portō, 1st conj., *carry away, remove*.

ex-pōscō, pōscere, popōsci, —, *demand earnestly*.

ex-primō, primere, pressi, pressum [premō], (press out), *force from any one, extort*; *erect*.

expūgnātiō, ōnis, f. [expūgnō], *a taking by storm*.

ex-pūgnō, 1st conj. [pūgna, hand to hand fight], (fight and drive out), *take by storm*, or, of ships, *by boarding*; *take, overcome*, VII. 10, 1.

expulsus, a, um, part. of expellō.

ex-quirō, quirere, quisivī or quisī, quisitum [quaerō], *seek out, find out*; *ask, inquire*, III. 3, 1.

ex-sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, (follow up), *assert*.

ex-serō, serere, serui, sertum, (disjoin), *thrust out*. Perf. part. as adj., *uncovered, exposed, bare*.

ex-sistō, sistere, stitī, —, *stand out, project*, VI. 26, 1; *arise, ensue*; *come on, follow*, III. 15, 3.

ex-spectō, 1st conj. [intensive of -spiciō, look], (look out for), *wait*,

wait to see ; wait for, await ; expect, VI. 1, I. 36, 2, VII. 29, 3, 43, 5, 77, I. 85, 3.

ex-spoliō, 1st conj. [*spolia, spoils*], (despoil), *rob, deprive*.

ex-stinguō, *stinguere, stinxī, stinctum*, (punch out), *destroy*.

ex-stō, *stāre*, —, —, *stand out, project*.

ex-struō, *struere, struxī, strūctum*, (pile out), *pile up*, III. 29, I ; *build, erect, construct*.

exsul, *sulia*, c. [cf. *salīō, leap*], *exile*.

exter or **exterus**, a, um, compar. **exterior**, super. **extrēmus** or **extimus**, *outside ; compar. outer, exterior ; super. farthest, most distant, last ; the last part of, the extremity of, the close of, the end of, etc. ad extrēmum, finally*, IV. 4, 2. Masc. plu. as subst., *the last, i.e. those at the rear, the rear*, V. 10, 2.

ex-terreō, *terrere, terrui, territum*, (frighten out of one's wits), *strike with terror, terrify*.

ex-timēscō, *timēscere, timui*, — [inceptive of *timeō*], (begin to) *fear greatly, dread*.

ex-torqueō, *torquere, torxi, tortum*, (twist out), *force from anyone, extort*.

extrā, prep. w. acc. [**ex**], *outside, outside of, beyond*.

ex-trahō, *trahere, traxī, trāctum*, *drag out, consume by delay*.

extrēmus, a, um, super. of **exter** (**exterus**).

ex-trūdō, *trudere, truxī, trūsum*, *thrust out, shut out*.

ex-ūō, *uere, ui, ūtum*, (put out), *strip, deprive* (of).

ex-ūrō, *ūrere, ūssi, ūstum*, (burn out), *burn to the ground*.

F

faber, fabri, m., *workman, artisan*, espec. a carpenter or a blacksmith.

Fabius, I, m., (1) *Quintus Fabius Maximus Allobrogicus*, who defeated the Allobroges, Averni, and Ruteni in B.C. 121, I. 45, 2. (2) *Gaius Fabius*, a *legatus* of Caesar in Gaul, V. 24, 2, etc. (3) *Lucius Fabius*, a centurion, VII. 47, 7 ; 50, 3.

facile, adv., compar. **facilius**, super.

facillimē [**facilis**], *easily, readily*.

facilis, e, compar. **facilior**, super.

facillimus [**faciō**], *easy*.

facinus, **facinoris**, n. [**faciō**], *action, deed*, VI. 20, 2 ; *misdeed, crime*.

faciō, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factum** (pass. **fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum** ; see **fiō**), *do, make ; build, construct, furnish, cause, form ; iter facere, march ; aliquem certiōrem facere*, (make anyone more certain), *inform anyone ; w. vim, use ; w. imperāta, obey ; fidem facere, give assurance*, IV. 11, 3. Neut. of perf. part. as subst., *a thing done*, VII. 80, 5 ; *deed, act ; action*, I. 42, 5.

factiō, **ōnis**, f. [**faciō**], (a taking sides) ; *party, faction*.

factum, I, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **faciō**], *a thing done*, VII. 80, 5 ; *deed, act, action*, I. 42, 5.

facultās, **tātis**, f. [**facilis**, *easy* ; coordinate form of **facilitās**], (ease, facility) ; *opportunity, chance, power ; (opportunity of procuring), supply*, I. 38, 3 ; plu., *resources*.

fāgus, I, f., *beech tree, beech*.

fallō, **fallere**, **fefelli**, **falsum**, *deceive*.

Perf. part. as adj., *false, unfounded*. **falsus**, a, um, part. of **fallō**.

falx, falcis, f. (sickle); *sickle-shaped hook*, for catching hold of anything, sometimes sharpened, as III. 14, 5.

fāma, ae, f. [for, *speak*], (speech); *report, rumor; reputation*, VII. 77, 15.

famēs, is, f. *hunger, famine, starvation*. *famem tolerāre*, (satisfy hunger), *live*, I. 28, 3.

familia, ae, f. [*famulus, servant*], (body of servants), *retinue*, I. 4, 2; *household, family*; **pater familiae**, (father of a family), *head of a household*, VI. 19, 3; **māter familiae**, *matron*.

familiāris, e [*familia*], *belonging to the household*; **rēs familiāris**, *private property*. Masc. as subst., *intimate friend*.

fās, indeclinable noun, only nom. and acc. used [for, *speak*; cf. *fātum*], (what is ordained by divine destiny, opposite of *iūs*, what is right according to men), *right*; freely, as if adj., *permissible, allowable*.

fāstigātō, adv. [*fāstigātus*, part. of *fāstigō*], *obliquely sloping*.

fāstigium, i, n., top, VII. 69, 4; *slope*.

fāstigō, 1st conj. [*fāstigium*], *bring to a point*. Perf. part. as adj., *sloping*.

fātum, i, n. [neut. of perf. part. of *for, speak*, in pass. sense; cf. *fās*], (what is ordained by divine destiny), *fate*.

faveō, favēre, fāvi, fautum, be favorable; w. dat., *favor*.

fax, facis, f. *torch*.

fefelli, perf. of *fallō*.

fēlicitās, tātia, f. [*fēlix, fēlicis*, (fruitful), *lucky*], *good fortune, success*.

fēliciter, adv. [*fēlix, fēlicis*, (fruitful), *lucky*], *fortunately, successfully*.

fēmina, ae, f., woman; the female of animals, VI. 26, 3.

femur, feminis or femoris, n., thigh.

fera, ae, fem. of ferus, a, um.

ferāx, ferācis, adj. [*ferō*], *fertile, productive*.

ferē, adv., almost; about, nearly; generally, usually.

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear, carry, bring; receive; take, endure, as w. *graviter* or *dolōre*, *be annoyed, be grieved*; w. *cāsum, exitum, fortūnam*, *suffer, experience*; w. *opiniō, oñsustūdō*, *be; offer*, IV. 11, 3; *call*, VI. 17, 1; pass., *flow*, IV. 10, 3; pass. as middle voice, *rush*, II. 24, 3; *signa ferre, march, move, advance*.

ferrāmentum, i, n. [*ferrum*], *iron tool*.

ferrārius, a, um [*ferrum*], *relating to iron*. Fem. as subst. (sc. *fodina*, *a digging*), *iron mine*.

ferreus, a, um [*ferrum*], *of iron, iron*.

ferrum, i, n., iron; sword, V. 30, 3. (*nāscitur, is found*, V. 12, 5.)

fertilis, e [*ferō*], *fertile, productive*. **fertilitās, tātia, f.** [*fertilis*], *fertility, productiveness*.

ferus, a, um, wild, fierce, ferocious. Fem. as subst. (sc. *bestia, beast*), (*wild*) *beast*.

ferve-faciō, facere, fēci, factum, (make hot), *heat*. Perf. part. as adj., *red hot*, V. 43, 1; *melted*, VII. 22, 5.

ferveō, fervēre, fēvi, —, or fervō, fervere, ferbul, —, (seethe), be glowing, be red hot.

fībula, ae, f. [cf. **figō**], (clasp), *brace*.
fidēlis, e [fidēs], *faithful, loyal*.

fidēs, ei, f., only nom. and acc. in plu. [cf. **fidō**, *trust*], *confidence, trust*, I. 19, 3, 41, 4, V. 54, 4, VI. 23, 8; *faithfulness, loyalty; pledge*; w. **permittō**, **veniō**, **sequor** (*accept*), **implōrō**, **recipiō**, *sum, protection*; **fidem facere**, *give a pledge*, IV. 11, 3; *make one believe anything*, V. 41, 4; VI. 41, 2; **per fidem**, *treacherously*, I. 46, 3; **fidem interpōnere**, *pledge one's honor*, V. 6, 6, 36, 2.

fidūcia, ae, f. [**fidus**, *faithful*], *trust, reliance, confidence*.

figūra, ae, f. [stem of **figō**], *form, shape*.

filia, ae, f., dat. and abl. plu. **filia-bus**, *daughter*.

filius, i, m., *son*.

figō, **figere**, **fixi**, **factum**, (form, shape), *invent*, VI. 37, 8; *control*, I. 39, 4; **facta respondere**, (answer things made up), *make up answers*, IV. 5, 3.

finiō, **finire**, **finivi** (**fini**), **finitum** [**finis**], *limit, bound; measure*, VI. 26, 1.

finis, is, m., *limit*, II. 19, 5; *end*; plu., (limits), *territory, boundaries*.

finitimus, a, um [**finis**], *neighboring, often, adjoining*. Masc. plu. as subst., *neighbors*.

fiō, **fierī**, **factus sum** [pass. of **faciō**, *make, do*], *be made, be done; happen, become*.

firmiter, adv. [**firmus**], *firmly*.

firmitūdō, **dinis**, f. [**firmus**], *strength, rigidity*.

firmō, 1st conj. [**firmus**], (make firm), *secure, strengthen*.

firmus, a, um, *strong, firm; effective*, VII. 60, 2.

fistūca, ae, f., *rammer*; some kind of *pile-driver*.

Flaccus, i, m., *Caius Valerius Flaccus*, *propraetor of the province of Gaul*, 83 B.C., I. 47, 4.

flāgitō, 1st conj., *demand urgently*.

flamma, ae, f., *fire, flame*.

flectō, **flectere**, **flexi**, **flexum**, *bend, turn, trans.*; w. reflex., *bend, turn, intrans.*

flēns, **flentis**, part. of **fleō**.

fleō, **flēre**, **flēvi**, **flētum**, *weep, cry*; pres. part., (weeping), *with tears*.

flētus, ūs, m. [**fleō**], *weeping, wailing*; **māgnō flētū**, *with many tears*.

flō, 1st conj., *blow*.

flōreō, **flōrēre**, **flōrui**, — [**flōs**], (bloom), *flourish*, IV. 3, 3; pres. part. as adj., *prosperous, in a prosperous condition*, I. 30, 3; *influential*, VII. 32, 4.

flōs, **flōris**, m., *flower*.

flūctus, ūs, m. [**fluō**], (a flowing), *wave; water, sea*, IV. 28, 3.

flūmen, **minis**, n. [**fluō**], (that which flows), *river*.

fluō, **fluere**, **fluxi**, (**fluxus**), *flow*.

fodiō, **fodere**, **fōdi**, **fossus**, *dig*.

foedus, **eris**, n., *treaty, league*.

fore, occasional form for **futūrus**, a, um **esse**, fut. infin. of **sum**.

foris, adv., (out doors), *outside, without*.

fōrma, ae, f., *shape, form; construction, structure*, VII. 23, 1.

fors, abl. **forte** (no plu.), f., *chance, accident*. Abl. often best rendered with force of governing verb in Eng., e.g. **forte statuere**, (to de-

cide by chance), *chance to decide*, II. 31, 4; so III. 12, 3.

forte, abl. of **fors**, as adv.

fortis, **e**, *brave*.

fortiter, adv. [**fortis**], *bravely*.

fortitūdō, **inis**, f. [**fortis**], *bravery*.

fortuitō, adv. [abl. of **fortuitus**, *happening by chance*, from **fors**], *accidentally*.

fortūna, **ae**, f. [**fors**], *fortune, luck, chance*, in general; *good fortune*, I. 40, 12, IV. 26, 5, VI. 37, 10, VII. 54, 4; *property, possessions*, I. 11, 6, V. 43, 4, VI. 35, 8; *interest*, VII. 8, 4.

fortūnātūs, **a**, **um** [**fortūna**], *fortunate, lucky*.

forum, **i**, n., *market-place*.

fossa, **ae**, f. [fem. of perf. part. of **fodiō**, *dig*, sc. **terra**], *trench, ditch, fosse*.

fovea, **ae**, f. *pit, pitfall*.

frangō, **frangere**, **frēgi**, **fractum**, (break), *crush*, I. 31, 7; *wreck, shatter*, IV. 29, 3.

frāter, **tris**, m., *brother*; often figuratively in plu. *brethren*, as term of honor, I. 33, 2, 44, 9, II. 3, 5.

frāternus, **a**; **um** [**frāter**], *of a brother, brotherly*; w. **nōmen**, *of brothers*, I. 36, 5.

fraus, **fraudis**, f., *deception*.

fremitus, **ūs**, m. [**fremō**, *roar*], *noise, din*.

frequēns, **entis**, adj., sing., *repeated*; plu., *in large numbers*.

frētus, **a**, **um**, *relying (on)*, w. abl.

frigidus, **a**, **um** [**frigus**], *cold*.

frīgus, **oris**, n., *cold*; plu., (cold spells), in same sense.

frōns, **frontis**, f., *forehead*, VI. 26, 1; *front*. (**ā**, in, II. 23, 4.)

fructuōsus, **a**, **um** [**fructus**], (fruitful), *fertile, productive*.

fructus, **ūs**, m. [**fruor**], (enjoyment, fruit); *result, fruit; profit, income*, VI. 19, 2.

frūmentārius, **a**, **um** [**frūmentum**], *relating to grain; productive of grain*, I. 10, 2; **rēs frūmentāria**, *supply of grain, supplies*.

frūmentātiō, **ōnis**, f. [**frūmentor**], *procuring grain, foraging*.

frūmentor, 1st conj. [**frūmentum**], *procure or cut grain, forage*.

frūmentum, **i**, n. [**fruor**], *grain*; plu. usually *grain in the fields, standing grain*.

fruor, **frui**, **fructus sum**, *enjoy*, w. abl.

frūstrā, adv., *in vain, ineffectually, without effect*. (**sūmō**, *expend*, III. 14, 1).

frūx, **frūgis**, f., mostly plu., *produce; grain, crops*.

Fūsius, **i**, m., *Gaius Fufius Cita*, a Roman knight, VII. 3, 1.

fuga, **ae**, f. [cf. **fugīō**], *flight*. in **fugam dare**, *put to flight*.

fugīō, **fugere**, **fūgi**, **fugitum** [cf. **fuga**], *flee; avoid*, VII. 30, 1.

fugitivus, **a**, **um** [**fugīō**], *fleeing, fugitive*. Masc. as subst., *deserter*.

fugō, 1st conj. [**fuga**], *put to flight, rout*.

fūmō, 1st conj. [**fūmus**], *smoke, send forth smoke*.

fūmus, **i**, m., *smoke*.

funda, **ae**, f., *sling*.

funditor, **ōris**, m. [**funda**], *slinger*.

fundō, **fundere**, **fūdi**, **fūsum**, *pour*, VII. 24, 4; *scatter, rout*, III. 6, 3.

fūnebris, **e** [**funus**], *relating to a burial or funeral*. Neut. plu. as subst., *burial or funeral rites*.

fungor, fungī, fūnotus sum, discharge, perform; w. abl.

fūnia, is, m., rope, III. 14, 6; *cable*.

fūnus, eris, n., (funeral procession), burial, funeral.

furor, ōris, m. [furō, rage], frenzy, rage, fury, excitement.

fūrtum, i, n. [fūr, thief], theft, stealing.

fūsilis, e [fundō, pour], (melted), fused, red-hot.

futūrus, a, um, part. of sum.

G

Gabali, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of northeastern Gaul near the headwaters of the Allier, clients of the Arverni, VII. 7, 2, etc.

Gabinus, i, m., Aulus Gabinus, consul 58 B.C., I. 6, 4.

gaesum, i, n., a heavy Gallic javelin or spear.

Gāius, i, m., abbreviation O., a Roman praenomen.

Galba, ae, m., (1) Servius Sulpicius Galba, a legatus of Caesar, III. 1-6. (2) "king" of the Suessiones, II. 4, 7, 13, 1.

galea, ae, f., helmet, usually of leather.

Gallia, ae, f. [Gallus], Gaul; (1) in widest sense (not in Caesar), including *Gallia Cisalpina* and *Gallia Transalpina*, the latter applying to an indefinite region embracing modern France, part of Switzerland, and all the territory north of this to the Rhine; (2) in the sense merely of *Gallia Transalpina*, as above, e.g. I. 1, 1; (3) the central division of the latter, described in I. 1, 6.

Gallicus, a, um [Gallus], Gallic.

gallina, ae, f. [gallus, cock], hen.

Gallus, a, um, relating to Gaul, of Gaul, Gallic. Masc. as subst., (1) *a Gaul, one of the Gauls*; (2) *Marcus Trebius Gallus, a Roman officer*, III. 7, 4.

Garumna, ae, m. or f., the Garonne river, in southwestern Gaul.

Garumni, ōrum, m. plu., a people of Aquitania, near the sources of the Garonne, III. 27, 1.

Gatēs, ium, m. plu., a tribe of central Aquitania, III. 27, 1.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gavisus sum, rejoice, be pleased, governing ind. dis.

gavisus, a, um, part. of gaudeō.

Geldumni, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Belgae, clients of the Nervii, V. 39, 1.

Genāva, ae, f., a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva; on Lake Geneva at its outlet into the Rhone, I. 6, 3.

gener, eri, m., son-in-law.

generātim, adv. [genus], by tribes.

gēns, gentis, f. tribe; clan, VI. 22, 2.

genus, generis, n., race; family, IV.

12, 4, VI. 15, 2, VII. 39, 1; *kind; class*, VI. 13, 1, 3, 15, 1; *species*, VI. 25, 5, 28, 1; *method*, IV. 33, 1.

Gergovia, ae, f., the chief city of the Averni, near the river Elaver (Allier), VII. 4, 2, etc.

Germānia, ae, f. [Germānus], Germany, the name applied by the Romans to all the country embraced between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea.

Germānicus, a, um [Germānus], relating to Germany. bellum Germānicum, war with the Germans.

Germānus, a, um, German. Masc. plu. as subst., *the Germans*.

gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, bear, carry on, e.g. w. *bellum*, wage; w. *rem*, conduct, manage (an affair); pass., *be carried on, be going on, happen*.

gladius, i, m., sword.

glāns, glandis, f., (acorn), bullet, slug, ball, of metal, VII. 81, 4, of clay, V. 43, 1.

glēba, ae, f., (clod of earth), lump, mass.

glōria, ae, f., renown, fame, glory (in), reputation (for); w. gen.

glōrior, 1st conj. [glōria], boast (of), w. abl. of cause.

Gnaeus, i, m., abbreviation *Gn.*, a Roman *praenomen*.

Gobannitiō, ōnis, m. an uncle of Vercingetorix, VII. 4, 2.

Gorgobina, ae, f., a city within the Aeduan territory, settled by the Boii after the Helvetian war, VII. 9, 6.

Graecus, a, um, Greek. Masc. as subst., *a Greek*.

Graiocelli, ōrum, m. plu., a Gallic tribe inhabiting the Graian Alps, I. 10, 4.

grandis, e, large, great.

grātia, ae, f. [grātus], favor, goodwill, influence; **grātiām habēre,** be thankful; **grātiām referre,** make return; plu. *thanks, gratitude*; **grātiās agere,** thank; abl. sing. like *causā*, for the purpose, VII. 43, 2.

grātulātiō, ōnis, f. [grātulor], congratulation; joy, satisfaction. **grātulātiō fit,** congratulations are offered.

grātulor, 1st conj. [grātus], congratulate, offer congratulations.

grātus, a, um, acceptable, pleasing, pleasant. Neut. as subst., *a favor*, I. 44, 12.

gravis, e, heavy, IV. 24, 2, V. 8, 4; severe, serious; w. *aetās*, more advanced, III. 16, 2; w. *caerimōnia*, impressive, VII. 2, 2.

gravitās, tātis, f. [gravis], weight, V. 16, 1; importance, IV. 3, 4.

gravitor, adv. [gravis], heavily, III. 14, 4; severely, bitterly; **graviter ferre,** be displeased.

gravō, 1st conj. [gravis], (load); pass. as dep., object, hesitate.

Grudii, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Belgae, clients of the Nervii, V. 39, 1.

gubernātor, ōris, m. [gubernō, steer], pilot, helmsman, steersman.

gustō, 1st conj. [gustus], a tasting, taste.

H

habēō, habēre, habui, habitum, have; hold, consider, regard; keep, I. 44, 10, VI. 19, 2; **cēnsūm habēre,** take a census, make an enumeration, I. 29, 3; **ōrātiōnem habēre,** make a speech, deliver an address, **sē habēre,** (have itself), be, II. 19, 1.

haesitō, 1st conj. [intensive of haereō, cling], (stick), be embarrassed.

hāmus, i, m., hook, such as could be inserted in a small stake.

harpagō, ōnis, f. [ἀρπάγη], hook for demolishing walls, including a long, stout shaft.

Harūdēs, um, m. plu., a German tribe allied to those under Ariovistus, I. 31, 10, etc.

haud, adv., *not, by no means*; usually w. adverbs, though not in Bel. Gal.

Helvēticus, a, um [Helvētius], relating to the Helvetii, Helvetian; w. **proellum**, with the Helvetii.

Helvētius, a, um, of the Helvetii, Helvetian. Masc. plu. as subst., the Helvetii, the inhabitants of part of modern Switzerland, I. 1, 4, etc.

Helvii, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of the Province, on the western bank of the Rhone, VII. 7, 5, etc.

Hercynius, a, um, Hercynian. Fem. sing. as subst., sc. **silva**, the Hercynian forest, in southern Germany, of indefinite extent, VI. 24-28.

hērēditās, tātis, f. [hērēs, heir], inheritance.

Hibernia, ae, f., Ireland, V. 13, 2.

hiernus, a, um [hiems, winter], of winter, winter. Neut. plu. as subst., sc. **castra**, winter quarters.

hic, haec, hōc, dem. pro., this, plu. these; of that which is near in actual time or space, or in a narrative; thus used of anything either preceding or following immediately; often best translated by pers. pro. **hic—ille**, regularly the latter—the former.

hic, adv. [old form heic, loc. of pro. hīc], here, either (lit.) of place or (fig.) of time.

hiemō, 1st conj. [hiems], pass the winter, winter.

hiems (hiemps), hiemis, f., winter; stormy (wintry) weather, IV. 36, 2.

hinc, adv. [old loc. of pro. hīc], hence, from this point.

Hispania, ae, f. [Hispanus], Spain.

Hispanus, a, um, Spanish.

homō, hominis, c., (human being), man, in the generic sense; person; plu., men, fighting men, persons, people; **multitūdō hominum**, population, I. 2, 5, VI. 24, 1.

honestus, a, um [honōs], (regarded with honor), honored, respected; **locus honestus**, illustrious family.

honōrificus, a, um, compar. honōrificentior, super. honōrificentissimus [honōs, faciō], honorable.

honōs or honor, honōris, m., honor, esteem, distinction; honorable position, high office, VII. 57, 3; **honōris causā, as a mark of honor** (to), II. 15, 1.

hōra, ae, f. [ōpa], hour, one of the twelve equal divisions of the day, opposed to the watches (**vigiliae**) of the night; the Roman hour thus varied in length with the season of the year, but the seventh always began at noon.

horreō, horrēre, horruī, —, (bristle), shudder at, tremble at.

horribilis, e [horreō], (terrible), formidable.

horridus, a, um [horreō], (rough, bristling), frightful.

hortor, 1st conj., urge, encourage; address, III. 19, 2.

hospes, pitia, c., (host), guest, I. 53, 6, VI. 23, 9; friend, through ties of hospitality.

hospitium, l, n. [hospes], hospitality, friendship.

hostis, is, m., enemy, of the state; sing. of an individual, an enemy, one of the enemy, I. 26, 2, 44, 11, III. 6, 5, V. 28, 1, 28, 6, 36, 4;

elsewhere, sing. generically, plu. collectively, *the enemy*.
hūo, adv. [old loc. of pro. **hīo**], *hither, to this place*; often less accurately, *here, in this place*; w. **acoōdō**, **addō**, *to this or these*.
hūmānitās, **tātis**, f. [**hūmānus**], (humanity), *refinement*.
hūmānus, **a**, **um** [**homō**, *man*], (human), *civilized*.
humilis, **e**, compar. **humillior**, super. **humillimus** [**humus**, *ground*], *low*, V. 1, 2; *weak, inferior, humble*.
humilitās, **tātis**, f. [**humilis**], *low-ness*, V. 1, 3; *weakness, insignificance*.

I

I, as numeral = 1.
I-, form of **in** or **in-** in comp. before **g**.
iaceō, **iaceōre**, **iacui**, — [intrans. of **iaciō**], (be thrown, lie prostrate), *have fallen, lie dead*. Pres. part. as subst., *one who has fallen, the fallen*, II. 27, 3, VII. 25, 3.
iaciō, **iacere**, **iēcō**, **iactum**, *throw*; w. **ancoorās**, *cast, drop; throw up, construct*, II. 12, 5.
iactō, 1st conj. [intensive of **iaciō**], *cast, toss; discuss*, I. 18, 1; *wrench, jerk back and forth*, I. 25, 4.
iactūra, **ae**, f. [**iaciō**], (a throwing away), *loss; sacrifice, concession*, VI. 12, 2.
iaculum, **i**, n. [**iaciō**], *javelin*.
iam, adv., of present time *now*, of past time *already*, of future time *presently*, always denoting time relative to the verb with which it is connected; perhaps in the sense of

actually, III. 17, 6; w. negatives, *any longer*, e.g. **neque iam**, *and no longer*, IV. 13, 1; similarly II. 20, 4, 25, 1.
ibi or **ibī**, adv., *there, in that place*.
Iocius, **i**, m., a leader of the Remi, II. 3, 1, etc.
Ictus, **ūs**, m. [**icō**], *strike*, *blow, force*; w. **soorpiōnis**, *shot*.
Id., abbreviation for **Idūs**.
Id-ciroō, adv. [**Id**, neut. acc. of **is**, w. abl. of **cirous**, cf. **circum**], (about this), *on this account, for this reason*.
Idem, **eadem**, **idem**, gen. **ēiusdem**, etc., dem. pro., *the same*; best translated *again*, I. 32, 3; *likewise*, VI. 13, 5. (*atque*, following **Idem**, as, II. 6, 2.)
identidem, adv. [**Idem et idem**], *again and again, repeatedly*.
idōneus, **a**, **um**, *suitable*.
Idūs, **Iduum**, f. plu., *the Ides*, the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, the thirteenth of other months.
Ignis, **is**, m., *fire*; *camp-fire*, II. 7, 4; *signal fire, beacon*, II. 33, 3.
I-gnōbilia, **e** [**in-**] (**gnōbilia**, *known*), (unknown), *obscure*.
I-gnōminia, **ae**, f. [**in-**] (**gnōmen**, *name*), (loss of one's good name), *disgrace*.
I-gnōrō, 1st conj. [**I-gnārus**, *unacquainted*; cf. **Ignōscō**, **Ignōtus** for vowel change], *be unacquainted with, be ignorant of, not know*; pass., *be unknown, be overlooked*, I. 27, 4.
I-gnōscō, **gnōscere**, **gnōvi**, **gnōtum** [**in-**], (not to know), *pardon*; w. dat. **I-gnōtus**, **a**, **um** [**in-**] (**gnōtus**, part.

of (g)nōscō, *know*], (unknown), *unfamiliar, strange*.

il-, form of **in** or **in-** in comp. before **l**. **illātus**, a, um, part. of **inferō**.

ille, **illa**, **illud**, gen. **illius**, etc., demon. pro. *that*, plu. *those*; used of that which is remote in space or time, usually referring to a preceding word; **hic—ille**, *the latter—the former*; contrasted also with **ipse**; when used substantively, often best translated by an emphatic *he, she it*, etc.

illūc, adv. [old loc. of **ille**], *there, in that place*.

il-ligō, 1st conj., (bind on to), *bind fast*, V. 45, 4; *bind, fasten*, IV. 17, 7.

illō, adv. [old dat. of **ille**], *thither, to that place*, **eōdem** (adv.) **illō per-tinēre**, (hold along to that same place), *be along that same line, be of the same nature*, I. 14, 4; *be for that same end*, explained by following clause, IV. 11, 4.

il-lūstris, e [lūx, *light*], *conspicuous, distinguished*.

Illyricum, I, n., the country along the eastern coast of the Adriatic, a part of Caesar's province, now Istria and Dalmatia, II. 35, 2, III. 7, 1, V. 1, 5.

im-, form of **in** or **in-** in comp. before **b**, **m**, and **p**.

imbēcillitās, **tātis**, f. [**im-bēcillus**, *weak*, probably from **bacillus**, *staff*], *weakness, feebleness*.

imber, **bris**, m., *rain, shower, rain-storm*.

imitor, 1st conj., *copy, imitate*.

im-mānis, e, *huge, immense, enormous*.

im-mineō, **minēre**, —, —, (overhang), *be close at hand*.

im-mittō, **mittere**, **misī**, **missum**, (send or let go into); w. **equitātum**, *send against*; w. **pilum**, *hurl; let down*, IV. 17, 4; *set in between*, IV. 17, 6; *send down*, IV. 17, 10.

im-molō, 1st conj. [**mola**, *meal*], (sprinkle meal upon a victim for sacrifice); *sacrifice*.

im-mortālis, e [**in-**; **mors**, *death*], (not liable to death), *immortal*.

im-mūnis, e [**in-**; **mūnus**, *duty*], (without task); *exempt from tribute*.

im-mūnitās, **tātis**, f. [**immūnis**], (freedom from tasks); *exemption, immunity*.

im-parātus, a, um [**in-**; **parō**, *prepare*], *unprepared*.

impedimentum, I, n. [**impediō**], *hindrance*; plu., (the things that hinder an army), *baggage, baggage-train*.

im-pediō, **pedire**, **pedivī** (**pediī**), **peditum** [**pēs**, *foot*], (cause some one's foot to be entangled); *hinder, encumber, embarrass, interfere with*; *engage*, V. 7, 5; pass., *be at a disadvantage*, II. 9, 1. Perf. part., besides being used strictly as such, is also used as an adj. as follows: *impassable, inaccessible*, III. 28, 4, V. 19, 1, 21, 3, VI. 8, 3, 34, 2, VII. 19, 1; *difficult*, III. 9, 4, V. 7, 3; *nihil impeditum*, *no obstacle*, II. 28, 1.

impeditus, a, um, part. of **impediō**.

im-pellō, **pellere**, **pulī**, **pulsum**, (drive on), *incite, urge, influence*.

im-pendeō, **pendēre**, —, —, *overhang*; meaning in the case of a mountain, *rise abruptly close by*.

im-pendō, **pendere**, **pendī**, **pēn-**

- sum**, (weigh out money for something, pay out). Perf. part. as adj. w. **pretium**, *heavy, high*.
- impēnsus**, **a, um**, part. of **impēndō**.
- imperātor**, **ōris**, **m.** [**imperō**, *command*], *commander, commander-in-chief*.
- imperātum**, **ī**, **n.** [neut. of perf. pass. part. of **imperō**], (a thing commanded), *order, command*. (**faciō**, *execute, obey*.)
- im-perfectus**, **a, um** [**in-**; **perficiō**, *complete*], *incomplete, unaccomplished*.
- im-peritus**, **a, um** [**in-**], (*unskilled, inexperienced, unacquainted (with)*), w. gen.; **im-peritus rērum**, *ignorant of events, impractical*.
- imperium**, **ī**, **n.** [cf. **imperō**], *command, order; power, control; dominion*, IV. 16, 4; plu., *authority*, V. 27, 3; **nova imperia**, (*new forms of government*), *revolution*, II. 1, 3.
- im-perō**, 1st conj. [**parō**, *prepare*], (*prepare upon*), *impose, levy; give orders to, command; rule, exercise authority over*, I. 31, 12, 36, 1.
- im-petrō**, 1st conj. [**patrō**, *execute*], (*obtain one's request*); when obj. is expressed, (*obtain by request*).
- im-petus**, **ūs**, **m.** [**petō**, *seek*, cf. Eng. "go for"], *charge, assault, attack, onset; impetuosity*, V. 18, 5; *fury, force*, III. 8, 1, 13, 6, IV. 17, 5; *rush*, VII. 28, 2.
- im-pius**, **a, um** [**in-**; **pius**, *dutiful*], *wicked, impious*.
- im-plicō**, **plicāre**, **plicāvī** or **plicui**, **plicātum** or **plicitum**, (*fold in*); *entwine, interweave*.
- im-plōrō**, 1st conj., (*cry out for*), *beseech, implore; beg, seek*.
- im-pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posui**, **positum**, (*place upon*, I. 42, 5, 51, 3 (**ecō**, *adv., upon these*); w. **stipendium**, *levy, impose; hurry on board*, VII. 58, 4.
- im-portō**, 1st conj., *bring in, import*.
- im-probus**, **a, um** [**in-**], (*not good*); *wicked, malicious*.
- imprōvisō**, **adv.** [abl. of **imprōvisus**, sc. **tempore**], *unexpectedly, suddenly*.
- im-prōvisus**, **a, um** [**in-**; **prōvideō**, *foresee*], *unforeseen*. **dē imprōvisō**, *adverbial phrase as adv., unexpectedly, suddenly*.
- im-prūdēns**, **entis**, **adj.** [**in-**; **prūdēns** = **prōvidēns**, pres. part. of **prōvideō**, *foresee*], (*not foreseeing*); (*being*) *off one's guard, (when) off one's guard*.
- imprudentia**, **ae**, **f.** [**imprūdēns**], (*lack of foresight*); *indiscretion*.
- im-pūbēs**, **beris**, **adj.** [**in-**], (*not full grown*); *chaste, unmarried*.
- im-pūgnō**, 1st conj., *attack, assail; press forward*, III. 26, 4.
- impulsus**, **a, um**, part. of **impellō**.
- impulsus**, **ūs**, **m.** [**impellō**], (*a driving on*); *instigation*.
- impūne**, **adv.** [**im-pūnis**, *unpunished*, from **in-**, and **poena**, *punishment*], *without punishment, with impunity*.
- impūnitas**, **tātis**, **f.** [**im-pūnis**, *unpunished*, from **in-**, and **poena**, *punishment*], *exemption from punishment, impunity*.
- im-us**, **a, um**, *super. of inferus*.
- in**, prep. w. acc. and abl. (1) With acc., *into*, less exactly *to, toward*, of motion toward; hence of hostile relations, *against*; w. terms of ex-

tent, *lātītūdinem, longitūdinem, altitūdinem, partem* (IV. 17, 7), *quincūncem, in*; of purpose, design, *for*, e.g. I. 3, 2, 30, 4, etc.; w. *fūs, potestātem, over*.—(2) With abl., *in*; less exactly, *at, on, upon over, among*; w. names of tribes, *among, in the country of; in the case of, about, in connection with; considering, in view of; within*.—(3) In comp., *in* generally becomes *il-* before *e*, *im-* before *b, m, p*, *ir-* before *r*; it may have the force of any of the meanings mentioned in (1) and (2).

in-, inseparable prefix, giving negative force—generally to nouns and adjectives. In assimilation it may have any of the forms of the preposition *in*.

inānis, e, empty; hollow, VII. 19, 3.

incautē, adv. [*incautus*], carelessly.

in-cautus, a, um [*in-*; *caueō, be on one's guard*], off one's guard, unsuspecting.

incendium, i, n. [*incendō*], fire, burning, conflagration.

in-cendō, cendere, cendi, cēsum, set fire to; burn; fig., excite, rouse, fire, VII. 4, 1.

incēnsus, a, um, part. of *incendō*.

inceptus, a, um, part. of *incipiō*.

in-certus, a, um [*in-*], uncertain; w. *rūmor*, untrustworthy; w. *ōrdinēs*, in confusion; w. *iter*, vague.

in-cidō, cidere, cidi, cāsum [*cadō*], fall upon, VI. 30, 2; fall into the hands (*in, of*), I. 53, 5, happen, occur.

in-cidō, cidere, cidi, cīsum [*caedō*], cut into.

in-cipiō, cipere, cēpi, ceptum [*capiō*], (take into), begin.

incisus, a, um, part. of *incidō*.

in-citō, 1st conj. [*intensive of cileō, move*], (put in quick motion), urge on, urge; of ships, drive, propel; w. reflex., come in, III. 12, 1; come down, IV. 17, 7. Perf. part., aroused, excited.

in-cōgnitus, a, um [*in-*; *cōgnōscō, ascertain*], unknown.

in-colō, colere, colui, —, live in, dwell in, inhabit; intrans., live, dwell.

in-columis, e, unharmed, safe; without loss.

in-commodē, adv. [*incommodus*], (inconveniently), unfortunately.

in-commodus, a, um [*in-*; *cum, with, modus, measure*], (inconvenient). Neut. as subst., disadvantage, V. 35, 5, VII. 16, 3, 33, 1, 45, 9; disaster, loss, reverse.

in-crēdibilis, e [*in-*; *crēdō, believe*], unbelievable, incredible, extraordinary.

in-crepitō, āre, —, — [*intensive of in-crepō, rebuke*], reproach, upbraid; taunt, II. 30, 3.

in-cumbō, cumbere, cubui, cubitum [*cubō, lie*], (bend forward to); apply or devote one's self.

in-cursō, ōnis, f. [*in-currō, run upon, invasion, inroad, raid*].

incursus, ūs, m. [*in-currō, run upon*], charge, attack, onset; assault, rush, VII. 36, 7.

in-cūsō, 1st conj. [*causa*], (make charge against), blame, reproach.

inde, adv., thence; from that place; from that point, IV. 21, 3, 25, 1, 33, 3; then, II. 19, 3, VII. 48, 1.

indiciūm, *i*, *n*. [**indioō**, *point out*], *information, evidence*; by metonymy, *informers*, *I. 4, 1*.

in-dioō, *dicere*, *dixi*, *dictum*, (*proclaim*); *call, summon*.

indiotus, *a, um*, part. of **indioō**.

in-dictus, *a, um* [**in-**; **dioō**] (*unspoken*); *unheard*, *VII. 38, 2*.

indignō, *adv.* [**indignus**], *unworthily, shamefully*.

indignitās, *tātis, f.* [**indignus**], (*unworthiness*); *indignity, outrage; disgrace*, *VII. 56, 2*.

indignor, *1st conj.* [**indignus**], (*consider unworthy*), *be angry*.

in-dignus, *a, um* [**in-**], *unworthy*.

in-diligēna, *entis* [**in-**; **diligēna**, pres. part. of **diligō**, *choose*], (*not choosing*); *negligent, careless, heedless*.

indiligenter, *adv.* [**indiligēna**], *carelessly*.

indiligentia, *ae, f.* [**indiligēna**], (*carelessness*); *negligence*.

in-dūōō, *dūcere*, *dūxi*, *ductum*, (*lead on*); *influence, induce; cover*, *II. 33, 2*.

inductus, *a, um*, part. of **indūōō**.

indulgentia, *ae, f.* [**indulgēns**, pres. part. of **indulgeō**], *indulgence, leniency*.

in-dulgeō, *dulgēre*, *dulsi*, *dultum*, (*be kind to*); *favor, indulge*, *w. dat.*

in-duō, *duere*, *dul*, *dūtum*, *put on*, *II. 21, 5*; *w. reflex.*, *impale one's self*.

industriē, *adv.* [**industrius**, *active*], *energetically*.

indūtiae, *ārum, f. plu.*, *truce, armistice*.

Indutiomārus, *i, m.*, *a chief of the*

Treveri, rival of *Cingetorix*, an opponent of *Caesar*, *V. 3, 2*; *death described*, *V. 58, 6*.

in-eō, *ire*, *ivi* or *ii*, *itum*, (*go into. enter*); *enter upon, form*; *w. grātiam*, *gain*; *initā aestāte*, (*the summer having been gone into*), *at the beginning of summer*; *so w. hieme, vigiliā*; *w. numerum, enter*.

in-ermis, *e* [**in-**; *arma, arms*], *unarmed, without one's arms*.

in-ers, *ertis*, *adj.* [**in-**; *ars, skill*], (*unskilful*); *unmanly, shiftless*.

in-, form of **in** or **in-** in comp. before *f* and *a*.

in-fāmia, *ae, f.* [**in-**; *fāma, reputation*], *disrepute*, *VI. 23, 6*; *dishonor*, *VII. 56, 2*.

in-fāns, *antis*, *adj.* [**in-**; *fāns*, pres. part. of *for, speak*], (*not speaking*). *Masc. or fem. as subst., child, infant*.

in-fectus, *a, um* [**in-**; *faciō, do, make*], *unfinished. rē infectā*, (*the thing being unfinished*), *without accomplishing one's purpose*.

inferior, *us*, compar. of **inferus**.

in-ferō, *ferre*, *in-tuli*, *il-lātum*, *bring in, import*, *II. 15, 4*; *w. bellum*, *wage (offensive) war*; *w. alacritātem, terrōrem, spem, inspire*; *w. iniūriam, calamitātem, vulnera, inflict*; *w. signa, advance*; *w. cōversa signa*, (*advance the standards turned*), *change front and advance*, *I. 25, 7, II. 26, 1*; *cause*, *V. 16, 3*; *put*, *VI. 19, 4*; *set*, *VII. 22, 4*; *lift*, *VI. 30, 4*.

(**Inferus**, *a, um*), compar. **inferior**, super. **infimus** or **imus**, (*below*), compar., *lower; inferior*, *II. 8, 3*;

used of the more *westerly* cape of Britain, V. 13, 1; super., (the lowest part of), *the base of, the bottom of*; **ab infimō**, *at the bottom*, **ad infimum**, *toward the bottom*, VII. 73, 5; **ab imō**, *from the bottom*, III. 19, 1; *at the lower end*, IV. 17, 3.

in-fēstus, a, um, *hostile, threaten- ing*. **signis infēstis**, (with threatening standards), *ready to charge*.

in-ficiō, **ficere**, **fēci**, **fectum** [**faciō do, make**], (put on to), *stain*.

in-fidēlis, e [**in-**; **fidēs**, *faith*], *un- faithful, unreliable*.

in-fligō, **figere**, **fixi**, **fixum**, *fix in, insert*.

infinus, a, um, super. of **inferus**.

in-finitus, a, um [**in-**; **finiō**, *limit*], (unlimited); *immense, vast; countless*.

infirmiās, **tātis**, f. [**infirmus**], *weakness*, VII. 26, 3; *sickleness*.

in-firmus, a, um, [**in-**], (not strong), *weak; depressed*, III. 24, 3.

in-flectō, **flectere**, **flexi**, **flexum**, *bend over, bend*.

inflexus, a, um, part. of **inflectō**.

in-fluō, **fluere**, **fluxi**, **fluxum**, *flow into, empty into*.

in-fodiō, **fodere**, **fōdi**, **fossum**, (dig and put a thing into the hole), *bury*.

infrā, adv. and prep. w. acc. [for **inferā**, sc. **parte**], *below*; either literally or in transferred sense, e.g. *smaller than*, VI. 28, 1.

in-gēns, **gentis**, adj. [**in-**; **gen**, stem of (g)**nāscor**, **genua**, etc.], (not natural), *enormous, vast*.

in-grātus, a, um [**in-**], *unacceptable, displeasing*.

in-gredior, **gredi**, **gressus sum** [**gradior**, *step*], (go into), *enter*.

in-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **injiō**), **icere**, **icēci**, **iectum** [**iaciō**], (throw into), *inspire; place upon*, IV. 17, 8.

inlectus, a, um, part. of **iniciō**.

inimicitia, ae, f. [**inimicus**], (unfriendliness), *hostility, feud*.

in-imicus, a, um, [**in-**; **amicus**, *friendly*], (unfriendly), personally hostile. Masc. as subst., *rival*, V. 44, 9, 14; *personal enemy*, I. 10, 2.

iniquitās, **tātis**, f. [**iniquus**], (unevenness, unfairness), *unfavorable character; tanta rerum iniquitās*, *such varied circumstances*, II. 22, 2; **conditiōnis iniquitās**, *inequality (of condition) of the conditions*, VII. 19, 3; *misconduct*, VII. 19, 5.

in-iquus, a, um [**in-**; **aequus**, *even*], (uneven), *unfavorable; unfair, unjust*, I. 44, 4, 8.

initium, i, n. [**ineō**, *begin*], *beginning*; w. **silvarum**, *edge*; w. **Rēmōrum**, *frontier*; plu., *elements*, VI. 17, 2.

initus, a, um, part. of **ineō**.

in-iungō, **iungere**, **iūxi**, **iūctum**, (join on), *impose*.

iniūria, ae, f. [**iniūrus**, *wrong*, from **in-**, and **iūs**, *right*], *wrong, injustice*, I. 12, 7, 14, 2, 20, 5, 36, 4, IV. 8, 2; *damage, injury, outrage*; abl. of manner, *unjustly*, I. 35, 3, 36, 5.

in-iūssū, adv. [**in-**; **iūssū**, *by one's order*], *without an order*; modified by poss. pro. or gen., as though, like **iūssū**, still a noun, **suō et civitātis**, *without his order or (that) of the state*.

in-nāscor, **nāsci**, **nātus sum**, (be born in), *be inborn, be ingrained*.

in-nitor, *nīti*, *nixus* or *nixus sum*,
rest upon, lean on, w. abl. of means.

innixus, a, um, part. of **innitor**.

in-nocēns, *entis*, adj. [**in-**; *noceō*,
harm], (not harming, harmless).
Masc. and fem. as subst., *an inno-*
cent person; plu., *the innocent*, VI.
9, 7, 16, 5.

innocentia, *ae*, f. [**innocēns**],
(blamelessness), *integrity*.

in-opia, *ae*, f. [**in-**; *ops*, *aid*], lack
of resources), *lack, want, need,*
scarcity.

in-opināns, *antis*, adj. [**in-**; *opinor*,
be of opinion], *not expecting, un-*
aware; when modifying an object,
often rendered by adverb, *unexpec-*
tedly, unawares.

inquam, **inquis**, **inquit**, defective
verb, *say*, used only within direct
quotation.

in-sciēns, *entis*, adj. [**in-**; *sciō*,
know], *not knowing*; w. *ipsa*, in
abl. abs., (themselves not knowing),
without their knowledge, I. 19, 1;
so V. 7, 5.

inscientia, *ae*, f. [**insciēns**], (lack
of knowledge), *ignorance, lack of*
acquaintance (with); *foolishness,*
folly, III. 19, 3.

in-scius, a, um [**in-**; *sciō*, *know*],
not knowing, ignorant; *unaware,*
or, translating by adv., *unawares*,
IV. 4, 5.

insecūtus, a, um, part. of **inse-**
quor.

in-sequor, *sequi*, **secūtus sum**, (fol-
low upon), *follow up, pursue*.

in-serō, **serere**, **serui**, **sertum**, (bind
into), *insert*.

insidiae, *arum*, f. plu. [**in-***sideo*, *sit*
in wait for], *ambuscade*, III. 20,

4, V. 32, 1; *stratagem*; per **in-**
sidias, *by stratagem*.

insidior, 1st. conj. [**insidiae**], *lie in*
ambush, lie in wait.

in-signis, *e* [**signum**, *sign, mark*].
(having a sign or mark upon it);
marked, signal, I. 12, 6. Neut. as
subst., *sign, signal*, II. 20, 1, VII.
60, 2, 88, 1; plu. *ornaments, decora-*
tions, insignia.

in-siliō, **sillire**, **silui**, —, [**siliō**],
leap upon.

in-simulō, 1st. conj. [**similis**, *like*].
(make suspected), *charge (with), ac-*
cuse (of), w. gen.

in-sinuō, 1st. conj. [**sinus**, *fold*],
wind in, work in; w. reflex. same
meanings, intrans.

in-sistō, **sistere**, **stitti**, —, (stand
upon); *take one's stand, take a*
stand; follow, pursue, III. 14, 3;
devote one's self (tōtus, wholly),
VI. 5, 1.

insolenter, adv. [**insolēns**, *entis*,
adj., *unaccustomed, immoderate,*
from **in-**, and **soleō**, *be accustomed*],
(immoderately), *haughtily*.

in-spectō, 1st. conj. [intensive of
inspiciō, *look at*], (gaze at), *watch,*
look on.

in-stabilis, *e* [**in-**; **stō**, *stand*], (not
able to stand), *unstable, unsteady*.

in-star, n., indeclin. [**stō**, *stand*],
image, likeness; w. *mūrī*, (the like-
ness of a wall), *like a wall*.

in-stigō, 1st. conj., *goad on, stimu-*
late.

in-stituō, **stituere**, **stitui**, **stitutum**
[**statuō**, *cause to stand*], (put in
place), *establish*; *undertake, begin*;
prepare, V. 11, 4, 40, 6; *prepare*
for, IV. 18, 4; *procure*, III. 9, 1; w.

aciem, *draw up; train, teach*, I. 14, 7; *plan*, VI. 3, 4, 44, 3. Neut. of perf. part. as subst., (a thing established), *institution, custom; plan*.

institūtum, I, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **instituo**, as subst.], (a thing established), *institution, custom; plan*.

institūtus, a, um, part. of **instituo**.

in-stō, **stāre**, **stīti**, **stātum**, (stand upon); *press forward; be close at hand*, I. 16, 5. Pres. part. as adj., *immediate*, VI. 4, 3.

instrūmentum, I, n. [**instruo**], (means of constructing, tool); w. **militāre**, *weapon*, VI. 30, 2; *furnishing*, V. 31, 4.

in-struo, **struere**, **strūxi**, **strūctum**, *build, construct*, II. 30, 3; of ships, *equip; arrange, draw up*.

insuēfactus, a, um [**insuo**, stem of **insuēscō**, *become accustomed, facio*, *make*], (made accustomed), *trained* (to enter the water, IV. 24, 3).

in-suētus, a, um [**in-**; **suēscō**, *become accustomed*], *unaccustomed* (to), w. gen.

insula, ae, f., *island*.

in-super, adv., ("on top"), *above*.

in-teger, **gra**, **grum** [**in-**; **teg**, stem of **tangō**, *touch*], (untouched), *whole, complete, not damaged, unimpaired*; of men, often as subst., *fresh, with unimpaired strength*; **rē integrā**, (the thing being untouched), *before any action was taken*.

in-tegō, **tegere**, **tēxi**, **tēctum**, *cover over, cover*.

intel-, form of **inter** in comp. before l.

intel-legō, **legere**, **lēxi**, **lēctum**,

(pick out between or among); *understand*.

in-tendō, **tendere**, **tendi**, **tentum** (**tēnsu**), (stretch upon); *direct toward*. Perf. part. as adj., (intent), *occupied* (with), III. 22, 1; translated as adv., *intently*, VII. 80, 2.

intentus, a, um, part. of **intendō**.

inter, prep. w. acc., of two, *between*, of more than two, *among; within*, for, I. 36, 7; less exactly, *in the midst of, in*. **inter sē**: *dare, exchange*; w. **contendere**, **colloqui**, **iungere**, **commūnē**, *with each other*; w. **agere**, *between them*; w. **cohortāri**, *each other*; w. **differre**, *from each other*; w. **sancire**, *mutually*; w. **cōniūrāre**, *together*.

In comp., *among, between, in the midst, asunder, at intervals*.

inter-cēdo, **cēdere**, **cēssi**, **cēssu**, (go between); *be between; intervene*, I. 7, 6; *exist between*, I. 43, 6, *occur between*, w. dat. V. 11, 9 (**cum**, *and*); *elapse*, V. 53, 5.

inter-cipio, **cipere**, **cēpi**, **ceptum** [**capiō**], (take between); *intercept; cut off*, V. 39, 2.

inter-clūdō, **clūdere**, **clūsi**, **clūsum** [**claudō**], (shut between); *cut off*.

inter-dico, **dicere**, **dixi**, **dictum**, (put a command between a person and his desire); w. obj. clause, *warn; forbid*, w. abl. translated as direct obj., I. 46, 4; *exclude, cut off*.

inter-diū, adv. [connected w. **diēs**, *day*], *during the day, by day, in the daytime*.

inter-dum, adv., ("between whiles"), *for a while*, I. 14, 5; *sometimes*.

inter-eā, adv. [old case form of **is**],

- (in the midst of this), *meanwhile*, *meantime*.
- inter-eō**, **ire**, **il**, **itum**, (go among other things, be lost); *perish*.
- inter-ficiō**, **ficere**, **fēci**, **fectum**, [**faciō**], (put among other things, put out of the way), *kill*.
- inter-iciō** (pronounced as if spelled **interjiciō**), **icere**, **iēcī**, **lectum**, [**iaciō**], (throw between); *place between*; pass., *intervene*; occur at intervals, III. 8, 1.
- interiectus**, **a**, **um**, part. of **inter-iciō**.
- interim**, adv. [**inter**], *meanwhile*, *meantime*.
- interior**, **us**, compar. adj., super. **intimus** [**inter**], *inner*, *interior*; masc. and fem. plu., as subst., *those who live in the interior*, V. 14, 2; *those in the town*, VII. 82, 3; 86, 4.
- interitus**, **ūs**, m. [**intereō**], *death*, *destruction*.
- inter-mittō**, **mittere**, **misī**, **missum**, (let go between); *interrupt*, *discontinue*; *stop*, *cease*, II. 25, 1, IV. 31, 1; *let pass*, *permit to elapse*; pass., *intervene*, e.g. I. 27, 4; *separate*, VII. 23, 3.
- interneciō**, **ōnis**, f. [**inter-necō**, *destroy*], *utter destruction*, *annihilation*.
- inter-pellō**, 1st conj. [cf. **pellō**, **ere**], (drive into), *disturb*.
- inter-pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positum**, (put between), *interpose*, IV. 9, 3, 11, 4; **fidem interponere**, *pledge one's honor*; pass., *intervene*, VI. 38, 5; *appear*, IV. 32, 1. Perf. part. as adj., *alleged*, I. 42, 5.
- inter-pres**, **pretis**, m., (one who explains between), *interpreter*.
- interpretor**, 1st conj. [**interpreo**], *explain*.
- inter-rogō**, 1st conj., (ask into), *question*.
- inter-rumpō**, **rumpere**, **rūpl**, **ruptum**, (break asunder), *break down*, *destroy*.
- inter-scindō**, **scindere**, **scidī**, **scissum**, (cut asunder), *break down*, *destroy*.
- inter-sum**, **esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**, *be between*, I. 15, 5, VI. 36, 2; *be concerned with*, VI. 13, 4; *take part*, IV. 16, 2, VII. 87, 5. Impersonal, *it concerns*, II. 6, 2; w. **māgnī**, gen. of value, *it is of great importance*; *it makes a difference*, VII. 14, 8.
- inter-vāllum**, **ī**, n. [**vāllum**, *ram-part*], (space between two walls); *distance*, *interval*.
- inter-veniō**, **venire**, **vēnī**, **ventum**, (come into the midst), *arrive*; *appear upon the scene*, VI. 37, 1.
- interventus**, **ūs**, m. [**interveniō**], *arrival*, *intervention*.
- in-texō**, **texere**, **texuī**, **textum**, (weave in), *interweave*, *plait*.
- intoleranter**, adv. [**intolerāns**, *impatient*, from **in-** and **tolerō**, *bear*], *recklessly*.
- intrā**, adv. and prep. w. acc. [for **interā**, old abl. of **interus**, pos. of **interior**, sc. **parte**], *within*, *inside*; of time, *before*, VI. 21, 5.
- in-tritus**, **a**, **um** [**in-**; **terō**, *rub*], (unworn), *unfatiigued*, *fresh*.
- intrō-**, adv., used in comp., *inside*, *within*.
- intrō**, 1st conj. [cf. **inter**, **intrā**, **intrō**], *enter*.

intrō-dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, *lead into, introduce.*

intro-eō, ire, ii, —, *go inside, come in.*

introitus, ūs, m. [introeō], (an entering); *entrance.*

intrō-mittō, mittere, misi, missum, *send inside; let in*, V. 58, 1.

intrōrsus, adv. [contracted from **intrō-versus**, *turned toward the inside*], *inside, within.*

intrō-rumpō, rumpere, rūpi, ruptum, *break into, burst into.*

in-tueor, tuēri, tuitus sum, *look upon, gaze at.*

intuli, perf. of **inferō**.

intus, adv. [in], *within, inside.*

in-ūsitātus, a, um [in-; ūsitōr, intensive of ūtor, *use*], (unusual), *strange, new, unfamiliar.*

in-ūtilis, e, [in-], *useless, of no use; unsuitable*, VII. 27, 1.

in-veniō, venire, vēni, ventum, (come upon); *find; find out, learn.*

inventor, ōris, m. [inveniō], (one who comes upon anything), *originator, discoverer, inventor.*

in-veterāscō, veterāscere, veterāvi, — [vetus, *old*], (grow old in); *gain a permanent foothold*, II. 1, 3; *become established.*

in-victus, a, um [in-; vinoō, *conquer*], *unconquered*; hence, less exactly, *invincible.*

in-videō, vidēre, vidi, visum (look askance at); *envy.*

invidia, ae, f. [invideō], *envy.*

in-violātus, a, um [in-; violō, *violate*], *inviolable, sacred.*

in-vitō, 1st conj. [for vocitō, intensive of vocō, *call*], (call into); *invite; attract*, V. 51, 1; VI. 35, 7.

in-vītus, a, um [in-], *unwilling*; best translated by adv., *unwillingly, reluctantly, against one's will.* eō invītō, abl. abs., (he unwilling), *without his consent, against his will*; so w. **āē** and **Sēquanis**.

ipse, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, intensive demonstrative pro., *himself, herself, itself, plu. themselves*; often translated by emphatic pers. pro., *he, etc.; very*; gen. *his own, their own*, etc., often in this sense merely more emphatic than **suus**.

ir-, form of **in** or **in-** in comp. before **r**.

irācundia, ae, f. [irācundus], *anger*, VI. 5, 2; *passion.*

irācundus, a, um [irā, *wrath*], (liable to wrath); *passionate.*

ir-rideō, ridēre, risi, risum, *laugh at (anything).*

irridiculō, adv. [adj. **irridiculūs**, *not laughable*, from **in-** and **rideō**, *laugh*], *unwittily, without wit*; **nōn irridiculō**, *not without wit, quite wittily, humorously.*

ir-rumpō, rumpere, rūpi, ruptum, *break into, burst into; rush into*, V. 44, 4.

irruptiō, ōnis, f. [irrupō], (a rushing upon or into); *raid*, VII. 7, 2; *attack.*

is, **ea**, **id**, demonstrative and pers. pro.; as weak demonstr. (generally when agreeing with a noun immediately following), *this, that*, plu. *these, those*, not very definite; as pers. pro. (generally when not agreeing with anything directly), *he, she, it, they*, etc.; when used merely as antecedent of relative, *that, those*; when relative is attracted into a

preceding clause, *this, these*; when followed by subjunct. of characteristic often translated *such*, like a weak *tālis*, e.g. III. 12, 1.

iste, ista, istud, demonstr. pro. (of 2d pers.), (that of yours); *that*, used with sense of contempt, VII. 77, 5.

ita, adv., *so, in such a manner*, referring to something either preceding or following; w. adj., *so very*, V. 47, 3, *such a very*, IV. 37, 1.

Italia, ae, f., *Italy*.

ita-que, adv., *and so, therefore, so*.

item, adv., *likewise, in the same way*.

iter, itineris, n. [eō, go], *journey*, I. 3, 4, VI. 17, 1; *march, line of march, movement*; **iter facere**, *march*; w. **dare**, *passage, permission to pass*, I. 8, 3; w. **prohibere**, *passing*; w. **tūtum**, *passage*; **ex itinere**, *while on the march*. (**māgnus**, *long, forced*).

iterum, adv., *again, a second time*.

Itius, I, m., the harbor from which Caesar sailed to Britain, probably modern Wissant, V. 2, 3, 5, 1.

iuba, ae, f., *mane*.

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, *order*.

iudicium, I, n. [iūdiō], *judgment*, I. 41, 3, VI. 11, 3, 13, 10; *trial*, I. 4, 2, VI. 44, 3; abl. *deliberately*, V. 27, 3, VI. 31, 1; **optimum iūd. facere**, *express such an excellent opinion*, I. 41, 2.

iudicō, 1st conj. [iūdex, iudicis], *judge, from iūs, right, diō, point out*, *judge*; *decide*, V. 44, 3; *declare*, V. 56, 3.

iugum, I, n. [same stem as iungō, join], (that which joins); *yoke*, used

in attaching horses to a chariot, IV. 33, 3; *yoke*, formed of three spears, two planted in the ground, the third across the top of these; a symbol of surrender and slavery, I. 7, 4, 12, 5; *ridge*, connecting two or more summits or forming the summit; *chain of hills, range*, VI. 40, 3, 6, VII. 36, 2, 44, 3.

Iūlius, I, m., a Roman family name.

iumentum, I, n. [for iūg-mentum, from iungō], (yoke animal); *draught animal, beast of burden*, applied to horses, mules, oxen.

iūnotūra, ae, f. [iungō], *connection*.

iūnotus, a, um, part. of iungō.

iungō, iungere, iūxī, iūctum, *join, unite*.

iūnior, us, compar. of iuuenis.

Iūnius, I, m., *Quintus Junius*, a Spaniard or a Roman from Spain, V. 27, 1, 28, 1.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter*, the great divinity of the Romans.

Iūra, ae, f., the Jura mountains, a range extending northeast from the Rhone west of Lake Geneva to the Rhine, I. 2, 3.

iūrandum, I, neut. of gerundive of iūrō, used only with iūs, which see.

iūrō, 1st conj. [iūs], *take oath, swear*; *take the oath*, I. 31, 8.

iūs, iūris, n., *right, rights; law*; **iūs iūrandum**, (sworn duty), *oath*.

iūssus, ūs, m., found only in abl. sing. [iubeō], *order, command*.

iūstitia, ae, f. [iūstus], *justice; fairness*, I. 19, 2, II. 4, 7.

iūstus, a, um [iūs], *just, rightful; regular*, VI. 19, 4, VII. 23, 4.

iuuenis, e, compar. iūnior [for iuvenior] or minor (nātū), super.

minimus (nātū), *young*. Compar. masc. plu. as subst., *the men of military age*, i.e. between seventeen and forty-six years, VII. 1, 1.

iuventūs, tūtis, f. [**iuvenia**], (youth, primarily abstract, then collective); *young men, men of military age*, i.e. between seventeen and forty-six years.

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum, *help, assist, aid*.

iūxtā, adv., *near by, close by*.

K

Kal, abbreviation for **Kalendae**.

Kalendae, ārum, f. plu. [cf. καλέω, *call*], *the Kalends*, the first day of the Roman month, so called from the proclamation of the calendar for the following month made on that day.

L

L, as numeral = 50.

L, abbreviation for **Lucius**.

Laberius, ī, m., *Quintus Liberius Durus*, a tribune of soldiers, V. 15, 5.

Labiēnus, ī, m., *Titus Labienus*, the foremost of Caesar's *legati*, his chief lieutenant throughout the Gallic war, where he "never made a mistake." In the civil war, thinking his services indispensable, he deserted Caesar, who ironically sent his baggage after him; his painstaking care was no match for Caesar's genius, and he fell at the battle of Munda: I. 10, 3, etc.

labōr, ōris, m., *toil, exertion, labor; endurance*, IV. 2, 2.

lābor, lābi, lāpsus sum, (slip); *become disaffected, escape one's control*, V. 3, 6. Perf. part., *disappointed*, V. 55, 3.

labōrō, 1st. conj. [**labor**], (labor); *strive*, I. 31, 2, VII. 31, 1; *be hard pressed, be in danger*. Pres. part. often equivalent to rel. clause, e.g. I. 52, 7, *who were hard pressed*.

labrum, ī, n., *lip*, V. 14, 3; *rim*, VI. 28, 6; *edge*, VII. 72, 1.

lāc, lactis, n., *milk*.

laccessō, lacessere, lacessivī (laccessi), **laccessitum**, *provoke, harass; take the offensive against*, IV. 34, 2.

lacrima, ae, f., *tear*.

lacrimō, 1st conj. [**lacrima**], *weep*.

laos, ūs, m., dat. and abl. plu.

lacubus or **lacibus**, *lake*.

laedō, laedere, laesi, laesum, (harm); **fidem laedere**, *break one's pledge*.

laetitia, ae, f. [**laetus**], *joy*; **laetitiae affici**, *be rejoiced*.

laetus, a, um, *joyful, happy*.

languidō, adv. [**languidus**], (feebly); *with little energy*.

languidus, a, um, [**languēō, be faint**], *weariness, exhausted*.

languor, ōris, m. [**languēō, be faint**], *weariness, exhaustion*.

lapis, idis, m., *stone*.

laqueus, ī, m., *noose*.

largior, largiri, largitus sum [**largus, abundant**], (give abundantly); *afford, present*; gerund, *bribery*, I. 18, 4.

largiter, adv. [**largus, abundant**], (abundantly); **largiter posse**, *be very powerful, have great influence*.

largitō, ōnis, f. [**largior**], *lavish giving, profuse generosity*.

lassitūdō, dinis, f. [**lassus, tirca**], *exhaustion, fatigue*.

lātō, adv. [**lātus**], *widely, extensively; far*, IV. 3, 1, VI. 23, 1 (circum sē, *on all sides*); **longō lātōque**, *far and wide*.

latebra, ae, f., usually plu. [**lateō**], *hiding place*.

lateō, latēre, latui, —, lie hidden, be concealed; escape notice, III. 14, 8.

lātītūdō, dinis, f. [**lātus**], *width, breadth*; **regiōnum lātītūdō, area**, III. 20, 1; **in lātītūdinem**, *in width; laterally or horizontally*, II. 17, 4.

Latobrigi, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Gauls located probably upon the farther bank of the Rhine, north of the Helvetii, near the sources of the Danube, I. 5, 4, 28, 3, 29, 2.

latrō, ōnis, m., *robber*.

latrōcinium, i, n. [**latrō**], *highway robbery; raid for the purpose of plundering, predatory raid*, VI. 35, 7.

lātus, a, um, wide, broad; extensive, II. 4, 6, VI. 22, 3.

latus, lateris, n., *side*; of an army, *flank*. (**ab, on; apertum, exposed, unprotected**, usually the *right*, since the shield was carried on the left arm.)

laudō, 1st conj. [**laus**], *praise*.

laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory; glory (in), renown (for)*, VI. 24, 3, 40, 7, VII. 76, 2.

lavō, lavāre (lavere), lāvi, lautum, lōtum, lavātum, (wash); pass. as middle, (wash one's self), *bathe*.

laxō, 1st conj. [**laxus, loose**], (loosen), **manipulōs laxāre**, *open or extend ranks*.

lōgātīō, ōnis, f. [**lōgō, send with a commission**], *mission*, I. 3, 3; *embassy, deputation; envoys*.

lōgātus, i, m. [masc. of perf. part. of **lōgō, send with a commission, appoint as deputy**], *envoy, ambassador; lieutenant to a commander-in-chief, lieutenant-general, legatus, an officer under the control of the commander-in-chief alone, who might command any portion of the army, either in battle or on detached service*.

legiō, ōnis, f. [**legō, collect**], (a collecting); *legion, the unit of the Roman army*. See Introduction.

legiōnārius, a, um [**legiō**], (belonging to a legion), *legionary, legiōnārii militēs*, corresponding to our "regular" troops.

Lemannus, i, m., w. **lacus, Lake Lemān, the lake of Geneva, Lake Geneva**.

Lemovicōs, um, m. plu., a tribe in southwestern Gaul, between the Santones and the Avernii, VII. 4, 6, 75, 3, 88, 4.

lēnis, e, (smooth, soft); mild, moderate, gentle.

lēnitās, tātis, f. [**lēnis**], *smoothness*.

lēniter, adv. [**lēnis**], *gently, gradually*.

Lepontii, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe living in the Alps, southeast of the Helvetii, north of Lake Maggiore, IV. 10, 3.

lepus, leporis, m., *hare*.

Leuci, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe between the Marne river and the Vosges mountains, about the source of the Moselle, I. 40, 11.

Levacī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in Belgic Gaul, clients of the Nervii, V. 39, 1.

levīs, e, light (in weight), w. *armātūra*; *slight, unimportant; weak*, V. 28, 6.

levitās, tātis, f. [levīs], (lightness); *light weight*, V. 34, 4; *fickleness, thoughtlessness*.

levō, 1st conj. [levīs], (lighten); *relieve* (of), w. abl. of separation.

lēx, lēgis, f., law, as a formal resolution of the people; *decree*, I. 3, 2.

Lexovii, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Normandy on the coast, just west of the mouth of the Seine, III. 9, 10 ff., VII. 75, 3.

(*lib.*, abbreviation for *liber*.)

libenter, adv. [libens, willing, connected w. *libet, it pleases*], *willingly, gladly*.

(*liber, libri, m., book.* Not in text of Bel. Gal.)

liber, libera, liberum, compar. liberior, super. liberrimus, free; *unrestricted*, VII. 36, 5.

liberalitās, tātis, f. [liberālis, befitting a free man, open, generous], *kindness; generosity, liberality*.

liberaliter, adv. [liberālis, befitting a free man, open, generous], *graciously; liberaliter pollicēri, (promise graciously), make gracious promises*, IV. 21, 6.

liberē, adv., compar. liberius, super. liberrimē [liber], *freely; boldly*, V. 19, 2, VII. 49, 2; *openly*, VII. 1, 3.

liberī, ōrum, m. plu. [strictly masc. plu. of liber], (those born free); *children of free parents*.

liberō, 1st conj. [liber], *free*.

libertās, tātis, f. [liber], *freedom*.

librīlis, e [libra, pound], (of a pound); *funda librīlis, a sling throwing stones that weigh a pound, unusually heavy*.

licentia, ae, f. [licēns, pres. part. of licet as adj., unrestrained], (lack of restraint); *insubordination*.

liceor, licēri, licitus sum, bid (at auction).

licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est, (it is lawful, it is permitted); w. complementary infin. it is translated by *may, might*; e.g. *ut id sibi facere liceat*, (that it might be permitted to them to do it), *that they might do it*.

Liger, Ligeris, m., acc. -im, abl. -i, the Loire, the largest river of southern France, III. 9, 1, etc.

ignātiō, ōnis, f. [ignor, get wood, from *lignum, wood*], *getting wood*.

ignātor, ōris, m. [ignor, get wood, from *lignum, wood*], (one who gets wood); *wood-cutter, wood-gatherer*.

lilium, i, m., lily; applied ironically by the Romans to the pitfalls constructed at Alesia.

lineus, a, um [linum, flax], (linen). Fem. as subst., sc. *rēs*, (a linen thread), *line*.

Lingonēs, um, m. plu., acc. plu. sometimes -as (Greek), a tribe in central Gaul, north of the Aedui, I. 26, 5, etc.

lingua, ae, f., (tongue); by metonymy, *language*.

lingula, ae, f. [dimin. of lingua], (a little tongue); *tongue of land, a narrow point projecting into the sea*.

linter, tris, m., canoe, boat, skiff.

linum, i, n., flax.

lis, litis, m., (strife, lawsuit); *damages*.

Liscus, l, m., chief magistrate of the Aedui, I. 16, 5, etc.

Littavicus, l, m., an Aeduan nobleman who took part in the conspiracy for the revolt of his tribe in the seventh year of the war, VII. 37, 1 ff.

Littera, ae, f. [*linō*, *smear*, from the wax tablets early used in writing], letter of the alphabet, I. 29, 1, V. 48, 4; *writing*, VI. 14, 3, 4; plu., (letters of the alphabet), a letter (epistle), *despatch*; *documents*, V. 47, 2; *letters*, V. 40, 1.

litus, litoris, n., *shore, beach* of the ocean.

locus, l, m., plu. regularly *loca*, *ōrum*, n. (masc. plu. only in sense *topics, passages* in a book), *place*; *locality*; *situation*; *opportunity*, I. 40, 9, V. 44, 3; *space*, II. 8, 3; abl. sing., w. gen., (in the place of) *as*, I. 42, 6, etc.; *light*, I. 26, 6; *point*, VI. 11, 1; *condition*, II. 26, 5; plu., *space*, II. 19, 5; *country, locality*, III. 9, 4; *region*, e.g. *in his locis*, *in this region*.

longē, adv. [*longus*], *far*; of time, *long*, IV. 1, 7, VII. 71, 4.

longinquus, a, um [*longus*], *distant*; *long-continued*, I. 47, 4; *protracted*, V. 29, 7.

longitūdō, *dinis*, f. [*longus*], *length*.

longurius, l, m. [*longus*], *long pole*.

longus, a, um, *long*; *distant*, I. 40, 14; *nāvis longa*, *war-ship, galley*.

loquor, loqui, locutus sum, *speak*; *talk*, I. 20, 6.

lōrica, ae, f. [*lōrum, strap*], (*coat of mail*); *breastwork, parapet*.

Lūcānius, l, m., *Quintus Lucanius*, a brave centurion, V. 35, 7.

Lucius, l, m., a Roman *praenomen*.

Lucterius, l, m., a chief of the Cadurci, who supported the revolt of Vercingetorix, VII. 5, 1 ff.

Lugotorix, *igls*, m., a British chief, V. 22, 2.

lūna, ae, f., *moon*; personified, *Luna*, VI. 21, 2.

Lutetia, ae, f., the chief city of the Parisii, now *Paris*, VII. 57, 1, etc.

lūx, lūcis, f., *light, daylight*; *prima lūx*, *daybreak*.

lūxuria, ae, f. [*lūxus, excess*], *extravagance, high living*.

M

M, as numeral = 1000; but not originally because it was the first letter of *mille*.

M, abbreviation for *Mārcus*, a Roman *praenomen*.

māceria, ae, f. [*mācerō, soften*, from *maer*, *lean*], (*wall of soft clay*); *wall, breastworks*.

māchinātīō, ōnis, f. [*māchinor, contrive*, from *māchina*, cf. *μῆχανή*], *machine, engine*; in IV. 17, 4, some sort of floating derrick.

maestus, a, um [*maerō, be sad*, cf. *miser, wretched*], *sad, despondent*.

Māgetobriga, ae, f., the place where Ariovistus defeated the Aedui and their allies, possibly near the confluence of the Saône and the Oignon, I. 31, 12.

magis, compar. adv., super. *māximē* (positive supplied by *māgnopere*,

much) [māior, māximus], *more*; *rather*, I. 13, 6; *super.*, *most, very, especially*; with verbs, always *especially*, but *quam māximē*, *as much as possible*; *implicitly*, I. 42, 5.

magistrātus, ūs, m. [magister, master, from magis], (position of a master), *magistracy, office*; by metonymy, *magistrate, officer*.

māgnificus, a, um, compar. māgnificentior, super. māgnificentissimus [māgnus, faciō], *elaborate, magnificent*.

māgnitūdō, inis, f. [māgnus], (*greatness*); *extent, size*; also, *great size, great extent*, especially I. 39, 6, II. 30, 4; māgnitūdō animi, *great courage*, II. 27, 5; māgnitūdō venti, *high wind*, V. 43, 2—and so perhaps some other phrases.

māgnopere, adv. [contracted from māgnō opere by elision of final -ō], (*with great effort*); *earnestly; greatly*, IV. 26, 1, VII. 57, 4; *especially*, I. 13, 5.

māgnus, a, um, compar. māior, super. māximus, *great; loud*, IV. 25, 4; *gen. of price, of great weight, great*, IV. 21, 7; māgnū interesse, *be of great importance*, V. 4, 3, VI. 1, 3; māior nātū, (*greater with respect to birth*), *older*; *masculine plural as substantive, elders*, II. 13, 2, 28, 1, IV. 13, 4; māiōrēs (with nātū understood), *ancestors*, I. 13, 6, 14, 7, III. 8, 4, IV. 7, 3, etc.; māximum iter, *forced march*.

māiestās, tātis, f. [māior], (*superiority*); *dignity, majesty, greatness*.

māior, us, compar. of māgnus.

malacia, ae, f. [μαλακία], *calm*.

male, adv., compar. pēius, super.

pessimē [malus], *badly, male rē gestā*, *abl. abs.*, (*a thing having been badly carried on*), *on account of bad management*.

malefocium, i, n. [male, faciō], (*wrong-doing*); *harm, outrage, mischief*.

mālō, mālīe, mālui, — [magis, more, volō, wish], (*wish one thing more than another*), *prefer*.

malus, a, um, compar. pēior, super. pessimus, *bad, worse, worst*; pēius, *a worse fate*, I. 31, 10.

mālus, i, m., (*an upright pole*); *mast*, III. 14, 6; *corner timber*, VII. 22, 5.

mandātum, i, n. [*neut. of perf. part. of mandō, order*], (*a thing ordered*); *plu. instructions; messages*, I. 37, 1.

mandō, 1st conj. [manus, dō], (*put into some one's hands*), *intrust; fugae sē mandāre*, (*intrust one's self to flight*), *take to flight, take flight; charge, commission, direct*, I. 30, 5, 47, 5, III. 11, 2, IV. 21, 2, etc.

Mandubii, ōrum, m. plu., a small tribe, probably dependents of the Aedui, north of their territory; chief city Alesia, where Vercingetorix made his last stand in the seventh year of the war; VII. 68, 1, etc.

Mandubracius, i, m., a chief of the Trinobantes, a British tribe, who was loyal to Caesar, V. 20, 1, etc.

māne, adv., *in the morning*.

maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsūm, *remain, stay*; in eō manēre, *abide by that*, I. 36, 5.

manipulāris, e [manipulus], (*belonging to a manipule*); as subst. w. suus, *men of one's own manipule*.

manipulus, i, m. [manus, hand, pleō,

fill], (a handful, i.e. of 'hay, because the standard of the manipule originally bore a handful of hay tied to a pole); *maniple*, one-third of a cohort, the smallest division of the Roman army; roughly, like our *platoon*.

Mānlius, *l*, *m.*, *Lucius Manlius*, Roman proconsul, defeated in Aquitania, B.C. 78, by Hirtuleius, the quaestor of Sertorius, the exiled Roman general, who held his own in Spain for several years; III. 20, 2. **mānsuō-faciō**, *facere*, *fēci*, *factum*, *pass.* **mānsuō-fīō**, *fieri*, *factus sum* [*manus* and *suō*, stem of *suōscō*, *become accustomed*], (make accustomed to the hand), *tame*.

mānsuētūdō, *dīnis*, *f.* [*manus*, *hand*, *suō*, stem of *suōscō*, *become accustomed*], (state of being accustomed to the hand; tameness, gentleness); *kindness*.

manus, *ūs*, *f.*, *hand*; **nātūrā et manū**, *naturally and artificially*; **per manūs**, *from hand to hand*; **manū**, *vigorously*, V. 7, 8; *band of men*, *force*, I. 37, 4, II. 2, 4, 5, 2, III. 11, 4, etc.

Maroomanī, *ōrum*, *m. plu.*, a German people, of whose location nothing is certainly known, I. 51, 2.

Mārcus, *l*, *m.*, a Roman *praenomen*. **mare**, *is*, *n.*, *the sea*; **mare Ōceanus**, *the ocean*.

maritimus, *a*, *um* [**mare**], (pertaining to the sea); *maritime*, II. 34, V. 11, 8; *w. pars*, *reglō*, *the coast*; *w. ōra*, *shore*; *w. aestus*, *tide*; *w. rēs*, *navigation*.

Mārius, *l*, *m.*, *Gaius Marius*, consul seven times, conqueror of the

Cimbri and Teutones 106 B.C., opponent of the aristocratic party, died 80 B.C. I. 40, 5.

Mārs, **Mārtis**, *m.*, *Mars*, the Roman god of war; by metonymy, **aequō Mārte**, *on even terms*, VII. 19, 3.

mās, *maris*, *adj.*, *male*. *Masc.* as *subst.*, *the male*, VI. 26, 3.

matara, *ae*, *f.* [Celtic], *pike*, Celtic *javelin*.

māter, *tris*, *f.* [cf. *μήτηρ* and *mother*], *mother*; **māter familiae** (old gen. *familiās*), *matron*; **soror ex mātře**, *half-sister*, having the same mother.

māteria, *ae*, *f.*, *timber*, *lumber*.

māterior, *1st conj.* [**māteria**], *get timber*, *get wood*.

Mātiscō, *ōnis*, *f.*, a town of the Aedui, VII. 90, 7.

mātrimōnium, *l*, *n.* [**māter**], (motherhood); *marriage*; *in mātrimōnium*, *in marriage*; *in mātrimōnium dūcere*, (lead into marriage), *marry*, used always of the husband.

Matrona, *ae*, *f.*, the *Marne*, tributary of the Seine on the left bank, dividing Belgic from Celtic Gaul, I. 1, 2.

mātūrō, *adv.*, *compar.* **mātūrius**, *super.* **mātūrrimē** [**mātūrus**], *early*. **mātūrēscō**, **mātūrēscere**, **mātūrui**, — [**mātūrus**], *begin to ripen*.

mātūrō, *1st conj.* [**mātūrus**], (make ripe); *hasten*.

mātūrus, *a*, *um*, *ripe*; *early*, IV. 20, 1.

māximē, *super.* of *magis*.

māximus, *a*, *um*, *super.* of *māgnus*.

Māximus, *l*, *m.*, a Roman *cognomen*, I. 46, 2.

medeor, medēri, —, (heal); *remedy*, w. dat.

mediocris, cre [**medius**], (medium); *moderate; ordinary*, III. 20, 1. (**nōn, no.**)

mediocriter, adv. [**mediocris**], (moderately), *to an ordinary degree*. (**nōn, no.**)

Mediomatrici, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe north of the Vosges mountains, between the Sequani and Treveri, IV. 10, 3, VII. 75, 3.

mediterrāneus, a, um [**medius**, *middle, terra, land*], *inland; w. regiōnēs, the interior*.

medius, a, um, adj. having partitive force, *the middle of, the midst of*. **in mediō colle**, *half way up the hill*; **medius utriusque**, *midway between the two*.

Meldi, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in north central Gaul, exact location uncertain, V. 5, 2.

melior, us, compar. of **bonus**.

melius, adv., compar. of **bene**.

membrum, i, n., *limb*.

memini, meminisse, —, defective, *remember*.

memoria, ae, f. [**memor, mindful**], *memory, recollection; record*, VII. 25, 1; **memoriam dēpōnere**, w. gen., (lay aside the memory), *forget*; **memoriam retinēre** w. gen., (retain the memory of), *remember*; **memoriā tenēre**, (hold in memory), *remember*; **nostrā memoriā**, (within our memory), *in our day*; **memoriā patrum (nostrōrum)**, (within the memory of our fathers), *a generation ago*; **suprā hanc memoriā**, (above this memory), *before this generation*. (**prōdō, hand down**.)

Menapii, ōrum, m. plu., the northernmost tribe of Belgae, mostly south of the Rhine at its mouth, and extending to the Scheldt, north of the Nervii and Eburones, II. 4, 9, etc.

mendācium, i, n. [**mendax, lying**, from **mentior, lie**], *lie*.

mēns, mentis, f., *mind*, especially the intellect, as distinguished from the emotions and the will; often in the sense of a *state of mind*, as in common Eng. phrase, "*change one's mind*," e.g. I. 41, 1, VII. 64, 7; *resolution*, III. 19, 6.

mēnsis, is, m., *month*.

mēnsūra, ae, f. [**metior, measure**], (a measuring), *measurement; measure*. **ex aquā mēnsūra**, (measure from water), *clepsydra, water-clock*, an instrument for measuring time by means of water escaping from a graduated basin; **mēnsūra itinerum**, (measurement of journeys), *how to measure distances*, i.e. in units of distance.

mentiō, ōnis, f. [cf. **memini**, etc.], *mention*.

mercātor, ōris, m. [**mercor, trade**], *trader, peddler*.

mercātūra, ae, f. [**mercor, trade**], *trade, traffic, commerce*.

mercēs, ēdis, f. [**merx, merchandise**, from **mereō, deserve**], (what is deserved), *pay, wages*; **mercēde arcessere**, (summon by promise of pay), *hire*.

Mercurius, i, m. [**merx, merchandise**], *Mercury*, god of trade, patron of traders and thieves; also of eloquence, hence messenger of the gods, etc., VI. 17, 1.

mereō, **merēre**, **merui**, **meritum**, also dep., *deserve; serve*, VII. 17, 5.

meridiānus, **a**, **um** [**meridiēs**], of *midday*; **meridiānum tempus**, *noon*.

meridiēs, **diēs**, **m**, [for **medi-diēs**, from **medius**, **diēs**], *midday, noon*; from the position of the sun at noon, *south*, V. 13, 1.

meritum, **i**, **n**, [neut. of perf. part. of **mereō**, as subst.], (a thing deserved), *merit* if good, *fault* if bad; *deserts*; plu. *services*.

meritus, **a**, **um**, part. of **mereō**.

Messāla, **ae**, **m**, *Marcus Valerius Messala*, consul 61 B.C., I. 2, 1, 36, 4.

-met, enclitic syllable, adding emphasis to a pronoun.

mētiōr, **mētiri**, **mēnsus sum**, *measure (out)*.

Mētiosēdum, **i**, **n**, a town of the Senones, upon an island in the Seine, twenty-eight miles above Paris, now *Melun*, VII. 58, 2, etc.

Mētius, **i**, **m**, *Marcus Metius*, sent to Ariovistus by Caesar as an envoy, I. 47, 4. 53, 8.

metō, **metere**, **messui**, **messum**, *reap, harvest, cut and bring in*.

metus, **ūs**, **m**, *fear, anxiety, apprehension*.

meus, **a**, **um**, voc. sing. masc. **mi**, gen. plu., masc. and neut., sometimes **meum**, poss. pron. of the first pers. sing. [**me**, stem of oblique cases of **ego**, **I**], *my (mine)*.

miles, **militis**, **m**, *soldier*.

milia, **i****um**, see **mille**.

militāris, **o** [**miles**], (relating to a soldier), *military*; **rēs militāris**, *military affairs, the art of war*,

warfare, military operations; signa militāria, battle-standards.

militia, **ae**, **f**, w. loc. **militiae** [**miles**], *military service; warfare, war*, VI. 14, 1.

mille, indeclin. card. adj., abbreviation **M**, *a thousand*; sometimes subst.; plu. always as subst., **milia**, **miliūm**, **n**, *thousands, thousand*, followed by gen. of the whole (partitive gen.); e.g. **duo milia passuum**, (two thousands of paces), *two thousand paces, two miles*.

Minerva, **ae**, **f**, goddess of wisdom and of the arts, VI. 17, 2.

minimē, adv., super. of **parum**.

minimus, **a**, **um**, super. of **parvus**.

minor, **us**, compar. of **parvus**.

Minucius, **i**, **m**, *Lucius Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's prominent officers, but probably not a *legatus*, VI. 29, 4. VII. 90, 5.

minuō, **minuere**, **minui**, **minūtum** [**minus**, *less*], *lessen*; of the tide, *ebb*.

minus, adv., compar. of **parum**.

miror, 1st conj. [**mirus**], *wonder*, I. 32, 2; *wonder at*, V. 54, 5.

mirus, **a**, **um**, *wonderful; strange*, I. 34, 4; **mirum in modum**, (in a wonderful manner), *wonderfully*.

miser, **misera**, **miserum**, compar. **miserior**, super. **miserrimus**, *wretched*.

miseriordia, **ae**, **f**, [**miseriōra**, *tender-hearted*, from **miser**, and **cor**, *heart*], *pity, compassion*. (**ūtor**, *take*; **recipiō**, *admit*.)

miseror, 1st conj. [**miser**], *bewail, lament, deplore*.

missus, **a**, **um**, part. of **mittō**.

missus, **ūs**, **m**, used in abl. sing.

only [mittō], (a sending); *missū Caesaris*, upon a mission for Caesar.

mitius, *mitissimō*, adv., in compar. and super. [*mitis*, mild, mellow], (more) mildly.

mittō, *mittere*, *misī*, *missum*, send; throw, hurl, I. 25, 2, III. 4, 2, 5, 3, etc. (In comp. *mittō* often = let go, allow to go.)

mōbilis, e [for *movibilis*, from *moveō*], (capable of being moved), fickle, changeable, easily influenced.

mōbilitās, *tātis*, f. [*mōbilis*], (capability of being moved), mobility, quickness, speed; of mind, fickleness, changeability.

mōbiliter, adv. [*mōbilis*], quickly, easily.

moderor, 1st conj. [*modus*], check, IV. 33, 3; control.

modestia, ae, f. [*modestus*, keeping due measure], self-control, moderation.

modo, adv. [shortened abl. of *modus*], (by a measure); only; only recently, VI. 39, 2; just, just now, VI. 43, 4.

modus, I, m. (measure); amount, VI. 22, 2; size, V. 1, 2; manner, way; *ēius modi*, *hūius modi*, sometimes written as one word, (of this kind), of such kind, such; *sublicae modō*, (in the manner of a pile), like a pile; *ōrātōris modō*, as an envoy; *ad hunc modum*, in this way; *quem ad modum*, (in what way), as, I. 36, 1, how, VII. 43, 5. *moenia*, ium, n. plu. [cf. *mūnīō*, fortify], walls (for defence).

mōlēs, is, f., (a huge structure), dike.

molestō, adv. [*molestus*, troublesome], with vexation; *molestō*

ferre, (bear with vexation), be annoyed, be vexed.

mōlimentum, I, n. [*mōlior*, exert one's self, from *mōlēa*], exertion, trouble.

mōlitus, a, um, part. of *mōlē*.

mōlliō, *mollire*, *mollivī* or *mollī*, *mollitum* [*mollis*, soft], (soften); make easier.

mollis, e, (soft); smooth; weak, III. 19, 6.

mollitia, ae, f. [*mollis*], (softness); weakness.

mollitiās, ēi, f. [*mollis*], (softness); weakness.

mōlē, *molere*, *molui*, *molitum* [*mola*, a grindstone], grind; *molita cibāria*, (ground food-stuff), flour, meal.

mōmentum, I, n. [for *movimentum*, from *moveō*], (movement; what causes movement), weight, influence, VII. 85, 4; importance, moment, VII. 39, 3.

Mōna, ae, f., an island between Wales and Ireland, now Anglesey, V. 13, 3.

moneō, *monēre*, *monui*, *monitum*, advise.

mōns, *montis*, m., mountain, mountain range.

mora, ae, f., delay.

morātus, a, um, part. of *moror*.

morbus, I, m., sickness, disease.

Morini, *ōrum*, m. plu., a tribe of Belgae, between the Scheldt and the ocean, opposite Britain, II. 4, 9, etc. *morior*, *mori* (*moriri*), *mortuus sum*, fut. part. *moritūrus* [cf. *mors*], die.

Moritasgus, I, m., a chief of the Senones, V. 54, 2.

moror, 1st conj. [**mora**], trans. *delay*, intrans. *wait, delay*.

mors, **mortis**, f. [cf. **morior**], *death*.

mortuus, a, um, part. of **morior**.

mōs, **mōris**, m., *custom*.

Mōsa, ae, f., French *Meuse*, German *Maas*, a river of northern Gaul rising in the Vosges mountains, flowing northward into the *Waal* (*Vaculus*), IV. 9, 3, etc.

mōtus, ūs, m. [**moveō**], (a moving); of ships, etc., *motion*; of oars, *action*; *disturbance, uprising*.

moveō, **movēre**, **mōvi**, **mōtum**, *move*; w. *castra*, *break*; fig. *influence*, VII. 76, 2.

muller, **mulleris**, f., *woman*.

müllō, **ōnis**, m. [**mūlus**], *mule-driver*.

multitūdō, **dinis**, f. [**multus**], *number*; *large number*; *the common people, general body of soldiers*.

multō, 1st conj. [sometimes **mulotō**; **multa**, **mulota**, a *fine*], (punish); *deprive*, VII. 54, 4.

multō, **multum**, see **multus**.

multus, a, um, *much*, plu. *many*; **multō diē**, *in broad day, or late in the day*. **multum**, n., and **multō**, n., used respectively as adverbial acc. and abl. of degree of difference, to take the place of a corresponding adverb, which does not exist in separate form for this word, *much*.

Compar., in sing. as subst. only, **plūs**, **plūris**, n., no dat. or abl., plu. **plūrēs**, **plūra**, gen. **plūrium**, etc., sing. *more* (in amount), either substantively, often w. gen. of the whole, or adverbially (adverbial acc.); plu. (more in number, more

than one), *several*; *many*, comparatively; *quite a number*.

Super., **plūrimus**, a, um, sing. neut. as subst., *very much, much, a great deal*, V. 27, 2; usually plu., *very many, many*; perhaps *most*, VI. 17, 1. **plūrium**, n., used as adverbial acc., corresponding to **multum** and **plūs**, *very much*; **plūrium posse, valēre**, *be very powerful or influential*

mūlus, l, m., *mule*.

Mūnātius, l, m., *Lucius Munatius Plancus*, one of Caesar's *legati*, V. 24, 3.

mundus, l, m., *the universe*.

mūnimentum, l, n. [**mūniō**], *fortification*.

mūniō, **mūnīre**, **mūnīvi** or **mūnī**, **mūnītum** [**moenia**, *walls for defence*], (build walls), *fortify*; *protect*, I. 44, 6, II. 5, 5, VI. 5, 4; *construct*, VII. 58, 1.

mūnitiō, **ōnis**, f. [**mūniō**], (a fortifying), *fortifying*, I. 49, 3, V. 9, 8; *constructing a fortification*, V. 39, 2, 40, 2, VII. 45, 6, 48, 2; *fortification*; *strength*, I. 8, 4; *being fortified*, VII. 14, 9, 20, 3.

mūnus, **mūneris**, n., *task, service*; *gift*, I. 43, 4. **mūnera amplissimō mittere**, (send gifts most generously), *send most generous gifts*.

mūrālis, e [**mūrus**], relating to a wall, mural); **mūrālis fax**, a strong hook on the end of a stout pole, for tearing down a wall, *wall-hook, hook for tearing down walls*; **mūrālia pila**, spears for use when fighting from a wall, *heavy spears*.

mūrus, l, m., *wall*, a general term.

mūsculus, l, m. [dimin. of **mūs**,

mouse], (a little mouse); a small, strong *shed*, under which soldiers could work while conducting siege operations.

mutilus, a, um [μήτιλος, μίτυλος], (maimed, mutilated); **mutilus oornibus**, abl. of specification, (mutilated in respect to their horns), either *without horns* or *short-horned*.

N

nactus, a, um, part. of **nanciscor**.

nam, coörd. conj., *for*, introducing a reason considered to be more evident than **quod**; as enclitic, appended to interrogative word adding an idea of doubt as to a thing's possibility, scarcely translatable, II. 30, 4.

Nannēsius, i, m., an envoy sent by the Helvetians to Caesar, I. 7, 3.

Nannetēs, um, m. plu., a tribe upon the western coast of Gaul, north of the Loire, III. 9, 10.

nam-que, conj., (and—for), *for*; an omission is always implied, as "and (this is so), for," "and (this occurred with good reason), for."

nanciscor, nancisci, nactus (nactus) sum, (get), *come upon, find*.

Nantuātēs, um, m. plu., a tribe on both sides of the River Rhone above Lake Geneva, III. 1, 1, etc.

Narbō, ōnis, m., the chief city of the Roman province (*Gallia transalpina*), on the Mediterranean, now *Narbonne*, III. 20, 2, VII. 7, 2, 4.

nāscor (for **gnāscor**), **nāsci, nātus sum**, *be born; be found*, of metals, V. 12, 5, of wild animals, VI. 25, 5; of domestic animals, *be bred, be raised*, IV. 2, 2; of a hill, *rise*, II.

18, 2; *arise*, VI. 22, 3; *cause*, VII. 43, 5; *originate*, V. 12, 1.

Nasua, ae, m., one of two chiefs, brothers, leaders of the Suebi, I. 37, 3.

nātālis, e [nātus], *relating to birth; diēs nātālis, birthday*.

nātiō, ōnis, f. [nāscor], (birth); *race, nation*; of divisions of Gaul, *state, tribe*.

nātīvus, a, um [nātus], (relating to birth), *natural*.

nātūra, ae, f. [nāscor], (birth); (natural constitution), *nature*, VI. 7, 7, 26, 3, 43, 5; abl., (by nature), *naturally; character*.

nātūs, ūs, m. [nāscor], *birth; māior nātū*, used as compar. of *senex*, (greater by birth), *older*, plu. *māiorēs nātū*, *elders, old men*, super. *māximus nātū*.

nauta, ae, m. [for nāvita, from nāvis, cf. ναύτης], *sailor*.

nauticus, a, um [nauta; cf. ναυτικός], (pertaining to ships or sailors), *nautical, naval*; **rēs nauticae**, *naval affairs, nautical matters, navigation, seamanship*.

nāvālia, e [nāvis], *naval, nautical*; **nāvālia pūgna**, *sea-fight*; **nāvālia castra**, *camp on the beach*, to protect the ships.

nāvicula, ae, f. [dim. of nāvis], *small boat, boat*.

nāvigātiō, ōnis, f. [nāvigō], *navigation, sailing; voyage*, V. 23, 3.

nāvigium, i, n. [nāvigō], (that which sails); *ship, vessel*; **speculātōrium nāvigium**, *picket-boat*; **vectoris gravibusque nāvigis**, *though their ships were transports and (therefore) heavy*, abl. abs.

nāvigō, 1st conj. [**nāvis**; **agō**, *drive*], (drive a ship), *sail*.

nāvis, **is**, f. [cf. **vaūs**], *ship, boat*.

nāvis longa, *war-ship*; **nāvis one-rāria**, *transport*.

nāvō, 1st conj. [(g)**nāvus**, *busy*], (work busily), *accomplish*; **operam nāvāre**, (succeed in one's effort), *do one's best*.

-ne, interrogative enclitic particle used when there is no other interrogative word in the sentence, and implying nothing as to answer expected; in direct question translated merely by making sentence interrogative, VII. 77, 10; in simple indirect question, *whether*, V. 54, 5; in disjunctive question, **-ne —an**, *whether—or*. **velint-ne**, *whether they wished to do so (or not)*, V. 27, 9.

nē, adv., *not*, only in phrase **nē—quidem**, *not—even*, emphasizing the word between.

nē, subord. conj., in purpose clauses, *lest, that—not, in order that—not*; as negative of a subjunct. in ind. dis. representing an imper. of dir. dis., I. 13, 5, 7, 26, 6, II. 31, 4, etc.; after verb of fearing, *that*.

neō, form of **neque**.

necessārius, **a, um** [**necesse**], *necessary*; *critical*, I. 16, 6; *sufficient* I. 39, 3; **rēs necessāria**, *urgent matter*, I. 17, 6, plu. *necessaries, necessities*, VII. 66, 5. Masc. as subst., *close friend, friend*, I. 11, 4. Abl. sing. neut. as adv., *of necessity; necessarily*, III. 14, 7, 29, 2.

necesse, indeclin. adj., *necessary*; always **necesse est** (or similar form), w. acc. and infin. as subject; best

translated adverbially, *necessarily*; e.g. **necesse est eōs paenitēre**, (it is necessary that they repent), *they necessarily repent*, IV. 5, 3; **quod necesse erat accidere**, *which necessarily happened*, IV. 29, 3.

necessitās, tātis, f. [**necesse**], *necessity*; w. **temporia**, *urgency*; *interest*, VII. 89, 1.

necessitūdō, dinis, f. [**necesse**], *close relationship*.

neo-ne, conj. and adv., *or not*; see **-ne**.

necō, 1st conj., *put to death*; **ignī necāre**, *burn at the stake*.

nēo-ubi, subord. conj. and adv. [**nē**; (c)**ubi**, *where*], *that nowhere*.

nefārius, **a, um** [**nefās**], *abominable, awful*.

nefās, indeclin. noun [**ne, not, fās**, *right, spoken by divine decree, from for, fārī, speak*], *crime*.

neglegō, neglegere, neglēxi, neglēctum [**neo, legō**], (not choose), *disregard, neglect*.

negō, 1st conj., *deny*; used to introduce a negative sentence of ind. dis., the negative being incorporated into the introductory verb, from which it should be separated in translation; e.g. **negat sē posse dare**, (he denies that he can give), *he says that he cannot give*; w. dir. obj. and dat., *deny, refuse*.

negōtior, 1st conj. [**negōtium**], *do, carry on, or transact business*.

negōtium, **i, n**. [**neo; otium, leisure**], *business*, I. 34, 4; *work*, V. 2, 3; *movement*, VII. 61, 2; *action*, V. 33, 1, elsewhere *trouble, difficulty*. **negōtiō dēistere**, (stand down from the matter), *retreat from*

the position he had taken, I. 45, 1; **negōtium cōficere**, (finish a matter), *end matters*; **negōtium dare** w. dat., (give a task), *charge*.

Nemetēs, um, m. plu., a German tribe that crossed the Rhine under the protection of Ariovistus and fought with him against Caesar; what became of the survivors after the defeat of the former is uncertain; I. 51, 2, VI. 25, 2.

nēmō, gen. supplied by **nūllius**, dat. **nēmīnī**, acc. **nēmīnem**, abl. supplied by **nūllō**, **nūllā**, c. [**nō**, **homō**], *no one, nobody*.

nē-quāquam, adv. [**nē**; **quāquam**, abl. of **quisquam**, *any, sc. viā*], (not in any way), *by no means*.

ne-que, nec [**nē**], conj., *nor, and—not*; **neque—neque**, *neither—nor*.

nē-qui-quam, adv. [**nē**; **qui-quam**, old abl. of **quisquam**], (not to any purpose), *without hope of success*.

Nervius, a, um [**Nervius**], *relating to the Nervii*; w. **proellum**, *with the Nervii*.

Nervius, l, m., *one of the Nervii*; masc. plu., *the Nervii*, a particularly warlike tribe of Belgae, west of the Scheldt, II. 15, 3, etc.

nervus, l, m. [cf. **νεῦρον**], (any cord of the body); *nerve*, VI. 21, 4; *strength*, I. 20, 3.

neu, form of **nōve**.

neuter, tra, trum, gen. **neutrius**, dat. **neutrī** [**nē**; **uter**, indef., *either*], *neither*; plu. used of two parties.

nē-ve, neu, cōrd. and subord. conj. combined, (or that not) *and (that) not*. (**-que, et**, following, is best translated *but*, to avoid confusion).

nex, necis, f., (violent) *death*.

nihil, indeclin. noun [**nē**; **hilum**, *trifle*], *nothing*; often w. gen. of the whole, e.g. **nihil reliquī**, (nothing of left), *nothing left*, I. 11, 5; **nihil vinī**, *no wine*, II. 15, 4; used adverbially (adverbial acc.), *not at all*, *not—at all*, or merely emphatic *not*; **nōn nihil**, (NOT not at all), *to some extent, somewhat*.

(**nihilum**), **nihilī**, abl. **nihilō** [**nihil**], *nothing*; in Bel. Gal. only in abl. of degree of difference, (by nothing), *none*; **nihilō minus**, **nihilō setius**, (none the less), *nevertheless*.

nīmius, a, um [**nimis**, adv., *too much*], (too great), *excessive*.

nisi, subord. conj. [**nē**, **sī**], *if not*, I. 44, 11, V. 1, 8, VI. 16, 3, VII. 19, 5, 85, 3, 88, 6; *unless*; it negatives the entire protasis of a conditional sentence, while **sī nōn** negatives a single word; also w. many other expressions than conditional clauses, *unless; except, unless*, IV. 24, 2, VI. 18, 3, 20, 3, etc.; *except that*, V. 13, 4.

Nitlobrogēs, um, m. plu., a tribe in the extreme southern part of Gaul, on both sides of the Garonne river, VII. 7, 2.

nītor, nīti, nīxus sum (usually in lit. sense) or **nīsus sum** (usually in fig. sense), (rest, press upon); *strive; rely (on)*, I. 13, 6; w. abl. of means.

nīx, nīvis, f., gen. plu. **nīvium**, *snow*.

nōbīlis, e [cf. **nōscō**, *know*], (known, noted); *well-known, renowned*, VII. 77, 15; *high-born, of noble birth, noble, aristocratic*; plu. as subst., *men of high rank, nobles*.

nōbilitās, tātis, f. [nōbilitas], (nobility); abstract, **summa nōbilitās**, *the highest rank*, II. 6, 4; elsewhere collective, (the nobility as a class), *the nobles*.

noceña, nocentis, pres. part. of noceō.

noceō, noceere, nocui, nocitum, (do harm), *injure*, always w. dat., so impers. in pass. Plu. of pres. part. as subst., (those who do harm), *the guilty*, VI. 9, 7.

noctū, adv. [old abl. of 4th decl. noun, from **nox**], *at night, by night, in the night*.

nocturnus, a, um [nox], *of the night, night, at night*.

nōdus, i, m., (knot), *enlargement*.

nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, — [nē (nōn, in compound forms), **volō**, *wish, be willing*], *be unwilling, not wish*.

nōlite exspoliāre, (be unwilling to deprive), *do not deprive*, VII. 77, 9.

nōmen, minis, n. [nōscō], (a means of knowing); *name; designation, name*, III. 2, 5, VII. 77, 3; **suō nōmine**, *on his (their) own account*.

nōminātīm, adv. [nōminō], (name by name); *by name*, II. 25, 2; *individually; in detail*, I. 29, 1.

nōminō, 1st conj. [nōmen], (name), *call*, VII. 73, 9; *mention*.

nōn, adv., *not*.

nōnāgintā, indeclin. card. adj., *ninety*.

nōn-dum, adv., *not yet*.

nōnus, a, um [for **novēnus**, from **novem**], *ord. adj.*, *ninth*.

Nōrēia, ae, f., the chief town of the Norici, I. 5, 4.

Nōricus, a, um, *of the Norici*, a tribe between the Danube and the

summits of the Alps, I. 5, 4; *fem. as subst.*, *one of the Norici*, I. 53, 4.

nōs, plu. of ego.

nōscō, nōscere, nōvi, (nōtum) [for **gnōscō**], (come to know); *perf. know, pluperf. knew, etc.; perf. part. known, familiar; being known, being familiar*, IV. 26, 2; *super. perfectly familiar*, IV. 24, 3. **nōs-met**, *emphatic form of nōs, met* being a strengthening enclitic.

noster, tra, trum [nōs], *our*; *masc. plu. as subst.*, *our men, our soldiers, our troops*.

nōtitia, ae, f. [nōtus], *knowledge*.

nōtus, a, um, part. of nōscō.

novem, indeclin. card. adj., *nine*.

Noviodūnum, i, n., (1) a town of the Aedui upon the northern bank of the Loire, now *Nevers*, VII. 55, 1, 5; (2) a town of the Bituriges, in the northern part of their territory, now possibly *Villate*, VII. 12, 2, 14, 1; (3) the chief town of the Suessiones, now probably *Soissons*, II. 12, 1.

novitās, tātis, f. [novus], (newness), *novelty, strangeness*.

novus, a, um, no compar., *new*; w. *copiae*, *fresh*; *super. novissimus, last*, IV. 16, 7; **novissimum āgmen**, (the newest part of a marching column), *the rear, rear-guard*; so *masc. plu. of super. as subst.*, *those in the rear, the rear-guard*; **novae res**, *change of government, revolution*; **nova imperia**, (new forms of government), *revolution*.

nox, noctis, f., *gen. plu. noctium, night*; **primā nocte**, (in the first part of the night), *as soon as it was dark*; **multā nocte**, *late at night*.

noxia, ae, f. [*noceō, injure*], *crime*.
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, (veil one's self), *marry*; used of the woman.

nūdō, 1st conj. [nūdus], (make bare); *expose*; *leave vacant*, VII. 70, 7; w. abl. of separation, *strip* (of).

nūdus, a, um, naked, bare; *unprotected*, I. 25, 4.

nūllus, a, um, gen. nūllius, dat. nūlli [nō, ūllus], (not any), *no*, adj.; as subst., sing. *no one*, plu. *none*.
nōn nūllus [often written as one word], as adj. or as subst., *some*.

num, interrog. particle, placed at beginning of a question to show that the answer "No" is expected. In I. 14, 3, it is untranslatable by any separate word, but contributes indignant emphasis to *posse*, "COULD he?"

nūmen, minis, n. [nuō, nod], (nod; divine will); *power, divinity*.

numerus, i, m., number; amount; account, VI. 13, 1; abl. *numerō*, or in *numerō*, w. gen., (in the number of), *as*.

Numidae, ārum, m. plu. [nomās, nomādos, nomad, wanderer], *Numidians*, inhabitants of northern Africa, used as light-armed auxiliaries by the Romans, since they were skilful archers; II. 7, 1, etc.

nummus, i, m., a coin; prō nummō, *as money*.

numquam, adv. [*nō*; *umquam*, *ever*], *never*.

nunc, adv., *now*.

nūntiō, 1st conj. [nūntius], *announce, report*; *direct*, IV. 11, 6.

nūntius, a, um [for *noventius*, from *novus*, which accounts for the

ū before *nt*], (bringing news); masc. as subst., *messenger; message; news, tidings*.

nuper, adv., super. *nuperrimō*, *recently*.

nūsqum, adv. [*nō*; *ūsqum*, *anywhere*], *nowhere*.

nūtus, ūs, m. [nuō, nod], *nod*; ad *nūtum* aut ad *voluntātem*, "at his nod and beck"; *bidding, command*, IV. 23, 5; *gesture, sign*, V. 43, 6.

O

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of, for*; in Bel. Gal. always w. *rem, rēs, causam, causā*, and a rel. or demonstrative pro., *on this account, for this reason*, etc.; *quam ob rem*, (for what reason), *why*, I. 50, 4, *quam* here being interrogative. In comp., *toward, against*.

ob-aerātus, a, um [aes, aeris, cop-per money], having money against one), *in debt*. Masc. as subst., (one in debt), *debtor*.

ob-dūō, dūcere, dūxi, duotum (lead across a path), *construct at right angles*.

ob-īō, ire, (īvi) īi, itum, (go against, meet), *attend to*.

ob-īcīō (pronounced as if spelled *ohjiciō*), *loere, īcī, īctum*, (throw against); *throw up*, I. 26, 3; *expose*, I. 47, 3; perf. pass., *be in the way; be situated close by*, V. 13, 3; perf. part., *opposite*, V. 13, 6.

obitus, ūs, m. [obeō, perish], *destruction*.

oblātus, a, um, part. of *offerō*.

obliquē, adv. [*obliquus*], *obliquely, slanting*.

obliquus, a, um, *oblique, slanting, cross.*

ob-liviscor, livisci, litus sum, *forget, w. gen.*

ob-secrō, 1st conj. [sacer, sacred], *entreat (by what is sacred), implore, beseech.*

obsequentia, ae, f. [obsequēns, part. of ob-sequor, yield], *compliance.*

ob-servō, 1st conj., (watch for), *watch, VII. 16, 3; follow, heed, I. 45, 3, V. 35, 1; reckon, VI. 18, 2.*

obse, sidis, c. [obsideō], *(one who sits over against an agreement), hostage.*

obsessiō, ōnis, f. [obsideō], *siege; state of siege, VI. 36, 2.*

obsessus, a, um, *part. of obsideō.*

ob-sideō, sidēre, sēdī, sessum, *(sit over against), besiege; w. viam, blockade, guard.*

obsidiō, ōnis, f. [obsideō], *siege; pressure, IV. 19, 4.*

ob-signō, 1st conj. [signum, seal], *(put a seal upon), seal.*

ob-sistō, sistere, stitī, stitum, *(stand against), withstand.*

obstinātō, adv. [obstinātus, part. of ob-stinō, from ob-stō, stand against], *persistently, steadily.*

obstrictus, a, um, *part. of obstringō.*

ob-stringō, stringere, strinxī, strictum, *(bind to anything), bind; put under obligations, I. 9, 3.*

ob-struō, struere, struxī, strūctum, *(build against), barricade, block up.*

ob-temperō, 1st conj. [tempus, see temperō], *(comply with), obey, submit to, w. dat.*

ob-tēstor, 1st conj. [tēstis, witness],

(call the gods to witness against), entreat solemnly, implore.

ob-tineō, tinēre, tinui, tentum [teneō], *hold (against); constitute, I. 1, 5; of territory, dwell in, inhabit. obtuli, perf. of offerō.*

ob-veniō, venire, vēni, ventum, *(come against), encounter, attack. II. 23, 1; be assigned.*

ob-viam, adv. [acc. fem. sing. of ob-vius, adj., opposite, from ob, via, modifying an unexpressed viam, a cognate acc.], *to meet.*

oc-, *form of ob in comp. before c.*

occāsiō, ōnis, f. [occidō], *(a falling upon), opportunity.*

occāsus, ūs, m. [occidō], *(a falling upon); setting; occāsus sōlis, (setting of the sun), sunset; west, I. 1, 7, IV. 28, 2.*

oc-cidō, oldere, cidi, cāsum [cadō], *(fall against), fall, be killed. Pres. part. as adj. w. sōl, (the setting sun), the west.*

oc-cidō, cidere, cidi, cisum [caedō], *(cut down), kill.*

oc-culō, culere, cului, cultum, *cover; perf. part. as adj., hidden, blind, VI. 34, 4; as subst., in occultō, in concealment; in secret, I. 32, 4; in occultum abdere, go into hiding; ex occultō insidiārī, lie in wait (and rush forth) from one's hiding place.*

occultātiō, ōnis, f. [occultō], *hiding, concealment.*

occultē, adv. [occultus], *secretly.*

occultō, 1st conj. [intensive of oc-culō, cover], *hide, conceal.*

occultus, a, um, *part. of occultō.*

occupātiō, ōnis, f. [occupō], *occupation, employment; occupātiō rei*

públicae, public duty. (tantulārum rērum, in such trifling matters.)

oo-cupō, 1st conj. [cf. *capiō*], *take possession of, seize; cover, occupy*, II. 8, 3; perf part., *occupied, busy*, II. 19, 8, IV. 32, 5, 34, 3, V. 15, 3, VII. 22, 4.

oo-currō, *currere, cucurri or curri, cursum*, (run against); *meet*, II. 24, 1, V. 47, 3, VII. 88, 3; *rush*, III. 4, 2, VII. 24, 4, 84, 3; *encounter*, III. 6, 4, IV. 6, 1, VII. 22, 1; *engage (with)*, II. 27, 1; *find*, II. 21, 4, IV. 26, 1; w. *rēbus* (conditions), *face*, I. 33, 4; impers., *arrange*, VII. 16, 3; w. ind. dis., *rush*, VII. 85, 2.

Ōceanus, 1, m. [*Ὠκεανός*], the Atlantic Ocean.

Ocelum, 1, m., "the most western town of the nearer province," probably on the site of modern *Avigliana*, I. 10, 5.

octāvus, a, um [*octō*], ord. adj., *eighth*.

octingenti, ae, a [*octō*, centum], card. adj., *eight hundred*.

octō, indeclin. card. adj., *eight*.

Octodūrus, 1, m., a town of the Veragri, near the confluence of the Rhone and the Dranse, upon the site of *Martigny*, III. 1, 4.

octōgēni, ae, a [*octō*], distrib. adj., *eighty (each)*.

octōgintā [*octō*], indeclin. card. adj., *eighty*.

octōni, ae, a [*octō*], distrib. adj., *eight each*, VII. 75, 3; *eight*.

oculus, 1, m., *eye*.

ōdi, *ōdisse, ōsurus*, defective, lacking pres. system and pass., *hate*.

odium, 1, n. [*ōdi*], *hatred*.

of-, form of *ob* in comp. before *f*.
of-fendō, *fendere, fendi, fēnsus*, (strike against), *hurt, offend (animus, feelings)*, I. 19, 2; impers., *offendi potest*, (it can be harmed), *disaster can occur*, VI. 36, 2.

offēnsiō, *ōnis*, f. [*offendō*], *hurting*, w. objective gen. translated as object.
of-ferō, *ferre, ob-tuli, ob-lātum*, (bear against); *offer; expose*, IV. 12, 6, VII. 77, 5; *do*, VI. 42, 3; *take*, II. 21, 1, VII. 87, 5; pass. w. dat., *fall into one's hands*, IV. 13, 6.

officiū, 1, n. [for *opi-ficiū*, from *opus, work, faciō, do*], *service, duty*, IV. 1, 9; *doing one's duty*, I. 40, 10; *sense of duty*, I. 40, 14; *officiū praestāre*, *do one's duty; allegiance; plu. services*.

Olloviō, *ōnis*, m., king of the Nitiobroges, VII. 31, 5.

o(ob)-mittō, *mittere, misi, missus*, (let go by); *neglect*, II. 17, 5; *put aside*, VII. 34, 1; *drop*, VII. 88, 2.

omniō, adv. [*omnis*], *in all, altogether; w. negatives, at all*.

omnis, e, sing. usually, *every, plu. all; but sing. also all, in sense of as a whole*, e.g. I. 1, 1.

onerārius, a, um [*onus*], *of burden; nāvis onerāria, transport*.

onerō, 1st conj. [*onus*], *load*.

onus, *oneris*, n., *load*, III. 19, 2; *weight; tanta onera navium*, (so great weights of ships), *such heavy ships; cargo*, V. 1, 2.

op-, form of *ob* in comp. before *p*.
opera, ae, f. [*opus*], *exertion*, V. 11, 5; *aid, assistance, services; operam navāre*, (succeed in one's

- effort), *do one's best*; **operam dare**, *take pains*.
- opiniō, ōnis**, f. [**opīnor**, *think*], *belief, idea; appearance, impression*. III. 17, 6, 18, 1, 24, 5, 25, 1, V. 57, 4; *reputation*, II. 8, 1, 24, 4, IV. 16, 7 (twice), VI. 24, 3, VII. 59, 5, 83, 4; *expectation*, III. 3, 2, V. 48, 1, VI. 30, 1, VII. 9, 1, 56, 3; *reports*, II. 35, 1; *opinion* (ad, *for influencing*), VI. 1, 3; **omnium opiniōne**, (than the belief of all), *than any one expected*, II. 3, 1.
- oportet, oportēre, oportuit**, *impers.*, *it is necessary, it is proper, it must, it ought*; usually w. acc. and infin. or w. pass. infin. used impersonally, and to be translated by *must* or *ought* as auxiliaries; e.g. **illum venire oportet**, (it is proper that he come), *he ought to come*, I. 34, 2, etc.; **poenam sequi oportēbat**, (that the punishment should follow was proper), *the punishment would have to follow*, I. 4, 1.
- oppidānus, a, um** [**oppidum**], *of a town*; masc. plu. as subst., *townspeople*.
- oppidum, i**, n., *walled town*.
- op-pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum**, (place against); *oppose*; perf. part. *be in the field*, VI. 36, 2; *block the way*, VII. 56, 2.
- opportūnē**, adv. [**opportūnus**], *advantageously, conveniently*.
- opportunitās, tātis**, f. [**opportūnus**], *favorable character, advantage; opportunity*, III. 17, 7.
- op-portūnus, a, um** [**portus**], (before the port), *suitable, favorable, advantageous*.
- oppositus, a, um**, part. of **oppōnō**.
- op-primō, primere, pressi, pressum** [**premō**], (press against); *overwhelm; crush*; w. **inopīnantes** or **subitō**, *fall upon*.
- oppūgnātiō, ōnis**, f. [**oppūgnō**], *assault, attack; method of assault*, II. 6, 2, VII. 29, 2.
- op-pūgnō**, 1st conj. [**pūgna**, *fight*], (fight against), *attack*; of fortifications, *assault*; of extended operations, *besiege, lay siege to*.
- ops, opis**, f., nom. and dat. not used, *help, aid*; plu. *resources; strength*.
- optimē**, adv., super. of **bene**.
- optimus, a, um**, super. of **bonus**.
- optō**, 1st conj., *wish, desire*; perf. part. as adj., *welcome*.
- opus, operis**, n., *work; work of fortifying, fortifying, fortification*. **quāto opere** (often written **quantopere**), as adv., *how much, how greatly*, II. 5, 2; followed by **tantō opere** (**tantopere**), *as much as—so much*, VII. 52, 3. **tantō opere, tantopere**, *fiercely, desperately*, I. 31, 4.
- opus**, n., indeclin., *need*; **opus est**, *there is need, it is needful*, often w. abl.; I. 34, 2, 42, 5, II. 8, 5, 22, 1, III. 1, 3, V. 40, 5, VII. 54, 1. See Appendix.
- ōra, ae**, f., *coast, shore*; often like Eng., meaning *the inhabitants of the coast*.
- ōrātiō, ōnis**, f. [**ōrō**], *speech, address*.
- ōrātor, ōris**, m. [**ōrō**], *speaker*;
- ōrātōris modō**, (in the manner of an envoy), *as an envoy*.
- orbis, is**, m., *circle*; **orbis terrarum**, (circle of the lands, i.e. about the Mediterranean), *the world*.
- Orcynia, ae**, f., *the way in which*

Eratosthenes spelled the name of the great forest in Germany, VI. 24, 2.

ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., *row*, VII. 23, 5, 73, 4, 5, 8; *rank*; *layer*, *course*, V. 51, 4, VII. 23, 3; *order*, II. 11, 1, 19, 1, 22, 1; *primi ōrdinēs*, *centurions of the first rank*, V. 30, 1, VI. 7, 8.

Orgetorix, **Igis**, m., a powerful Helvetian chief, I. 2, 1 ff.

orior, oriri, ortus sum, imperf. subjunct. sometimes **ororētur**, *rise, arise, begin*; *be descended*, II. 4, 1, V. 12, 2; *be born*, VII. 77, 3; **oriēns sōl**, (rising sun), *east*; **ortā lūce**, (the light having risen), *at daybreak*.

ōrnāmentum, l, n. [ōrnō], (means of equipping); *mark of honor, distinction*.

ōrnō, 1st conj., *equip*; *honor*, VII. 33, 1; perf. part. as adj. in super., *thoroughly equipped*.

ōrō, 1st conj. [ōs], *beg, entreat*.

ortus, ūs, m. [orior], *rising*; **ortus sōlis**, (rising of the sun), *sunrise*.

ōs, ōris, n., (mouth); *face*.

os-, form of **ob** in **ostendō** and **ostentō**.

Osismi, ōrum, m. plu., one of the Aremorian tribe, in the extreme western part of Gaul, II. 34, etc.,

os-tendō, tendere, tendi, tentum, (stretch toward); *show*; as military term, *display, unmask*.

ostentātiō, ōnis, f. [ostentō], *display*; *boastfulness*, VII. 53, 3.

os-tentō, 1st conj. [intensive of **ostendō**], *display, show*; *produce*, V. 41, 4.

ōtium, l, n., *quiet*.

ōvum, l, n., *egg*.

P

P., abbreviation of **Publius**, a Roman praenomen.

pābulātiō, ōnis, f. [pābulor], *foraging*; *foraging expedition*, VII. 16, 3.

pābulātor, ōris, m. [pābulor], *forager*.

pābulor, 1st conj. [pābulum], *forage*.

pābulum, l, n. [pāscō, *feed*], (food); *fodder*, the green or dry stalks of corn or grain, as food for animals.

pācō, 1st conj. [pāx], (pacify), *subdue*.

pāctus, a, um, part. of **pangō**.

Padus, l, m., *the Po*, the great river of northern Italy, V. 24, 4.

paene, adv., *almost*.

paeniteō, paenitēre, paenitui, —, (make sorry, cause to repent); impers., **paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit**, *it repents*, w. acc. of person and gen. of thing, **eōs paenitet**, (it repents them), *they repent*.

pāgus, l, m., *district, canton*, a division of a Gallic or German tribe.

palam, adv., *openly, publicly*.

palma, ae, f. [παλάμη], (palm of the hand; palm tree); **palmae ramique**, hendiadys, *palm branches*.

palūs, ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp*.

palūster, tris, tre [palūs], *marshy, swampy*.

pandō, pandere, pandi, passum, *spread*; **passis manibus**, *with outstretched hand*; **passis capillis**, *with streaming hair*.

(**pangō, pangere**), **pepigī, pāctum**, *agree*, VII. 50, 2. Neut. of perf. part. as subst., (a thing agreed upon, method), *manner*, VII. 83, 5.

pār, paria, adj., *equal; same*; **parēs** **pūgnandī**, *equal in fighting ability*, V. 34, 2; **par atque**, *the same as*, I. 28, 5, V. 13, 2.

parātus, a, um, part. of **parō**.

parcō, adv., no super. [**parcus**, *sparing*, cf. **parcō**], *sparingly*.

parcō, **parcere**, **peperci** (**parat**), **parsurus**, *spare*; w. dat.

parēns, entis, c. [**pariō**], *parent*; *father*, V. 14, 4.

parentō, 1st conj. (no perf.) [**parēns**], (make sacrifice in honor of dead parents); *take revenge* (for), *revenge*; w. dat.

parēō, **parēre**, **parui**, —, *obey*; w. dat.

pariō, **parere**, **peperi**, **partum** (**paritūrus**), (give birth to, bring forth); *gain, acquire*.

Parisii, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe upon the Seine, whose chief city was Lutetia, now Paris; VI. 3, 4, etc.

parō, 1st conj., *prepare, get ready*; *purchase*, IV. 2, 2; *procure*, V. 55, 3; *acquire*, VI. 22, 3. Perf. part. usually as adj., *prepared, ready*; compar. *better prepared, more ready*, I. 5, 3; super. *perfectly ready, quite ready*, I. 41, 2.

pars, **partis**, f., *part*; often when acc. after preps. **ad** and **in**, and not modified by a gen., *direction*; e.g. **in utram partem**, *in which direction*, I. 12, 1; often w. **ab** and **ex**, *side*, e.g. **unā ex parte**, *on one side*, I. 2, 3.

partim, adv. [old. acc. of **pars**], *partly*.

partior, **partiri**, **partitus sum** [**pars**], *divide*.

partus, a, um, part. of **pariō**.

parum, adv. [cf. **parvus**], *too little, not enough*; compar. **minus**, *less*; super. **minimē**, *least*, II. 33, 2; *very little*, VI. 29, 1; *not at all*, III. 19, 6; **minimē saepe**, (not at all often), *very seldom*; **minimē firmus**, (least firm), *weakest*.

parvulus, a, um [dimin. of **parvus**], (very little), *slight*, V. 52, 1; **parvulum proelium**, *skirmish*; **ab parvulis**, *from boyhood*; *very young*, VI. 28, 4.

parvus, a, um, *little, small, slight*; w. **pretium**, *low*; compar. **minor**, **minus**, *less, smaller*; neut. as subst., w. part. gen., *less*; super. **minimus**, *least*; neut. acc. sing. as adv., **minimum posse**, *have very little power*, I. 20, 2.

passim, adv. [**pandō**], *in all directions*.

passus, a, um, part. of **pandō**, I. 51, 3, II. 13, 3, VII. 47, 5, 48, 3; elsewhere part. of **patior**.

passus, ūs, m. [**pandō**], *pace*, with the Romans a double step, a little less than five English feet; **mille passūs** or **passuum**, (a thousand paces), a Roman *mile*.

pate-faciō, **facere**, **fēci**, **factum**, pass. **pate-fīō**, **fieri**, **factus sum**, (make to be open), *open*.

patens, entis, part. of **pateō**.

pateō, **patēre**, **patui**, —, (lie open), *be open*, VI. 23, 9, VII. 8, 3; *extend*. Pres. part. as adj., *open*.

pater, **patris**, m. [πατήρ], *father*.

patienter, adv. [**patiēns**, pres. part. of **patior**], *patiently*.

patientia, ae, f. [**patiēns**, pres. part. of **patior**], *patient endurance*, VI.

24, 4; *patient waiting, forbearance*, VI. 36, 2.

pator, pati, passus sum, *suffer*, in any sense; *allow; endure*, II. 31, 6, VII. 30, 4; *stand*, V. 10, 2.

patrius, a, um [pater], (of a father); *ancestral*.

patrōnus, i, m. [pater], *protector, patron*.

patruus, i, m. [pater], (father's brother), *uncle on the father's side*.

paucitās, tātis, f. [paucus], (smallness), *small numbers; small number*, III. 9, 4, V. 45, 1.

paucus, a, um, rare in sing., *little, small*; plu., *few*; neut. plu. w. **respondēre**, (a few things), *briefly*.

paulatim, adv. [**paulum**], *little by little, gradually; a few at a time*, IV. 30, 2.

paulisper, adv. [**paulum, per**], (*for*) *a little while*.

paululum, adv. [acc. sing. neut. of **paululus**, dimin. of **paulus**], *very little, very slightly*.

paulus, a, um, *little*, neut. as subst., *a little*; especially **paulum** and **paulō**, adverbial acc. and abl. of degree of difference respectively, used as adverbs, *a little*.

pāx, pācis, f., *peace*.

peccō, 1st conj., (do wrong), *injure*; **peccandī causa**, *motive for injury*.

pectus, pectoris, n., *breast*.

pecūnia, ae, f. [pecus], *property*, originally reckoned in terms of cattle; *money*.

pecus, pecoris, n., *cattle; beef*, IV. 1, 8.

pedālis, e [pēs], (of a foot); *a foot thick*.

pedes, peditis, m. [pēs], *foot soldier*; plu., *foot soldiers, infantry*.

pedester, tris, tre [pedes], (*on foot*); **pedestrēs cōplae**, *infantry*; **pedestria itinera**, *approach by land*;

pedestre proelium, *land battle*.

peditātus, ūs, m. [pedes], *infantry*.

Pedius, i, m., *Quintus Pedius, a legatus of Caesar*, II. 2, 1, 11, 3.

pēior, us, compar. of **malus**.

pellis, is, f., *skin, hide*.

pellō, pellere, pepuli, pulsum, *drive*, I. 31, 11; *rout*; when connected w. **superāre**, *drive back, put to flight*.

pendō, pendere, pependi, pēnsium, (*hang, weigh out*), *pay*.

pene, prep. w. acc., *in the hands of, in the power of*.

penitus, adv., (*inwardly*), *far into the interior*.

per, prep. w. acc., *through*, in various senses as in Eng.; of space, *through, across, over, among*; of time, *through, during*; of agency, *through, by means of, by*; of cause, *through, because of*. **per sē**, *so far as he was concerned*, I. 42, 1, V. 41, 6; *on one's own responsibility*, II. 20, 4, VI. 13, 1; *alone*, V. 33, 3, VI. 12, 2, 37, 5; *in itself, of itself*, V. 49, 7; *separately*, VII. 59, 2.

In comp., *through; thoroughly* (*through and thorough* were formerly the same in Eng., and cf. Eng. "through and through"); hence often having intensive force, especially w. adj.

per-agō, agere, ēgi, āctum, (*drive through, put through*); *adjourn*.

per-angustus, a, um, *very narrow*.
per-cipio, cipere, cōpi, ceptum [capiō], (take through); *acquire*, VI. 40, 6; *win*, VII. 27, 2; *hear* of, VI. 8, 7; *hear*, V. 1, 8.
percontatio, ōnis, f. [per-contor, inquire], *inquiry*.
per-currō, currere, occurri or curri, cursum, (run through), *run along*, *run out on*.
percussus, a, um, part. of percutiō.
per-cutio, cutere, cussi, cussum [quatio], (shake through); *thrust through*, *run through*.
per-discō, discere, didici, —, (learn thoroughly), *learn by heart*.
perditus, a, um, part. of perdis.
per-dō, dere, didi, ditum [dō, dare], (put through life, destroy); *ruin*. Perf. part. as adj., *outlawed*, *desperate*; as subst., *outcast*, *outlaw*.
per-dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, (lead through); *lead safely*, III. 6, 5; *bring*, VII. 13, 2, 67, 7; of ships, *bring into harbor*; *raise*, VII. 39, 1; of earthworks, *construct*, I. 8, 1, etc.; *bring over*; *prolong*, V. 31, 3; *rēs ad extrēmum perducitur*, *things are reduced to extremities*.
perendinus, a, um [perendiō, adv., day after to-morrow, from pépav, across, diēs, day], *of the day after to-morrow*; *perendinus diēs*, *day after to-morrow*.
per-eō, ire, (ivi) ii, itum, (go through life); *perish*.
per-equitō, ist conj. [eques], *ride through*; of chariots, *drive through*.
per-exiguus, a, um, *very small*.
per-facilis, e, *very easy*.

perfectus, a, um, part. of perficiō.
per-ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, (bear through); of tidings, *bear*, *carry*, *report*, and so V. 53, 4; *endure*, *submit to*.
per-ficiō, ficerē, feci, factum [faciō], (make or do through), *finish*, I. 47, 1; *carry out*, *accomplish*, I. 3, 6, VII. 37, 6; *construct*; *arrange*, I. 9, 4.
perfidia, ae, f. [per-fidus, faithless, from fides, faith], *faithlessness*, *perfidy*, *treachery*; eādem perfidiā ūsus, (having used the same treachery), *with the same treachery*; cf. similar use of ἔχω.
per-fringō, fringere, frēgi, fractum [frangō], *break through*.
perfuga, ae, m. [perfugio], (one who has fled through the lines), *deserter*. (prō, as.)
per-fugio, fugere, fūgi, fugitum, (flee through the lines of an army), *flee*, *take refuge (with)*; *desert*, *escape*, I. 27, 3.
perfugium, i, n. [perfugio], *place of refuge*, *refuge*.
pergō, pergere, per-rēxi, per-rōtum [per, regō], (keep straight on through), *proceed directly*.
periolitor, ist conj. [periculum], *make a trial*, *make a test*, (quid, to see what), II. 8, 2; *be endangered*, VI. 34, 8; *encounter danger*, VII. 56, 1.
periculōsus, a, um [periculum], (full of danger), *dangerous*.
periculum, i, n. *trial*, *test*, I. 40, 5; *attempt*, IV. 21, 1; *danger*.
peritus, a, um, *skilled*, *experienced (in)*, *familiar (with)*; w. gen.
perlātus, a, um, part. of perferō.

per-legō, legere, lēgi, lēctum, read
through.

per-luō, luere, lui, lūtum, wash ;
pass. as middle, (wash themselves),
bathe.

per-māgnus, a, um, very great, very
large.

per-maneō, manēre, mānsi, mān-
sum, (remain through quite a time),
remain, continue.

per-misceō, miscēre, miscui, mix-
tum or mistum, mix, mingle.

per-mittō, mittere, misi, missum,
(let go through) ; when w. dir. obj.,
yield, intrust, and so V. 11, 8, VII.
79, 1 ; *submit*, VII. 63, 6 ; *permit.*

permixtus, a, um, part. of per-
misceō.

permōtus, a, um, part. of per-
moveō.

per-moveō, movēre, mōvi, mō-
tum, (move strongly) ; influence.
induce ; alarm, disturb.

per-mulceō, mulcēre, mulsi, mul-
sum, (smooth over) ; calm.

permulsus, a, um, part. of permul-
ceō.

perniciōs, ōi, f., no plu., destruction,
ruin.

per-paucus, a, um, rare in sing.,
very small ; plu., only a very few.

perpendiculum, i, n. [per-pondō,
hang], plumb-line ; dērectum ad
perpendiculum, exactly perpen-
dicularly.

per-petior, peti, pessus sum [pa-
tior], suffer, endure.

per-petuus, a, um [petō], (ever
seeking) ; unbroken, continuous,
perpetual ; w. vita, whole ; w. con-
troversia, incessant ; in perpe-
tuum (sc. tempus), forever ; abl.

sing. neut. as adv. (sc. tempore),
forever, I. 31, 7 ; *continually*, VII.
41, 2.

per-quirō, quirere, (quisivi), qui-
situm [quaerō], (inquire thor-
oughly about), inquire about.

per-rumpō, rumpere, rūpi, rup-
tum, break through ; break into,
break in ; force a passage, I. 8, 4.

perruptus, a, um, part. of per-
rumpō.

per-scribō, scribere, scripsi, scrip-
tum, (write carefully), write in de-
tail ; report, V. 49, 3.

per-sequor, sequi, secutus sum,
follow up, pursue ; bellō persequi,
(follow one up with war), *prosecute*
the war, I. 13, 4 ; *bellō civitatem*
persequi, make war upon the state ;
avenge, VII. 38, 8, 10.

per-sevērō, ist conj. [per-sevērus,
very strict], (be very strict), persist,
a following infin. being translated
by *in* w. the Eng. verbal noun in
-ing.

per-solvō, solvere, solvi, solitum,
(loose ; pay in full) ; *pay. (poenā,*
penalty.)

perspectus, a, um, part. of perspi-
ciō.

per-spiciō, spicere, spexi, spec-
tum, (see through, look through) ;
see, perceive, ascertain ; look, see,
II. 17, 4 ; *see into*, II. 18, 2 ; *in-*
spect, examine, IV. 21, 9, VII.
36, 1, 44, 1, 68, 3.

per-stō, stāre, stiti, stātum, (stand
through), persist.

per-suādeō, suādēre, suāsi, suā-
sum, (advise successfully), persuade ;
the name of the person persuaded is
in the dat., and the thing persuaded

is represented by a neut. acc. pronoun or an object clause of purpose; e.g. **id eis persuādēre**, (persuade this to them), *persuade them to do this*; **hōc sibi (eis) persuādēre**, *persuade him (them) of this*, V. 29, 5, VI. 14, 5; impers. in pass., e.g. **sibi persuādētur**, (it is persuaded to him), *he is persuaded*, I. 40, 3.

per-terreō, terrēre, terrui, territum, (frighten thoroughly), *frighten, greatly alarm, demoralize*; perf. part., *panic-stricken, demoralized*.

pertinācia, ae, f. [**pertināx**, *obstinate*, from **pertineō**], *obstinacy*.

per-tineō, tinēre, tinui, — [teneō], (hold through), of actual space, *extend*; w. **ad**, *pertain (to), concern*; w. adv., **eōdem (illō) pertinēre**, *be along the (that) same line, be of the same nature*, I. 14, 4; *be for that same end*, explained by following clause, IV. 11, 4.

perturbātiō, ōnis, f. [**perturbō**], *excitement, alarm*.

per-turbō, 1st conj. [**turba**, *confusion*], *confuse greatly, disturb, throw into confusion*; pass., *be troubled, be in grave doubt*, IV. 14, 2.

per-vagor, 1st conj. [**vagus**, *wandering*], (wander extensively), *scour the country*.

per-veniō, venire, vēni, ventum, (come through), *arrive (at), reach*; *revert*, VI. 19, 2.

pēs, pedis, m., *foot*; as a measure of length, a very little less than the standard English foot; **pedem referre**, *retreat*; **ad pedēs dēsilire**, *leap to the ground*; **pedibus aditus**, *approach by land*; **pedibus proeliārī**, *fight on foot*.

petitus, a, um, part. of **petō**.

petō, petere, petivi or petii, petitum, seek; w. object clause of purpose, *seek, request*.

Petrocorii, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of southern Gaul, about the Dordogne river, VII. 75, 3.

Petrōnius, i, m., *Marcus Petronius*, a brave centurion, VII. 50, 4.

Petrosidius, i, m., *Lucius Petrosidius*, a brave standard bearer, V. 37, 5.

phalanx, phalangis, f., sometimes w. Greek acc. sing. **phalanga** [**φάλαγξ**], *phalanx*, used by Caesar to describe any close, compact formation of troops.

Pictonēs, um, m. plu., a tribe on the west coast of Gaul, south of the Loire, III. 11, 5, etc.

pietās, tātis, f. [**pius, dutiful**], *devotion, loyalty*.

pilum, i, n., *spear, javelin*; especially those used by the Romans as their line of battle and the enemy's were nearing.

pilus, i, m., a division of the reserves in the Roman army; **primi pili centuriō**, *first centurion* of a legion; **primum pilum dūcere**, *be first centurion* of a legion; cf. **primipilus**.

pinna, ae, f., (feather); *battlement, parapet*.

Pirūstae, ārum, m. plu., a tribe in Illyricum, V. 1, 5, 7.

piscis, is, m., *fish*, either singular or collective in sense, like Eng.

Pisō, ōnis, m., (1) *Marcus Pupius Piso*, consul 61 B. C., I. 2, 1, 35, 4.

(2) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesonius*, consul 58 B. C., father-in-law of Caesar, I. 6, 4, 12, 7. (3) *Lucius*

Calpurnius Piso Caesonius, consul 112 B.C., grandfather of the last named, I. 12, 7. (4) *Piso*, an Aquitanian noble, IV. 12, 4.

pix, **picis**, f., *pitch*.

placeō, **placēre**, **placui**, **placitum**, *please*; in Bel. Gal. always impers., *it pleases*, w. dat.; **placuit ei** (it pleased him), *he decided*; **maiorī placuit parti**, (it pleased the greater part), *the majority thought it best*.

placidē, adv. [**placidus**, *calm*], *calmly*.

placō, 1st conj. [cf. **placeō**], *appease*.

Plancus, i, m., *Lucius Munatius Plancus*, a legatus of Caesar in the fifth year of the war, V. 24, 3, 25, 4.

plānē, adv. [**plānus**], *plainly, clearly; altogether, quite*, VI. 43, 4.

plānitia, ei, f., no plu. [**plānus**], *plain*.

plānus, a, um, *level; flat and broad*, III. 13, 1.

plēbs, **plēbis**, and **plēbēs**, **plēbēi**, f., *the common people, populace*.

plēnē, adv. [**plēnus**], *fully, completely*.

plēnus, a, um [**plēō**, *fill*], *full*; w. gen., VII. 76, 6.

plērumque, adv. [acc. sing. neut. of **plērusque**], *generally, usually*.

plērusque, **plēraque**, **plērumque**, regularly only in plu., *most, most of*; often best rendered by adverb, *generally*. Masc. plu. as subst., *most people*, IV. 5, 3; neut. plu. as subst., *most things*, VII. 12, 3.

Pleumoxii, **ōrum**, m. plu., a tribe of Belgae, clients of the Nervii, V. 39, 1.

plumbum, i, n. *lead*; **album plumbum**, (white lead), *tin*.

plūrēs, **plūrimus**, compar. (plu.) and super. of **multus**.

plūs, compar. of **multus**.

pluteus, i, m., *breastwork, screen*, placed upon a rampart as protection to a soldier fighting there.

pōulum, i, n., *drinking cup*.

poena, ae, f. [cf. ποινή, and **pūniō**, *punish*], *penalty*, V. 1, 9; *punishment*; **poenās pendere** or **persolvere**, *pay the penalty*; **poenās repetere**, *seek satisfaction*.

pollex, **pollicis**, m., *thumb*; **digitus pollex**, (thumb finger), *thumb*.

polliceor, **pollicēri**, **pollicitus sum**, *promise*; **liberāliter pollicēri**, (promise graciously), *make gracious promise*, IV. 21, 6.

pollicitātiō, **ōnis**, f. [**polliceor**], *promise*.

pollicitus, a, um, part. of **polliceor**.

Pompeius, i, m., (1) *Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus*, Pompey the Great, Roman statesman and soldier, born 106 B.C., member with Caesar and Crassus of the first triumvirate, consul with the latter 55 B.C., Caesar's son-in-law and rival, later conquered in battle of Pharsalus, and finally murdered in Egypt; IV. 1, 1, VI. 1, 2, 4, VII. 6, 1. (2) *Gnaeus Pompeius*, an interpreter with Sabinus, V. 36, 1.

pondus, **ponderis**, n. [**pendō**, *hang, weigh*], *weight*.

pōnō, **pōnere**, **posui**, **positum**, *place, put*; *lay down*, IV. 37, 1; *set aside*, VI. 17, 5; **castra pōnere**, (pitch camp), *encamp*; perf. pass., of locations, *be situated*; **sibi praesi-**

dūm pōnere, (place a defence for one's self), *take refuge*.

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge*.

populātiō, ōnis, f. [**populor**], *laying waste a country*.

populor, 1st conj. [NOT connected w. **populus**], *lay waste, ravage*.

populus, l, m., *people*; used of other than the Roman people, I. 3, 8 (*peoples, nations*), VI. 13, 6, VII. 32, 5.

porrēctus, a, um, part. of porrigō.

por-rigō, rigere, rēxi, rēctum [**prō, regō**], *reach forward, stretch, extend. porrēctum pertinēre*, (*extend, stretched out*), *extend*, II. 19, 5.

porrō, adv. [**prō**], *furthermore*.

porta, ae, f., *gate of a town; of a camp, gate, entrance*.

portō, 1st conj., *carry, take, convey*.

portōrium, l, n. [**portō**], *customs duty; tax, toll*, III. 1, 2.

portus, ūs, m. [**portō**], *harbor, port*.

pōscō, pōscere, popōsci, —, demand.

positus, a, um, part. of pōnō.

possessiō, ōnis, f. [**possideō or possidō**], (*a possessing, in the sense either of having possession or of gaining possession*), *possession*.

pos-sideō, sidēre, sēdi, sessum [**prō; sedeō, sī**], (*sit before, have possession of*), *possess*, I. 34, 3, II. 4, 6, VI. 12, 4.

pos-sidō, sidere, sēdi, sessum [**prō; sidō, settle**], (*settle in front of*), *take possession of*, IV. 7, 4.

possum, posse, potui, — [**potis, able, sum**], *be able*; w. complementary infin., *be able to, can*; without infin., *be able to do, can do, can effect*; **multum posse**,

be powerful; **plūrimum or largiter posse**, *be very powerful, be very influential*; **minimum posse**, *have very little power*.

post, (1) adv., *afterwards*; (2) prep. w. acc., of time, *after*; of place, *behind*.

post-eā, adv. [old acc. plu. neut. of **is**], (*after these things*), *afterwards*.

postea quam, as subord. conj., often written as one word, (*later than*), *after*.

posterus, a, um, compar. posterior, super. **postrēmus** and **postumus** [**post**], *next, the following*; masc. plu. as subst., *descendants, later generations*, VII. 77, 13.

post-pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum, (*place after*), *lay aside*, V. 7, 6; *disregard*, VI. 3, 4. (**omnia, everything else**.)

post-quam, subord. conj., (*later than*), *after*.

postrēmō, adv. [abl. of **postrēmus**, super. of **posterus**, sc. **tempore**], *at last, finally*.

postrī-diē, adv. [loc. of **posterus** and **diēs**], *on the following day, the next day*; followed by **ēius diēi**, (*on the following day of this day*), *the next day*.

pōstulātum, l, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **pōstulō**], (*a thing demanded*), *demand*.

pōstulō, 1st conj. [**pōscō**], *demand; request*, I. 31, 9.

potēns, potentis, adj. [pres. part. of **possum**], *powerful*; compar. as subst., sing. *a more powerful man*, plu. *the more powerful*; so super. plu. as subst., *the most powerful*, VI. 22, 4.

potentātus, ūs, m. [**potēns**], (power), *supremacy, leadership.*

potentia, ae, f. [**potēns**], *power, influence.*

potestās, tātis, f. [**potis, able**], (ability), *power*; **potestātem facere**, *give opportunity or chance*, and so I. 48, 3, II. 6, 3, V. 51, 3. (**sul**, *of getting at him*, I. 40, 8.)

potior, potiri, potitus sum [**potis, able**], (make one's self powerful), *gain control, obtain possession*; w. abl. translated by *of*; also w. gen., I. 3, 8.

potius, compar. adv. [**potis, able**], super. **potissimum**, *rather* (which is strictly a compar. in Eng.).

prae, prep. w. abl., (in front of, before), *in comparison with*, II. 30, 4; *on account of*, VII. 44, 1. In comp., *in front, before.*

prae-acuō, acuere, acui, acūtum [**acer, sharp**], *sharpen in front, sharpen at the end.*

praeacūtus, a, um, part. of prae-acuō.

praebeō, praebēre, praebui, praebitum [**prae, habeo**], (hold before, hold out), *furnish, give.*

prae-caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, (be on one's guard in advance), *look out.*

prae-cēdō, cēdere, cēssi, cēssum, (go ahead of), *excel, surpass.*

prae-ceps, cipitis, adj. [cf. **caput, head**], (head first), *headlong, precipitously*; w. **locus**, *steep.*

praeceptum, i, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **praecipio**], (a thing commanded), *command, direction.*

prae-cipio, cipere, cēpi, ceptum [**capio**], (take beforehand); *order,*

direct. opinione praecipere, (take beforehand in thought), *anticipate.*

praecipitō, 1st conj. [**praiceps**], *fling headlong.*

praecipuū, adv. [**praecipuus**], *especially.*

prae-cipuus, a, um [**capio**], (taking the first place), *especial.*

prae-clūdō, clūdere, clūsi, clūsum [**claudō**], (close in advance), *close.*

prae-cō, cōnis, m. [**prae; vocō, call**], (one who calls in front), *herald.*

Praecōninus, i, m., *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus*, a Roman *legatus*, of whom nothing is known beyond Caesar's statement in III. 20, 1.

prae-currō, currere, occurri or **curri, cursum**, (run ahead), *hasten ahead; anticipate*, VII. 9, 4.

praeda, ae, f., *booty, spoil, plunder.*

prae-dicō, 1st conj., *set forth*, IV. 34, 5; *declare; boast* (*multa, a great deal*), I. 44, 1.

praedor, 1st conj. [**praeda**], *obtain booty, plunder.*

prae-dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, (lead in front), *construct.*

praefectus, i, m. [masc. of perf. part. of **praeficio**], (one put in command), *commander*, especially a *praefect* of the cavalry, commanding a battalion.

prae-ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, (bear in front), *consider to surpass*; w. reflex., *outdo, surpass*, II. 27, 2.

prae-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum [**faciō**], (put in front), *put* (some one) *in command* (of); w. dat.

prae-fixō, figere, fixi, fixum, (fix in front), *drive in front.*

prae-metūō, metuere, —, —, (fear before), *be anxious.*

prae-mittō, mittere, misi, missum, *send ahead, forward, or in advance.*

praemium, i, n. [for **prae-emium**, from **emō, take**], (something taken in advance, an advantage), *reward.*

prae-occupō, 1st conj., *seize in advance.*

prae-optō, 1st conj., *choose in preference, choose.*

prae-parō, 1st conj., *get ready beforehand, prepare in advance.*

prae-pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum, (place in front), *place (some one) in command (of); w. dat.*

prae-rumpō, rumpere, rūpi, ruptum, (break in front), *break; pass., part. Perf. part. as adj., w. loca, steep; w. ripa, abrupt, steep.*

prae-saepiō, saepire, saepi, saeptum [**saepēs, hedge**], (hedge in front), *cut off.*

prae-scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, (write in advance), *dictate.*

praescriptum, i, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **praescribō**], (a thing dictated), *dictation.*

praesēns, entis, pres. part. of praesum.

praesentia, ae, f. [**praesēns**], (a being at hand), *presence, V. 43, 4.*

praesentia, neut. plu. of praesēns.

prae-sentiō, sentire, sēnsi, sēnsum, *perceive in advance.*

prae-sertim, adv. [**sēro, join**], (joined in advance), *especially.*

praesidium, i, n. [**prae-sideō, sit in front of, guard**], *garrison for a fortification; guard; praesidiō esse, (be for a guard), guard, w. another dat.; assistance, V. 41, 5, VI. 14, 4; protection, VI. 5, 7,*

VII. 10, 1, 38, 9; sibi praesidium pōnere, (place a defence for one's self), *take refuge.*

prae-stō, stāre, stiti, stitum, (stand before); *intrans., w. abl. of specification, be superior, excel; impers., it is better; trans., show, exhibit, possess, IV. 33, 3; w. officium, do.*

praestō, adv., at hand; praestō esse, be waiting.

prae-sum, esse, fui, —, (be in front), *be at the head (of), be in charge (of), be in command (of), w. dat. Pres. part., praesēns, entis, being present; plūribus praesentibus, abl. abs., (more being present), in the presence of others, I. 18, 1, and similarly in each abl. abs.; as adj., present; immediate; in person, VII. 62, 2; neut. plu. as subst. in phrase in praesentia (sc. tempora), for the present.*

praeter, prep. w. acc. (beyond); past, I. 48, 2; contrary to, III. 3, 2, VI. 8, 6, 40, 8, VII. 61, 3; except, besides.

praeter-eā, adv. [old acc. neut. plu. of **is**], *besides this, besides, moreover.*

praeter-eō, ire, (ivi) ii, itum, (go past), *pass over. Perf. part. as adj., (gone past), past; neut. plu. as subst., (the things gone past, "by-gones"), the past.*

praeteritus, a, um, part. of praetereō.

praeter-mitto, mittere, misi, missum, (let go past, let slip), *lose.*

praeter-quam, prep. w. acc., (other than), besides, except.

praetor, ōris, m. [for **prae-itor**, from **prae-eō**], (one who goes ahead,

commander); **lēgātus prō prae-**
tōre, (lieutenant as commander),
lieutenant general.

praetōrius, **a, um** [**praetor**], relat-
ing to a *praetor*; **praetōria cohors**,
praetorian cohort, general's guard,
bodyguard.

prae-ūrō, ūrere, ūssi, ūstum, (burn
in front), *burn at the end, burned to*
a point.

prae-vertō, vertere, verti, versum,
(turn in advance), *anticipate, fore-*
stall.

prāvus, **a, um**, *bad, vicious.*

premō, premere, pressi, pressum,
press; in military expressions, *press*
hard; *weigh down, oppress*; **quibus**
angustis Caesar premitur, (in
what straits Caesar is pressed), *how*
hard pressed Caesar is, III. 18, 3;
ipsōs sē premere, *embarrass each*
other, VII. 28, 3.

prēndō, prēndere, prēndi, prēn-
sium [contracted from **prehendō**],
grasp, seize.

pretium, **i, n.**, *price.*

prex, precia, **f.**, generally plu.,
prayer, entreaty; curse, imprecation,
VI. 31, 5.

pridīe, *adv.* [a form of the stem of
prior, and loc. abl. of **diēs**, cf.
postridīe], *on the preceding day,*
the day before; w. **ēius diēi**, (on
the preceding day of this day), *the*
day before.

primi-pilus, **i, m.** [compound noun
formed from **primus pilus**, see
pilus], *first centurion.*

primō, *adv.* [abl. of **primus**, sc.
tempore], *at first.*

primum, *adv.* [acc. of **primus**], *first,*
in the first place. **quam primum**,

as soon as possible; **cum primum**,
(when first), *as soon as.*

primus, **a, um**, *super. of prior.*

princeps, cipis, *adj.* [**primus**,
capiō], (taking first place), *first*, I.
7, 3, 12, 6, 41, 2, VII. 2, 1; *masc.*
as subst., leader, chief.

principātus, ūs, *m.* [**princeps**],
leadership, supremacy; of an indi-
vidual in a state, *foremost position.*

prior, prius, *compar. adj.* [formed
on ā stem of **prae** and **prō**], *former*;
first, VII. 82, 3; **priōrēs inferre**,
be the first to wage, IV. 7, 3; *masc.*
plu. as subst., those in front, the
foremost, II. 11, 5; *super. primus*,
a, um, *first*; having partitive force,
w. **nox, impedimenta, obaldīō**,
finēs, *the first part of, the first of*;
masc. plu. as subst., leaders, chiefs;
in primis, (among the first), *espe-*
cially.

pristinus, **a, um** [for **prius-tinus**, cf.
prior and **teneō**], *former, earlier*;
w. **diēs**, *previous.*

prius, *compar. adv.* [**prior**], *earlier*,
sooner; **prius quam, priusquam**,
subord. conj., (earlier than, sooner
than), *before.*

privātim, *adv.* [**privātus**], *privately*,
individually; *as private citizens*, I.
17, 1.

privātus, **a, um** [part. of **privō**,
deprive], (apart from the state), *per-*
sonal, private; *masc. as subst.,*
individual, person, VI. 13, 6.

prō, *prep.* w. *abl.*, of place, *before, in*
front of; of defence or protection,
in behalf of, for; of substitution,
in place of, instead of, as, for; of
relation, *in proportion to, in accord-*
ance with. In *comp.*, *forth, before.*

probō, 1st conj. [**probus**, *estimable*], *prove*, I. 3, 6, V. 44, 3; *approve*, *approve of*.

prō-ōdō, *ōdere*, *ōssi*, *ōssum*, (go forward), *advance*, *proceed*.

prō-clinō, 1st conj., (lean forward), *start*.

prō-ōnsul, *ulis*, m., *proconsul*, an ex-consul sent from Rome at the end of his term to govern a province.

procul, adv., *at a distance*, *far off*; *from a distance*, IV. 12, 6, V. 34, 3, VI. 39, 4.

prō-cumbō, *oumbere*, *cubui*, *cubitum* [cf. *cubō*], *lie down*, VI. 27, 1; *fall*, *throw one's self*, VII. 15, 4; *incline*, *bend forward*, IV. 17, 4; *sink to the earth*, II. 27, 1; *be beaten down*, VI. 43, 3.

prō-cūrō, 1st conj., (care for in advance, look out for), *attend to*.

prō-currō, *currere*, *cucurri* or *curri*, *cursum*, *run forward*; *rush out*.

prōd-, a form of **prō** in comp. before vowels.

prōd-eō, *ire*, (ivi) *ii*, *itum*, (go forth), *come out*; *advance*, I. 48, 7.

prōdesse, infin. of **prōsum**.

prōditō, *ōnis*, f. [**prōdō**], (a betraying), *treason*, *treachery*.

prōditor, *ōris*, m. [**prōdō**], *traitor*.

prō-dō, *dere*, *didī*, *ditum* [**dō**, *dare*], (give forth); *give out*, VI. 20, 3; *hand down*; *betray*, IV. 25, 3.

prō-dūcō, *dūcere*, *dūxi*, *ductum*, *lead forth*, *bring out*; *prolong*, IV. 30, 2.

proellior, 1st conj. [**proelium**], *fight*. **proelium**, i, n., *battle*.

profectiō, *ōnis*, f. [**proficiscor**], *departure*.

profectus, a, um, part. of **prōficiō**, IV. 19, 4.

profectus, a, um, part. of **proficiscor**.

prō-ferō, *ferre*, *tuli*, *lātus*, *bring forth*, *bring out*.

prō-ficiō, *ficere*, *fēci*, *fectum* [**faciō**], (make forth, make out), *accomplish*, *effect*.

pro-ficiscor, *ficisci*, *fectus sum* [**prōficiō**], *set out*, *depart*.

pro-fiteor, *fitēri*, *fessus sum* [**fateor**], (confess openly), *declare*; *signify*, VI. 23, 7.

prō-figo, 1st conj., (strike to the ground), *roul*, *put to flight*.

prō-fluō, *fluere*, *fluxi*, —, (flow forth), *rise*.

pro-fugiō, *fugere*, *fūgi*, *fugitum*, (flee forth), *flee*, *escape*.

prō-gnātus, a, um [part. of (g)nāscor, *be born*], (born from), *sprung*, *descended*.

prō-gredior, *gredi*, *gressus sum* [**gradior**, *step*], (go forth), *advance*.

prōgressus, a, um, part. of **prō-gredior**.

pro-hibēō, *hibēre*, *hibui*, *hibitum* [**habeō**], (hold forth from anything); w. acc. and infin., *prevent*, the infin. being translated by *from* with the verbal noun in -ing, e.g. **prohibēre Teutonōs ingredi**, *prevent the Teutons from entering*, II. 4, 2; so also w. acc. and an abl. of separation of a verbal noun in which the acc. represents the subject of the verbal idea, *prevent*, e.g. **exercitum itinero prohibēre**, *prevent the army from marching*; w. acc. and abl. of any other nouns than the above, *keep*,

cut off; protect, V. 21, 1, VI., 10, 5, 23, 9; when without an abl. or an infin., *check, stop*, I. 6, 1, 8, 2, 47, 6, V. 9, 3.

prō-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **prōjiciō**), **icere**, **lēci**, **lectum** [**iaciō**], (throw forward), *throw, cast; betray*, II. 15, 5.

pro-inde, adv., (thenceforward), *hence, therefore*.

prō-mineō, **minēre**, **minui**, —, *lean forward*.

prō-miscuē, adv. [**prō-miscuus**, from **miscēō**, *mix*], *all together, promiscuously*.

prōmissus, a, um, part. of **prō-mittō**.

prō-mittō, **mittere**, **missi**, **missum**, *let go forth*. Perf. part. as adj. w. **capillus**, *long, flowing*.

prōmō, **prōmere**, **prōmpai**, **prōmp-tum** [contracted from **pro-ēmō**], *take out*. Perf. part. as adj., *ready, quick, prompt*.

prō-moveō, **movēre**, **mōvi**, **mō-tum**, *move forward*.

prōmptus, a, um, part. of **prōmō**.

prōmunturium, i, n. [**prōmineō**], (projection), *headland, promontory*.

prōnē, adv. [**prōnus**, *inclined*, cf. *πρῶν*], *inclined*.

prō-nūntiō, 1st conj. [**nūntius**], (announce forth), *announce, declare; give orders*, V. 33, 3, 34, 1, 3.

prope, adv. and prep., compar. **propius**, super. **proximē** [**propior**], *near; of degree, nearly, almost; super., last*.

prō-pellō, **pellere**, **puli**, **pulsum**, (drive forth), *drive off, drive back*.

properō, 1st conj. [**properus**, *quick*], *hurry, hasten*.

propinquitās, **tātis**, f. [**propinquus**], (nearness), *proximity; relationship*, II. 4, 4.

propinquus, a, um [**prope**], *near; w. dēspectus, close*. Masc. as subst., *relative, kinsman*; fem., *female relative*, I. 18, 7.

propior, us, compar. adj. [cf. **prope**], *nearer; super. proximus, nearest; of time, next; last*, VII. 32, 4, 67, 7.

propius, adv., compar. of **prope**.

prō-pōnō, **pōnere**, **posui**, **positum**, *set forth, disclose, explain; raise, display*, II. 20, 1; w. **praemia**, *promise; place before*, VII. 15, 2; *propose*, VII. 47, 1; *present*, IV. 17, 2, VII. 14, 9.

prōpositus, a, um, part. of **prō-pōnō**.

proprius, a, um [**prope**], (one's own), *private*, VI. 22, 2; *characteristic*, VI. 23, 2.

propter, prep. w. acc. [**prope**], *on account of*.

propter-eā, adv. [old case form of **is**], (on account of this), *on this account; propterea quod*, (on this account, because), *because*.

prōpugnātor, **ōris**, m. [**prōpugnō**], *defender*.

prō-pugnō, 1st conj. [**pugna**, *fight*], (fight an enemy forth, make sallies in defence); *make sallies or sorties*; pres. part. as subst., *defender*, VII. 86, 5.

prō-pulsō, 1st conj. [intensive of **prō-pellō**], *drive off, drive back*, I. 49, 4; *defend one's self against*, VI. 15, 1.

prōra, ae, f. [**prō**; cf. *πρῶρα*, from *πρῶ*], *proa, bow*.

prō-ruō, ruere, ruī, rutum, throw
down, demolish.

prō-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum,
(follow forth), *follow up, pursue*;
liberaliter orātiōne prōsequi, dis-
miss with gracious words.

prōspectus, ūs, m. [prōspiciō],
view, outlook; sight, V. 10, 2.

pro-spiciō, spicere, spexi, spec-
tum, look out, provide (for), w. dat.
or purpose clause.

prō-sternō, sternere, strāvi, strā-
tum, (strew forth), overthrow.

prō-sum, prōd-esse, prō-fui, (prō-
futūrus), (be for), be advantageous,
be of advantage.

prō-tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctum,
(cover in defence), *cover.*

prō-terreō, terrere, terrui, terri-
tum, frighten off; drive off.

prō-tinus, adv. [tenus, as far as],
(so far forth), *forthwith, immedi-*
ately.

pro-turbō, 1st conj. [turba, crowd],
throw into confusion, II. 19, 7;
frighten, drive, VII. 81, 2.

prō-vectus, a, um, part. of prōvehō.

prō-vehō, vehere, vexi, vectum,
bear forth on any vehicle; pass.,
(be borne forth), drive, V. 8, 2;
put to sea, IV. 28, 3.

prō-veniō, venire, vēni, ventum,
come forward.

prōventus, ūs, m. [prōveniō], (a
coming forth), outcome, result.

prō-vidēō, vidēre, vidi, visum,
foresee, II. 22, 1; provide, make
provision; pass. often impersonal,
prōvidētur, provision is made.

prō-vincia, ae, f. [vincō, conquer],
(a conquered region beyond the
borders of a country), *province;*

especially the Province, meaning
Transalpine Gaul, the southeastern
part of modern France.

prōvinciālis, o [prōvincia], of the
province.

prōvisus, a, um, part. of prōvideō.

prō-volō, 1st conj., (fly forth), rush
out.

proximō, adv., super. of prope.

proximus, a, um, super. of propior.

prudentia, ae, f. [prūdēns, for
prōvidēns, from prōvideō], fore-
sight, prudence.

Ptiāni, ōrum, m. plu., an Aquitanian
tribe, of whose location nothing is
known, III. 27, 1.

pūbēs, pūberis, adj., full grown.
Masc. as subst., adult.

pūblicō, adv. [pūblicus], officially;
as a state, IV. 3, 1.

pūblicō, 1st conj. [pūblicus], (make
public), confiscate.

pūblicus, a, um [populus], (of the
the people); public; pūblicum cōn-
silium, official action; in pūblicum,
publicly, VI. 28, 3; into the streets,
VII. 26, 3; in pūblicō, in public;
rēs pūblica, the state, especially
Rome; state affairs, I. 34, 1, VI.
20, 1, 3.

Pūblius, I, m., a Roman praenomen.
pudet, pudēre, puduit or puditum
est, impers., it shames anyone, w.
acc. of person expressed or under-
stood; hence, be ashamed.

pudor, ōris, m. [pudet], (shame),
sense of shame.

puer, pueri, m., boy.

puerilis, e [puer], of a boy; pue-
rilis aetās, boyhood.

pūgna, ae, f., (hand to hand en-
counter), fight, battle.

pūgnō, 1st conj. [pūgna], *fight*.
pulcher, *chra*, *chrum*, compar.
pulchrīor, super. **pulcherrimus**,
beautiful; *glorious*, VII. 77, 13.
Pullō, *ōnis*, m., a brave centurion,
 V. 44, 1, 13.
pulsus, *a*, *um*, part. of **pellō**.
pulsus, *ūs*, m. [pellō, *drive*], (a
 driving); *working*.
pulvis, **pulveris**, m., *dust*.
puppis, *is*, f., *stern*.
pūrgō, 1st conj. [for pūrigō, from
 pūrus, *pure*, agō, *drive*], (cleanse);
excuse. Perf. part. as adj., *blameless*,
clear.
putō, 1st conj., (reckon); *think*.
Pyrēnaeus, *a*, *um* [Πυρηναιός], w.
montēs, the Pyrenees.

Q

Q., abbreviation for **Quintus**, a
 Roman *praenomen*.
qua, neut. plu. of **qui** (indef.), II.
 14, 6.
quā, rel. adv. [abl. of **qui**, sc. **viā** or
parte], *where*, I. 6, 1, 8, 4, 10, 3,
 38, 5, II. 33, 2, etc.
quadrāgēnī, *ae*, *a*, gen. *um*, distrib.
 adj. [quadrāgintā], *forty* (each).
quadrāgintā, indeclin. card. adj.
 [quattuor], *forty*.
quadrīngentī, *ae*, *a*, gen. *um*, card.
 adj. [quattuor, *centum*], *four hundred*.
quaerō, **quaerere**, **quaesivi** or
quaesi, **quaesitum**, *inquire*, *ask*;
inquire for, *ask for*, II. 21, 6; *seek*,
 VII. 37, 6.
quaestiō, *ōnis*, f. [for quaesitiō,
 from quaerō], (inquiry), *investigation*,
examination.

quaestor, *ōris*, m. [for quaesitor,
 from quaerō], *quaestor*, the pay and
 quarter master of a Roman army.
quaestus, *ūs*, m. [for quaesitus,
 from quaerō], (a seeking); *acquisition*,
gain.
quālis, *o*, interrog. adj., *of what*
sort? *what?*
quam, adv. [case form of **quis**, **qui**],
 after any compar., *than*; after
praestat and **mālō**, verbs implying
 comparison, *rather than*, *than*;
 before super., *as* (meaning of modified
 word in positive) *as possible*, or
the (meaning of modified word in
 super.) *possible*—e.g. **quam māxi-**
mus, *as great as possible* or *the*
greatest possible, I. 3, 1; before
 positive of adj., *how*, I. 43, 6, 7,
 VII. 54, 3; **quam diū**, *as long as*,
 I. 17, 6.
quam-vīs, adv. [quīvis], (however
 you wish), *however*, *no matter how*,
 IV. 2, 5. See also **quīvis**.
quandō, adv., (when?); indefinite
 after **si** (like **quis**), *ever*, III. 12, 3.
quantus, *a*, *um*, w. subj. in ind.
 question, *how great*; **tantus**—**quan-**
tus, *as much*—*as*; without **tantus**
 expressed, *as much as*, *as far as*;
 neut. as subst. w. gen. of the whole,
quantum bonī, *how much advantage*,
 I. 40, 6, **quantum agrī**, *as*
much land as, VI. 22, 2; **quantō**
opere (**quantopere**), *how much*,
how greatly, II. 5, 2; followed by
tantō opere (**tantopere**), *as much*
as—*so much*, VII. 52, 3.
quantus-vīs, **quanta-vīs**, **quantum-**
vīs [**vīs**, 2d pers. of **volō**], (as
 great as you wish), w. **cōpiās**, *any*
forces however great, V. 28, 4.

quārē, quā rē, see **rēs**.

quārtus, a, um [quattuor], ord. adj., *fourth*.

qua-si, subord. conj. [quam, si], as *if*.

quattuor, indeclin. card. adj., *four*.

quattuor-decim [decem], indeclin. card. adj., *fourteen*.

-que, enclitic coörd. conj., *and*; appended to the word or to the first word (usually) of a phrase or clause which it connects.

quendam, acc. sing. masc. of **quidam**.

queror, queri, questus sum, intrans., *complain*; trans., *complain of*; *lament*, I. 39, 4, VII. 63, 8.

questus, a, um, part. of **queror**.

qui, quae, quod, gen. **cūlus**, etc., (1) rel. pro. as subst., nom. *who*, *which*, poss. *whose*, obj. *whom*, *which*; *that*; neut. w. antecedent omitted, *what*; as adj., *which*. (2) interrog. pro. as adj., *what*.

qui, quae or **qua, quod**, indef. pro., generally used as adj., *any, anyone*, usually after **si, nisi, nē, num** or a rel. pro. **Si qui**, etc., *whatever*, VI. 32, 2, VII. 28, I, 67, 4.

quiloquam, neut. of **quisquam**.

qui-cunque, quae-cunque, quod-cunque, indef. rel. pro., *whoever, whichever, whatever*; obj. case in Eng., *whomsoever*.

quid, neut. of **quis**.

qui-dam, quae-dam, quid-dam (subst.) or **quod-dam** (adj.), indef. pro., as subst., *a certain one, a certain thing*, plu. *certain ones, certain things*; as adj., *a certain, plu. certain*.

quidem, adv., *indeed, at least, em-*

phasizing a preceding word; **nō—quidem**, *not even*, emphasizing the intervening word.

quies, ōtis, f., *rest, repose, quiet*.

quiescō, quiescere, quiescē, quies-tum [quies], *rest*. Perf. part. as adj., *quiet, peaceful*.

quies-tus, a, um, part. of **quiescō**.

quīn [qui, old abl., *nē*, negative particle], (1) subord. conj. w. subjunct., (so that not), *but that*; preceded by expressed or implied negation, *that*; **temperāre quīn exeant**, *refrain from passing out*, I. 33, 4; similarly, I. 47, 2, II. 3, 5; **recusāre quīn contendat**, *refuse to contend*, IV. 7, 3; *than that*, VII. 44, 4. (2) coörd. conj., **quīn etiam**, *moreover*.

qui-nam, quae-nam, quid-nam, gen. **cūlus-nam**, etc., interrog. adj. pro., giving sarcastic force, *what, now? what, pray?*

quīncūnx, ūncis, f. [quīnque; ūncis, *twelfth*], (five twelfths); *the five-spot on dice*; **in quīncūncem**, *alternately*, so that if objects are arranged in three parallel rows those in the middle row will be opposite the spaces in the others.

quīn-decim [decem], indeclin. card. adj., *fifteen*.

quīn-genti, ae, a [centum], card. adj., *five hundred*.

quīni, ae, a [quīnque], distrib. adj., *five each*; *five each day*, I. 16, 5.

quīnquāgintā [quīnque], indeclin. card. adj., *fifty*.

quīnque, indeclin. card. adj., *five*.

quīntus, a, um [quīnque], ord. adj., *fifth*.

Quīntus, I, m., a Roman *praenomen*.

qui-piam, quae-piam, quod-piam,

gen. **cūius-plam**, etc., indef. adj. pro., *any*, V. 35, 1.

quis, —, **quid**, gen. **cūius**, etc.

(1) interrog. pro., generally subst., *who? what? whose? whom?* Neut. acc. sing. used adverbially, *why?* I. 40, 4, VI. 35, 8. (2) indef. pro., generally subst., *anyone, anything*, usually after **si**, **nisi**, **nō**, **num**, or a pro.; **si qui**, *whoever*, VII. 29, 3.

quis-plam, —, **quid-plam**, gen. **cūius-plam**, etc., indef. subst. pro., *anyone, anything*, VI. 17, 5.

quis-quam, —, **quid-quam** (subst.) or **quod-quam** (adj.), gen. **cūius-quam**, etc., indef. pro., *anyone, anything; any* (at all).

quis-que, **quae-que**, **quid-que** (subst.) or **quod-que** (adj.), indef. pro., *each one, each*.

quis-quis, **quae-quae**, **quid-quid**, gen. **cūius-cūius**, etc., indef. pro., *whoever, whatever*.

qui-vīs, **quae-vīs**, **quod-vīs**, gen. **cūius-vīs**, etc., indef. adj. pro. [**vīs**, 2d pers. sing. of **volō**], (*any you wish*), *any—whatever*, II. 31, 6, III. 13, 3, IV. 2, 5.

quō, abl. of **quis** and **qui**.

quō, adv. [old dat. of **quis**, **qui**], interrog. or rel., *whither*; less exactly in common English, *where*; indef. after **si** (like **quis**, **qui**), *to any point, anywhere*, I. 48, 7.

quō, subord. conj. [abl. of **qui**, (measure of difference), = **ut eō**], *that, in order that*, generally introducing purpose clauses in which there is a comparative. **quō minus**, *that not, in order that not; so that not*, IV. 22, 4; **recusāre quō minus sint**, *refuse to be*, I. 31, 7;

terrēre quō minus hostēs insequantur, *prevent the enemy from pursuing*, VII. 49, 2.

quo-ad, subord. conj., (up to the time that), *as long as*, IV. 12, 5; *until*.

quod [acc. of **qui**], (in respect to which); (1) subord. conj., *because; the fact that, that; in regard to the fact that*. **propterea quod**, (on this account, because), *because*. (2) when followed by **si**, coörd. conj., *but, and, moreover, however*, according to the sense. See also **qui**.

quoniam, subord. conj. [**quom**, old form of **cum**, *when, since; iam, already*], *since*.

quoque, adv., *also*, following emphasized word.

quōque, abl. of **quisque**, V. 33, 3, VII. 22, 1, 36, 4.

quō-que, i.e. **et quō**, VII. 83, 5.

quōque, adv. [old dat. of **quisque**, cf. **quō** (adv.), from **quis**, **qui**], only in phrase **quōque versus**, (turned each way), *in every direction*, III. 23, 2, VII. 4, 5, 14, 5.

quot, indeclin. interrog. adj., *how many*.

quot-annīs, adv. [**quot**, *each; annus*, *year*], *every year, annually*.

quotiēns, adv. [**quot**], *how many times, how often*, I. 43, 7; *as often as*, V. 34, 2.

R

rādix, **icis**, f., *root*, VI. 27, 4; *w. collis*, *foot-hill*; *w. mōna*, *spur*.

rādō, **rādere**, **rāsī**, **rāsum**, (scrape), *shave*.

raeda, **ae**, f. [Celtic], *wagon, a travelling-carriage with four wheels*.

rāmus, i, m. *branch*; **palmae rāmi-**
que, hendiadys, *palm branches.*

rapiditās, tātis, f. [**rapidus, swift,**
from **rapiō, snatch**], *swiftness.*

rapīna, ae, f. [**rapiō, snatch**], *plun-*
dering.

rārus, a, um, (of loose texture); plu.,
scattered, in small groups.

rāsus, a, um, part. of **rādō.**

ratiō, ōnis, f. [**reor, reckon**], *a*
reckoning, I. 29, 1; *calculation*, I.
40, 8, VII. 16, 3, 71, 4, 75, 1; *ac-*
count, V. 30, 2, VI. 14, 3, 19, 2;
method, I. 40, 9, III. 14, 3, VII.
21, 1, 37, 6; *system*, in this sense
only in nom.; *regard*, V. 27, 7, VII.
71, 3; *consideration*, II. 10, 5;
reason, I. 28, 4; *manner*, in this
sense only in abl. of manner; *plan*,
VI. 33, 5, VII. 63, 4; *measure*,
VII. 71, 9.

ratis, is, f., raft.

Rauraci, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe north
of the Helvetii, on both sides of the
Rhine, I. 5, 4, etc.

re-, red-, inseparable particle (i.e.
used only in comp.), *back, again.*

rebelliō, ōnis, f. [cf. **rebellō**], *re-*
newal of hostilities, rebellion.

(**re-bellō, 1st conj. [bellum]**, *make*
war again, renew a war. Not in
text of Bel. Gal.)

re-cēdō, cēdere, cēssi, cēssum, (go
back), *withdraw.*

recēns, entis, adj., recent; of troops,
fresh, rested.

re-cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsui, —,
(reestimate), *review.*

receptāculum, i, n. [**receptō, inten-**
sive of recipiō], *place of refuge,*
retreat.

receptus, a, um, part. of **recipiō.**

receptus, ūs, m. [**recipio**], *retreat*;
refuge, VI. 9, 2 (ad, among).

recēssus, ūs, m. [**recēdō**], (with-
drawal), *opportunity of retreat.*

re-cidō, cidere, cidi, cāsum [cadō],
(fall back), *happen*; *be reduced*, V.
48, 1.

re-cipiō, cipere, cēpi, ceptum
[**capiō**], (take back), *regain*, VII.
13, 3; **sē recipere**, (recover one's
self), *recover*, II. 12, 1, IV. 27, 1,
34, 1, VII. 12, 6; *receive*; **sē re-**
cipere, except as above, (take
one's self back), *retreat*, and so
without **sē**, I. 48, 7, VII. 52, 1;
withdraw, VII. 71, 8.

re-citō, 1st conj., read aloud.

re-clinō, 1st conj., (bend back), *lean.*
(ad **eōs** or **hūc**, *against these.*)

rēctō, adv. [rēctus], (rightly), *safely,*
VII. 6, 4; *bravely*, VII. 80, 5.

rēctus, a, um, part. of **regō.**

re-cuperō, 1st conj. [cf. recipiō],
regain, recover.

re-cūsō, 1st conj. [causa], (give back
a reason); *refuse* (**quīn conten-**
dant, to fight, quo minus essent,
to be); *object*, V. 6, 2; *decline, spurn*,
I. 44, 5.

red- form of **re-** in comp.

redāctus, a, um, part. of **redigō.**

redditus, a, um, part. of **reddō.**

red-dō, dere, didi, ditum [dō,
dare], (give back), *return*; *grant*,
VI. 13, 7; *render*, II. 5, 5, in dif-
ferent sense, VII. 90, 8; *give*, VI.
16, 3.

redēemptus, a, um, part. of **redimō.**

red-eō, ire, ivi or ii, itum, (go back),
return; *be referred*, VI. 11, 3;
slope back, II. 8, 3.

red-igō, igere, ēgi, āctum [agō],

- (drive back), *reduce*; *render*, II. 27, 5, IV. 3, 4; *bring*, II. 34, V. 29, 4.
- red-imō**, *imere*, *ēmī*, *ēmtum*, [*ēmō*], (buy back), *purchase*; *buy up*, *farm*, I. 18, 3.
- red-integrō**, 1st conj. [*integer*, *untouched*], (render whole again); *renew*, *restore*, *revive*.
- reditiō**, *ōnis*, f. [*redeō*], *returning*, *return*.
- reditus**, *ūs*, m. [*redeō*], *return*.
- Redonā**, *um*, m. plu., a tribe in western Gaul, near or on the coast, II. 34, VII. 75, 4.
- re-dūcō**, *dūcere*, *dūxi*, *ductum*, *lead back*; *bring*, *draw*, *move back*; *extend back*, VII. 72, 2.
- refectus**, *a*, *um*, part. of *reficiō*.
- re-ferō**, *ferre*, *ret-tuli*, *re-lātum*, *bring back*, V. 58, 6; *carry back*, IV. 28, 2; *bring*, VI. 28, 3; *report*; *turn over*, I. 29, 1, VII. 88, 4; *pedem referre*, (draw back the foot), *retreat*; *grātiā referre*, *make return*.
- reficiō**, *ficere*, *fēci*, *fectum* [*faciō*], (make again), *repair*, *rebuild*; w. *sē*, *exercitum*, *refresh*.
- refrāctus**, *a*, *um*, part. of *refringō*.
- re-fringō**, *fringere*, *frēgi*, *frāctum*, (break back), *break*; *break open*, II. 33, 6.
- re-fugiō**, *fugere*, *fūgi*, —, (flee back), *retreat in flight*; *escape*, VII. 31, 3.
- Rēginus**, *l*, m., *Gaius Antistius Reginus*, one of Caesar's *legati*, VI. 1, 1, etc.
- regiō**, *ōnis*, f. [*regō*], (direction); *region*, *district*; *tract*, VII. 13, 3; *rēctā regiōne*, *in a straight line*, VII. 46, 1; w. gen., *parallel (to)*, VI. 25, 2; *ē regiōne*, w. gen., *opposite*.
- rēgius**, *a*, *um* [*rēx*], *royal*, *kingly*.
- rēgnō**, 1st conj. [*rēgnum*], *rule*, *intrans*.
- rēgnum**, *l*, n. [*regō*], *royal power*; *control*, I. 3, 4; *government*, II. 1, 4; *kingdom*, V. 26, 2, 38, 1, 54, 2.
- regō**, *regere*, *rēxi*, *rēctum*, (rule), *control*, III. 13, 6; *conduct*, VI. 17, 2. Perf. part. as adj., (ruled), *straight*; *rēctā regiōne*, *in a straight line*, VII. 46, 1; w. gen., *parallel (to)*, VI. 25, 2.
- rē-iciō** (pronounced as if spelled *rējiciō*), *icere*, *iēci*, *iectum*, *throw back*, I. 46, 2; *drive back*; *drop*, I. 52, 4.
- rēlectus**, *a*, *um*, part. of *rēiciō*.
- re-languēscō**, *languēscere*, *languī*, —, *become enfeebled*, *be weakened*.
- relātus**, *a*, *um*, part. of *referō*.
- re-lēgō**, 1st conj., (send back, out of the way), *banish*.
- reliotus**, *a*, *um*, part. of *relinquō*.
- religiō**, *ōnis*, f. [*re-ligō*, *bind*], (the tie between God and man), *religious obligation*, VI. 17, 5; *religious belief*, *vow*, V. 6, 3; *superstition*.
- re-linquō**, *linquere*, *liquī*, *lictum*, (leave behind), *leave*; *abandon*, *give up*, III. 3, 3, V. 33, 3, 49, 1, VII. 17, 6, 66, 5; *retain*, V. 19, 1; *relinquēbātur*, (was left), *there remained*, I. 9, 1.
- reliquus**, *a*, *um* [cf. *relinquō*], (remaining), *rest of*; plu. as subst., *the rest*; *left*, I. 12, 2; *further*, IV. 15, 2 (w. *fugā*), V. 53, 4; *else*, IV. 7, 5; *nihil reliquī*, (nothing of left), *nothing left*, I. 11, 5;

nihil reliqui facere, leave nothing undone, II. 26, 5 (ad, in the matter of).

re-maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsūm, remain behind, remain.

rēmex, rēmigis, m. [rēmus, oar, agō, drive], (one who PUSHES an oar, as on the ancient galleys), rower.

Rēmī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Belgae north of the Marne, about the headwaters of the Axona (Aisne), who allied themselves with Caesar, II. 3, 1, etc.

rēmigō, 1st conj. [rēmex], row.

re-migrō, 1st conj., (remove back), return.

re-miniscor, minisci, —, recall, remember, w. gen.

remissus, a, um, part. of remittō.

re-mittō, mittere, misi, missum, send back, return, restore; throw back, II. 27, 4; impair, lose, II. 15, 4, VI. 14, 4; w. dō, relax, V. 49, 6; diminish, I. 44, 5. Perf. part. as adj., (relaxed), mild, V. 12, 6.

re-mollēscō, mollēscere, —, — [mollis, soft], (become soft again), lose strength.

re-moveō, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, (move back), withdraw, draw away; dismiss, I. 19, 3. Perf. part. as adj., (removed), remote.

re-mūneror, 1st conj. [mūnus, gift], repay, reward.

rēmus, l, m., oar.

Rēmūs, l, m., one of the Remi.

rēnō, ōnis, m. [Celtic], reindeer skin, deer skin.

re-novō, 1st conj. [novus, new], renew.

re-nūtiō, 1st conj. [nūntius, mes-

senger], bring back word, report; declare elected, VII. 33, 3.

re-pellō, pellere, ppuli, pulsum, drive back.

repente, adv. [abl. of repēns, sudden], suddenly.

re-pentinus, a, um [repēns, sudden], sudden, hasty.

re-periō, perire, pperi, pertum, (find by inquiry), find out, find; pass., originate, VI. 13, 11.

re-petō, petere, petivi or petii, petitum, seek again; try to get back, I. 31, 7; poenās repetere, seek satisfaction.

re-pleō, plēre, plēvi, plētum, (re-fill); amply supply.

re-portō, 1st conj., carry back, transport.

re-pōscō, pōscere, popōsci, —, (ask back), demand.

re-praesentō, 1st conj. [praesēns, present], (make present again), do at once.

re-prehendō, prehendero, prehendi, prehensum, (hold back), blame, find fault with.

repressus, a, um, part. of reprimō.

re-primō, primere, pressi, pressum [premō], (press back), check.

re-pudiō, 1st conj. [re-pudium, divorce], reject.

re-pūgnō, 1st conj. [pūgna, fight], (fight back), resist; stand in the way of, w. dat.

repulsus, a, um, part. of repellō.

re-quirō, quirere, quisivi or quisi, quisitum [quaerō], (seek back), demand, require; miss, VII. 63, 8.

rēs, rei, f., thing, matter, fact, circumstance, etc.; cf. various words w. which it is joined in use. **quā rē**

(often written as one word), (on account of which thing, wherefore) *therefore*; *on account of which*, I. 14, 2; *quā rē putāret*, (why he should think), *to think*, I. 33, 2.

re-scindō, *scindere*, *soldi*, *scissum*, (cut back), *destroy*; *tear down*, VII. 86, 5.

re-sciscō, *sciscere*, *scivi* or *scii*, *scitum* [*sciō*, *know*], *ascertain*.

re-scribō, *scribere*, *scripsi*, *scriptum*, (write again), *transfer*.

re-servō, 1st conj., (keep back), *reserve*.

re-sidēō, *sidēre*, *sēdi*, —, [*sedēō*], (sit back, remain behind), *remain*.

re-sidō, *sidere*, *sēdi*, —, (settle back), *become calm*.

re-sistō, *sistere*, *stīti*, —, (stand back), *remain behind*, V. 11, 1, VII. 35, 2; *resist*.

re-spiciō, *spicere*, *spexi*, *spec-tum*, *look back*, II. 24, 2; *look behind one*, V. 43, 4; (look back at), *have regard for*, VII. 77, 7; *consider*, VII. 77, 16.

re-spondeō, *spondere*, *spondi*, *spōnsum*, (promise back), *answer*, *reply*.

respōnsum, 1, n. [neut. of perf. part. of *respondeō*], (a thing answered), *answer*.

re-spuō, *spuere*, *spui*, —, (spit back), *spurn*, *reject*.

re-stinguō, *stingere*, *stīnxi*, *stinctum*, (quench again); *intrans.*, *put out a fire*; *w. aggerem*, *put out the fire in*.

re-stituō, *stituere*, *stitui*, *stitutum* [*statuō*], (replace), *restore*; *re-build*; *w. proelium*, *renew*.

retentus, *a, um*, part. of *retineō*.

re-tineō, *tinēre*, *tinui*, *tentum* [*teneō*], (hold back); *detain*; *maintain*, V. 48, 6; *hold*, VII. 21, 3; *keep back*, II. 32, 2, 33, 2; *re-strain*, VII. 47, 2, 52, 1, I. 47, 2 (*nē cōicerent*, *from throwing*); *memoriam retinēre*, *w. gen.*, (retain the memory of), *remember*.

re-trahō, *trahere*, *trāxi*, *trāctum*, (drag back), *bring back by force*.

re-vellō, *vellere*, *velli*, *vulsum*, (wrench back), *pull back*, I. 52, 5; *tear up*, VII. 73, 3.

re-versus, *a, um*, part. of *revertor*.

re-vertor, *verti*, *verti*, *versum* [*vertō*], *dep. in present system and perf. part.*, (turn back), *return*, *come back*.

re-vinciō, *vincire*, *vinxi*, *vinc-tum*, (bind back), *fasten*.

revinctus, *a, um*, part. of *revinciō*.

re-vocō, 1st conj. [*vōx*, *voice*], *call back*, *recall*.

rēx, *rēgis*, *m.* [*regō*, *rule*], *king*.

Rhēnua, 1, *m.*, *the Rhine*, I. 1, 6, etc.

Rhodanus, 1, *m.*, *the Rhone*, I. 6, 2, etc.

ripa, *ae, f.*, *bank of a stream*.

rivus, 1, *m.*, *brook*, *small stream*.

rōbur, *rōboris*, *n.*, *oak*.

rogō, 1st conj., *ask*, *request*; **cōn-sulis sacrāmētō rogāre**, (require answer under the consul's oath), *enlist*.

Rōma, *ae, f.*, *loc. Rōmae*, *Rome*.

Rōmānus, *a, um* [*Rōma*], *Roman*. Masc. as subst., *a Roman*, plu. *Romans*.

Rōscius, 1, *m.*, *Lucius Roscius*, one of Caesar's *legati*, V. 24, 2, etc.

rōstrum, I, n. [rōdō, gnaw], *beak*, of a bird or ancient ship; the projecting end of the prow, corresponding to the modern ram.

rota, ae, f., *wheel*.

rubus, I, m., *bramble*.

Rūfus, I, m. [rūfus, reddish], *Publius Sulpicius Rufus*, one of Caesar's *legati*, IV. 22, 6.

rūmor, ōris, m., *report*.

rupēs, is, f., *cliff, steep rock*.

rūrsus, adv. [contracted from *revorsus*, for *reversus*], (turned back), *again, back again; in turn*, V. 44, 13, VII. 47, 7, 51, 2.

Rutēni, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of southern Gaul and the province (hence *prōvinciālēs*, VII. 7, 4), west of the Cevennes, between the rivers Lot and Tarn, I. 45, 2, etc.

Rutilus, I, m., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus*, one of Caesar's *legati*, VII. 90, 5.

S

Sabinus, I, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, one of Caesar's *legati*, II. 5, 6, etc.; killed in the disaster at Aduatuca, V. 24 ff.

Sabis, is, m., the *Sambre*, a tributary of the Meuse (Mosa) in Belgic Gaul, II. 16, 1, 18, 1.

sacer-dōs, dōtis, c. [sacer, *sacred*, dō, *give, put*], *priest*, (priestess).

sacrāmentum, I, n. [sacrō, *set apart as sacred*, from *sacer, sacred*], (means of sanctifying), *oath*. cōn-sulis *sacrāmentō rogāre*, (require answer under the consul's oath), *enlist*.

sacrificium, I, n. [sacrificus, *sacri-*

ficial, from *sacer, sacred*, faciō, *make*], *sacrifice*.

saepe, adv., compar. *saepius*, super. *saeplissimē*, *often*; compar. *repeatedly*, I. 32, 3, *too often*, III. 6, 4. **saepe numerō**, (often in number), *often*. **minimē saepe**, (by no means often), *very seldom*.

saepēs, is, f., *hedge*.

saeviō, *saevire, saevivī, saevitum* [saevus, *fierce*], *be fierce, blow hard*.

sagitta, ae, f., *arrow*.

sagittārius, I, m. [sagitta], *archer, bowman*.

sagulum, I, n. [dim. of *sagum*, a short military cloak], *small cloak*.

saltus, ūs, m., *forest, woods; defile*, VII. 19, 2.

salūs, ūtis, f. [salvus, *safe*], *safety; welfare*, II. 5, 2, VII. 2, 1.

Samarobriva, ae, f., loc. ae, a city of the Ambiani on the Somme (Samarara), now *Amiens*, V. 24, 1, etc.

sanciō, *sancire, sānxi, sānctum*, *ordain, solemnly agree*. Perf. part. as adj., (ordained), *sacred; solemn*, VII. 66, 7.

sānotus, a, um, part. of *sanciō*.

sanguis, guinis, m., *blood*.

sānitās, tātis, f. [sānus], (soundness of mind and body), *good sense*. **ad sānitātem reverti**, *come to one's self, come to one's senses*.

sānō, 1st conj. [sānus], (make sound), *remedy*.

Santonēs, um, or **Santonī**, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of southwestern Gaul on the coast north of the Garonne, I. 10, 1, etc.

sānus, a, um, *sound, of mind and*

body, *sane*; **prō sānō**, (as a sane man), *rational*.

sapiō, sapere, sapivi (uī), —, (have a flavor, have a taste, have discernment), *understand*, *not be fools*.

sarcinae, ārum, f. plu., *packs, luggage*; **sub sarcinās**, *while carrying their packs*.

sarciō, sarcire, sarai, sartum, (patch), *repair, make good*.

sarmentum, i, n. [**sarpō, prune**], (what is pruned off), *brushwood*.

satis, (i) adv., (sufficiently); *quite*, III. 14, 3, IV. 22, 2; *enough* (following the adj. it modifies), IV. 17, 1; *quite*, I. 43, 1; **satis prōvidēre**, *make sufficient provision*, III. 3, 1; **satis commodō**, *very well*, I. 25, 3, III. 13, 6, 14, 4, *fast enough*, I. 39, 6; **satis māgnus**, *large enough*, I. 16, 2, *quite a large*, V. 21, 2, *quite a broad*, VII. 47, 2.

(2) indeclin. adj. used as subst., *enough*; *sufficient*; **satis habēre**, (consider sufficient), *be satisfied*.

satis praesidiū, *a large enough garrison*; **satis causae**, *reason enough*; **satis facere**, *make restitution*, I. 14, 6, V. 1, 7, *appease*, VII. 89, 2, *apologize*, I. 41, 3, V. 54, 3; **satisfy**, V. 27, 7 (**prō pietāte**, *of his loyalty*).

satisfactiō, ōnis, f. [**satis, faciō**, see **satis**], *apology, excuse*.

saucius, a, um, *wounded*; masc. as subst., *a wounded soldier, one who is wounded*.

saxum, i, n., *rock, (large) stone*.

scālae, ārum, f. plu. [**scandō, climb**], (steps), *scaling ladders*.

Scaldia, is, m., the *Scheldt*, a river of Belgic Gaul, which Caesar incor-

rectly says empties into the Meuse, VI. 33, 3.

scapha, ae, f. [**σκάφη**], *boat*, carried on a galley, IV. 26, 4.

scelerātus, a, um [perf. part. of **scelerō, pollute**, from **scelus**], *criminal*.

scelus, sceleris, n., *crime*.

scienter, adv. [**sciōna**, pres. part. of **sciō**], (knowingly), *skilfully*.

scientia, ae, f. [**sciōna**, pres. part. of **sciō**], *knowledge*.

scindō, scindere, scidi, scissum, (split); *tear down*.

sciō, scire, scivi, scitum, *know*.

scorpiō, ōnis, m. [**σκόπιον**], *scorpion*; in military language, an engine for throwing darts or other missiles, VII. 25, 3; also a *missile (ball, shaft) from a scorpion*, VII. 25, 2.

scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, *write*.

scrobia, is, m. or f., *pit*.

scūtum, i, n., *oblong shield*.

sē, sēsē, acc. of **suī**.

sē-, sēd-, inseparable prep., *apart, aside*.

sēbum, i, n., *suet, tallow*.

secō, secāre, secui, sectum, *cut*.

secrētō, adv. [abl. of **secrētus**, part. of **sē-cernō, separate**], *secretly, privately*.

sectiō, ōnis, f. [**secō**], (share); *booty*.

sector, ist conj. [intensive of **sequor**], (follow), *run after*.

sectūra, ae, f. [**secō**], (cutting), *quarry*.

secundum, prep. w. acc. [**secundus**], (following); *along*, II. 18, 3, VII. 34, 2; *besides*, I. 33, 2; **secundum nātūram flūminis**, (following the nature of the river),

in the direction of the current, IV. 17, 4.

secundus, a, um [sequor], (following), w. *aciēs*, *vigilia*, *locus*, *secund*; *favorable*, *successful*; *secundiorēs rēs*, *greater prosperity*; *secundō flūmine*, *down stream*.

secūris, is, f., acc., *im*, *em*, abl. I, e [secō, cut], *axe*; espec., as the axes carried by the Roman lictors were symbols of authority, *power*, *authority*, VII. 77, 16.

sed, coörd. conj., *but*.

sēd-, form of *sē-*, in comp. before some vowels.

sē-decim, *sex-decim*, indeclin. card. adj. [*sex*, *decem*], *sixteen*.

sēdēs, is, f. [sedēō, sit], (seat), *settlement*, *habitation*; *locus ac sēdēs*, hendiadys, *dwelling place*.

sēditō, ōnis, f. [sēd-, eō], (a going apart), *revolt*.

sēditōsus, a, um [sēditō], *seditionous*, *treasonable*.

Sedulius, I, m., leader of the Lemo-vices, VII. 88, 4.

Sedūni, ōrum, m. plu., an Alpine tribe, south of the upper Rhone, III. 1, 1 ff.

Sedusi, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Germans, location uncertain, I. 51, 2.

seges, *segetis*, f., *grainfield*.

Segni, ōrum, m. plu., a German tribe between the Eburones and the Treveri, about the modern town Siney or Signi, in the province of Namur, VI. 32, 1.

Segontiaci, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in the southern part of Britain, V. 21, 1.

Segovax, actis, m., a British chief in Kent, V. 22, 1.

Segusiāvi, ōrum, m. plu., a Gallic tribe south of the Aedui, west of the Rhone, I. 10, 5, etc.

semel, adv., *once*; **semel atque iterum**, *time and again*.

sēmentis, is, f. [sēmen, seed], *sowing*; **sēmentēs quam māximās facere**, (make the greatest possible sowings), *sow as much land as possible*, *sow as much grain as possible*.

sēmita, ae, f., *path*, *trail*.

semper, adv., *always*.

Semprōnius, I, m., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus*, one of Caesar's legati, VII. 90, 4.

senātor, ōris, m. [senex], *senator*, name applied by Caesar to a member of the council among the Nervii, corresponding to the Roman senate.

senātus, ūs, m. [senex], (council of elders), the Roman *senate*; what corresponded to it among the Gallic tribes, *council*.

senex, *senis*, compar. *senior* or *māior* (nātū), super. *māximus* (nātū), *old*; as subst., *old man*.

sēni, ae, a [sex], distrib. adj., *six each*, VII. 76, 3, *six each day*, I. 15, 5.

Senonēs, um, m. plu., a powerful Gallic tribe about the Yonne river, whose chief city was Agedincum, now Sens, II. 2, 3, etc.

sententia, ae, f. [sentio], *view*, *motion*, *idea*, *proposition*; *opinion*, III. 3, 3, 8, 5 (*dicere*, *give*, *express*): *resolution*, II. 10, 5; *effect*, I. 45, 1; *purpose*, VI. 4, 2; *sentence*, VI. 44, 2; *determination*, IV. 21, 6 (*manēre*, *continue*).

sentiō, *sentire*, sēnsi, sēnsus, *perceive* through any of the senses; w.

neut. acc. pro., *entertain* — *idea* ;
know, VII. 52, 3.

sentis, *is*, m., *thorn, briar*.

sēparātīm, adv. [**sēparātus**], *sepa-*
rately, by themselves.

sēparātus, *a, um*, part. of **sēparō**.

sē-parō, 1st conj., (prepare apart),
separate; perf. part. as adj., (sepa-
rated), *separate*.

septem, indeclin. card. adj., *seven*.

septen-triō, ōnis, m., generally plu.
[**septem**; **triō**, *plough-ox*], *the*
seven plough-oxen, the seven stars
that form the constellation of the
Great Bear; hence, *the north*.

septimūs, a, um [**septem**], ord. adj.,
seventh.

septingenti, *ae, a* [**septem**, *cen-*
tum], card. adj., *seven hundred*.

septuāgintā, indeclin. card. adj.
[**septem**], *seventy*.

sepultūra, ae, f. [**sepeliō**, *bury*],
burial.

Sēquana, ae, m., *the Seine*, the
most important river of northern
France, I. 1, 2, etc.

Sēquani, ōrum, m. plu., one of the
most powerful tribes of central Gaul
before Caesar's arrival, the chief of
the states that opposed the suprem-
acy of the Aedui, I. 1, 5, etc.

Sēquanus, a, um, *Sequanian, of the*
Sequani; masc. sing. as subst., *a*
Sequanian, one of the Sequani.

sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, *follow*;
accompany, join, II. 17, 2; *fidem*
sequi, accept protection; *take advan-*
tage of, V. 8, 3; *refuse to give up*,
VII. 63, 7.

Ser., abbreviation for **Servius**, a
Roman *praenomen*.

sermō, ōnis, m. [**serō**, *weave*], *con-*

versation, speech; **sermōnis adi-**
tum, (access for conversation), *per-*
sonal acquaintance.

sērō, serere, sēvi, satum, sow,
plant.

sēriō, adv., compar. **sērius**, super.

sē-rissimō, (late), *too late*.

Sertōrius, i, m., *Quintus Sertorius*,
a Roman general of the party of
Marius, who held Spain against the
consular armies for many years, III.
23, 5.

servilis, e [**servus**], *of slaves*, equi-
valent to **servōrum**, I. 40, 5; *the*
same as in the case of slaves, VI.
19, 3.

serviō, servire, servivi or servii,
servitum [**servus**], (serve); *be a*
slave, IV. 5, 3; *devote one's self*,
VII. 34, 1.

servitūs, tūtis, f. [**servus**], (the con-
dition of a slave), *slavery*; *subjec-*
tion, bondage.

Servius, i, m., a Roman *praenomen*.

servō, 1st conj., *keep*; *save*; *watch*,
observe, V. 19, 1.

servus, i, m., *slave*.

sēs-centi, ae, a, or sex-centi, ae, a,
card. adj. [**sex, centum**], *six hun-*
dred.

sēsqui-pedālis, o [**sēsqui, one half**
more; **pēs, foot**], *a foot and a half*
(thick).

sētius, compar. adv., *less*; **nihilō**
(abl. of measure of diff.) **sētius**,
(none the less), *nevertheless*.

seu, form of **sive**.

sevēritās, tātis, f. [**sevērus, se-**
vere], *severity*.

sē-vocō, 1st conj. [**vōx, voice**], *call*
aside.

sex [ḡ], indeclin. card. adj., *six*.

sex-āgintā, indeclin. card. adj. [**sex**], *sixty*.

sex-centi, **ae, a**, or **sēs-centi**, **ae, a**, card. adj. [**sex, centum**], *six hundred*.

Sextius, **i, m.**, (1) *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a very brave centurion, II. 25, 1, III. 5, 2, VI. 38, 1, 4. (2) *Titus Sextius*, one of Caesar's *legati*, VI. 1, 1, VII. 49, 1, 51, 2, 90, 6.

sī, subord. conj., *if, sī quidem*, (if indeed), *since*, VI. 36, 2. **quod sī**, see **quod**.

Sibuzātēs, **um, m. plu.**, an Aquitanian tribe, probably in the southwestern part of the country, III. 27, 1.

sic, adv., *so, in such a manner*.

siccitās, **tātis, f.** [**siccus**, *dry*], *dryness*; plu. *drought*.

sic ut, sic uti, conj., often written as one word, (so as), *just as; just like*, VI. 26, 2.

sidus, sideris, n., *constellation*; plu., *heavenly bodies*, the stars, etc.

signi-fer, feri, m. [**signum**, **ferō**], *standard-bearer*.

significātiō, **ōnis, f.** [**significō**], *intimation, announcement; signal*, II. 33, 3; *demeanor, actions*, VII. 12, 6.

significō, 1st conj. [**signum**, **faciō**], (show by signs), *indicate by signs, announce by word of mouth*.

signum, **i, n.**, *signal; military standard*.

Silānus, **i, m.**, *Marcus Silanus*, one of Caesar's *legati*, VI. 1, 1.

silentium, **i, n.** [**silēs**, pres. part. of **sileō**, *be silent*], *silence*; abl. of manner, often as adv., *silently*.

Silius, **i, m.**, *Titus Silius*, an officer with Crassus in Aquitania, III. 7, 4, 8, 2.

silva, **ae, f.**, *forest, woods*.

silvestris, **o [silva]**, *wooded*.

similis, **e**, compar. **similior**, super.

simillimus, *like, similar*. **vērī**

(gen. w. adj.) **simile**, (similar to the truth), *probable, likely*.

similitudo, **inis, f.** [**similis**], *similarity, resemblance*.

simul, adv., *at the same time*; **simul** —**simul**, *both—and, not only—but also*; **simul atque**, and **simul** alone, IV. 26, 5, *as soon as*.

simulācrum, **i, n.** [**simulō**], (likeness), *figure, image*.

simulātiō, **ōnis, f.** [**simulō**], *pretence*.

simulō, 1st conj. [**similis**], (make like); *pretend*.

simultās, **tātis, f.** [**simul**], (a being together), *rivalry*.

sīn, subord. conj. [**sī, ne**], *but if*.

sincērō, adv. [**sincērus**, *pure*], *honestly*.

sine, prep. w. abl., *without*.

singillātim, adv. [**singuli**], *one at a time, singly, individually*.

singulāris, **e [singuli]**, *single*, VII. 8, 3; *singly*, IV. 26, 2; *extraordinary, unequalled*.

singuli, **ae, a**, distrib. adj., *one by one, one each; single, separate*.

sinister, **tra, trum**, *left*; as subst., sc. *manus* or *cornū*, *the left; the left hand*, I. 25, 3. (sub, on.)

sinistrōrsus, adv. [for **sinistrōversus**], (turned toward the left), *to the left*.

situs, **ūs, m.** [**sīdō**, *lay*], *situation, site*.

sive, or **seu**, conj. [**sī, -ve**], (or) *if*.

IV. 17, 10; **sive**—**sive**, *whether—or, either—or.*

socer, **socerī**, m., *father-in-law.*

societas, **tātis**, f. [**socius**], (*companionship*); *alliance.*

socius, **i**, m., (*companion*); plu., *allies.*

sōl, **sōlis**, m., no gen. plu., *sun*; **oriēns sōl**, (*the rising sun*), *the east*; **occidēns sōl**, (*the setting sun*), *occāsus sōlis*, (*the setting of the sun*), *the west*; personified, *Sol*, *the Sun*, VI. 21, 2.

sōlāciūm, **i**, n. [**sōlor**, *console*], *consolation, comfort.*

soldurius, **i**, m., the name applied by the Aquitanians to close personal followers or retainers of a chief, described III. 22, 1; best left untranslated.

soleō, **solēre**, **solitus sum**, *be accustomed.*

sōlitūdō, **dinis**, f. [**sōlus**], (*loneliness*); *wilderness, waste.*

sollertia, **ae**, f. [**sollers**, *skilful*], *skill, adroitness.*

sollicitō, 1st conj. [**sollicitus**, *agitated*], *stir up*; *tempt, tamper with*, VII. 37, 1.

sollicitūdō, **dinis**, f. [**sollicitus**, *agitated*], *anxiety.*

solum, **i**, n., *bottom*, VII. 72, 1, 73, 7; *soil*, I. 11, 5; *ground*, VI. 23, 1.

solum, adv. [acc. of **sōlus**], *only*; **nōn solum—sed etiam**, *not only—but also.*

sōlus, **a**, **um**, gen. **sōlius**, dat. **sōli**, *alone, only.*

solvō, **solvere**, **solvi**, **solūtum**, *loose*; **nāvēs solvere**, (*loose the ships*), *set sail, weigh anchor*; so also w. **nāvēs** omitted.

sonitus, **ūs**, m. [**sonō**, *sound*, from **sonus**], (*sound*), *splash.*

sonus, **i**, m., *sound.*

soror, **sorōris**, f., *sister*; **soror ex mātre**, (*sister from one's mother*), *half-sister by the same mother.*

sora, **sortis**, f., *lot.*

Sotiātēs, **um**, gen. plu., a tribe in the northern part of Aquitania, near modern *Lot*, III. 20, 2, etc.

spatium, **i**, n., *space*, either properly, or in time; *distance*; *time, interval.*

speciēs, **ēi**, f., only nom. and acc. in plu. [**speciō**, *look*], *appearance*; **ad (in) speciem**, *for show*, I. 51, 1, V. 51, 4.

spectō, 1st conj. [intensive of **speciō**, *look*], (*look*), *extend, stretch*; trans., (*look at*), *consider.*

speculator, **ōris**, m. [**speculor**], *scout, spy.*

speculātōrius, **a**, **um** [**speculātor**], (*used for scouting, etc.*); **spec. nāvīgium**, *picket boat, small boat.*

speculor, 1st conj. [**specula**, *watch tower*, from **speciō**, *look*], *spy, act as spies.*

spērō, 1st conj. [**spēs**], *hope.*

spēs, **spei**, f., only nom. and acc. in plu., *hope.*

spiritus, **ūs**, m. [**spirō**, *breath*], (*breath*); plu. *pride*, cf. Eng. "airs."

spoliō, 1st conj. [**spolium**, *spoil*], *despoil, deprive, strip.*

sponte, **spontis**, f., abl. and gen. of noun (**spōns**), whose other cases are not found, *free will*; **suā sponte**, *by their own influence*, I. 9, 2; *of their (his) own accord.*

stabilō, **stabilire**, **stabilivī**, **stabilitum** [**stabilis**, *steady*], (*make steady*), *secure, fasten.*

stabilitās, tātis, f. [stabilis, steady], steadiness.

statim, adv. [stō], (on the spot), immediately.

statiō, ōnis, f. [stō], (a standing), guard; picket, II. 18, 3; sentinel, VII. 69, 7; reserve, V. 16, 4. (in, on.)

statuō, statuere, statui, statutum [status], (settle), place, IV. 17, 5; determine, decide; take measures, I. 19, 5; quid gravius statuere, (decide anything quite severe), take any very severe measures, I. 20, 1. **statūra**, ae, f. [stō], (standing), height, stature.

status, ūs, m. [stō], (standing, status), condition, situation.

stimulus, I, m. [cf. στῖλw, prick], goad, spur; prick, facetiously applied to sharp metal hooks set in the ground, VII. 73, 9, 82, 1.

stipendiārius, a, um [stipendium], tributary. Masc. plu. as subst., dependents.

stipendium, I, n. [stips, gift; pendō, pay], tribute.

stipes, stipitis, m., stake, post.

stirps, stirpis, f., (m. or f. in poetry), stock of a plant or tree; race, VI. 34, 8; stock, VI. 34, 5.

stō, stāre, steti, stātum, stand; abide (by), VI. 13, 6.

strāmentum, I, n. [sternō, strew], straw; pack saddle, VII. 45, 2.

strepitus, ūs, m. [strepō, make a noise], noise.

studeō, studēre, studui, —, w. novis rēbus (imperliis), be eager (for), desire, care (about); pay attention, VII. 4, 8; be looking, VI. 21, 3; strive, VII. 14, 2; be bent

(upon), VII. 20, 5; look, pay any attention, VII. 28, 3.

studiōsē, adv. [studiōsus, eager, from studium], eagerly.

studium, I, n. [studeō], eagerness, enthusiasm; devotion, I. 19, 2; pursuit, VI. 21, 3.

stultitia, ae, f. [stultus, foolish], folly.

sub, prep., (1) w. acc. when implying motion, under; close up to, I. 24, 5; in expressions of time, towards; (2) w. abl. when implying rest, under, at the foot of, close by. In comp. the same as above; also, from under, i.e. up; slightly, somewhat.

subāctus, a, um, part. of subigō.

sub-dolus, a, um [dolus, device], (somewhat deceitful), crafty, cunning.

sub-dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, (lead from below), lead up; of ships, draw up. (in, on to.)

subductiō, ōnis, f. [subducō], drawing up (on shore), beaching.

sub-eō, ire, (ivi) ii, itum, go under, enter, I. 36, 7; w. periculum, undergo; w. condiōnem, submit to; come up, II. 25, 1, VII. 85, 5; approach, II. 27, 5.

sub-fodiō, fodere, fōdi, fossum, (dig underneath), slab underneath.

subfossus, a, um, part. of subfodiō.

sub-iciō (pronounced as if spelled subiciō), icere, iēcī, iectum [iaciō], (throw under), subject; place below, IV. 17, 9; expose, IV. 36, 2; (throw from under), thrust from below, I. 26, 3.

subiectus, a, um, part. of subiciō.

sub-igō, igere, ēgi, āctum [agō], (drive under, subdue), *constrain, confront.*

subitō, adv. [abl. of subitus], suddenly.

subitus, a, um [part. of subeō], (having "come up"), *sudden.*

sublātus, a, um, part. of tollō.

sub-levō, 1st conj. [levi, light], (lighten from underneath); *help, aid, support; assist (by), hold on (to), I. 48, 7; raise, VI. 27, 2; lighten, VI. 32, 5; lift up, VII. 47, 7.*

sub-lica, ae, f., pile.

sub-luō, luere, —, lūtum, (wash below), wash.

sub-ministrō, 1st conj. [minister, servant], furnish, provide.

sub-mittō, mittere, misi, missum, (send under, as for support), *send, submit.*

sub-moveō, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, (move from under), drive back.

sub-ruō, ruere, rui, rutum, undermine, II. 6, 2; dig under, loosen, VI. 27, 4.

sub-sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, *follow closely, follow up.*

subsidiū, I, n. [subsidiō], reserve, reinforcement; aid; plu., marches as reinforcements, VII. 88, 6.

sub-sidō, sidere, sēdi, sessum, (sit at the bottom), remain behind.

sub-sistō, sistere, stiti, —, (stand under), halt, make a stand.

sub-sum, esse, —, be close at hand, be close by.

sub-trahō, trahere, trāxi, trāctum, (draw from underneath), w. oñicula, undermine, VII. 22, 2; remove, set at liberty, I. 44, 5.

subvectiō, onis, f. [subvehō], transportation.

sub-vehō, vehere, vexi, vectum, (carry to a position under), bring up.

sub-veniō, venire, vēni, ventum, (come up under), come to the aid (of).

suo-, form of sub- in comp. before c. suo-cēdō, cēdere, cēssi, cēssum, (go close up to, go under); succeed, in the sense either of take one's place, or be successful, VII. 26, 1; approach, I. 24, 5, 25, 6; be next to anyone, IV. 3, 3.

suo-cendō, cendere, cendi, cēsum, (kindle beneath), set on fire.

suo-cidō, cidere, cidi, cisum [caedō], (cut under), cut down.

suo-cumbō, cumbere, cubui, — [cf. cubō], (lie down under), yield, succumb.

suo-currō, currere, occurri, cursum, (run under), run to the help (of), rush to aid; as w. auxiliō.

sudia, ia, f., stake, pile.

Suēba, ae, f., a Swabian (woman).

Suēbi, ōrum, m. plu., the Suebi, Swabians, the most powerful German tribe in Caesar's time, I. 37, 3, etc.

Suessiōnēs, um, m. plu., a Belgic tribe about the Marne, II. 3, 5 ff.

suf-, form of sub- in comp. before f. suf-ficiō, ficere, fēci, fectum [faciō], (put under, be sufficient), hold out.

suffrāgiū, I, n., (voting tablet), vote.

Sugambri, ōrum, m. plu., a German tribe north of Cologne, IV. 16, 2, etc.

sug-, form of sub- in comp. before g. suggestus, ūa, m. [sug-gerō, (bear

from under), *raise*], *platform*.
(*prō*, *from*.)

sui, gen., dat. *alibi*, acc. and abl. *sē*
or *sēsē*, sing. or plu., reflex. pro.,
3d pers., *himself, herself, itself,*
themselves; *him, her*, when Eng.
usage makes the reflexive meaning
clear.

Sulla, *aē*, m., *Lucius Cornelius*
Sulla, consul B.C. 88, dictator, 81-
79, I. 21, 4.

Sulpicius, *i*, m., *Publius Sulpicius*
Rufus, an officer with Caesar, prob-
ably a *legatus*, VII. 90, 7.

sum, *esse*, *ful* (*futūrus*), *be*; *exist*.

summa, *aē*, f. [fem. of *summus*, sc.
rēs], (highest thing); *sum*, I. 29,
2, 3; *whole*, VI. 34, 3; *most, greatest*
part, VI. 11, 5; *summa imperii*,
chief authority, general manage-
ment; *summam imperii tenēre*,
be commander-in-chief; w. *belli*,
control, conduct; *test*, VII. 21, 3.

summus, *a*, *um*, super. of *superus*.

sūmō, *sūmere*, *sūmpsi*, *sūmptum*
[for sub-*imō*, from *emō*], (take
away from anyone); *take*; *alibi*
sūmere, (take to one's self), *as-*
sume; *spend*, III. 14, 1; *supplicium*
dē aliquō sūmere, (take punish-
ment from anyone, cf. Eng. "take
it out of" anyone), *inflict punish-*
ment on anyone, punish anyone.
sūmptuosus, *a*, *um* [*sūmptus*],
costly.

sūmptus, *ās*, m. [*sūmō*], *expense*.

super-, prep. in comp., *over*.

superbē, adv. [*superbus*, *proud*,
from *super*, cf. Eng. "uppish"],
haughtily.

superō, 1st conj. [*superus*], (get
above); *overcome*; *prevail*, V. 31,

3; *surpass*, III. 14, 8, VI. 24, 1;
exceed, III. 14, 4; *survive*, VI. 19,
2 (sc. *vitā*).

super-sedēō, *sedēre*, *sēdi*, *sessum*,
(sit over, be superior to, "be
above"); *refrain*.

super-sum, *esse*, *ful*, —, (be over);
be left, remain.

superus, *a*, *um* [*super*], *high*; com-
par. *superior*, of place, *higher*,
upper; of time, *former*; of a battle,
superior, more successful; super.
suprēmus, *summa*, of place,
highest; w. most other nouns,
greatest; *summae rē*, *most im-*
portant matter; often w. partitive
force, as w. *mōns*, *collis*, *ingum*,
fossa, *the top of, the summit of*; so
neut. as subst., *the top, summit*,
end; *summa vis*, *main strength*;
w. *speciēs*, *exact*; *all, whole*, V. 17,
5, VII. 39, 2, 41, 2. See also
summa.

sup-, form of sub in comp. before
p.

sup-petō, *petere*, *petivi* or *petii*,
petitum, (come to the aid of), *be on*
hand, be available; *hold out*, VII.
77, 2, 85, 6.

sup-plēmentum, *i*, n. [*sup-pleō*, *fill*
up], *reinforcement*.

sup-plex, *plicia*, adj. [cf. *plicō*,
fold], (bending under, kneeling);
submissive; as subst., *submissive*
men.

supplicātiō, *ōnis*, f. [*sup-plicō*, *fold*
under, from supplex], (a kneeling),
thanksgiving.

suppliciter, adv. [*supplex*], *humbly*,
submissively.

supplicium, *i*, n. [*supplex*, in sense
of bending to receive lashes], *punish-*

ment; often in the sense of *capital punishment, execution*.

sup-portō, 1st conj., *bring up*.

suprā, adv. and prep. w. acc. [case form of *superus*], *above*; of time, *before*, VI. 19, 4.

sus-, form of *sub* in comp. before *o*, *p*, and *t*.

sus-cipiō, *cipere*, *ōpi*, *ceptum* [*capiō*], (take under), *undertake*; *sibi suscipere*, (take upon one's self), *assume*.

sū(sub)-spiciō, *spicere*, *spexi*, *spectum*, (look askance at), *suspect*.

sūspiciō, *ōnis*, f. [*sūspiciō*], *suspicion*.

sūsploor, 1st conj. [cf. *sūspiciō*], *suspect*.

sus-tentō, 1st conj. [intens. of *sus-tineō*], *sustain*, sc. *bella*, II. 14, 6; *impers.*, *the attack was sustained*, II. 6, 1; *endure*, V. 39, 4; *avoid*, VII. 17, 3.

sus-tineō, *tinēre*, *tinui*, *tentum* [*teneō*], (hold under), w. *impetum*, *vim*, *aspectum*, *haec*, *sustain*; *withstand*; *intrans.* *hold out*; *hold*, V. 10, 2; *bear, endure*, I. 31, 13, VI. 18, 3; *check*, IV. 33, 3; *carry*, VII. 56, 4; *sē sustinēre*, *stand upright*, II. 25, 1.

sua, *a*, *um* [cf. *sui*], reflex. poss. pro., 3d pers., *his, her, its, their*, the gender and number depending upon the antecedent; *his own*, etc.; w. *locus*, *favorable*, IV. 34, 2; *one's usual, well known*, e.g. w. *clementia*, II. 14, 5, 31, 4; as subst., masc. plu., *one's own men, countrymen, friends*, etc.; neut. sing., *their standing*, I. 43, 8; plu. *their (his) property, possessions*.

T

T., abbreviation for *Titus*, a Roman *praenomen*.

tabernāculum, *i*, n. [dimin. of *taberna*, *hut*], *tent*.

tabula, *ae*, f., (board, writing tablet), *list*.

tabulātum, *i*, n. [*tabula*], (system of boarding, flooring), *story*.

taceō, *tacēre*, *tacui*, *tacitum*, *be silent*; trans., *be silent about*. Perf. part. as adj., *silent*.

tacitus, *a*, *um*, part. of *taceō*.

tālea, *ae*, f., *rod or bar*.

tālia, *e*, *such*.

tam, adv., *so*, to such a degree.

tamen, adv., *yet, nevertheless*; *indeed*; *however*.

Tamesis, *is*, m., acc. *im*, the *Thames*.

tam-etsi, subord. conj. [*tamen*, *etsi*], (however, although), *although*.

tandem, adv. [for *tam-dem*, (cf. *idem*)], *at length*; giving impatient force to questions, *quid tandem, what in the world*, I. 40, 4.

tangō, *tangere*, *tetigi*, *taotum*, (touch), *border upon*.

tantopere, adv. [for *tantō opere*; see *opus*], *fiercely, desperately*.

tantulus, *a*, *um* [dimin. of *tantus*], *such little*; *such slight*, II. 30, 4; **tantulae rēa**, *such trifles*.

tantum, adv. [*tantus*; adverbial acc.], *so much*, V. 54, 4, VI. 12, 3; w. restrictive force, (so much and no more), *enough*, VI. 27, 4, 38, 5; **tantum modo**, (so much only), *merely*, III. 5, 3; **tantum—quantum**, *only as much as*, V. 19, 3.

tantundem, adv. [neut. acc. of *tan-*

tusdem, from tantus, Idem], (so much the same), *just so much*.

tantus, a, um, *so great, so much*; tantus—quantus, *as much as*; tanti, gen. of value, *of so great account*, I. 20, 5.

Tarbelli, ōrum, m. plu., an Aquitanian tribe upon the Atlantic coast, III. 27, 1.

tardē, adv. [tardus], *slowly*; compar., *rather slowly*.

tardō, 1st conj. [tardus], (make slow), *retard, check*.

tardus, a, um, *slow*; compar., *rather slow*.

Tarusātēs, ium, m. plu., a tribe of western Aquitania, III. 23, 1, etc.

Tāsgetius, 1, m., a chief of the Carnutes, supported by Caesar, V. 25, 1, 29, 2.

taurus, 1, m., *bull*.

Taximagulus, 1, m., a British chief of Kent, V. 22, 1.

taxus, 1, f., *yew-tree*, or its leaves or berries.

tē, acc. of tū.

Tectosagēs, um, m. plu., a division of the Volcae, in the Province; principal cities Toulouse (Tolosa) and Narbonne (Narbo), VI. 24, 2.

tēctum, 1, n. [neut. of perf. pass. part. of tegō], (a thing covered), *shelter, house*.

tegimentum, 1, n. [tegō], (means of covering), *covering*.

tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctum, *cover*, V. 43, 1; *conceal*.

tēlum, 1, n., any weapon intended to be thrown, *spear, dart*.

temerārius, a, um [temerō], *rash, reckless*.

temerō, adv., *rashly, recklessly*.

temeritās, tātis, f. [temerō], *rashness, recklessness*.

tēmō, ōnis, m., *pole* of a chariot.

temperantia, ae, f. [temperāns, pres. part. of temperō], *moderation*.

temperō, 1st conj. [cf. tempus], (mingle properly, exercise moderation, practise self-control), *refrain*. Perf. part. as adj., *temperate, mild*.

tempestās, tātis, f. [tempus], *weather*, IV. 23, 1, 36, 3, V. 7, 4; (stormy weather); *storm*.

temptō, 1st conj., intens. of [tendō], *try*; *approach* with treasonable intent, VI. 2, 2; w. fortūnam, *tempt*; w. iter, *try to force*; *make an attempt upon*, VII. 73, 1, 86, 4.

tempus, temporis, n., *time*; in reliquum tempus, *in the future*; omni tempore, *always*; prō tempore et prō rē, *according to the time and circumstance*, V. 8, 1.

Tencteri, ōrum, m. plu., a German tribe, driven by the Suebi from their homes, who appeared about the lower part of the Rhine in the winter of 56–55 B.C., IV. 1, 1, etc.

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus and tēnsus, *stretch*; *pitch one's tent*, VI. 37, 2.

tenebrae, ārum, f. plu., *darkness*.

teneō, tenēre, tenui [tentum], *hold, have*; *restrain*, I. 31, 9, 39, 4; *occupy*, VII. 48, 1, 80, 2; circuitus tenet, *the circumference is*, VII. 69, 6; nō tenēre, (hold one's self), *remain*.

tener, tenera, tenerum, compar. tenerior, super. tenerrimus, *tender, young*.

tenuis, e, (thin); *delicate*, V. 40, 7; *precarious, meagre*, VI. 35, 8.

tenuitās, tātis, f. [**tenuis**], (thinness); *poverty*.

tenuiter, adv. [**tenuis**], *thinly*.

ter, num. adv. [cf. **tres**], *three times*.

teres, teritis, adj. [cf. **terō, rub**], *smooth, round*.

tergum, i, back; **post tergum, ā tergō, behind one, in the rear**.

terni, ae, a, distrib. adj. [**ter**], *three each, three at a time*.

terra, ae, f., (dry) land, i. 30, 3, and when in connection w. the sea; earth, ground; plu. world, and so orbis terrarum (circle of the lands, i.e. about the Mediterranean); lands, VII. 77, 14.

Terrasidius, i, m., Titus Terrasidius, an officer with Crassus in Aquitania, III. 7, 4 ff.

terrēnus, a, um [terra], of earth.

terreō, terrēre, terrui, territum, frighten; before quō minus, prevent.

territō, territāre, —, — [intens. of terreō], frighten greatly, terrify; metū territāre, fill with apprehension.

terror, ōris, m. [terreō], fear, dread, terror; terrōri esse, terrōrem inferre, strike terror.

tertius, a, um, ordinal adj. [ter], third.

tēstāmentum, i, n. [tēstor, bear witness, from tēstis], will.

tēstimōnium, i, n. [tēstor, bear witness, from tēstis], evidence, proof.

tēstis, is, c., witness.

tēstūdō, dinis, f. [tēsta, earthenware, shell], tortoise; as military term, testudo, a close formation for assault, shields lapping, II. 6, 2, V. 9, 7, VII. 85, 5; or movable shed,

under which soldiers could work, V. 42, 4, 43, 3, 52, 2.

Teutomatus, i, m., king of the Nitiobroges, VII. 31, 5, 46, 5.

Teutoni, ōrum, or Teutonēs, um, m. plu., the Teutons, a Germanic tribe which, with the Cibri, roamed over Gaul in the second century B.C., then turned toward Italy and was finally defeated by Marius, 102 and 101 B.C.; I. 33, 4, etc.

tignum, i, n., timber, log, pile.

Tigurinus, a, um, name of a canton of the Helvetii, I. 12, 4; masc. plu. as subst., the Tigurini, I. 12, 7.

timeō, timēre, timui, —, trans., fear, be afraid of; intrans., fear, be afraid. Pres. part. plu., as subst., the timid.

timidē, adv. [timidus], timidly; nōn timidē, fearlessly.

timidus, a, um [timeō], timid, cowardly, afraid.

timor, ōris, m. [timeō], fear, cowardice.

Titurius, i, m., Quintus Titurius Sabinus, a legatus of Caesar, killed with his command by the Eburones in the autumn of the fifth year of the war, II. 5, 6, etc.

tolerō, 1st conj., endure; w. vitam, sustain; impers. pass., hold out, VII. 71, 4.

tollō, tollere, sus-tuli, sub-lātum [perf. and supine from suf(sub)-ferō], w. clāmōrem, ancorās (but see below), ululātum, raise; take away, take on board, IV. 28, 1; destroy, wipe out, VI. 34, 8; prevent, cancel, I. 42, 5; technically w. ancorās, weigh; perf. part. sub-lātus, a, um, elated, I. 15, 3, V. 38, 1.

Tolōsa, ae, f., one of the chief cities of the Volcae Tectosages, in the Province, now *Toulouse*, III. 20, 2.

Tolōsātēs, ium, m. plu. [**Tolōsa**], a tribe about *Toulouse*, I. 10, 1, VII. 7, 4.

tormentum, I, n. [**torqueō**, *twist*], windlass, VII. 22, 2; **tormentum**, plu. **tormenta**, military engine for throwing darts and other missiles; see Introduction; *torture*, VI. 19, 3, VII. 4, 10.

torreō, **torrēre**, **torrui**, **tostum**, (parch), *roast*, *singe*.

tot, indeclin. numeral adj., *so many*.

totidem, indeclin. numeral adj. [**tot**, **idem**], (just so many), *as many*, *the same number of*.

tōtus, a, um, gen. **totius**, dat. **tōti**, *the whole*, *all*, *all the*, *entire*; translated adverbially, *wholly*, *entirely*, III. 13, 3, VI. 5, 1, VII. 73, 9.

trabs (pronounced as if spelled **traps**), **trabis**, f., *beam*, *timber*.

trāctus, a, um, part. of **trahō**.

trā-, form of **trāns** in comp.

trā-dō, **dere**, **didi**, **ditum** [**dō**, **dare**], *hand over*, VI. 4, 4; *hand down*, IV. 7, 3; *pass on*, VII. 3, 2; *pass*, VII. 25, 2; *give up*, *surrender*; w. **imperium**, **summa imperii**, *intrust*; *yield*, I. 44, 13; *impart*, *teach*, VI. 14, 6, 17, 2, VII. 22, 1; *introduce*, VII. 39, 1.

trā-dūcō, **dūcere**, **dūxi**, **ductum**, *lead across*, *lead over*; *promote*, VI. 40, 7; *bring over*, VI. 12, 3, VII. 37, 3.

trāgula, ae, f., *javelin*, *lance*, with a thong or strap to assist in hurling.

trahō, **trahere**, **trāxi**, **trāctum**, *drag*, *draw*; *hurry along*, I. 53, 5.

trā-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **trājiciō**), **icere**, **iēcī**, **iectum** [**iaciō**], (throw across), *pierce*.

trāiectus, a, um, part. of **trāiciō**.

trāiectus, ūs, m. [**trāiciō**], (crossing), *passage*.

trā-nō, 1st conj., *swim across*, *swim over*.

tranquillitās, **tātis**, f. [**tranquillus**], *still*, *calm*.

trāns, prep. w. acc., *across*, *over*, *on the farther side of*, *beyond*.

Trāns-alpinus, a, um [**Alpēs**], (beyond the Alps), *Transalpine*.

trān-scendō, **scendere**, **scendi**, — [**scandō**], (climb across); *climb over*; **trāns-scendere in**, *board*.

trāns-eō, **ire**, **ivi** or **ii**, **itum**, (go across), *cross*; *pass through*, I. 8, 2, 9, 4; *go over*, III. 18, 2, V. 51, 3; *pass*, III. 2, 1; *pass over*, VI. 14, 5.

trāns-ferō, **ferre**, **tuli**, **lātum**, *bring over*; *transfer*, *adjourn*, VI. 3, 4; *direct* (against), VII. 8, 4.

trāns-figō, **figere**, **fixi**, **fixum** (fasten across); *pierce*.

trāns-fodiō, **fodere**, **fōdi**, **fossam**, (dig across); *pierce*.

trāns-gredior, **gredi**, **gressus sum** [**gradior**], *step across*, VII. 25, 3; *cross*, II. 19, 4; *climb over*, VII. 46, 4.

trānsitus, ūs, m. [**trāns-eō**], (a going over), *passage*, *passing*.

trāns-lātus, a, um, part. of **trāns-ferō**.

trāns-marīnus, a, um [**mare**], *beyond the sea*, *across the sea*.

trāns-missus, ūs, m. [**trāns-mittō**], *passage*, *crossing*.

trāns-mittō, **mittere**, **misi**, **missum**, (send across), *transport*.

trāns-portō, 1st conj., *carry across, transport.*

Trāns-rhēnānus, a, um [Rhēnus], *across the Rhine, beyond the Rhine.* Masc. plu. as subst., *those living across the Rhine.*

trānstrum, l, n. [trāns], *crossbeam.*

trāns-versus, a, um [vertō], (turned across); **trānsversa fossa**, *cross ditch.*

Trebius, l, m., *Marcus Trebius Gallus*, an officer w. Crassus in Aquitania, III. 7, 4 ff.

Trebonius, l, m., (1) *Gaius Trebonius*, a *legatus* of Caesar, V. 17, 2, etc. (2) *Gaius Trebonius*, a Roman knight, VI. 40, 4.

trecenti, ae, a, card. adj. [trēs, centum], *three hundred.*

trepidō, 1st conj. [trepidus, restless], *hurry around anxiously*; impers., w. loc. abl., *be in confusion.*

trēs, tria, gen. **trium**, dat. **tribus**, card. adj. [cf. τρεῖς], *three.*

Trēveri, ōrum, m. plu., a strong Belgic tribe, about the Meuse (Moselle), I. 37, 1, etc.

Tribocī, ōrum, m. plu., a German tribe about the Rhine, east of the Vosges mountains, I. 51, 2, IV. 10, 3.

tribūnus, l, m. [tribus, tribe], (orig., head of a tribe), *tribune*, an officer of the legion in Caesar's army, attached to it rather than a part of it, who commanded detachments, secured supplies, etc.

tribuō, **tribuere**, **tribui**, **tribūtum** [tribus, tribe], *assign, attribute*, I. 13, 5, VII. 53, 1; *grant* (for the sake of), VI. 1, 4; *bestow; pay attention*, VII. 37, 4.

tribūtum, l, n. [neut. of perf. part. of tribuō], (a thing assigned), *tribute, tax.*

triduum, l, n. [trēs, diēs], (space of three days), *three days.*

triennium, l, n. [trēs, annus], (space of three years), *three years.*

trigintā, indeclin. card. adj. [trēs], *thirty.*

trīni, ae, a, distrib. adj. [trēs], (three each), w. **castra**, **hīberna**, *three*, used to show that these nouns are plu. in signification; *triple*, I. 53, 5.

Trinovantēs, um, m. plu., a British tribe in what is now Essex and part of Suffolk, V. 20, 1 ff.

tripertitō, adv. [abl. of tripertitus, from trēs, pars], *in three divisions.*

triplex, **triplicis**, adj. [trēs, plicō], (threefold), *triple.*

triquetrus, a, um [trēs, quattuor], ("three square"), *three-cornered, triangular.*

tristis, e, *sad, dejected*; translated as if adv., *sadly.*

tristitia, ae, f. [tristis], *sadness, dejection.*

Troucillus, l, m., *Gaius Valerius Troucillus*, a Gaul of the Province, a personal friend of Caesar.

truncus, l, m., *tree-trunk.*

tū, **tuī**, **tibi**, **tē**, **tē**; **vōs**, **vestrum** or **vestri**, **vōbis**, 2d pers. pro., (thou), *you.*

tuba, ae, f., *trumpet.*

tueor, **tuēri**, **tuitus** (**tūtus**) **sum**, (watch), *defend, protect.*

tuli, perf. of **ferō**.

Tulingi, ōrum, m. plu., a German tribe north of the Helvetii, allied w. the latter in their migration, I. 25, 6, etc.

tum, adv., *then*; **cum—tum**, both *—and, not only—but also*, II. 4, 7.

III. 16, 2, V. 4, 3, 54, 5, etc.

tumultuor, 1st conj. [**tumultus**], *be in confusion*; absolutely, *there is confusion*.

tumultuōsē, adv. [**tumultuōsus**, *tumultuous*], *tumultuously*; compar., *with more confusion than usual*.

tumultus, ūs, m. [cf. **tumēō**, *swell*], *noise, uproar*; *revolt, uprising*, I. 40, 5, V. 26, 1.

tumulus, ī, m. [cf. **tumēō**, *swell*], *mound, hillock*.

tunc, adv., *then*.

turma, ae, f., *troop, squadron*, a division of cavalry of about 30 men.

Turonī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of west central Gaul, on both banks of the Loire (Liger), about modern Tours, II. 36, 3, etc.

turpis, e, (ugly), *disgraceful, shameful*.

turpiter, adv. [**turpis**], *disgracefully*.

turpitūdō, dīnis, f. [**turpis**], *disgrace*.

turris, is, f., acc. **im**, **em**, abl. **ī**, **e**, *tower*, including the movable tower used by the Romans in their siege operations.

tūtō, adv. [**tūtus**], *safely*.

tūtō, adv., super. **tūtissimō** [abl. of **tūtus**, sc. **locō**], *in safety, safely*.

tūtus, a, um [perf. pass. part. of **tueor**, *defend*], (defended), *safe*.

tuus, a, um, poss. pro., 2d pers. sing. [**tū**], (thy), *your*.

U

ubi, **ubī**, rel. adv. [old form **cubi**, for **quō-bī**, loc. of **quī**], *where*,

when; **ubi primum**, (when first), *as soon as*.

ubique, adv. [**ubi**; cf. **quisque**, **uterque**, etc.], (anywhere), *everywhere*.

Ubius, a, um, of the Ubii. Masc. plu. as subst., *the Ubii*, a German tribe, opposite the Ardennes, friendly to Caesar, I. 54, 1, etc.

ulciscor, **ulciscō**, **ultus sum**, *avenger*, I. 12, 7; *take vengeance*, VI. 34, 7; *punish, take vengeance upon*.

ūllus, a, um, gen. **ūllius**, dat. **ūlli**, *any*; as subst., *anyone, anything*.

ūltior, **ius**, compar. adj., super. **ūltimus** [**ultrā**], *farther*; as subst., *those farther distant*, VI. 2, 2; super., *farthest, most distant*; as subst., *the last, those in the rear*, V. 43, 5.

ūltrā, prep. w. acc., *beyond*.

ūltrō, adv., *to the farther side*; *voluntarily, of one's own accord*; *besides*, V. 28, 4; *actually*, V. 40, 7, VI., 35, 4; **ūltrō citrōque**, *back and forth*.

ultus, a, um, part. of **ulciscor**.

ululātus, ūs, m. [**ululō**, *yell*], *shout, yell*.

umerus, ī, m., *shoulder*.

umquam, adv., *ever*.

ūnā, adv. [abl. of **ūnus**, sc. **viā**], *together*, espec. w. **cum**; *with, along with* some one or something. supplied from context; *in one place*, VI. 22, 2; *at the same time*, VII. 67, 2.

unde, rel. adv., *whence, from which*; less exactly, *where*, V. 53, 4.

ūn-decim, indeclin. card. adj. [**ūnus**, **decem**], *eleven*.

ūn-decimus, a, um, ord. adj. [**ūn-decim**], *eleventh*.

ūn-dē-quadrāgintā, card. adj., (one down from forty), *thirty-nine*.

ūn-dē-viginti, card. adj., (one down from twenty), *nineteen*.

undique, adv. [*unde*, cf. *ubique quisque*, etc.], (from all sides), *on all sides*.

ūni-versus, a, um [*ūnus, vertō*], (turned into one), *all together, all, the whole of*. Masc. plu. as subst., *the whole body, all the men together*.

ūnus, a, um, gen. *ūnius*, dat. *ūni*, card. adj., *one; alone, only, only one*; plu., *alone, only*; ad *ūnum*, *to a man*.

urbānus, a, um [*urbs*], (of the city), *in the city, i.e. Rome*.

urbs (pronounced as if spelled *urps*), *urbis*, f., *city*; referring to Rome, I. 7, 1, 39, 2, VI. 1, 2.

urgēō, urgēre, urai, —, *press*; pass., *be hard pressed*.

ūrus, i, m., an animal described by Caesar, probably the *urochs*, VI. 28, 1.

Usipetēs, um, m. plu., a German tribe driven by the Suebi from their homes, who appeared about the lower part of the Rhine in the winter of 56-55 B.C., IV. 1, 1, etc.

ūsītātus, a, um [perf. pass. part. of *ūsitor*, intensive of *ūtōr*], (usual), *familiar*.

ūsque, adv., (all the way), w. ad, *even, clear*; so w. *ēō* (adv.), *even to this point*.

ūsus, a, um, part. of *ūtōr*.

ūsus, ūs, m. [*ūtōr*], *use*, III. 13, 6, V. 42, 3; *experience*; *ūsui esse* (dat. of purpose), *be of use, be useful, be advantageous*; so also *ex*

ūsū, of use, advantageous; *ūsū venire, come to pass*; of ships, *handling, management*; *necessity*, IV. 2, 3, VI. 15, 1, VII. 80, 1.

ut or *utī*, subord. conjunc., w. subj. of purpose, *that, in order that*; w. subj. of result, *that, so that*; w. indic. or subj. in ind. dis. representing indic., *as*; in phrases of comparison where verb is omitted, *as if, as*; *ut primum, as soon as*; concessive, *although*, III. 9, 6; *when*, I. 31, 12.

uter, utra, utrum, gen. *utrius*, dat. *utri*, interrog. or rel. pro., subst. or adj., *which of two, whichever*.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, gen. *utriusque*, dat. *utrique*, indef. pro., subst. or adj., *each of two, both*. Plu., *each side, both forces, tribes, etc.*

utī, form of *ut*.

ūtīlis, e [*ūtōr*], *useful*.

ūtīlitās, tātis, f. [*ūtīlis*], *advantage, use*.

ūtōr, ūtī, ūsus sum, *use, employ*, w. abl.; w. pred. adj. modifying abl. noun, *find*, V. 25, 2, VII. 76, 1; *show*, II. 14, 5, 28, 3, IV. 24, 4; *avail one's self* (of), *accept*, II. 32, 4, IV. 11, 3; *enjoy*, I. 44, 4, 45, 3, 47, 4, VI. 12, 6; *obtain*, III. 22, 4; w. *cōnalliō*, *adopt*; part. best translated *with*, cf. *ἐχων*, I. 46, 4, IV. 13, 4, VI. 8, 2.

utrimque, adv. [*uterque*], *on each side, on both sides*.

utrum, coörd. conjunc. [neut. of *uter*], *whether*, used in first part of double question, not translatable unless question is indirect.

uxor, ōris, f., *wife*.

V

V, as numeral = 5, this character being half of X = 10.

Vaculus, I, m., *the Waal*, a branch of the Rhine, joining the Meuse or Maas (Mosa).

vacātiō, ōnis, f. [**vacō**], *exemption from service*.

vacō, 1st conj., *be unoccupied*.

vacuus, a, um [**vacō**], *empty, vacant; stripped*. (ab, of, II. 12, 2.)

vadum, I, n., *ford*; plu., *shoals*, III. 9, 6, 12, I, 13, I, 9, IV. 26, 2.

vāgina, ae, f., *scabbard, sheath*.

vagor, 1st. conj., *roam, wander*.

valeō, **valēre**, **valui**, **valitum**, *be strong, be powerful; prevail*, I. 40, 14; *contribute*, VI. 30, 4, VII. 84, 4; **minimum valēre**, *have very little power*; **tantum valēre**, *have so much weight*; **plūrimum valēre**, *be very strong, be very influential*.

Valerius, I, m., (1) *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, governor (propraetor) of Gaul, 83 B.C., I. 47, 4; (2) *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus*, a *legatus* defeated and killed in Aquitania, III. 20, 1; (3) *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul who received Roman citizenship, I. 47, 4; (4) *Gaius Valerius Procillus*, son of above, I. 47, 4, 53, 5; (5) *Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus*, brother of above, VII. 65, 2; (6) *Gaius Valerius Troucillus*, a prominent Gaul of the Province, I. 19, 3.

Valetiācus, I, m., "vergobret" of the Aedui, 53 B.C., VII. 32, 4.

valētūdō, dīnis, f. [**valeō**], *health, state of health, whether good or bad*.

vallēs, is, f., *valley*.

vāllum, I, n. [**vāllus**], *rampart, wall of Roman fortifications, which was strengthened with stakes*.

vāllus, I, m., *stake*, VII. 73, 4.

Vangionēs, um, m. plu., a German tribe with Ariovistus, later living about modern Worms, I. 51, 2.

varietās, tātis, f. [**varius**], *variety, variation*, VII. 23, 5; *different colors*, VI. 27, 1.

varius, a, um, *various, different*.

vāstō, 1st conj. [**vāstus**], (make empty), *ravage, devastate, lay waste*.

vāstus, a, um, (empty, waste); *vast, boundless*.

vāticinātiō, ōnis, f. [**vaticinor**, *prophecy*, from **vāticinus**, *prophetic*, from **vātēs**, *prophet*, and **canō**, (sing), *predict*], *prophecy*.

-**vē**, enclitic conj., or.

vectigal, **vectigālis**, n. [**vehō**], *revenue*, I. 18, 3, 36, 4; *tribute*, V. 22, 4.

vectigālis, e [**vectigal**], *tributary*, III. 8, 1, IV. 3, 4.

vectōrius, a, um [**vector**, *carrier*, from **vehō**], *adapted to carry*; **vect. navigium**, *transport*.

vehementer, adv. [**vehemēns**, *eager*], *exceedingly*; w. verbs of fighting, *vigorously, desperately*; w. **incūsō**, *severely*.

vel, conj. [orig. 2d pers. sing. of **volō**, *wish*], or; **vel—vel**, *either— or*; **aut—aut** is used when the two alternatives exclude each other, **vel —vel** when they do not.

Velānius, I, m., *Quintus Velanius*, an officer with Crassus in Aquitania, III. 7, 4, etc.

Vellocassēs, ūm, m. plu., a tribe in

Belgic Gaul, near the mouth of the Seine, II. 4, 9, VII. 75, 3.

Vellaunodūnum, I, n., a city of the Senones, somewhere between Sens and Orleans, VII. 11, 1, etc.

Vellavi, ōrum, m. plu., a small state in the Cevennes, under the protection of the Avernii, VII. 75, 2.

vēlōitās, tātis, f. [vēlōx], *speed*.

vēlōiter, adv. [vēlōx], *swiftly, quickly*.

vēlōx, vēlōcis, adj., *swift, active, quick*.

vēlum, I, n., *sail*.

vel-ut, adv., *just as*.

vēnātiō, ōnis, f. [vēnor, hunt], *hunting, the chase*.

vēnātor, ōris, m. [vēnor, hunt], *hunter*.

vēn-dō, dere, didi, ditum [vēnum, sale, dō, dare, (give), put], (put on sale), *sell*.

Venelli, ōrum, m. plu., a maritime tribe on the northern coast of Britany, II. 34, etc.

Veneti, ōrum, m. plu., a maritime tribe on the southern coast of Britany, II. 34, III. 7, 4, etc.

Venetia, ae, f. [Veneti], *the country of the Veneti*.

Veneticus, a, um [Veneti], *of the Veneti, with the Veneti*.

venia, ae, f., *pardon; permission*, VII. 15, 6.

veniō, venire, vēni, ventum, *come; in spem venire*, (come into the hope), *entertain hope, begin to hope*; often impers. pass. **ventum est**, (it was come), *they came*.

ventitō, 1st conj. [intensive of veniō], *come often, keep coming*.

ventus, I, m., *wind*.

vēr, veris, n., *spring*. (primus, the beginning of.)

Veragri, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in the Alps southeast of Lake Geneva, III. 1, 1.

Verbigenus, I, m., a canton of the Helvetii, east of the Tigurini, I. 27, 4.

verbum, I, n., *word*; **verba facere**, *speak*.

Vercassivellaunus, I, m., one of the Avernii, cousin of Vercingetorix, VII. 76, 3, etc.

Vercingetorix, igitis, m., one of the Avernii, commander-in-chief of the Gauls in their great struggle of the seventh year of the war, VII. 4, 1, etc.

vereor, verēri, veritus sum, *fear, be afraid*.

vergō, vergere, —, —, (incline), *lie, be situated, extend*.

vergobretus, I, m., *vergobret*, title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui, I. 16, 5.

veritus, a, um, part. of **vereor**.

vērō, adv. [abl. of vērus, true], (in truth), *indeed, in fact; but, while; and, emphatic*.

versō, 1st conj. [intensive of vertō], (turn), *treat in turn*, V. 44, 14; elsewhere deponent in middle voice, (turn one's self about), *engage; move about*, V. 45, 4; *be*, II. 24, 2, 26, 5; *remain*, II. 1, 3; *ride*, VII. 40, 5.

versus, ūs, m. [vertō], (a turning); *line, verse*.

versus, adv. [part. of vertō], (turned); following an acc. of place to which, it gives it the force *toward*, VI. 33, 1, VII. 7, 2, 8, 5, 61, 5; *quōque versus*, (turned each way),

- in every direction*, III. 23, 2, VII. 4, 5, 14, 5; see *quōque*.
- Verticō, ōnis**, m., a Nervian of prominence, V. 45, 2, 49, 2.
- vertō, vertere, verti, versum**, *turn*.
- Verucloetius**, I, m., a Helvetian nobleman, I. 7, 3.
- vērus, a, um**, *true*, I. 18, 2, 20, 2; *right, fair*, IV. 8, 2. Neut. as subst., *truth*; **vērī similia**, (like the truth), *probable*, III. 13, 6. See **vērō**.
- verūtum**, I, n. [**verū, spit**, for holding meat to roast], *javelin, dart*.
- Vesontio, ōnis**, m., the chief city of the Sequani, now Besançon, I. 38, 1, 39, 1.
- vesper, vesperi or vesperis**, m., *evening*.
- vester, tra, trum**, poss. pro., 2d pers. plu. [**vōs**], *your, yours*.
- vēstīgium**, I, n., *footprint, track; spot*, IV. 2, 3; **ō vēstīgō**, *on the spot; w. temporis, moment*.
- vestiō, vestire, vestivi or vestii, vestitum [vestis]**, *clothe; cover*, VII. 23, 2.
- vestis, is**, f., *clothing*.
- vestitus, ūs**, m. [**vestiō**], *clothing; uniform*, VII. 88, 1.
- veterānus, a, um [vetus]**, *veteran*.
- vetō, vetāre, vetui, vetitum**, *forbid*.
- vetus, veteris**, adj., *old*, V. 1, 1; *former*; of soldiers, *veteran; long-standing*, I. 43, 6.
- vēxillum**, I, n. [cf. **vēlum**, *sail*], *flag*, for any especial purpose or signal. (**prōpōnere**, *raise*.)
- vēxō**, 1st conj., *harass, assail; overrun*, II. 4, 2; *ravage, lay waste*, IV. 15, 5.
- via, ae, f.**, *way, road, route; journey, march*.
- viātor, ōris**, m. [**via**], *traveller, wayfarer*.
- vicēni, ae, a**, distrib. adj. [**viginti**], *twenty each, twenty*.
- vicēsimus, a, um**, ord. adj. [**viginti**], *twentieth*.
- vicies**, num. adv. [**viginti**], *twenty times*.
- vicinitās, tātis**, f. [**vicinus**, *neighboring*], denoting condition, (neighborhood); collective, *people of the neighborhood*.
- vicis, is**, f., only gen., acc., and abl. sing., and nom., dat., acc., and abl. plu., *change; in vicem, in turn*.
- victima, ae, f.**, *victim, sacrifice*.
- victor, ōris**, m. [**vincō**], *conqueror, victor*, I. 44, 2, II. 28, 1; elsewhere, as if adj., *victorious*.
- victōria, ae, f. [victor]**, *victory*.
- victus, a, um**, part of **vincō**.
- victus, ūs**, m. [**vivō**, *live*], (living), *food*, VI. 22, 1, 23, 9, 24, 4; **cōnsuetūdō victūs**, *mode of life*, I. 31, 11.
- vicus, I, m.**, *village*.
- videō, vidēre, vidi, visum**, *see*; pass. usually as dep., *seem; seem best*, II. 20, 4, IV. 8, 1, V. 36, 3, 58, 3, VI. 20, 3, 22, 2; in regular sense, *be seen*, II. 18, 3, V. 48, 10, VI. 1, 3; *appear*, I. 47, 2, II. 33, 2, V. 9, 4.
- Vienna, ae, f.**, principal city of the Allobroges, on the east bank of the Rhone, now *Vienne*, VII. 9, 3.
- vigilia, ae, f. [vigil, watchman]**, *watch*, one of the four equal divisions of the night; *sleeplessness, wakefulness*, V. 31, 4, 32, 1.

viginti, indeclin. card. adj., *twenty*.
vimen, **minis**, n., *twig, osier, withe*.
vinciō, **vincire**, **vinxi**, **vinotum**,
bind.

vincō, **vincere**, **vici**, **victum**, *conquer, overcome, defeat; outdo, surpass*, VI. 43, 5; *have one's way*, V. 30, 1.

vinculum, l, n. [**vinciō**], *chain*; in **vincula cōnecere**, (throw into chains), *imprison*. (**ex**, *in*.)

vindicō, 1st conj. [**vindex**, *defender*], (assert a claim), *assert*, VII. 76, 2; *restore*, VII. 1, 5; in **—vindicāre**, *punish*, III. 16, 4.

vineā, ae, f. [**vinum**], (vine-arbor); movable *shed*, used for protection of soldiers engaged in siege works.

vinum, l, n., (vine), *wine*.

violō, 1st conj. [cf. **vis**], *do violence to, injure; invade*, VI. 32, 2.

vir, **virī**, m., *man; husband*, VI. 19, 1, 3.

virēs, **iūm**, etc., plu. of **vis**.

virgō, **ginis**, f., *maiden*.

virgulta, **ōrum**, m. plu. [for **virgulēta**, from **virgula**, from **virga**, *twig*], *brushwood, brush*.

Viridomārus, l, m., an Aeduan of rank, at first loyal, then opposed, to Caesar, VII. 38, 2, etc.

Viridovix, **icis**, m., a leader of the Venelli and their allies against Sabinus, III. 17, 2, etc.

virtūm, adv. [**vir**], (man by man), *to each individual*.

Viromandui, **ōrum**, m. plu., a tribe in the western part of Belgic Gaul, about the headwaters of the Somme, II. 4, 9.

virtūs, **tūtis**, f. [**vir**], (manliness), *bravery, valor; energy*, VII. 6, 1,

22, 1, 59, 6; *spirit*, V. 8, 4; *worth*, I. 47, 4; plu., *virtues, merits*.

vis, **vis**, **vi**, **vim**, **vi**, f., *force, violence; strength*, VI. 28, 2; *power*, VI. 14, 6; *influence*, VI. 17, 1; *number*, VI. 36, 3; *attacks*, I. 11, 4, IV. 3, 1, 4, 1, VI. 30, 3, VII. 87, 5; **summa vis**, *main strength*; plu., **virēs**, **virium**, (physical forces), *strength*.

visus, a, um, part. of **videō**.

vita, ae, f. [cf. **vivō**], *life*.

vitō, 1st conj., *avoid*.

vitrum, l, n., *wood*, a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue.

vivō, **vivere**, **vixi**, **victum**, *live*.

vivus, a, um [**vivō**], *alive, living*; masc. plu. as subst., *the living*.

vix, adv., *barely, scarcely, hardly*.

Vocātēs, **iūm**, m. plu., a tribe of northwestern Aquitania, III. 23, 1, 27, 1.

Vocciō, **ōnis**, m., king of the Norici, I. 53, 4.

vocō, 1st conj. [**vōx**], *call*, usually in sense of *summon*; in sense of *name*, V. 21, 3.

Vocontii, **ōrum**, m. plu., a tribe of the Province, south of the Isère, I. 10, 5.

Volcae, **ārum**, m. plu., a tribe in the southwestern part of the Province, having two divisions, *Arecomici* and *Tectosages*, the latter including the *Tolosates*, VI. 24, 2, VII. 7, 4, 64, 6.

Volcātius, l, m., *Gaius Volcatius Tullus*, an officer placed in command of the garrison which protected the second bridge over the Rhine, VI. 29, 3.

volō, **velle**, **volui**, —, irreg., *wish, be willing; desire, want*; idiomatic

phrases, *si quid mē* (acc.) *vis*, if you want anything of me, I. 34, 2; *quid tibi vis*, what do you mean? I. 44, 8.

voluntārius, a, um [voluntās], willing, voluntary; masc. as subst., volunteer.

voluntās, tātis, f. [volō], wish, desire; consent, esp. w. *licet*; goodwill, I. 19, 2, V. 4, 3, VII. 10, 2; w. *contrā*, will; attitude, purpose, V. 54, 4.

voluptās, tātis, f. [volō], pleasure; enjoyment, V. 12, 6.

Volusēnus, I, m., *Gaius Volusenus Quadratus*, a tribune in Caesar's army, III. 5, 2, IV. 21, 1, etc.

Vorēnus, I, m., *Lucius Vorenus*, a brave centurion, V. 44, 1.

Vosegus, I, m., *the Vosges*, a range of mountains in eastern Gaul, IV. 10, 1.

voveō, vovēre, vōvi, vōtum, vow.

vōx, vōcis, f., voice, II. 13, 2, IV. 25, 4, V. 30, 1; word, I. 32, 3, 39, 5, V. 43, 6; expression, III. 24, 5, VI. 36, 2; speech, V. 40, 7; statement, I. 39, 1; talk, III. 17, 5; **vōcibus increpātāre**, taunt, II. 30, 3.

Vulcānus, I, m., *Vulcan*, Roman god of fire and metal-working.

vulgus, I, n., acc. **vulgus**, n., or **vulgum**, m., common people, multitude; common soldiers; **in vulgum efferre**, spread abroad. Abl. as adv., generally, I. 39, 5, II. 1, 4, V. 33, 6.

vulnerō, 1st conj. [vulnus], wound.

vulnus, vulneris, n., wound.

vultus, ūs, m., expression of the face; **vultum fingere**, control one's face.

X

X, as numeral = 10.

